新概念英语名师导学系列

新概念英语

名师精讲笔记

第三册

一线教学名师

全力出击



一线名师，担当主编；

授课精华，倾情奉献；

一本在手，考试无忧；

真题考点，一网打尽！

《新概念英语》学习胜经

New Concept Bible

攻克

高考，四、六级，考研，新托福110，雅思6.5，剑桥通用英语证书FCE

商务印书馆
创于1897 The Commercial Press

大家网
TopSage.com

新概念英语名师导学系列

新概念英语名师精讲笔记

（第三册）

新东方名师编写组

商　务　印　书　馆
2010年·北京

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新概念英语名师精讲笔记. 第三册/新东方名师编写组编. —北京:商务印书馆,2010
(新概念英语名师导学系列)
ISBN 978-7-100-07007-2

Ⅰ.新… Ⅱ.北… Ⅲ.英语—自学参考资料 Ⅳ.H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2010)第 040332 号

所有权利保留。
未经许可,不得以任何方式使用。

新概念英语名师精讲笔记
(第 三 册)
新东方名师编写组

商 务 印 书 馆 出 版
(北京王府井大街36号 邮政编码 100710)
商 务 印 书 馆 发 行
北 京 瑞 古 冠 中 印 刷 厂 印 刷
ISBN 978-7-100-07007-2

2010 年 6 月第 1 版 开本 787×1092 1/16
2010 年 6 月北京第 1 次印刷 印张 21½
定价: 29.80 元

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

前　言

可以说我对于英语学习的兴趣是被《新概念英语》这套书激发出来的。由于课文本身很有趣，所以尽管觉得吃力，我却没有产生任何厌倦情绪。我用了两个多月的时间，就把第二册到第四册的200多篇课文生吞活剥地学完了。我的朋友、现任新东方教育科技集团常务副总裁周成刚，就是在没日没夜地模仿了《新概念英语》的朗读后，获得了一口标准的伦敦口音，最后被英国BBC广播公司看中，变成了BBC的记者和节目主持人。

——新东方教育科技集团董事长兼总裁俞敏洪

对于那些对《新概念英语》的学习有详细计划安排的人来说，在最短时间内打下良好的基础并顺利进入下一阶段的学习，是他们最期望达到的目标。当然，这也是我们新概念英语名师导学系列丛书的编者们努力的动因和方向。在系列丛书的编写中，我们很重视这种连贯性和内在的互联性。所以，在脉络清楚的情况下，您能在一开始的英语学习中就因体验到无数前辈总结的经典而受益。

在英语学习中，你有没有觉得很无助的时候？尽管身边有热心的老师，亲爱的同学，你自己也有着良好的记忆力和学习能力，但你是否有时候还是会觉得课时短暂，瞬间记忆能力欠缺呢？你有十二分的热情，可是你还是不能达到学习目标，你是不是在困惑？总是会有各种小念头浮上脑际，偶尔也会觉得怎么自己没有老师那么精通课本？……不要紧，就让这本辅导书来帮助你解决这些问题吧！你不会再冥思苦想、一筹莫展了，因为她像一本专门为《新概念英语》第三册量身定做的辞典，更像一个不可多得的良师益友，随时陪伴在你左右。

《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》第三册最大的特色是学习板块清晰，知识全面，与课本完全同步，虽然不能作为一位名师当面教授课程，但她几乎把课堂上名师所要传授给同学们的知识点全部囊括其中了。她也像是一位最优秀的学生所做的详细的听课笔记。可以说，她是你学习《新概念英语》过程中不可或缺的一本重要的辅导用书。

这本书是每课一个章节，每一章节按：(一)重点和难点；(二)词汇；(三)课文详解；(四)额外收获四个板块进行组织编排的。清晰醒目，让同学们在拿到这本书的那一刻就会对《新概念英语》第三册的内容和学习步骤有个如大纲般清晰的了解。根据老师们多年的课堂教学经验和教学步骤进行学习，你就可以用尽可能少的投入获得尽量多的知识，这是其他辅导丛书所无法比拟的。我们相信，这本书清晰的脉络将会带给你十足的学习热情和信心。

综上所述，对于为参加大学四级、六级、专四、公共英语三级和准备系统学习《新概念英语》教材的读者来说，这套《新概念英语名师精讲笔记》辅导丛书还是非常必要的。本书的主要特点在于：

- 强大的编写阵容，编写人员全部由新东方英语教师担任。
- 丰富的课文内容，多样的讲解形式。
- 四大板块的编排，形式科学、全面，设计合理，难易适中。
- 重点难点突出，有助于掌握课文要点，提高学习效率。
- 使用方便，既可自学，也可在课堂上使用。

基于以上特点，我们在本书的编写上考虑到按一般课时的讲解安排，使学生做到有条不紊、循序渐进地学完《新概念英语》第三册课本。

由于时间仓促，书中的不妥之处在所难免，敬请广大读者和英语同仁不吝批评指正。

编　者

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

目　　录

Lesson 1　A puma at large …… 1
Lesson 2　Thirteen equals one …… 9
Lesson 3　An unknown goddess …… 12
Lesson 4　The double life of Alfred Bloggs …… 17
Lesson 5　The facts …… 23
Lesson 6　Smash-and-grab …… 29
Lesson 7　Mutilated ladies …… 34
Lesson 8　A famous monastery …… 37
Lesson 9　Flying cats …… 40
Lesson 10　The loss of the *Titanic* …… 45
Lesson 11　Not guilty …… 50
Lesson 12　Life on a desert island …… 54
Lesson 13　"It's only me" …… 58
Lesson 14　A noble gangster …… 61
Lesson 15　Fifty pence worth of trouble …… 67
Lesson 16　Mary had a little lamb …… 70
Lesson 17　The longest suspension bridge in the world …… 73
Lesson 18　Electric currents in modern art …… 78
Lesson 19　A very dear cat …… 82
Lesson 20　Pioneer pilots …… 87
Lesson 21　Daniel Mendoza …… 89
Lesson 22　By heart …… 94
Lesson 23　One man's meat is another man's poison …… 101
Lesson 24　A skeleton in the cupboard …… 108
Lesson 25　The *Cutty Sark* …… 113
Lesson 26　Wanted: a large biscuit tin …… 117
Lesson 27　Nothing to sell and nothing to buy …… 123
Lesson 28　Five pounds too dear …… 128
Lesson 29　Funny or not? …… 133
Lesson 30　The death of a ghost …… 137
Lesson 31　A lovable eccentric …… 140
Lesson 32　A lost ship …… 144
Lesson 33　A day to remember …… 148
Lesson 34　A happy discovery …… 152
Lesson 35　Justice was done …… 159
Lesson 36　A chance in a million …… 164
Lesson 37　The Westhaven Express …… 169
Lesson 38　The first calendar …… 175
Lesson 39　Nothing to worry about …… 180
Lesson 40　Who's who …… 185

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Lesson 41 Illusions of pastoral peace …… 190
Lesson 42 Modern cavemen …… 198
Lesson 43 Fully insured …… 203
Lesson 44 Speed and comfort …… 208
Lesson 45 The power of the press …… 214
Lesson 46 Do it yourself …… 217
Lesson 47 Too high a price? …… 221
Lesson 48 The silent village …… 225
Lesson 49 The ideal servant …… 230
Lesson 50 New Year resolutions …… 233
Lesson 51 Predicting the future …… 240
Lesson 52 Mud is mud …… 244
Lesson 53 In the public interest …… 250
Lesson 54 Instinct or cleverness? …… 253
Lesson 55 From the earth: Greetings …… 258
Lesson 56 Our neighbour, the river …… 261
Lesson 57 Back in the old country …… 267
Lesson 58 A spot of bother …… 271
Lesson 59 Collecting …… 275
Lesson 60 Too early and too late …… 281
《新概念英语(第三册)》课后习题答案 …… 286

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 1 A puma at large

本节重点和难点

- "使动用法"的及物动词
- 动词-ed或-ing派生的两类形容词
- "定语从句"和"同位语从句"的用法
- it作形式主语的句型

本课词汇

puma ['pju:mə] *n.* 美洲狮

spot [spɔt] *vt.* 发现

【用法】在动词spot后，可用现在分词作宾补，如：Arthur spotted his son selling ice cream in a snack bar.（亚瑟看见他的儿子在快餐店里卖冰激凌。）

take...seriously 认真对待某事，重视

evidence ['evidəns] *n.* 1.形迹，迹象 2.根据，证据

accumulate [ə'kju:mjuleit] *vt.* 积累，累积

oblige [ə'blaidʒ] *vt.* 迫使

hunt [hʌnt] *vt.* 1.追猎，猎取，获取 2.追赶，搜索 *vi.* 1.打猎，猎食 2.搜寻 *n.* 打猎

blackberry ['blækbəri] *n.* 黑莓

human being 人类

corner ['kɔːnə] *n.* 角(落)，(街道)拐角 *vt.* 逼人困境

【词组】round/around the corner 即将到来的；行将发生的；在近处的/turn the corner 在街角转弯；好转；渡过难关

【辨析】in the corner 在拐角的里面；on/at the corner 在拐角的外面

trail ['treil] *n.* 痕迹，残迹

【词组】blaze a/the trail (在森林中)在树上刻出指路的标志；开辟道路/hit the trail 出发；立即走开/in trail 成一列纵队地/off the trail 失去踪迹(或线索)；迷失；出轨；离题/on the trail 寻找；找到踪迹(或线索)

print [print] *n.* 印痕

cling [kliŋ] (clung [klʌŋ], clung) *vi.* 依附，缠住

【词组】cling on to 紧紧抱住；死抱不放

【用法】cling on 后接位置；cling on to 指紧紧抓住，以防跌落或分离等；cling to 指"坚持"、"依恋"、"依靠"。

convince [kən'vins] *vt.* 使信服

【词组】be convinced (of) 深信；确信/convince sb. of sth. 使某人承认；使某人信服

【用法】使人相信的内容，可由of引导的短语或that引导的从句表示，如：This convinced me of his honesty. /This convinced me that he was honest. 这使我相信他确实是诚实的。

somehow ['sʌmhau] *adv.* 不知怎么地

disturb [dis'tə:b] *vt.* 使不安，使烦恼

课文详解

1. Pumas are large, cat-like animals which are found in America.

【译文】美洲狮是一种体形似猫的大动物，产于美洲。

【用法】cat-like为派生词，由词根(名词)＋后缀(-like)构成。后缀-like表示"像……似的"、"有……

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

特征的”：lady-like 像妇女一样；dream-like 如梦似的；dog-like 像狗一样的。

【联想】 cat-like 这个词可以类推：child-like，woman-like，ghost-like。

2. When reports came into London Zoo that a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.

【译文】 当伦敦动物园接到报告说，在伦敦以南45公里处发现美洲狮时，这些报告并没有受到重视。

【用法】(1)that a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London 是同位语从句，作 reports 的同位语，进一步说明报告的内容。

(2)主句中的代词 they 指前面时间状语从句中的主语 reports。

(3)take something seriously 把……看得很重要，如：He always takes the teacher's advices seriously. 他总是认真对待老师的意见。

(4)如果把中文的译文拿出来对照便会发现，中文的语言习惯喜欢用人或者是有生命的东西作主语；而英文则更加注重事情的发展和效果，因此常用没有生命的物体作主语。如：“我不感到这有什么奇怪”，按中文语序硬译为 I didn't regard it as odd。比较一下课本中出现的一个更加符合英文思维的句子：It didn't strike me as odd. 语序迥然相异，这些要靠细心研读方可体会。

【词汇】 spot 这个单词不管是动词还是名词，意思总和“点”有关系：

①作为动词可以理解为“在很宽广的地方看到一点”或者“突然看到一样东西”

如：He spotted his friend in the crowd. 他从人群里认出了他的朋友。

②作为名词可以理解为“现场”或“斑点”

The leopard cannot change his spots. 江山易改本性难移(狗改不了吃屎)。

take sth. seriously 认真对待……(=deal with sth. seriously)

He didn't take my warning seriously. 他没把我的警告当成一回事。

He was startled at the story being taken seriously. 这个传闻被信以为真，他感到很吃惊。

【反义】 take sth. lightly 对某事草率处理

【联想】 spotless *adj.* 洁白无瑕的，诚实的；immaculate *adj.* 清洁的，没有污点的

3. However, as the evidence began to accumulate, experts from the Zoo felt obliged to investigate, for the descriptions given by people who claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily similar.

【译文】 可是，随着证据越来越多，动物园的专家们感到有必要进行一番调查，因为声称见到过美洲狮的人们所描述的情况竟是出奇地相似。

【用法】(1)as 引导的方式状语、同级比较状语、原因状语及插入语

① Just as the earth circles around the sun, so the moon revolves around the earth.
正如地球绕着太阳转，月亮也绕着地球转。
(just as…so 引导方式状语)

② Steve taught himself to play the piano as quickly as he had once learned the harmonica.
像当初自学口琴一样，史蒂夫很快也自己学会了弹钢琴。
(as 引导同级比较状语)

③ As is known to all/As is common knowledge, Prof. Wang is tied to a schedule that leaves little time for personal life. 众所周知，王教授的工作日程排得满满的，几乎没有个人的时间。
(as 引导的插入语，常用不完整句式)

④ 而课文里的 as 可以看成引导原因状语从句，包括此句：As no pumas had been reported missing from any zoo in the country, this one must have been in the possession of a private collector and somehow managed to escape.

(2)the description given by people 中的 given by people 为过去分词短语作定语，修饰 description。description 常与动词 give 或 make 搭配使用，在所描述的人或物前使用介词 of：give/make a description of sth./sb. 对某事、某人进行描述，如：She gave a description of the battle. 她对战况作了描述。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(3)who claimed to have seen the puma 中的 who 引导定语从句，修饰其前的 people。to have seen 为动词不定式的完成时结构，表示动词不定式的动作发生在谓语动词 claimed 之前。

(4)because 与 for 的区别：

because 表示直接原因，语气较强，回答由 why 引出问句，可以位于主句前或主句后，位置灵活。而 for 引导的是并列分句，对前面的分句加以解释，补充说明推断的理由，语气较弱，只能位于后半句。

Bill knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole, for there were no more mountains in sight. 比尔知道他能到达南极，因为前面已看不见山脉了。

This hasn't been easy because I own over a thousand books. = Because I own over a thousand books, this hasn't been easy. 这个并不容易，因为我有一千册书。

(5)since、as、because 的区别：

because 语气最强，since 次之，as 最弱。since 与 as 表示的原因多为既成事实，强调引起的后果。而 because 强调原因，该原因多为别人不知的事实。

Since/As your children have grown up, you needn't work as hard any longer. 既然孩子都已经长大了，你不必再那么努力工作了。

另外 because 引导的从句可以带 just、only 等修饰语，也可用于 not because…, but because 结构。

Just because his diet was too strict, he had to reward himself occasionally by eating some chocolate. 正因为他的减肥食谱要求太严格，他不得不偶尔吃些巧克力，犒赏一下自己。

(6)descriptions given by people 和后句的 woman picking blackberries

这两个短语都是由定语从句演变而来，前者原型为"descriptions which were given by people"，后者原型为"woman who picked blackberries"。

这种句式有两个好处：

① 与定语从句比较，分词结构跟在名词后面，不但衔接更加紧凑，而且轻便简练，使文字干净利落。英语文章要力求凝练、言简意赅。

② 能够避免句型的重复。如果我们把 descriptions given by people 还原成定语从句，整句话就变成：for the descriptions which were given by people who claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily similar，短短一句话出现两次定语从句，是不是相当呆板乏味？注意：写文章除了要考虑单词使用的多样化，也不能忽视句型的多样化。一篇好文章会相当注重句式的选择和调整，交错运用多种句式，使文章有张有弛，波澜起伏，从而达到更为理想的表达效果。

例：我找到了通向那片森林的小道，而这片森林是我曾经梦见过的。

试比较两种译法：

I found a path which led to the forest which I dreamed of.

I found a path leading to the forest which I dreamed of.

孰高孰低，一目了然。

【词汇】evidence

n. 证据(不可数名词)：an important piece of evidence 一件重要的证据。

vt. 证明，表明：The popularity of sport on campus can be evidenced by the growing numbers of students taking part in swimming. 参加游泳的学生不断增加，这就证明学校里体育大受欢迎。

oblige

① oblige 作"迫使，不得不"解，但强迫意味较弱，必要性的意味较强，且常用于被动式。如：The law obliges parents to send their children to school. 法律要求父母送孩子上学受教育。

②它还作"施惠"解，即使别人因自己的帮助或效劳而感谢或感到高兴。如：He obliged me with a detailed account of the trip which I had missed. 我没有参加那次旅行，承他好意，把详细情况告诉了我。

③oblige 常用于被动语态中，套语"感谢"。如：I shall be much obliged if you will kindly lend us

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

your truck. 你们如能把卡车借我一用，我将非常感谢。

④oblige 作不及物动词，表示"做某事表示好意"。如：Will you oblige with a song? 请唱一首歌好吗？

claim *vt.* 声称，主张，断言

They claimed to have discovered a cure for cancer.

They claimed that they had discovered a cure for cancer.

他们声称找到了一种治疗癌症的方法。

【联想】vid-，vis-看见：

visa 签证；visage 容貌外貌；visible 可以看见的；invisible 隐形的；visionary 有远见的，空想的；visualize 想象；envisage 面对，正视；provident 有先见之明的；improvise 即席而作

4. The hunt for the puma began in a small village where a woman picking blackberries saw a 'large cat' only five yards away from her.

【译文】搜寻美洲狮的工作是从一座小村庄开始的。那里的一位妇女在采摘黑莓时看见"一只大猫"，离她仅五码远。

【用法】关系副词 where 引导定语从句，修饰先行词 a small village，where 相当于 in which；picking blackberries 为现在分词短语作后置定语，修饰 a woman，相当于定语从句 who was picking blackberries。

5. It immediately ran away when she saw it, and experts confirmed that a puma will not attack a human being unless it is cornered.

【译文】她刚看见它，它就立刻逃走了，专家证实，除非被逼得走投无路，美洲狮是不会伤人的。

【用法】(1)此处 will 不是用来表示将来时的助动词，而是用来表示习惯性或动作特征的情态助动词，通常表示"就"、"就会"、"总是"之意，如：He will sit for hours reading. 他常常接连坐上几小时看书。

(2)本句是一个含有宾语从句的复合句，that 引导的从句作 confirm 的宾语，而该宾语从句又包括一个由 unless 引导的条件状语从句。

(3)unless it is cornered 为条件状语从句，意即"除非它被逼得走投无路"。一般说来，unless 为 if...not 之意，但语气较 if...not 更重。在 unless 引导的从句中要使用现在时形式，而非将来时形式，如：

I will not go unless I hear from him. 如果他不通知我，我就不去。

此外，使用 unless 的句子含有"如果 B 未阻止，A 就会发生"之意，而不可用其表示"由于 B 未发生而 A 才发生"之意的句子，如：I'll agree with you, if you don't stick to that point. 如果你不坚持那点，我就同意你的看法。句子中的 if...not 结构，不可用 unless 取代。

【词汇】**corner**

① corner 用作及物动词时，指"逼入一个角落，使陷入困境"。如：That question cornered me. 那问题把我难住了。The escaped prisoner was cornered at last. 那逃犯最终被逼入绝境，无法逃脱。

Some beggars cornered us for money. 一群乞丐硬缠着我们要钱。

② corner 用作不及物动词时，指"(车)拐弯"。如：My car corners even in bad weather. 我的车即使在恶劣的天气下也能顺利拐弯。

③corner 的词组：

drive sb. into a tight corner 把某人逼入死角

be politically/financially/emotionally cornered 陷入了政治/经济/感情危机

6. Wherever it went, it left behind it a trail of dead deer and small animals like rabbits.

【译文】无论它走到哪儿，一路上总会留下死鹿及死兔子之类的小动物的痕迹。

【用法】(1)Wherever 相当于 to/at any place"到/在任何地方"，如：They explored northward or wherever. 他们朝北或到任何地方勘探。

Wherever 也可以引导让步状语从句，相当于 no matter where(无论何地)，如：We will go wherever

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

the Party directs us. 党叫我们到哪里，我们就到哪里。

(2)leave sth. behind 把……留在身后；忘带；在……之后造成、产生。如：We went out for a walk and left the mess behind us at home. 我们出去散步，把一片混乱留在家中。

(3)leave behind it a trail of 分离现象平衡句子

变换语序的作用一般有两个：起强调作用或使句子平衡。如果把 behind it 移至句子末尾，给人感觉句子前面部分很长，收尾却十分仓促，难免会给人一种头重脚轻的感觉，读起来毫无美感可言。而把 behind it 挪到句子中间，感觉句子首尾就平衡了，句型也优美了许多。这样的例子在《新概念英语》第三册中比比皆是，例如第 7 课：

Jane cooked their dinner in the microwave oven and, without realizing it, cooked her fiancé's wallet as well.

作者这里就是把 without realizing it 这个地点状语提前，目的也是避免句子的头重脚轻。可见，我们平时作文的时候，千万不能墨守成规，盲目遵循常规语序，在必要的时候不妨将句子语序进行灵活调整，效果会更好。例如："把一大袋装有糖和巧克力的包放在桌子上"，一般语序是 put a bag full of sweets and chocolates on the desk，但宾语太长，让人感觉头轻脚重，改成 put on the desk a bag full of sweets and chocolates 感觉就好多了。

【词汇】trail

①这个单词万变不离其宗，"一长条"的感觉：

战士一边走一边滴血 a trail of blood

游客一边走一边丢垃圾 a trail of litter

The car raced past, leaving a trail of dust. 汽车疾驰而过，扬起一路灰尘。

②也可用作动词：她的长裙拖在身后 her long dress is trailing on the floor

【联想】 tr-：trace 痕迹；track 人、兽的足迹，车辆轨迹；travel 旅行；trip 旅行；trek 徒步旅行，艰苦跋涉；tread 踩，踏；trudge 步履艰难地走；tramp 流浪汉，踏步走

7. Paw prints were seen in a number of places and puma fur was found clinging to bushes.

【译文】 在许多地方看见了爪印，灌木丛中也发现了粘在上面的美洲狮毛。

【用法】 number 可以用作名词、及物动词和不及物动词。

【分析】 found cliniging to bushes 是现在分词短语作主语 puma fur 的主语补足语。起补足语作用的分词结构常见于 see、hear、notice、watch、keep、find、get、have、feel、smell 等词之后。

如：Do you see something burning? 你看到什么东西在燃烧吗？

同样，过去分词也可以用于这些结构中，如：

The lost car was found abandoned off the highway. 人们发现丢失的汽车被抛弃在公路之外。

现在分词和过去分词的使用主要取决于宾语和分词所表示的动作之间是主动还是被动关系。另外，在上述动词后还可以使用不带 to 的动词不定式，但意义有所不同。使用不带 to 的动词不定式时，通常表示经历所动作的全过程；使用现在分词时，一般表示动作正在发生。

如：I heard her sing a song 我听到她唱了一首歌。

I heard her singing a song. 我听到她正在唱歌。

【词汇】 a number of, the number of

a number of 作"一些，许多"解。其后接可数名词复数，谓语动词多为复数，且常和 good、large、small、certain、considerable、great 连用。如：A number of new products have been successfully produced. 许多新产品已生产成功。

the number of 意为"……的数目"，是特指，后面接可数名词复数，但谓语动词要用单数。如：The number of the students is five hundred. 学生的数目是五百。

8. The experts were now fully convinced that the animal *was* a puma.

【译文】 专家们如今完全肯定那只动物就是美洲狮。

【用法】 (1)convince 使……深信，常见用法有：convince sb. of 使某人深信；convince sb. ＋that... 使某人深信……，如：This convinced me that he is honest. 这使我相信他确实是诚实的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

句中 were now fully convinced that...为被动语态结构，相当于 convinced themselves that...，即“使自己充分认识到……”之意。

(2)

[口语]	[写作]
believe (太主观)	convince
know	understand I see
I think	In my opinion to my knowledge personally as far as I know

【词汇】**convince** *vt.* 使信服，说服

I convinced him of my honesty. 我使他相信我的真诚。

He was convinced to withdraw his candidacy. 他被说服退出竞选。

【词缀】vinc-，vict-征服：

victor 胜利者；victorious 胜利的；victory 胜利

9. As no pumas had been reported missing from any zoo in the country, this one must have been in the possession of a private collector and somehow managed to escape.

【译文】由于全国的动物园没有一家报告丢了美洲狮，因此这只美洲狮一定是某位私人收藏者豢养的，不知怎么设法逃了出来。

【用法】(1)形容词 missing 是由动词 miss 发展而来，意为“丢失的”(lost, not to be found)，如：He is said to be missing. 据说他失踪了。

miss 与 lose 都可作“丢失”解，但其用法不同，如：“我的书丢了。”可以说：My book is missing.（不可以用 missed）或者 My book is lost.

这里的 missing 也是形容词作主语补足语，再例如：

He was found dead. 他被发现已经死了。

The room is kept clean. 房间被保持得很干净。

(2)in the possession of sb.(=in sb's possession)是被动含义，表示“被某人占有或控制(possessed by)”；它的主语只能是“某物”。另外，in possession of sth. 是主动含义，表示“占有或控制某物(possess)”；它的主语只能是“某人”。如：This golden watch is in my possession. 这块金表是由我收藏的。

(3)somehow 表示“通过某种手段(by some means)，以某种方式(in some way)，由于某种原因，不知怎么地(for some reason unknown)”：We must get the work finished somehow by tomorrow morning. 我们必须设法在明天早上以前把工作做完。

(4)manage 表示“设法”时，其后用不定式：manage to do sth. 含有“成功(设法)做成某事”之意，不可用其表达“设法做某事而未做成”之意，如不可说：He managed to pass the examination but failed. 而应说：He tried to pass the examination but failed.

【词汇】**somehow** *adv.* 以某种方式，通过某种途径

somewhat 有点

anyway 无论怎样，反正

I felt somewhat uneasy in front of the strangers. 面对陌生人我感到有点不自在。

It doesn't make much difference, because we are going to be late anyway. 这没多大关系，我们反正都要迟到了。

anyway 也可用于在叙述中改变话题，可与 anyhow 互换使用：

Well, anyhow/anyway, shall we go on to the next point now? 好吧，不管怎样，现在我们谈谈下一个要点吧。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【辨析】possess、have、hold、own、keep、enjoy 这些动词均有"有，具有，持有"之意。

possess：较正式，指拥有或占有并能加以控制与支配，强调其归属；也指具有某种品质、才能、特点或性能等。

have：常用词，可指任何情况下的"具有"，无论是物质的或精神的。

hold：指拥有并保持财产及持有见解等，暗示不让别人拿走或占有。

own：不及 possess 正式，多指所属关系，强调所有权，不管所属物是否在物主手中。

keep：指长时间地保有、保存某物，防止别人占去，强调安全和感情上的依附。

enjoy：指享有某种权利或长处，带有欣赏或喜爱的情感。

10. It is disturbing to think that a dangerous wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.

【译文】想到在宁静的乡间有一头危险的野兽仍在出没，真令人担心。

【用法】(1)这是 it 作形式主语的简单句，其真正主语是不定式短语，本句可改为：To think that a dangerous wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside is disturbing. 英语中规定，不定式(短语)作主语时，往往将其移至谓语动词之后，it 作形式主语。如：It is better to die on one's feet than to live on one's knees. 宁肯站着死决不跪着生。

(2)at large(＝not kept within walls，fences，etc.)(危险的人或动物)逍遥法外的，未被捕的，自由自在的：the smuggler at large 仍逍遥法外的走私犯。

【词汇】**disturb** *vt.* 令人不安，打扰

①disturbing *adj.* 令人不安的：The statistics of young people smoking look disturbing. 关于年轻人吸烟的数据很令人不安。

disturbingly *adv.* 令人不安地：There is a disturbingly large number of young people with a university diploma who can't speak standard Chinese. 有很多年轻人虽然有大学文凭却不会说标准的中文，这很令人不安。

②比较一组表示"令人心烦焦虑"的同义词：

disturb/dismay/distress/agitate/disquiet/confuse/confound

disturb 令人不安，打扰

We were rather disturbed by the way the company tried to cover up the truth.

我们对这家公司试图掩盖事实的做法感到不安。

dismay 令人沮丧

Don't let the accident dismay you. 不要为这个事故感到沮丧。

distress 令人难过

It distresses me that she has left home like this. 她那样离家出走使我很难受。

agitate 使人不安，使人焦虑

The news agitated him；he kept walking up and down. 这消息令他不安，他不停地踱来踱去。

disquiet 令人焦虑不安

The bad news disquieted us. 这个坏消息使我们很不安。

confuse 使人迷惑不解

All the people talking at the same time confused the child. 所有人同时说话把这孩子弄糊涂了。

confound 使人迷惑，使人震惊

His new ideas completely confounded himself. 他的新想法使他自己很迷惑。

【词汇】**at large**

(1)贬义：(指危险的人或动物)逍遥自在的

Two of the escaped prisoners are still at large. 两个逃犯仍然逍遥法外。

(2)中性：自由不受约束 free without control

The teacher absent，the students are at large.

班主任走了同学们自由了。

(请思考：本文的 at large 更多指哪一项呢?)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(3)整个，全部

There has been unrest in the country at large. 国内到处都有骚乱。

11. 核心语法

同位语从句

同位语从句就是在复合句中作名词的同位语的名词性从句。

(1)同位语从句的功能

同位语从句对名词进一步解释，说明名词的具体内容，一般由 that 引导，有时也可以由 wh-疑问副词或疑问代词引导。同位语从句对前面的名词作进一步说明，常接同位语从句的名词有：news、fact、story、problem、question、evidence/proof、opinion/idea、suggestion/proposal、order、understanding、hope、conclusion 等

例如：

① The king's decision that the prisoner would be set free surprised all the people.
国王释放罪犯的决定使所有人都感到吃惊。

② The order that soldiers should stay still is given by the general.
上将命令士兵要原地不动。

③ The question when he will resign is yet to be decided.
他什么时候辞职的问题需要做出决定。

(2) 同位语在句子中的位置

同位语从句有时可以不紧跟在它所说明的名词后面，而是被别的词隔开。

例如：

He got the news from Mary that the sports meeting was put off. 玛莉告诉他运动会被推迟了。

The news got round that a variety show would be presented at our local cinema by the P. and U. Bird Seed Company. 消息传来说 P&U 鸟食公司将在本地电影院演出歌舞杂耍。

(3)同位语从句与定语从句的区别

① 定语从句中的 that 既代替先行词，同时也在从句中作某个成分(主语或宾语)，而同位语从句中的 that 是连词，只起连接主句与从句的作用，充当句中任何成分。

② 定语从句是形容词性的，其功能是修饰先行词，对先行词加以限定，描述其性质或特征；同位语从句是名词性的，其功能是对名词进行补充说明。例如：

The news that he told me is that Tom would go abroad next year. 他告诉我的消息是汤姆明年将出国。(第一个 that 引导的从句是定语从句，that 在从句中作宾语)

The news that Tom would go abroad is told by him. 汤姆将出国的消息是他讲的。(同位语从句，that 在句中不作任何成分)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 2 Thirteen equals one

本节重点和难点

- "动词-ed 形式"和"动词-ing 形式"作状语
- "现在完成进行时"的用法
- "as+形容词/副词+as"表示比较的句型

本课词汇

equal [ˈiːkwəl] *vt.* 等于
【词组】equal to 等于;敌得过;能胜任
vicar [ˈvikə] *n.* 牧师
raise money 筹款,募捐
torchlight [ˈtɔːtʃlait] *n.* 手电筒的光
catch sight of 看见,看到

课文详解

1. Thirteen equals one.

【译文】十三等于一。

【联想】equal *adj.* 平等的,相等的

【词根】equ-相等;equality 平等;equator 赤道;equivocal 模棱两可的

注意意思引申:I am not equal to you.(我配不上你。)

2. Our vicar is always raising money for one cause or another, but he has never managed to get enough money to have the church clock repaired.

【译文】我们教区的牧师总是为各种各样的事筹集资金,但始终未能筹集到足够的资金把教堂的大钟修理一下。

【用法】(1)be always doing sth. 还可以说 be forever/continually doing

解释:现在进行时的一个特殊用法:现在进行时常与频度副词 always、continually、constantly、forever 连用,表示赞许、不耐烦等感情色彩。

He is always boasting. 他老是吹牛皮。(厌烦)

He is always thinking of his work. 他老是想着他的工作。(赞许)

My father is continually losing his keys. 我爸爸老是弄丢钥匙。

(2)one... or another"这样或那样的":

With a little skill one can usually solve the problem in one way or another.

稍稍用一点技巧,你通常可以用某种方式解决问题。

For one reason or another, the meeting was postponed.

由于某些原因,会议被推迟了。

You knew that when you were out in practice you would inevitably error at one time or another.

你知道在你行医期间,说不定什么时候就会不可避免地出错。

If you work hard, you can get one reward or another.

只要你努力工作,你就能得到某种回报。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**raise** *vt.*

(1)提高，升起

raise price 提高价格

raise one's head 抬头

(2)养育

raise children 养育孩子

raise cattle 养牛

(3)raise money 筹集钱款

raise doubts 引起怀疑

raise one's spirits 使人振奋

raise the roof 大怒后的感觉

raise one's eyebrows at sth. 感到惊讶

3. One night, however, our vicar woke up with a start.

【译文】可是一天晚上，我们的教区牧师被突然惊醒。

【用法】start 表示由于突如其来的恐惧或惊异而身体颤动，甚至跳跃，即"惊跳、惊起"。surprise "使……惊奇或诧异"，只表示一种心理状态，没有任何动作，一个感到吃惊的人通常会在很短时间内一动不动，眼神会显得呆滞。如：I woke up from the bad dream with a start. 我从恶梦中惊醒。

【词汇】**start** *n.* 吃惊，源于动词 startle *vt.* 使大吃一惊

(2)awake/awaken/wake/waken

【辨析】①awake 意为"弄醒"，常用作不及物动词，可与 wake 换用。awake 还可作形容词"醒着的"。

如：The patient was wide awake all night. 这个病人整夜没睡。

②waken 是"弄醒"的意思，多用于文学作品。

③awaken 意为"弄醒"，多用于书面语和被动式，还可用于比喻说法。

如：I was awakened/wakened by a loud noise. 我被一声巨响惊醒。

4. Looking at his watch, he saw that it was one o'clock...

【译文】他一看表，才一点钟……

【用法】Looking at his watch 在这里是现在分词作时间状语。

现在分词短语作状语，表示时间，一般要位于句首。

如：Reading the letter, she burst out crying. 读了那封信，她放声大哭。

5. Armed with a torch, the vicar went up into the clock tower to see what was going on.

【译文】牧师拿着一支电筒走上钟楼想去看看究竟发生了什么事。

【用法】Armed with 过去分词短语作状语，表示方式。

He returned to Guangzhou that winter, disguised as a merchant. 那年冬天，他扮作商人回到广州。

Armed with the new machine, a search party went into the cave hoping to find buried treasure. 搜索队带上新型机器，深入洞穴希望能找到深埋的宝藏。

【词汇】**arm** *n.* 胳膊；*v.* 以……为武装；带着

They were armed with sticks and stones. 他们以棍子和石块为武器。

Don't worry. I'm armed with an umbrella. 别担心，我带着雨伞呢。

be armed to teeth 武装到牙齿

the armed forces of a country 国家的武装力量

【联想】disarm *v.* 解除武装；arms 武器

6. In the torchlight, he caught sight of a figure whom he immediately recognized as Bill Wilkins, our local grocer.

【译文】借着电筒光，他看见一个人，马上认出那是本地杂货店店主比尔·威尔金斯。

【辨析】catch sight of 和 see 不同：前者更强调动态，后者强调静态。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. "Whatever are you doing up here Bill?"asked the vicar in surprise.

【译文】"比尔,你究竟在这上面干什么?"牧师惊奇地问道。

【用法】(1)what 与 whatever

whatever(或 what ever)是强调形式,在语气上要比 what 强得多:

What are you doing,Bill? 比尔,你在干什么?

Whatever are you doing,Bill? 比尔,你究竟在干什么?

(2)vicar 英国圣公教(the Church of England)教区牧师;pastor 基督教牧师;missionary 派往国外的基督教传教士;minister 基督教新教的牧师;priest 基督教教士,英国圣公会牧师,罗马天主教神甫,东正教祭司;padre [非正式]基督教随军牧师;chaplain 在医院、学校、监狱及监狱中的基督教传教士

(3)in 的用法

① 与表达惊奇、恐惧、失望或生气等感情色彩的名词搭配连用:in surprise;in astonishment;in alarm;in embarrassment;in amazement;in despair;in dismay;in anger;in disappointment;in anxiety; in fear and trembling(提心吊胆)

② 表达"以、用";用于语言、书写材料、色彩或声音等方面:in English;in pencil;in ink;in a few words;in such a high voice;in oil;in red;in code

③ 用于状态、情况或处境:in trouble;in difficulty;in bed;in a hurry;in debt;in love with sb. ;in tears;in good order;in good repair;in good health;in poor health;in the bad mood;in the good mood;in haste;in a favor of excitement;in poverty;in luxury; in progress;in a dilemma;in a tight corner; in action;in an emergency;in bonds;in chains;in charge;in collision;in commission;in danger;in debt;in deep water(s);in demand; in despair;in dispute;in doubt;in employment;in exile(在流放);in high spirits; in isolation

8. "I've been coming up here night after night for weeks now."

【译文】"几星期来,我夜复一夜地来到这里。"

【用法】after 表示重复,意即"(一个)接(一个)":

day after day 一天又一天;failure after failure 一次又一次的失败;week after week 一周又一周;year after year 一年又一年;car after car 车来车往

The train stopped station after station. 火车一站接一站地停。

9. "Thirteen is not as good as one, but it's better than nothing."

【译文】"13 不如 1 好,但总比一下也不敲强。"

【用法】as good as"和……一样好",形容词比较级用法,如:Her work is as good as his. 她的工作和他的一样好。

但将其作副词短语修饰动词或形容词时,其意义通常为"和……几乎一样"、"实际上等于"。如:We are as good as defeated. 我们差不多失败了。

The merchant as good as promised the orphan boy,that he would adopt him.

这个商人实际上就是同意收养这个孤儿了。

The clock is as good as useless. 这个钟实际上就等于废物一件。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 3 An unknown goddess

本节重点和难点

- "情态动词表示推断"的用法
- 由 which 引导的定语从句
- 动词"happen"的用法

本课词汇

goddess ['gɔdis] *n.* 女神
archaeologist [ɑ:ki'ɔlədʒist] *n.* 考古学家
the Aegean [i:'dʒi:ən](海洋名)爱琴海
explore [iks'plɔ:] *vt.* 考察,勘探
promontory ['prɔməntəri] *n.* 海角
prosperous ['prɔspərəs] *adj.* 繁荣的
civilization [ˌsivəlai'zeiʃən] *n.* 文明
storey/story ['stɔ:ri] *n.* 楼层
drainage ['dreinidʒ] *n.* 排水
worship ['wə:ʃip] *n.* 礼拜,礼拜仪式
sacred ['seikrid] *adj.* 1. 神圣的 2. 宗教的 3. 神圣不可侵犯的
fragment ['frægmənt] *n.* 碎片,断片,片断
【辨析】fragment、scrap、remnant、shred 均有"碎片,破片"之意。fragment 强调"破碎",多指"易碎"的物质;scrap 多指要扔掉的碎片,如 scrap of paper 碎纸片、scrap of silk 碎绸片;remnant 指残留的碎片,常指残余的布头,cloth remnant 布头;shred 常指细条、碎片:The wind tore the sail to shreds. 风将帆撕成碎片。
remains [ri'meinz] *n.* 遗迹
classical ['klæsikəl] *adj.* 古希腊罗马的,古典的
reconstruct [ˌri:kəns'trʌkt] *vt.* 重建
rest [rest] *v.* 倚放,放置
hip [hip] *n.* 臀部
full-length 全身的,全长的
graceful ['greisfəl] *adj.* 优美的,优雅的
identity [ai'dentiti] *n.* 身份

课文详解

1. An American team explored a temple which stands in an ancient city on the promontory of Ayia Irini.

【译文】一个美国考古队在阿伊亚·依里尼海角的一座古城里考察了一座庙宇。

【用法】本文两处 stand:

第一处 stand 表示"位于 be located in",但更强调"高高耸立"。

如:There is a temple standing on the top of the mountain. 山顶有座庙。

A row of willows stands on the riverside. 河边长着一排柳树。

第二处 stand 表示东西或人的高度。

如:That girl stands 1.8m. 那女孩有一米八高。

2. The city at one time must have been prosperous, for it enjoyed a high level of civilization.

【译文】这座古城肯定一度很繁荣,因为它曾享有高度的文明。

【用法】must have done/been 表示对过去情况的肯定推测。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【联想】prosperous 同义词：thriving，booming，flourishing

sper-希望：desperate *adj.* 绝望的；desperately *adv.* 绝望地；desperation *n.* 绝望，自暴自弃；desperado *n.* 亡命之徒；despair *n.* 绝望

3. The city was even equipped with a drainage system, for a great many clay pipes were found beneath the narrow streets.

【译文】城里甚至还铺设了排水系统，因为在狭窄的街道下面发现了许多陶制的管道。

【用法】equip sb. with sth. (for a certain purpose)

equip 的宾语必须是人或机构，with 后接"用以装备的工具"，for 后接"目的"。

They equipped the soldiers with the lastest weapons for the coming war.

士兵们用最新的武器装备以迎接即将爆发的战争。

【词汇】**equip** 用法：

①"装备，配备"

They can't afford to equip their army properly.

他们无力给军队配备恰当的装备。

Now all fishing boats are radio equipped.

现在所有渔船上都有无线电通讯设备。

②"(智力上)装备，训练，使具备条件"

Your education will equip you to earn a good living.

你受的教育将使你过上富裕生活。

4. The temple which the archaeologists explored was used as a place of worship from the fifteenth century B. C. until Roman times.

【译文】考古工作者考察的这座庙宇从公元前 15 世纪直至罗马时代一直是祭祀祈祷的场所。

【词组】**believe in**：相信，信奉，信任，信仰

She firmly beleieves in nature cures for all illnesses.

她坚信大自然能治疗一切疾病。

Christians believe in Jesus.

基督徒信奉耶稣。

Do you believe in everything the Bible says?

你相信圣经上所说的一切吗？

【词汇】**worship** *n.* 礼拜，敬仰 *v.* 崇拜，膜拜

Many Hindus worship more than one God.

很多印度教徒不止信奉一个神。

Don't talk while they are worshipping.

他们做礼拜的时候不要说话。

revere *v.* 崇敬，尊崇

The people revere their priest.

人们崇敬他们的牧师。

venerate *v.* 对……深怀敬意，景仰

The preists venerate the shrine as the holiest in their religion.

神父们非常景仰圣地，把它们视为宗教中最神圣的地方。

adore *v.* 崇拜，爱慕

The peasant girl adored the statue of the Virgin Mary.

那农村姑娘非常崇敬圣母玛利亚的雕像。

5. In the most sacred room of the temple, clay fragments of fifteen statues were found.

【译文】在庙中最神圣的一间殿堂里发现了 15 尊陶制雕像的碎片。

【词汇】**sacred** *adj.* 神圣的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【辨析】sacred，divine，holy

这些形容词均含"神圣的"之意。

sacred：指由于是献给上帝或神的事物，因而是神圣的，不容亵渎；也指被普遍视为神圣不可侵犯的东西。

divine：指来源于神或与神有关的，侧重神性；在现代英语中指绝妙或非人世所有的事物。

holy 可与 sacred 换用，但 holy 侧重于内含一种神圣的本质，使之值得崇拜，通常具有传统、世袭或固有的性质。

【用法】sacr-神圣的：sacred，sacrifice

frag-，fract 破裂；fragile 易碎的；fraction 部分，微量；fractional 很小，少的，微不足道的；fracture 破裂，骨折，fragment *n.* 碎片

6. The body of one statue was found among remains dating from the fifteenth century B. C.

【译文】其中有一尊雕像的躯体是在公元前 15 世纪的历史文物中发现的。

【用法】(1)remains 废墟；遗迹；遗体。此词必须用复数形式，但其谓语动词有时可用单数形式。

(2)date from 追溯；始于。此动词短语无被动形式。

(3)现在分词短语 dating from the fifteenth century B. C. 作定语，修饰 remains，相当于定语从句 that could date from the 15th century B. C.

(4)还有一系列常用复数形式的名词：

archives 档案；arms 武器；clothes 衣服；contents 内容；eaves 屋檐；fireworks 烟花；goods 货物；minutes 记录；morals 道德；remains 遗物；stairs 楼梯；suburbs 郊区；thanks 感谢；wages 工资

The archives of the country are kept in the Department of Security.

这个国家的档案保存在保密局。

The contents of the book are most amusing. 这本书的内容非常有趣。

High wages often result in high prices. 高工资常常源于高代价。

My thanks are sincere. 我的感谢是发自肺腑的。

另外，下列由 ing 结尾的名词也通常用复数：

clippings 剪下来的东西；diggings 挖出来的东西；earnings 收入；lodgings 租的房子；surroundings 环境；sweepings 扫拢的垃圾

【联想】**(be)in ruins** 一片废墟，落空

The houses across the street were in ruins. 街对面的房屋成了一片废墟。

Our plans are in ruins. 我们的计划落空了。

【词汇】**remainder** *n.* 剩余物，剩下的人(或物)

Twenty people came in and the remainder stayed outside. 进来 20 个人，其余的待在外边。

residue *n.* 残余物，残渣(通常作单数，可加不定冠词)

a sticky residue in the bottom of the bottle 粘在瓶底上的残渣

【词组】**date from...** 早已存在，从……时期开始(有)(无被动)

This custom dates from the seventeenth century. 这个习俗早在 17 世纪就存在了。

a friendship dating from before the war 始于战争之前的友谊

【联想】**date back** 已存在……

All that's an old tradition. It dates back several centuries，you know. 那都是些旧的传统习惯，在几个世纪以前就存在了。

date back to "追溯到"，一般不用被动语态。

7. This head must have been found in Classical times and carefully preserred.

【译文】这个脑袋一定是在古希腊罗马时代就被人发现，并受到了精心的保护。

【用法】①preserved body 木乃伊；preserved fruits 蜜饯

②conserve，preserve，reserve 是一组形近易混词，都有"保存"的意思。

conserve 保存，保藏，保护(强调节约)：In winter，some people conserve energy by lowing the heat

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

at night. 冬天，为节约能源有些人在夜里把暖气调低。

preserve 保护，维持，保养，防止(食物)腐败(强调使不受破坏)：The government preserves the rights of the individual person. 政府保护个人的权利不受侵犯。

reserve 保留，储备(强调为某一特殊目的)；订(座位)，预定：We are reserving these seats for my parents. 我们把这些座位留给我的父母。

8. When the archaeologists reconstructed the fragments, they were amazed to find that the goddess turned out to be a very modern-looking woman.

【译文】考古工作者把这些碎片重新拼装起来后，他们惊奇地发现原来那位女神是位相貌十分摩登的女郎。

【用法】(1)在本句中，that 引导宾语从句，作动词 find 的宾语；而不定式 to find 是原因状语。

(2)turn out"原来是，结果是，证明是"，有三种常见的句型：

① turn out(to be)＋形容词/名词：

His statement turned out(to be)false. 他说的一番话原来是假的。

The party turned out(to be)a success. 结果舞会办得很成功。

The enemy's proposal turned out(to be)a fraud. 敌人的建议原来是个骗局。

② It turn out that：

It turned out that the book bad been in the shelf. 原来书一直放在书架上。

It may well turn out that we lack the experience to do that job.

结果可能是，我们缺乏做那项工作的经验。

It turned out that the accident was a good thing because he was slowly dying of cancer.

原来这次事故是件好事，因为他正慢慢死于癌症。

③ As it turns out：人们后来发现

As it turned out，he didn't pass the exam. 原来他没有通过期末考试。

(3)modern-looking 相貌摩登的；good-looking 好看的；easy-going 容易相处的；out-going 外向的

注意：修饰名词的方法已经接触很多了，不要把思维局限在形容词修饰名词上：

① *adj.* -ing＋*n*：modern-looking

② *adv.* -ed＋*n*：beautifully-decorated

③ *n.* ＋介词短语：puma at large

④ *n.* ＋with：room with beautifully decorated walls

【联想】从 goddess 看表示"人"的词缀

学英语要掌握大量的词汇，而掌握好词缀，是提高词汇量的有效途径。比如，在某些动词后面加上"-er，-or"等就可以构成名词，表示"从事某种职业的人"或者"某一类的人"。下面，将表示"人"的词缀加以分类总结。

(1)从社会层次、地位、工作职务上来看：

①加"-er"可表示"人"，这类词多数情况下表示的人物社会地位较低，或从历史上看地位较低。

例：beginner 初学者，新手；driver 司机；teacher 教师；labourer 劳动者；runner 跑步者，信使；skier 滑雪者；swimmer 游泳者；observer 观测者，观察员；murderer 杀人犯；passenger 旅客；traveller 旅游者；learner 学习者，初学者；lover 爱好者；worker 工人；researcher 研究员；printer 印刷工；gardener 园艺工；owner 主人；wrestler 摔跤手

②加"-or"可表示"人"，这类词多数情况下表示的人物社会地位较高，或从历史上看地位较高。

例：doctor 博士，医生；tutor(大学)指导教师，助教，监护人；director 主任；compositor 排版师；collector 收藏家；instructor 教员，指导者

③加"-ist"或"-an"可表示"人"，这类词多数情况下表示事业有成或较为特殊的人。

例：artist 艺术家；scientist 科学家；physicist 物理学家；journalist 新闻记者；dentist 牙医；instrumentalist 乐器演奏家，乐器家；meteorologist 气象学家；historian 历史学家；technician 技术员，技师；vegetarian 食素者。也有个别例外，如 cyclist 骑脚踏车的人，motorcyclist 乘机车者。

www.TopSage.com

(2)从性别上来看：通常加“-er/-or”多为“男性”，加“-ess”多为女性。

waiter 男招待；waitress 女服务员；stewardess(轮船，飞机等)女乘务员；actor 男演员；actress 女演员；instructor 男教员，男指导；instructress 女教师，女指导；lawyer 律师；lawyeress 女律师。

(3)从主动、被动上来看，加“-er/-or”为主动，加“-ee”为被动。

examiner 主考人，监考员；examinee 参加考试者、受试人(被监考者)；employer 雇主(雇佣别人)；employee 雇员(被雇佣)；interviewer 会见者；interviewee 被接见者，被访问者。

(4)有时会直接用表示人的词构词，如-boy，-girl，-man，-woman：

cowboy 牛仔；playboy 花花公子；salesgirl 女店员；workman 工人；postman 邮递员；workwomen 劳动妇女。

9. She was wearing a full-length skirt which swept the ground.

【译文】她身穿一条拖地长裙。

【用法】full-length *adj.*

-length 有……长度的：half-length photo 半寸照片

full-length TV series “Hong Kong today”大型电视系列片“今日香港”

【联想】full-time job 专职工作；full-dress welcome 热烈欢迎；full-scale war 大规模的(全面的)战争

10. Despite her great age, she was very graceful indeed, but, so far, the archaeologists have been unable to discover her identity.

【译文】尽管上了年纪，但她体态确实优美。不过，考古工作者至今未能确定她的身份。

【用法】unable、disable、enable 这三个词的中心词均为 able，但由于每一词使用前缀的不同，其含义和用法也就不同。unable 为补语形容词，其后应使用带 to 的动词不定式补语，表示“不能”、“无法”之意。disable 为动词，通常指由于疾病、事故等所致而失去能力。enable 为动词，其后常跟人，再加动词不定式短语，表示“使……能够”之意。

【联想】各种 card：

Identity card 身份证；birthday card 生日卡；Christmas card 圣诞卡；New-Year card 贺年卡；post card 明信片；identity card 身份证；credit card 信用卡；guest card 贵宾卡；preferential card 优惠卡；expense card 消费卡；get-well card 慰问卡；record card 记录卡；score card 记分卡；playing cards 扑克牌；membership card 会员卡；intelligence card(IC)IC 智能卡；entry card 入境卡；phone card 电话卡；student's card 学生证；visiting card 名片

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 4 The double life of Alfred Bloggs

本节重点和难点

- "宾语从句"的用法
- "同位语从句"的用法
- as 引导的状语从句和定语从句
- "双宾语"(直接宾语和间接宾语)的用法

本课词汇

manual ['mænjuəl] *adj*. 手的,手工做的,体力的 *n*. 手册,指南

collar ['kɔlə] *n*. 衣领,环状物

sacrifice ['sækrəfais] *vt*. 献出,献祭,牺牲 *n*. 牺牲(品),献身,祭品,供物

【词组】the great (last) supreme sacrifice 最大的牺牲;捐躯

privilege ['privilidʒ] *n*. 特权,优惠 *v*. 给予优惠,给予特权

【词组】enjoy privileges 享有特权/grant sb. the privilege of doing sth. 赋予某人做某事之特权/privilege sb. from 特免去某人的……

dustman ['dʌstmən] *n*. 清洁工

corporation [ˌkɔːpə'reiʃən] *n*. 团体,公司

【用法】作有限公司解时,美国人多用 corporation,英国人多用 company。

overall ['əuvərɔːl] *n*. 工作服,工装裤

shower ['ʃauə] *n*. 淋浴;阵雨,暴雨;(一)阵,(一)大批 *v*. 下阵雨,倾注

【词组】a shower of... 一大批……/take a cold shower 洗冷水淋浴/shower sb. 纷纷地向……,给予/be showered with sth. 受到很多……

secret ['siːkrit] *n*. 秘密

status ['steitəs] *n*. 身份,地位,情况

【用法】status 有时可用作定语,如:high status business 有地位的商人

earn [əːn] *v*. 赚得,挣得,获得

【辨析】人可以得到(gain)不应得的报酬,但"应得"(earn)之物却不一定真的得到。人在工作后"挣(earn)钱",在其他努力后"赢得"(win/gain)。earn 和 win 均表示"赢得"。earn 指因功过而得到物质上的奖励或肉体上的惩罚;win 指因做出优异成绩而赢得他人的爱戴和好感等。

rise [raiz] *n*. 提高

loss [lɔs] *n*. 遗失,丧失;损失,亏损;失败

【词组】at a loss 困惑;不知所措;亏本

课文详解

1. These days, people who do manual work often receive far more money than people who work in offices.

【译文】如今,从事体力劳动的人的收入常常要比坐办公室的人高出许多。

【词汇】**manual** *adj*. 手工的,体力的

manu-手;manuscript 手稿;manufacture 制造;manufacturer 制造商;manual worker=blue collar 体力劳动者

【文化链接】在西方国家,人们曾用领子的不同颜色来区分不同的工作性质:从事体力工作的职员(manual staff)穿蓝领子的衬衫,而从事文职工作的职员(clerical staff)穿白领子的衬衫,于是他们就渐

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

渐被称为蓝领(blue collar)和白领(white collar)。粉领族(pink collar)最先出现在 KappHowe 在 1977 年所写的一本书中,指和蓝领体力工人相当的女性工人,她们主要在电子产品的流水线上工作,或从事信息输入工作,如信息台的传呼员等等。

随着信息和高科技产业的兴起,越来越多的金领族出现了,这个 gold-collar 体现出他们在公司的地位。他们一般都有一技之长,对公司工作的方方面面都十分了解,甚至对公司的利润大小和收益都有直接的重要影响。他们的工作环境优雅,职业体面,有着比白领更丰厚的收入和更稳固的经济地位。Gold-collar workers 最早出现在 Carnegie Mellon 大学 Robert E. Kelley 教授的书里,这些金领的高级打工仔也被称为知识工人(knowledge worker)或是新经济工人(new economy worker)。

2. Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers.

【译文】*许多人常常情愿放弃较高的薪水以换取做白领工人的殊荣,此乃人之常情。*

【用法】代词 such 用于句首时起强调作用,其后面常常使用倒装语序,如:Such was the result. 结果就是这样。If such is the case, we will need not to go there. 如果情况就是这样,我们就不必去了。

【词汇】**sacrifice** *vt.* 牺牲

Many women have to sacrifice their own careers to their husband's work. 许多妇女为了丈夫的工作只得牺牲自己的事业。

privilege *n.* 特权,殊荣,好处

It's my pleasure and privilege to be here. 我很高兴也很荣幸到这里来。

【联想】priv-私自,个人;private *adj.* 私人的;deprive *vt.* 剥夺

3. People who work in offices are frequently referred to as "white-collar workers" for the simple reason that they usually wear a collar and tie to go to work.

【译文】*坐办公室的人之所以常常被称作"白领",原因很简单,就是因为他们通常穿着硬领衬衫、打着领带去上班。*

【用法】(1)refer to sb. /sth. as(=regard...as;call)把……叫做:We always refer to the teacher as a gardener. 我们总是把老师称为园丁。

He is frequently referred to bookworm for the simple reason that he spares no efforts to read. 他总是被称作书呆子,因为他总是在看书。

(2)white-collar workers 白领劳动者,往往指脑力工作者,与其相对的是 blue-collar workers 蓝领工人,即体力劳动者。

【词组】**A collar and tie** 衬衫领带(看成一套东西)

A cart and horse was seen in the distance. 在远处走着一辆马车。

通常由两个部件组成的物品如:rice and egg 米饭和鸡蛋,a knife and fork 一副刀叉,a cup and saucer 一套杯碟,bread and butter 奶油面包等作主语,谓语用单数。

4. This can give rise to curious situations, as it did in the case of Alfred Bloggs who worked as a dustman for the Ellesmere Corporation.

【译文】*而这常常会引起种种奇怪的现象,在埃尔斯米尔公司当清洁工的艾尔弗雷德·布洛格斯就是一个例子。*

【用法】(1)give rise to 代替 cause

表示"导致"或者意思相似的词:

cause, lead to, attribute to, result in, consequently, as a result, therefore, so that

(2)in case; in case of; in the case of 区别

① in case 可以引导从句,相当于 if"如果"或者 lest"以防",但如果主句是一般时或者祈使句,从句中的谓语动词要用一般现在时代替将来时(口语)或者"should" 加动词原形表示虚拟语气。如:

The meeting will be put off, in case it rains.

如果下雨会议就会延期。(口语)

The meeting will be put off, in case it should rain.

www.TopSage.com

如果下雨，会议就会延迟。（书面）

注：in case 也可以单独使用，位于句末，前面通常加上“just”，有时也可以不加，翻译为“以防万一”。It may rain；you had better take an umbrella(just)in case. 可能会下雨，你最好带把伞，以防万一。

in case 引出的条件句表示“预防某种情况的出现。”如果条件句指的是一般的条件或假设，不用 in case，而用连词 if：I will tell him about the matter，if I happen to meet him. 如果我碰见他，我就会告诉他这件事。

② in case of 表示“倘若遇到……的时候；以防；以备”，常搭配的词汇有：fire、rain、danger、difficulty、failure、absence、war、doubt 等。

Take some money in case of some difficulties.

带点钱，以防万一你碰到什么困难。

③ in the case of 表示“就……而言；至于”。

In the case of the entrance exam，I do not feel satisfactory.

就入学考试而言，我感到不满意。

【词汇】**corporation** *n.* 公司

【联想】BBC the British Broadcasting Corporation 英国广播公司；multinational corporation 跨国公司；group 集团；joint-venture enterprise 合资企业；state-owned enterprise 国有企业；township enterprise 乡镇企业

5. When he got married，Alf was too embarrassed to say anything to his wife about his job.

【译文】艾尔费结婚时，感到非常难为情，而没有将自己的职业告诉妻子。

【词汇】**embarrass** *vt.* 使某人尴尬；使窘迫；使不好意思

表示“丢脸，耻辱，难堪”的词：

embarrass：to casuse to feel ashamed or socially uncomfortable 使尴尬，使窘迫：

She was embarrassed when they asked her age.

当他们问起她年龄时，她感到很窘迫。

He embarrassed her by telling dirty jokes.

他开下流玩笑使她很难堪。

disgrace：to be a disgrace to 使丢脸，使受耻辱：

He disgraced himself last night by drinking too much.

他昨晚喝酒过多，使自己丢了脸。

The dishonest minister was publicly disgraced.

不诚实的部长当众受辱。

shame：to bring dishonor to 使蒙羞，使惭愧：

He shamed his family by being sent to prison.

他因被送入监狱而使家人蒙羞。

It shames me to say it，but I told a lie.

说来惭愧，可我说谎了。

Their good work shames all the others.

他们出色的工作使其他人都相形见绌。

humiliate：to cause sb. to feel humble 使丢脸，蒙羞：

His remarks humiliated me；I felt really small and silly.

他的话羞辱了我，使我感到自己的渺小和愚蠢。

stigmatize：to mark a person out by a sign of shame 给某人加上污名，侮蔑：

They stigmatized their opponent as a liar.

他们污蔑对手是说谎者。

6. Every morning，he left home dressed in a smart black suit.

【译文】每天早晨，他穿上一身漂亮的黑色西装离家上班。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】形容词作定语的摆放顺序：

几个形容词修饰同一个名词时，一般意义较具体或与名词密切相关的形容词较靠近被修饰词，其顺序排序如下：

冠词——描述性形容词——表示大小形状形容词——表示新旧形容词——表示颜色形容词——表示出产地形容词——表示物质材料、用途、类别形容词——名词。

an expensive big blue Japanese sports car 一辆昂贵的大的蓝色日本赛车

those three beautiful large square old brown wood table 那三张漂亮的褐色的旧方木桌

a pretty balck lacy dress 一件漂亮的带花边的黑裙

a sexy crimson velvet robe 一件性感的深红色丝绒睡袍

【联想】在中文里，词序非常重要；两个字的顺序不同，意思也不同。例如“东西”和“西东”，前者是“things”，后者是“everywhere”。再如“女儿”和“儿女”，前者是“daughter(s)”，后者是“children”。

英语的词序虽不像中文那样富有语义上的变化，但也很重要，绝对不容忽视。有时，一字一词方位改变，全句的意思可能“牵一发动全身”，跟着受影响。如：

(1)Even the government officers admitted that some tax measures were unfair.

(2)The government officers admitted that even some tax measures were unfair.

第一句的意思是：每个人，包括政府官员，都承认有些税务措施不公平。第二句的意思是：政府官员承认，许多事情，连税务措施在内，都不公平。前者焦点在“人”，后者则在“事”。

(3)The couple don't have much money to spend on their foreign trip.

(4)The couple don't have to spend much money on their foreign trip.

第三句说“钱不够用”；第四句却说“不必多用钱”。“没有钱可花”和“有钱不必多花”，呈强烈对照，词序的影响，由此可见一斑！

(5)The committee as a whole pointed out that the world economic situation had improved.

(6)The committee pointed out that the world economic situation as a whole had improved.

第五句指的是“全部的委员”；第六句却是“整体的经济局势”。同样一个短语，所指有所不同。

(7)In vain did David try to prevent the job from being done.

(8)David tried to prevent the job from being done in vain.

第七句里的“in vain”(无结果)指的是大卫的行动；第八句里的不是指人的行动，而是指“在进行中的工作”。

(9)Approaching the shop, Helen noticed two strangers.

(10)Helen noticed two strangers approaching the shop.

第九句里讲的是“海伦走向银行时，注意到两个陌生人”；第十句则是“两个陌生人走向银行时，引起海伦的注意”。

最后，请问下列二词，哪个是“防暴警察”，哪个是“警察暴动”？

A：RIOT POLICE

B：POLICE RIOT

Answer：A 防暴警察，B 警察暴动

7. Before returning home at night, he took a shower and changed back into his suit.

【译文】晚上回家前，他洗个淋浴，重新换上那身西服。

【用法】take a shower 洗淋浴；have a shower(bath)沐浴；a shower of letters (questions, criticism) 大量的信(问题，批评)

【词汇】**shower** *n.* 淋浴；阵雨；送礼会

8. He will be earning only half as much as he used to, but he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money.

【译文】他将来挣的钱只有他以前挣的一半。不过他觉得，地位升高了，损失点钱也值得。

【用法】(1)but 连接两个并列句，as...as 引导的比较状语从句，that 引导宾语从句。

He will be earning only half as much as he used to. 相当于：His earnings were only half the amount they used to be.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2)as much as 前面可以有 half、twice、three times 等短语修饰。

She won't marry a man who is twice as old as she. 她不愿意嫁给一个年纪比她大一倍的人。

He earns four times as much money as he used to. 他现在挣的钱是过去的四倍。

(3)rise 在本句中作名词，与介词 in 搭配，表示"在……(方面)上升，提高"，如：

There is a rise in temperature. 温度有所上升。

(4)表示倍数的句式

当我们要表达甲是乙的几倍时，通常用下面三个句型来表示：

①"A+倍数+形容词或副词的比较级+than+B"，表示"A 比 B 大(长、高、宽等)多少倍"。如：

This rope is twice longer than that one.

这根绳子比那根绳子长两倍。

This hall is five times bigger than our classroom.

这个大厅比我们的教室大五倍(是我们教室的六倍)。

②"A+倍数+as+形容词或副词的原级+as+B"，表示"A 是 B 的多少倍"。如：

Asia is four times as large as Europe. 亚洲的面积是欧洲的四倍。

This big stone is three times as heavy as that one. 这块大石头的重量是那块的三倍。

③"A+倍数+the size/height/length/width, etc. +of+B"，表示"A 是 B 的大小/高度/长度/宽度的多少倍"。如：

This street is four times the length of that one. 这条街是那条街的四倍长。

除了掌握倍数表达的三个常规句型外，我们更要注意的是其常规句型的变形及其特殊规律。

④"...times + more+名词(可数或不可数)+than+被比对象"。如：

There are five times more books in our library than in yours.

我们图书馆里的书比你们图书馆多五倍。

We have produced twice more grain this year than we did last year.

我们今年生产的粮食比去年多两倍。

⑤"...times as many/much+名词+as+被比对象"。如：

There is four times as much water in this pot as in that one.

这个壶里装的水是那个壶里的四倍。

There are six times as many students as we expected.

学生数量是我们预期的六倍。

⑥"...times + over+被比对象"。如：

The grain output in that village is twice over that of 2002.

那个村的粮食产量是 2002 年的两倍多。

⑦"...times + that of+被比对象"。如：

In this workshop, the output of July was 4.5 times that of January.

这个车间 7 月份的产量是 1 月份的 4.5 倍。

⑧"...times + compared with+被比对象"。如：

The number of the students in our school has increased 4 times compared with 1980.

我们学校的学生人数比 1980 年增加了四倍。

⑨"...times+what+从句"。如：

The production is now three times what it was ten years ago.

现在的产量是十年前的三倍。

⑩倍数/百分数(percent)+compared with/up on+被比对象。如：

Our factory's output of TV sets in the first six months of this year was 10%up compared with last year. 今年前六个月我们厂电视机的产量与去年相比增加了 10%。

The industrial output of last year in our factory was 35%up on that of 2001.

我们厂去年的工业产量比 2001 年增加了 35%。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

⑪用 double 表示倍数

double 用作形容词，表示“两倍的”。如：

The production is now double what it was ten years ago.

现在的产量是十年前的两倍。

double 用作动词，表示“是……的两倍”。如：

The output has been doubled in the past six years.

在过去六年中产量已经翻了一番。

【词汇】**status** *n.* 地位

【词组】improve one's social status 提高自己的社会地位；status quo 现状；to change/preserve the status quo 改变/维持现状

【辨析】status，position

status 表示“社会地位”时，可与 position 通用，但 status 更正式。

position 表示“位置、姿态、处境、见解、立场”。

【词汇】**worth** 相关用法

worth，worthy，worth-while 都是形容词，意为“值得的”。

(1)worth：be worth＋n. 当名词为金钱时，表示“……值……钱”

be worth doing sth. “……某事值得做”

The question is not worth discussing again and again. 这个问题不值得反复讨论。

(2)worthy：be worthy of＋n. 当名词为抽象名词时表示“……值得……”

be worthy to be done“某事值得做”

The question is not worthy to be discussed again and again. 这个问题不值得反复讨论。

(3)worth-while：be worth-while to do sth. “值得做某事”

It is worth while for sb. to do sth. “值得某人做某事”

额外收获

Jekyll and Hyde 是英国作家 Stevenson 的作品，是一部脍炙人口的经典小说《化身博士》。

书中的主角是善良的 Jekyll，他将自己当作实验对象，结果却导致人格分裂，变成夜晚会转为邪恶 Hyde 的双重人格。Jekyll and Hyde 这部著作曾经被拍成电影、编成音乐剧，流传十分广泛，使得 Jekyll and Hyde 成为“双重人格”的代称。

single person with two personalities，one good(Jekyll) and one bad(Hyde)有善恶双重人格的人

如：I'd never have expected him to behave like that；he's a real Jekyll and Hyde.

我从来没有想到他会那样，他真是双重人格。

注：Stevenson Robert Louis(Balfour)斯蒂文森(1850—1894)

英国作家。生于苏格兰爱丁堡，毕业于爱丁堡大学。1875 年当过律师，后转向为期刊写见闻、散文和短篇小说。传奇式冒险小说《金银岛》(Treasure Island，1883)使他一举成名，从此走上浪漫小说的写作道路。他的作品还有《绑架》(Kidnapped，1886)、《化身博士》(The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde，1886)、《巴伦特雷的少爷》(The Master of Ballantral，1889)和未完成的《赫米斯顿的韦尔》(Weir of Hermiston，1896)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 5 The facts

本节重点和难点

- 动词不定式作状语
- 部分倒装
- 动词的-ed和-ing形式作后置定语
- 介词+which引导的定语从句

本课词汇

editor ['editə] *n.* 编辑,编者

extreme [ik'stri:m] *n.* 极端

statistics [stə'tistiks] *n.* 统计数字

journalist ['dʒə:nəlist] *n.* 新闻工作者,新闻记者

president's palace 总统府

republic [ri'pʌblik] *n.* 共和国,共和国政体

【词组】 the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国

publish ['pʌbliʃ] *vt.* 出版,刊印;公布,发表

fax [fæks] *n.* 传真

impatient [im'peiʃənt] *adj.* 不耐烦的,不耐心的

【用法】 impatient 与 of 搭配,作"不耐烦的"解;与 for 或 to 搭配,作"迫不及待……"解;与 with 搭配,作"急躁的"解。

fire [faiə] *n.* 火,火灾 *vt.* 开枪,解雇,开除

【词组】 catch fire 着火/fire alarm 火警/fire escape 太平梯,安全出口/on fire 使燃烧/set fire to 纵火

【辨析】 fire 是普通用词,指大火,也指小火;flame 指大火的火焰、火苗、火舌,此时多用复数,也指一个小火星,小火团;blaze 火(焰),指大火,熊熊烈火或大火燃烧。

reluctantly [ri'lʌktəntli] *adv.* 勉强地,不情愿地

originally [ə'ridʒənəli] *adv.* 原来

课文详解

1. Editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their readers with unimportant facts and statistics.

【译文】 报刊杂志的编辑常常为了向读者提供一些无关紧要的事实和统计数目而走向极端。

【用法】 go to extremes 走极端,采取极端手段

在使用 go to the extreme of 表示"采取……极端手段"时,extreme 应为单数,其前应用定冠词,如:He went to the extreme of killing his enemy. 他居然采取了杀死敌人的极端手段。

【词汇】 **editor** *n.* 编辑

editor-in-chief 总编辑;editorial *n.* 社论;an editorial on education 一篇关于教育的社论

edit *v.* 编辑(通常是他人的作品)

to edit a Shakespeare play for use in schools 编辑一本莎士比亚剧本供学校使用

compile *v.* 汇编(不作改动的编辑)/**compiler** *n.* 汇编者

a guidebook compiled from a variety of sources 利用各种资料汇编的导游手册

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

compose *v.* 创作

She began to compose (songs) at an early age. 她年幼时就开始创作歌曲。

compose a poem, an opera, a speech etc. 作诗(歌剧,演讲稿等)

extreme *adj.* 极端的; eme 是最高级后缀; supreme *adj.* 最高的,至高无上的

Extremes meet. 物极必反。

Don't go to extremes in this thing. = Don't run to all extreme in this thing.

这件事情不要走极端。

extremely *adv.* 极端地,极其地,非常

statistics *n.* 统计数字(有两个意思:当表示统计学,谓语用单数,当表示一系列数据,谓语用复数。)

【联想】关于主谓一致,英语中有些单词是以"s"结尾,但仍旧看成单数形式:

(1)以-s 结尾表示疾病的名词

arthritis 关节炎　　bronchitis 支气管炎　　rickets 软骨病　　mumps 腮腺炎

diabetes 糖尿病　　phlebitis 静脉炎　　measles 麻疹

如:Arthritis is a disease causing pain and swelling in the joints of the body.

关节炎是引起身体关节疼痛肿胀的疾病。

Mumps is a kind of infectious disease. 腮腺炎是一种传染性疾病。

(2)以-s 结尾表示游戏的名词

Darts is essentially a free and easy game. 投镖是一种自由而简单的游戏。

Marbles is one of the oldest of games and was not confined to children. (打弹子) 打弹子是一种很古老的游戏,不只是孩子们玩。

(3)以-ics 结尾表示学科的名词

Physics 物理学; mathematics 数学; mechanics 机械学; optics 光学; acoustics 声学; politics 政治学; statistics 统计学; economics 经济学; linguistics 语言学; athletics 体育; tactics 兵法

(4)以-s 结尾表示地理的名词

The United States; the United Unions; the Netherlands

The United States was hit by the Great Depression in 1930s'.

美国在 20 世纪 30 年代的经济大萧条时期受到了重大的打击。

In early January 1996 the Netherlands was hit by its worst storm since 1976.

在 1996 年 1 月初,荷兰受到自 1976 年以来的最大风暴的袭击。

但如果是群岛、山脉、海峡、瀑布等地理名称作主语,谓语动词用作复数。例如:

The West Indies are commonly divided into two parts. 西印度群岛一般被分成两部分。

The Himalayas have a magnificent variety of plant. 喜玛拉雅山上有各种壮观的植物品种。

The Straits of Gibraltar have not lost their strategic importance.

直布罗陀海峡并没有失去它的战略重要性。

The Niagara Falls are perhaps the most splendid waterfall in the world.

尼亚加拉大瀑布是世界上最壮丽的瀑布。

还有一组比较复杂的以-s 结尾的名词:

scissors 剪刀; pincers 钳子; glasses 眼镜; shorts 短裤; trousers 长裤; suspenders 吊袜带

如果把这类词看成"一条,一副,一把"等意思,谓语动词用复数。如果带有单位词,则由单位词的单复数决定:

One pair of scissors isn't enough. 一把剪刀不够。

2. Last year a journalist had been instructed by a well-known magazine to write an article on the president's place in a new African republic.

【译文】去年,一位记者受一家有名的杂志委托写一篇关于非洲某个新成立的共和国总统的文章。

【用法】write...on..."就……写……"这里用介词 on 表达"有关"、"关于"之意,相当于介词 about 的含义,如:

www.TopSage.com

I'm writing an article on Art. 我在写一篇关于艺术的文章。

【词汇】**president** *n.* 总统;大学校长;董事长

【联想】reside *v.* 居住;assiduous *adj.* 勤奋的;insidious *adj.* 暗中危害的;chairman 主席,会长;chancellor(欧洲一些国家的)总理;prime minister 首相;premier 总理;monarch 君主,国王;sovereign 君主,国王;king 国王;queen 女王,王后;emperor 皇帝;empress 女皇,皇后

3. When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and then refused to publish.

【译文】稿子寄来后,编辑看了第一句话就拒绝予以发表。

【词汇】**arrive** *vi.* 抵达,(可以表示报纸、牛奶、信件等)被送到

【用法】arrive at:到达"小地方"

We arrived at the station five minutes late. 我们到车站晚了五分钟。

arrive in:到达"大地方"

They will arrive in New York at noon. 他们将于中午到达纽约。

4. Meanwhile, the editor was getting impatient, for the magazine would soon go to press.

【译文】在此期间,编辑等得不耐烦了,因为杂志很快就要付印。

【用法】meanwhile 同时(during the same period of time);was getting impatient 变得越来越不耐烦(to become more and more impatient);go to press 付印(to start being printed)。

【词汇】**impatient** *adj.* 不耐烦的

pr-压:press 压,新闻界

【联想】pressing 急迫的;pressure 压力;compress 压缩;depress 使沮丧,使萧条;express 表达;impress 使印象深刻;oppress 压迫

【词缀】注意前缀 in 的几个变体:

① 碰到 m、p、b 被同化成 im:impolite, impossible, immortal

② 碰到 l 被同化成 il:illogical

③ 碰到 r 被同化成 ir:irregular

【搭配】**be impatient at sth. /with sb.**:对……不耐心的,不耐烦的

You're too impatient with her; she's only a child. 你对她太不耐心了,她还只是个孩子嘛。

He was getting impatient at having to wait so long. 他等了很久,等得越来越不耐烦了。

be impatient of sth.:无法容忍某事

He is impatient of anything stupid. 他无法容忍任何愚蠢的事情。

be impatient for sth. /be impatient to do 渴望某事,急切地想做

He is impatient to see his wife. 他渴望见到他妻子。

We are impatient for the weekend to come. 我们渴望周末的到来。

She is impatient for the result of her examination. 她迫不及待地想要知道考试的成绩。

5. He sent yet another telegram informing the journalist that if he did not reply soon he would be fired.

【译文】他又发了一份传真,通知那位记者说,若再不迅速答复,将被解雇。

【用法】fire *v.* 开除,炒鱿鱼

fire, dismiss, sack(解雇,辞退)

dismiss 是这三个动词中最正式的一个,fire 是非正式英语,而 sack 则是俚语:

He was dismissed for drunkenness. 他因酗酒而被解雇。

各种"被开除"的表达:

I got fired. 我被炒鱿鱼了。

I got the boot. 我被开除了。

I got the ax. 我被开除了。

I got sacked. /I got the sack. 我被开除了。

They kicked me out. 他们把我踢出来了。(他们把我开除了。)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

My boss showed me the door yesterday. 老板昨天叫我走路。

I was canceled. 我被开除了。

I was laid off. 我被解雇了。

The boss told me that I don't have to come in tomorrow, or any other day.

老板告诉我说,我明天或以后都不必来公司了。

My boss told me to find a "better" job. 老板叫我"另谋高就"。

【联想】(1)**dismiss sb. from sth.** (正式)解雇,使离职

He was dismissed from the army. 他被部队开除了。

(2)**remove sb. from sth.** (正式)撤职,辞退

The corrupt official was removed from office. 那个腐败的官员被免职了。

6. Not only had the poor man been arrested, but he had been sent to prison as well.

【译文】那个可怜的人不仅被捕了,而且还被送进了监狱。

【用法】not only...but also 在句中引导并列的句子成分,当 not only 放在句首时,主谓要倒装。

This young man is not only intelligent but also hardworking. = Not only is this young man intelligent, but he is hardworking. 这个年轻人不仅聪明,而且勤奋。

7. However, he had at last been allowed to send a fax in which he informed the editor that he had been arrested while counting the 1,084 steps leading to the fifteen-foot wall which surrounded the president's palace.

【译文】不过,他终于获准发回了一份传真。在传真中他告诉编辑,他在数通向 15 英尺高的总统府围墙的 1,084 级台阶时被抓了起来。

【用法】本句是一个含有多个复合句结构的复杂的长句子。首先,in which 引导定语从句,修饰 fax;而在 in which 引导的定语从句中,informed 作从句谓语,后面又跟着一个 that 引导的的宾语从句,that 从句中又包含两个从句:一个是由 while 引导的时间状语从句,另一个是由 which 引导的修饰 wall 的定语从句。

while counting... 在复合句中,如果状语从句的谓语中包含 be 动词,而且从句的主语与主句的主语一致,或者从句的主语是 it,那么从句中的主语和 be 常常一起省略掉,使语言更加简洁凝练。

While waiting, I was reading some old magazines. 我一边等,一边看些旧杂志。(I was)

While at college, he was a good footballer. 上大学期间,他是一个出色的足球运动员。(he was)

This dictionary will look nice when printed. 这本辞典印出来以后会很好看。(it is)

He hurriedly left the room as though very angry. 他匆匆地离开房间,好像很生气的样子。(he was)

The old lady was looking well although living alone.

这位老太太虽然一个人独居,但气色很好。(she was)

Enemies, once discovered, were completely wiped out.

敌人一旦被发现,就被全部消灭。(they were)

If carefully done, the experiment will be successful. 如果仔细操作,试验就会成功。(it is)

额外收获

倒装结构

一、全部倒装是将句子中的谓语动词全部置于主语之前。此结构通常只用于一般现在时和一般过去时。常见的结构有:

(1) here、there、now、then、thus 等副词置于句首,谓语动词常用 be、come、go、lie、run 等并倒装。

There goes the bell. 铃声响了。

Then came the chairman. 然后主席就来了。

Here is your letter. 这是你的信。

(2)表示运动方向的副词或地点状语置于句首(in、out、down、there、here、off、over、away),谓语是表示运动的动词。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Out rushed a missile from under the bomber. 轰炸机底下飞出一枚导弹。

Ahead sat an old woman. 前面坐着一个老妪。

注意：上述全部倒装的句型结构的主语必须是名词，如果主语是人称代词，则不能全部倒装。

Here he comes. 他来了。

Away they went. 他们走了。

二、部分倒装是指将谓语的一部分（如助动词或情态动词）倒装至主语之前。如果句中的谓语没有助动词或情态动词，则需添加助动词 do、does 或 did 等，并将其置于主语之前。

（1）句首为否定或半否定的词语，如 no，not，never，seldom，little，hardly，at no time，in no way，not until 等。

By no means is he a good teacher. 他绝不是个好老师。

Never have I seen such a performance. 我从未看过这样的表演。

Never has the world seen so many nations cooperating in such a worthy venture.

世界上从未见过如此多的国家在这样有价值的商业项目上合作。

Little does he care for my words. 他一点都不在乎我的话。

Never will we forget the past. 我们绝对不会忘记过去。

Scarcely has a foreigner set foot in the United States before they ask him what he thinks of the country. 几乎每一个外国人踏入美国之前，他们都会问他对这个国家的看法。

Nowhere will you find the answer to this question. 你在任何地方都找不到这个问题的答案。

On no account will the manager tolerate rudeness from his employees. 经理绝不容忍雇员的无礼。

Under no circumstances will he agree with you. 无论如何他都不会同意你的。

At no time will China be the first to use nuclear weapons. 中国在任何时候都不首先使用核武器。

Not only did he refuse the gift，he also severely criticized the sender.

他不仅拒绝了礼品，还严厉批评了送礼人。

Hardly had she gone out when a student came to visit her. 她刚要出门就有个学生来访。

No sooner had she gone out than a student came to visit her. 她刚出门，就有个学生来访。

Not until the child fell asleep did the mother leave the room. 直到孩子入睡母亲才离开那个房间。

（当 Not until 引出主从复合句，主句倒装，从句不倒装。）

注意：如果否定词不在句首，句子不倒装。

I have never seen such a performance. 我从未见过这样的表演。

The mother didn't leave the room until the child fell asleep. 直到孩子睡着母亲才离开房间。

（2）表示“也”、“也不”的句子要部分倒装。

Tom can speak French. So can Jack. 汤姆会讲法语，杰克也会。

If you won't go，neither will I. 如果你不走，那我也不走。

He had no friends nor acquaintances，nor did he make any.

他没有朋友也没有熟人，他也不交朋友。

（3）“only＋状语”放在句首时，句子需要倒装。

Only in this way，can you learn English well. 只有用这种方法，你才能学好英语。

Only by working hard can you achieve your goal. 只有努力，你才能达到你的目标。

Only after being asked three times did he come to the meeting. 被邀请三次之后，他才到会。

Only when he is seriously ill，does he ever stay in bed. 只有非常严重的病，他才会卧床休息。

（4）as＋*adj.* /*adv.* 以及 to such a degree，to such an extent，to such a point 放在句首，表示程度，句子要倒装。

So frightened was he that he did not dare to move an inch. 他那么害怕，以至于寸步不动。

So diligently does he work that he often forgets to eat and sleep.

他工作如此勤奋，常常废寝忘食。

So much does he worry about his financial position that he can't sleep at night.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

他是那么担心他的财务状况，以至于夜不能眠。

To such an extent did his health deteriorate that he was forced to retire.

他的健康状况恶化得如此快，使得他被迫退休。

(5)在某些表示祝愿的句型中：

May you all be happy! 愿你们都快乐！

Long live the People's Republic of China! 中华人民共和国万岁！

May you succeed! 祝你成功！

May the friendship between us last forever! 愿我们两人的友谊长存！

(6)在虚拟语气条件句中从句谓语动词有 were、had、should 等词，可将 if 省略，把 were、had、should 移到主语之前，采取部分倒装。

Had he not been promoted, he would never have remained with the company. (=If he had not been promoted,...)如果他没有得到提拔，他绝不会留在公司里。

Should you change your mind, no one would blame you. 你要是改变主意的话，没有人会责怪你。

Were I you, I would try it again. 如果我是你的话，我会再试一把。

Were he to leave today, he would get there by Monday. 如果他今天离开，他将在周一到那儿。

Had I known what was going to happen, I would never have done such a thing.

如果我知道将会发生这样的事，我绝不会做那样的事。

(7)由 as 或 though 引导的让步状语从句有时也用倒装句，即把表语或部分谓语提前。

Patient though/as he was, he was unwilling to wait three hours.

他虽有耐心，但也不愿意等三个小时。

Child as/though he was, he had a good command of English.

他虽然是个孩子，但已经掌握了英语。

Try as he might, he couldn't open the box. 不管他想什么办法，都没法打开那个箱子。

Much as I like it, I will not buy it. 尽管我喜欢它，但我不会买。

Strange as it may seem, it's true. 尽管它看上去很奇怪，但这是真的。

(8)由 be 引起的倒装句表示让步，并带有虚拟语气的结构特点，即 be 用原形。

The business of each day, be it selling goods or shipping them, went quite smoothly.

(be it selling...=whether it may be selling...)

每天的生意，无论是售货还是运货，都进行得很顺利。

Be it so humble, there is no place like home.

(be it so humble=However humble it may be,...)

金窝银窝，不如自己的草窝。

(9)当"not a/many a+名词"位于句首时，要用倒装语序。

Not a word did he say at the meeting. 会上他一句话也没说。

Many a time has the manager emphasized this point. 经理多次强调这一点。

(10)强调表语

Worst of all were the humiliations. 最糟糕的是丢面子。

Such is the case. 情况就是这样。

(11)强调宾语

Still greater contributions should we make to our socialist construction.

为了社会主义建设，我们应该做出更多的贡献。

Useful chemical fertilizer can we make from the waste liquid.

我们能从这种废液中生产有用的化肥。

(12)often、many a time 等表示频度的状语置于句首

Often did they think of going there, but they never had a chance.

他们常常考虑去那里，但他们从来没有机会。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 6 Smash-and-grab

本节重点和难点

- "过去进行时"的用法
- "过去完成时行时"的用法
- 独立主格结构
- as 引导时间状语从句

本课词汇

smash-and-grab ['smæʃən'græb] *n.* 砸橱窗抢劫

arcade [ɑː'keid] *n.* 拱廊街道(两旁设商店)

Piccadilly [pikə'dili](地名)皮卡迪利大街

jewellery ['dʒuːəlri] *n.* 珠宝

admire [əd'maiə] *vt.* 欣赏,羡慕,敬仰

【用法】 admire 后接名词,不可接 that 从句。如可以说:I admire his learning.(我钦佩他的博学。)不可说:I admire that he is learned. admire 可后接 sb. for sth.,故上句可改写为:I admire him for his learning. 意思不变。admire to do sth. 想做某事。

window display 橱窗陈列品

necklace ['neklis] *n.* 项链,项圈

ring [riŋ] *n.* 戒指

background ['bækgraund] *n.* 背景

【词组】 drive/push/put/throw into the background 推到幕后,置于次要的地位/keep/remain/in the background 暗中,背地里,在幕后

velvet ['velvit] *n.* 天鹅绒

headlight ['hedlait] *n.* 前灯

blare [bleə] *vi.* 发出喇叭声

roar [rɔː] *v.* 吼叫,咆哮

staff [stɑːf] *n.* 全体职工,全体人员;参谋部;杠,棒 *vt.* 配备工作人员

【词组】 keep/have the staff in one's own hand 拥有财产;大权在握

【用法】 staff 作主语时,若看作整体,用单数谓语;若看作个体,谓语用复数。

raid [reid] *n.* 袭击,搜查

scramble ['skræmbəl] *vi.* 爬

fantastic [fæn'tæstik] *adj.* 大得难以置信的

ashtray ['æʃtrei] *n.* 烟灰缸

课文详解

1. Smash-and-grab

【译文】 砸橱窗抢劫。

【词汇】 **smash-and-grab** 是个比较特殊的构词法:由两个动词构成。

【词组】 **smash world record** 打破世界记录

smash hope 某人的希望破灭

smash the drug ring 粉碎贩毒集团

2. At this time of the morning, the arcade was almost empty.

【译文】 在早晨这个时候,拱廊街上几乎空无一人。

www.TopSage.com

【用法】empty 在这里作"空旷的"。易与此词混淆的形容词是 vacant。empty 指内无一人或一物，可以用来形容一切常见的容器或建筑物，可引申为"空荡荡的"、"空洞的"等。vacant 指未被占用的或暂时空缺的，是较正式用语，可引申为"空虚的"、"心不在焉的"、"无表情的"、"愚蠢的"等。

【词组】**at this time of the morning** 可以派生出很多类似的词组：

at this time last Christmas; at that time of next month sometime

3. Diamond necklaces and rings had been beautifully arranged on a background of black velvet.

【译文】*钻石项链、戒指漂亮地陈列在黑色丝绒上面。*

【词汇】**background** *n.* 背景

background music 背景音乐；background information 背景资料

【典型范例】children from disadvantaged backgrounds 来自贫困家庭的孩子

American literature and American cultural backgrounds 美国文学和文化背景

Abraham Lincoln came from an impoverished background. 亚伯拉罕·林肯出身贫寒。

velvet *n.* 天鹅绒

【词组】**with an iron hand in a velvet glove** 外柔内刚

ring *n.* 环，圈：

ear ring, nose ring, lip ring

4. After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr. Taylor went back into his shop.

【译文】*泰勒先生站在橱窗外凝神欣赏了几分钟就回到了店里。*

【词组】**gaze at** 凝视，注视

【典型范例】gaze at the fire 盯着炉火

stand high and gaze far 站得高看得远

【联想】补充几种"看"的英文表达：

gape at 目瞪口呆

glare at 怒视

stare at 盯着某人看

5. The silence was broken when a large car, with its headlights on and its horn blaring, roared down the arcade.

【译文】*宁静突然被打破，一辆大轿车亮着前灯，响着喇叭，呼啸着冲进了拱廊街。*

【用法】(1) break the silence 打破宁静。

(2) with its headlights on and its horn blaring 为介词 with 引导的独立主格结构，在句中作方式或伴随状况状语。its headlights 和 its horn 为 on 和 blaring 的逻辑主语。

独立主格一般由"with (without)＋名词(或代词宾语)＋分词"构成，在句子中作状语：

with ＋*n.* ＋ *adv*: with its headlights on

with ＋*n.* ＋ doing: with its horn blaring

with ＋*n.* ＋介词短语: with black stockings over faces

with ＋*n.* ＋过去分词: with tape played

With John away, we've got more room. 约翰不在，我们的空间大多了。

With three people ill, we'll have to close the office this morning.

三个人病了，我们今天上午不得不关门。

She returned to the shop the following morning, with a handbag in one hand.

第二天早晨，她回到了店里，手里提着一个手提包。

(3) 主句为 The silence was suddenly broken, when 引导的时间状语从句 with its headlights on and its horn blaring 为独立主格结构作状语。

【词汇】**break** *v.* 打破

【词组】break the ice 打破僵局；break the silence 打破沉默；law-breaker 违法者；a day breaks 天亮了

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

6. It came to a stop just outside the jeweller's.

【译文】它在珠宝店门口停了下来。

【词组】jewellery shop 还可以说 the jeweler's 或 the jeweller's。

用有关人的身份的名词表示商店或办公场所，常省去名词所有格所修饰的名词。

the baker's 面包店/the hairdresser's 理发店/the butcher's 肉店/the greengrocer's 蔬菜水果店/the photographer's 照相馆/the stationer's 文具店/the doctor's 医院/the dentist's 牙科诊所

用人名或表示人的名词的所有格来表示某人的家，常省去名词所有格所修饰的名词。

See you at Jack's tomorrow. 明天在杰克家见你。

I'm going to my uncle's. 我要到我叔叔家去。

表示某些著名的建筑物、医院、学校等，也常省去名词所有格所修饰的名词。

Have you been to St. Paul's(St. Paul's Cathedral)? 你到过圣保罗大教堂吗？

7. He and his staff began throwing furniture out of the window.

【译文】他与店员开始往窗外扔家具。

【词汇】**staff** *n.* 全体工作人员

【联想】well-staffed 人手充足的；under-staffed 人手不够的；over-staffed 人浮于事的

8. One of the thieves was struck by a heavy statue, but he was too busy helping himself to diamonds to notice any pain.

【译文】一个窃贼被一尊很重的雕像击中，但由于他忙着抢钻石首饰，竟连疼痛都顾不上了。

【词组】help oneself/sb. to sth.

① 随便吃(招待客人用语)：

If you want another drink, just help yourself. 你要是想再喝一杯就请自便。

Can I help you to some salad? 我给你来点色拉好吗？

② 随意拿取，偷窃：

He's been helping himself to the money in the drawer. 他一直在偷抽屉里的钱。(或者说"自作主张地"拿)

9. The raid was all over in three minutes, for the men scrambled back into the car and it moved off at a fantastic speed.

【译文】这场抢劫只持续了三分钟，因为窃贼争先恐后地爬上轿车，以惊人的速度开跑了。

【词汇】**scramble** *v.* 手脚并用地攀登，匍匐前进(引申为"争夺")

fantastic *adj.* 极大的，极好的；奇特的，古怪的，莫名其妙的，幻想出的

【典型范例】at a fantastic speed 以极快的速度；fantastic sums of money 一大笔钱

a fantastic view of the city from the mountain top 从山顶上看到的这座城市的极美妙的景色

She's really a fantastic girl! 她的确是个极出色的女孩！

Many dreams are fantastic. 许多梦都是古里古怪的。

【联想】**incredible** *adj.* 难以置信的，好极了的

For such a tiny woman she had an incredible appetite.

对这样一个瘦小的女人来说，她的胃口简直大得惊人。

marvelous *adj.* 好极了的，精彩的

What marvelous weather! 多好的天气！

It was a marvelous performance. 这是一场非常精彩的演出。

smashing *adj.* (口语)非常好的

What a smashing idea! 绝妙的主意！

a smashing holiday 一个美妙的假日

10. Just as it was leaving, Mr. Taylor rushed out and ran after it throwing ash trays and vases, but it was impossible to stop the thieves.

【译文】就在轿车离开的时候，泰勒先生从店里冲了出来，跟在车后追赶，一边还向汽车扔烟灰缸、

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

花瓶，但他已无法抓住那些贼了。

【分析】并列复合句。首先由 but 连接两个并列句。在第一个并列分句中，含有一个由 as 引导的时间状语从句。Just as it was leaving...进行时表将来，表示根据主观计划或安排将要发生的动作。这种进行时比较生动，给人一种期待感。

【典型例句】When are you starting? 你什么时候动身？

What are you doing tomorrow? 你打算明天做什么？

We are having lunch with the Smiths. 我们准备和史密斯一家吃午饭。

额外收获

和"四肢五官"有关的短语表达：

all thumbs 笨拙

foot the bill 付账

zip your mouth 闭嘴

to cost someone an arm and a leg 花钱过于大方，大出血

give me a hand 帮我一下忙

to be all ears 洗耳恭听

cast sheep's eyes 抛媚眼，暗送秋波

to pull one's leg 逗别人，开别人玩笑

to get cold feet 紧张得手脚冰冷

to give sb. cold shoulder 冷淡地对待……

to play it by ear 原指不看谱子演奏，现指随机应变

看一组集合名词：

(1) committee, council, crew, crowd, family, gang, government, group, mob, staff, team, union, audience 等，在意义上是复数，但在语法形式上是单数，这类名词作主语的主谓一致问题往往遵循"语法一致"或"意义一致"原则。例如：

The present government is trying to control inflation. 现政府正在试图控制通货膨胀。

The school staff are expected to supervise school meals. 学校的教职员应监督学校的伙食。

The audience was/were enthusiastic on the opening night of the play.

那出戏首次公演之夜观众非常热情。

The committee has/have decided to dismiss him. 委员会已经决定辞退他。

(2)通常作复数的集体名词，包括 police, people, cattle, militia, vermin 等，这些集体名词通常用作复数。例如：

The British police have only very limited powers. 英国的警察拥有非常有限的权力。

The militia were called out to guard the borderland. 召集民兵保卫边疆。

It seems the cattle on the sides of the dikes were the only living creatures in these desolate surroundings. 堤岸边上的牲口似乎是这个荒凉的环境中唯一的生物。

(3)常作不可数名词的集体名词通常作不可数名词的集体名词，包括 poultry, foliage, machinery, equipment, furniture, merchandise 等，这类名词后的动词用单数形式。例如：

Poultry is expensive at this time of year. 家禽肉在一年的这个时候是很贵的。

That green foliage was restful. 绿叶是宁静的。

The merchandise has arrived undamaged. 货物完好无损地运到了。

All the machinery in the factory is made in China. 工厂里所有的机器都是中国制造的。

The suite of furniture he bought was of contemporary style. 他买的一套家具是现代风格的。

The equipment of the photographic studio was expensive. 摄影室的设备太昂贵了。

以表示数量概念的名词词组作主语的主谓一致问题分两类：

一类是确定数量，如 two years, five seconds, three kilos 等，

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

另一类是不确定数量，如 all of…，some of…，none of…等。

如果用这类表示数量概念的名词词组作主语，会产生主谓一致问题。

① 以表示确定数量的名词词组作主语

当主语为表示确定数量的名词词组时，如果数量概念被看作一个整体，动词用单数，如果被看作组成该数量的个体，动词用复数。

The treasurer considered that twenty dollars was not too much to ask.

财务主管认为 20 美元不是过分的要求。

"Two months is too short a time," General manager warned. "we must hurry up."

"两个月是很短的时间，"总经理警告，"我们必须抓紧。"

A total of 50,000 new bicycles was registered in the year.

总共有 5 万辆新自行车注册登记。

如果作主语的名词词组是由"分数/百分数＋of"词组构成，其动词形式取决于 of 词组中名词的类别。

Two-thirds of the people present is against the plan. 目前三分之二的人们反对这个计划。

Over twenty percent of the city was destroyed in the war. 超过 20%的人口在战争中被屠杀。

② 以表示不确定数量的名词词组作主语

如果主语由"a portion of, a series of, a pile of, a panel of＋名词"或由"a kind/sort/type of, this kind/sort/type of ＋名词"构成，谓语动词通常用单数。如：

A panel of us has decided to hire a boat and travel through Holland by canal.

我们一组人决定租条船，从运河穿越荷兰。

A pile of apple logs was set beside the hearth. 一堆苹果原木木堆在壁炉边。

A portion of reports is deceiving. 报告的一部分是虚假的。

如果主语是由"many a＋名词"或"more than one＋名词"构成，随后的动词遵循"语法一致"原则，用单数。如：

Many a person in these circumstances has hoped for a long break.

在这种情况下，许多人希望长期休假。

More than one student has failed the exam. 不止一个学生没通过考试。

all of, some of, none of, half of, most of, lots of, loads of, plenty of 等表示非确定数量的名词词组，谓语动词的单、复数形式根据 of 词组中名词类别而定。

Most of the money was recovered by Deputy Player.

大部分的钱已经被普莱耶警官找回来了。

All of the cargo was lost. 所有的货物都遗失了。

Some of the books were badly torn. 一些书被撕烂了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 7 Mutilated ladies

本节重点和难点

- 由名词派生的形容词及其后缀
- 插入语的用法
- whose 引导的定语从句
- 动词不定式作不定代词的后置定语

本课词汇

mutilate ['mju:tɪleɪt] *vt.* 使残废，毁伤，切断（手，足等）；破坏，使残缺不全

chew [tʃu:] *vt.* 嚼，咀嚼，嚼碎 *vi.* 咀嚼；深思，细想 *n.* 吃，嚼

【用法】chew 作"深思，细想"解时与 over 或 upon 连用。

【词组】chew the cud 反刍；深思，细想/chew the fat 聊天/chew the rag [英国英语]发牢骚，抱怨；[美国英语]聊天

fiancé [fi'ɑnseɪ, 'fiən'sei] *n.* 未婚夫

microwave ['maikrəuweiv] *n.* 微波；微波炉

oven ['ʌvən] *n.* 烤炉，烤箱

【词组】hot from the oven 才出炉的，才出笼的/in the same oven 处于相同的困境

safekeeping ['seif'ki:piŋ] *n.* 妥善保管

Newcastle ['nju:'kɑ:sl] *n.* 纽卡斯尔（英国港市）

identify [ai'dentifai] *v.* 鉴定，识别

spokeswoman ['spəuks'wumən] *n.* 女发言人

课文详解

1. Fortunately for them, the Bank of England has a team called Mutilated Ladies which deals with claims from people who fed their money to a machine or to their dog.

【译文】对他们来说，值得庆幸的是英国银行有一个残钞鉴别组，负责处理那些把钱塞进机器或狗嘴的人提出的索赔要求。

【词汇】**mutilate** *vt.* 狭义上指人缺胳膊少腿，广义指一样物体因为其重要部分的缺失而外形受损：sb. is mutilated in the war

【典型范例】Many people were mutilated and maimed in the blast. 许多人在那次爆炸中受伤致残。

mutilated note/damaged note 残钞

【联想】**maim** *v.* 使残废，使受重伤：

He was maimed in a World War Ⅰ battle. 他在第一次世界大战的一次战斗中受伤致残。

disable *v.* 使无能为力，使残废：

a soldier disabled by leg wounds 一位腿部受伤的残废军人；the disabled 残疾人

cripple *v.* 使跛，使残废：

They have a crippled child. 他们有一个跛足的孩子。

lame *adj.* 跛的：

He is lame in the left leg. 他左腿是跛的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

handicapped *adj*. 残疾的：

handicapped people 残疾人

借代的修辞手法

Mutilated Ladies 字面意思是"缺胳膊少腿的女士"，为什么作者把它译成"残钞鉴别组"？所谓 Mutilated Ladies 就是指被毁坏的银行纸币。英国纸币上印有女皇的头像，而这个 Lady 自然指的就是 Queen。设想一下，如果纸币上的女皇外形受损，那么这张纸币必然是破损的。所以作者用受损的女皇指代整张破损纸币，而根据文章的内容，进而指代专门处理受损纸币的鉴别小组，这种修辞方式，叫做借代(Metonymy)。

如：In the least developed countries in Africa, all fur and feather are hunted for food. 在非洲一些最贫穷的国家中，鸟兽被滥捕滥猎，成为人们盘中之肴。用 fur and feather"动物身上的毛"来指代飞禽走兽，也是借代的典型用法，非常简洁，而且加上头韵的运用，语气连接流畅，语义表达优美。

通过上面几个例子大家对借代应该有了初步的了解，这里不妨再给举几个例子，大家可以细细品味：

Our hotel is short of hands. 我们宾馆缺少人手。(hands 这里是帮手的意思)

Wall has ears. 隔墙有耳。(ears 指那些偷听的人)

It will cost 30 yuan per head. 人均花费 30 元。(head 代表每个人)

Great minds think alike. 英雄所见略同。(great minds 伟大的脑子，用来指代伟大的人)

China is suffering brain drain. 中国饱受人才外流之苦。(brain 指代 talent 人才)

上面各句中的借代取人体各部分的特征(手的特征就是用来干活的，耳朵就是用来听东西的，大脑用来思维的，人才的才华都藏在大脑里)，使语言生动活泼，行文充满生趣。

【语汇精讲】 feed *vt*. 最常用的意思是"饲养，喂(动物或者婴儿)"，也可以引申为"照料植物"。作者把 dog 作为 feed 的宾语，我们不会有异议，而这里怎么把机器也作为 feed 的宾语呢？因为作者找出了他们的共性，洗衣机的翻盖好像动物的嘴巴，共用一个 feed，用得极其精当，妙不可言。同时这也是一种拟人拟物的修辞手法，给人一种形象的感觉，使动态更传神，令作者笔下生辉！除了机器之外，储蓄罐、自动售货机，公交车上的投币箱都可以成为 feed 的对象(feed the money box, feed the vendor 等等)，因为它们都有个像"口"的部分。

2. Dogs, it seems, love to chew up money!

【译文】 看起来，狗很喜欢咀嚼钱币！

【用法】 it seems 为插入语，为一种附加解释(或说明)方法。

【词汇】 **chew** *vt*. 咀嚼；嚼碎：

Always chew your food well before swallowing. 咽下食物之前要细细咀嚼。

He had a few chews but found the meat too tough to eat. 他咀嚼了几下发现这肉太硬，嚼不动。

【辨析】 bite, masticate, gnaw, nibble, munch：

He bit into the cake and began to chew. 他咬了一口蛋糕，开始嚼起来。

A snake will not bite you if you leave it alone. 如果你不去惹蛇，它就不会咬你。

Food should always be masticated thoroughly. 食物应该被充分咀嚼。

The dog gnawed(at)the bone. 那狗啃着骨头。

She gnawed her fingernails with anxiety. 她焦虑不安地咬着自己的指甲。

The boy was nibbling(at)a biscuit. 那男孩在一点一点咬着饼干。

The cattle munched their food. 牛使劲地嚼着饲料。

The child was munching the sweets happily. 那小孩高兴地猛嚼着糖果。

3. A recent case concerns Jane Butlin whose fiancé, John, runs a successful furniture business.

【译文】 最近的一个例子和简·巴特林有关，她的未婚夫约翰经营了一家生意兴隆的家具店。

【分析】 一个含有由 whose 引导的定语从句的复合句，whose 在从句中作定语，通常用于指人，但也可指物或动物。

【典型例句】 People whose dogs bite other people should keep them tied up. 主人应该把咬人的狗

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

拴起来。

My cat whose name is Ted is growing fast. 我的那只叫特德的猫长得很快。

特别要注意：a recent case concerns sb. 这种由结论过渡到具体例子的衔接性句子。

在新概念三册第四课也出现过这样的过渡性句子：…，as it did in the case of sb.。

如：There are many straight-A students in our school，as it did in the case of Mary，who is a top student in every subject.

There are many straight-A students in our school. A case concerns Mary who is a top student in every subject.

我们学校有很多三好学生，玛丽就是这么个例子，她每科都拿第一。

4. John had a very good day and put his wallet containing 3,000 into the microwave oven for safekeeping.

【译文】约翰那天的生意很好，他把一只装有3,000英镑的钱包放进微波炉内保存。

【构词方法】microwave 微波 micro-：very small 极小的

【联想】microsoft 微软；microphone 麦克风；microscope 显微镜；microeconomy 微观经济；microshake 微震

mini-：小的，短的，小型的：minibus 小型公共汽车；miniskirt 超短裙，迷你裙

macro-：大，宏大规模：macroeconomic(s)宏观经济学

5. Then he and Jane went horse-riding.

【译文】然后他和简一起去骑马。

【词汇】go horse-riding

这是我们熟悉的 go doing sth.（比如 go fishing，go swimming 等等）的变体，这里的 doing 是一个 *n.* +doing 的复合词。

【联想】出去骑自行车兜风 go bicycle-riding；去放风筝 go kite-flying；出去观光 go sight-seeing；只逛街不花钱 go window-shopping

6. Imagine thier dismay when they found a beautifully-cooked wallet and notes turned to ash!

【译文】可以想象他们发现一只煮得很好看的钱包、钞票已化成灰时的沮丧心情。

【词组】beautifully-cooked *adj.*

这个词组很好地表现出了当时那对准夫妻的心态。他们眼看着一天辛辛苦苦赚来的钱就这么付之东流了，心情应该是沮丧的，但从 beautifully-cooked 这个词里丝毫看不出沮丧，反倒有点轻松的意味。作者这里用了一个修辞手法——反语(irony)，反语除了能起讽刺作用以外，在这里更加表达了作者一种善意的幽默俏皮，营造轻松活泼的气氛。类似于这样的反语我们后面的一篇课文也有一例：

某人被海关怀疑藏有未经申报的物品，官员们把他拦下，双方折腾了很久才真相大白，他是冤枉的。在耽搁了那么长时间后，这个人匆匆忙忙地继续赶路，作者这样写道：hurry away with precious chalk marks on the baggage。其中 precious 一词也是反语，表现出那个被怀疑的人的那种乐观大度、风趣幽默，一场尴尬，一切不愉快，随着一个单词便烟消云散了。这种写法 52 课、58 课都有出现。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 8 A famous monastery

本节重点和难点

- 非限制性定语从句
- 动词不定式的被动语态
- 动词 prefer 的用法
- 遵循“就近原则”的结构

本课词汇

monastery ['mɔnəstri] *n.* 修道院
the Great St. Bernard Pass 圣伯纳德山隘
watchdog ['wɔtʃdɔg] *n.* 看家狗
rashly ['ræʃli] *adv.* 鲁莽地
enclosure [in'kləuʒə] *n.* 围栏，圈地
monk [mʌŋk] *n.* 修道士
privacy ['praivəsi] *n.* 独居，隐私
skier ['ski:ə] *n.* 滑雪者
Easter ['i:stə] *n.* 复活节

课文详解

1. The Great St. Bernard Pass connects Switzerland to Italy.

【译文】圣伯纳德山口连接着瑞士与意大利。

【用法】connect...to...把……与……连接起来。connect 通常指不紧密地“联系”，被联系的仍然保持自己的特性，但中间建立起某种相关联系，可用于具体事物或抽象概念，介词 to 也可换为 with。

【词汇】connect *vt.* 联系起来；connect A and B；connect A to/with B 把……和……联系起来

2. At 2,473 metres, it is the highest mountain pass in Europe.

【译文】海拔 2,473 米，它是欧洲最高的山口。

【用法】At...meters 表示海拔高度

如：At 1,980 meters, Heavenly Lake is the highest tourist attraction in China.

海拔 1980 米，长白山天池是中国最高的景点。

3. These friendly dogs, which were first brought from Asia, were used as watchdogs even in Roman times.

【译文】这些最先从亚洲引进的狗待人友好，早在罗马时代就给人当看门狗了。

【词汇】watchdog *n.* 看门狗；监督部门；a watchdog committee 监察委员会

4. Despite the new tunnel, there are still a few people who rashly attempt to cross the Pass on foot.

【译文】尽管修建了新的隧道，但仍有一些人冒险徒步跨越圣伯纳德山口。

【用法】attempt 试图。作动词表“试图”时，其后的动词可用动词不定式，也可用动名词形式，但动词不定式形式更常见。

试比较 there are still a few people who attempt to cross 与 a few people still attempt to cross，为什么作者选用前者？我们可以想象一下英国的民族特性，他们的举手投足之间总是那么有翩翩的绅士风度，讲话表达也带有不紧不慢的优雅气质。他们往往把 return 说成 get back，听上去不那么生硬，就好像他们讲到“因为”不喜欢用 because，而更多的用 for 一样；讲到“曾经”不爱用 once 而用 there was a

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

time when;讲到"很多人怎么怎么样"不用 many people do something,而更偏爱 there are countless people who...等等,所有这一切都给人一种娓娓道来的感觉。

【词汇】**rash** *adj.* 轻率的,草率的 *n.* 疹子;红疹

a rash decision 草率的决定; a rash promise 轻许的诺言

He has broken out in a rash. 他身上突然长满了疹子。

Children get various rashes in such illnesses as measles and chickenpox.

小孩得了像麻疹和水痘这类病时就会出现各种红疹。

He has a lot of spots on his arms and legs——is it a rash?

他胳膊腿上有很多红点,是皮疹吗?

【联想】shingles 带状疱疹

acne 痤疮;粉刺

itch 发痒;强烈欲望(引申)

If your skin itches,don't scratch it. 如果你皮肤发痒,别搔它。

He has an itch for power. 他有强烈的权力欲。

scabies 疥疮

Scabies causes a severe itch. 疥疮会引起奇痒。

5. As there are so many people about, the dogs have to be kept in a special enclosure.

【译文】由于来人太多,狗不得不被关在专门的围栏里。

【词汇】**enclose** *vt.* 用墙、篱笆等围住;将某物放入封套、信件中

和 surround 相比 enclose 专指用篱笆、栏杆围起来的,另外它还能指信件"随函附上"Enclosed,you will find...

【联想】close 关上;disclose 泄露;closet 壁橱;include 包括;exclude 不包括;clothes 衣服

6. The temperature drops to -30℃ and very few people attempt to cross the Pass.

【译文】气温下降到零下 30 度,试图翻越山口的人寥寥无几。

【用法】drop to 下降到,如:By the end of the semester,the students attendance dropped to 60%. 到学期末,学生的出勤率下降到百分之六十。

-30℃(零下 30 度)英文读成:thirty degrees below zero 或者 minus thirty degrees。

【词汇】**drop** *v.* 降

描述数量增减的常用动词:

增长:increase,go up,soar,climb,pick up,rise,ascend,leap,escalate,boost,swell,rocket,surge,boom,shoot up

减少:decrease,go down,plunge,deduce,dwindle,drop/fall by,subside,slope,plummet,curtail,fall,decline,shrink,descend,slump,lessen,diminish,ebb,abate

持平:level out,remain stable,stand/stay at,keep constant,the same balanced,even out

达到高峰:reach a peak/plateau/summit/zenith/pinnacle/ertex/acme/apex/culmination

大幅地:dramatically,considerably,sharply,steeply,significantly,tremendously,immensely,noticeably,rapidly,substantially,maximally,a great deal,far,much

逐渐地,平稳地:moderately,medium,gradually,continuously,smoothly,proportionally,correspondingly,somewhat,slightly,evenly

The number of ...dropped/went sharply down to...in 1999.

The number of...climbed/jumped/rose suddenly/went sharply up/soared to....

There was an evident/obvious/apparent increase in...from...to...

The number of... increased/rose steadily/gradually from...to...

There was a steady/gradual increase/rise in the number of...from...to...

There was a slight/slow increase/rise in the number of...from...to...

The number of...increased/rose/slightly/slowly.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. The monks prefer winter to summer for they have more privacy.

【译文】修道士们喜欢冬天，而不太喜欢夏天。因为在冬天，他们可以更多地过上无人打扰的生活。

【词组】prefer... to...

I much prefer dogs to cats. 比起猫，我更喜欢狗。

She prefers singing to acting. 她喜欢唱歌胜过喜欢表演。

prefer to do sth. rather than do sth.

I prefer to read rather than sit idle. 我宁愿读书也不愿闲坐着。

He preferred to stay at home rather than go with us. 他宁愿呆在家里，而不愿和我们一块去。

8. The only regular visitors to the monastery in winter are parties of skiers who go there at Christmas and Easter.

【译文】冬天唯一来修道院参观的是一批批滑雪者，他们在圣诞节或复活节到那儿去。

【用法】visitor 是参观者，如要表示“……地方的参观者”需要与介词 to 搭配，如：a foreign visitor to China. 一位来中国参观的外国客人。

party 在这里指“团体，一伙人”(a group of people)。

【文化背景】Easter 复活节

复活节是为了纪念耶稣被钉上十字架，三天后死而复活的基督教节日。据说 Easter 一词源于盎格鲁撒克逊民族神话中黎明女神的名字 Eostre，它的原意是指冬日逝去后，春天的太阳从东方升起，把新生命带回。由于该词喻意新生，于是被基督教教徒借用过来表示生命、光明、欢乐的恩赐者耶稣再次回到人间。按照习俗，复活节的时间是 3 月 21 日起月圆后的第一个星期日。如果月圆正值星期日，则要顺延至下一个星期日。历年复活节的实际日期最早可在 3 月 22 日，最晚则要到 4 月 25 日。根据各国不同的规定，人们都会或多或少休假几天。一般来说，大学都从复活节开始放春假，假期长的有三四周，短的也有一两周。过去，在多数西方国家里，复活节一般要举行盛大的宗教游行。游行者身穿长袍，手持十字架，赤足前进。他们打扮成基督教历史人物，唱着颂歌欢庆耶稣复活。如今节日游行已失去往日浓厚的宗教色彩。节日游行洋溢着喜庆的气氛，具有浓烈的民间特色和地方特色。在美国，游行队伍中既有身穿牛仔服踩高跷的小丑，也有活泼可爱的卡通人物米老鼠。在英国，游行多以介绍当地的历史和风土人情为主，游行者化装成为苏格兰风笛乐队以及皇宫卫士，吸引了众多的游客。复活节的到来还使人们纷纷换上新衣。过去基督教教徒会在节前去教堂行洗礼，然后穿上自己的新袍，庆祝基督的新生。穿戴一新的习俗保留至今，因为人们认为节日里不穿新衣是要倒运的。复活节期间，人们还喜欢彻底打扫自己的住处，表示新生活从此开始。

9. These young people, who love the peace of the mountains, always receive a warm welcome at St. Bernard's monastery.

【译文】这些热爱高山清静环境的年轻人总是会受到圣伯纳德修道院的热情欢迎。

【用法】Receive a warm welcome

在第三册中我们会学到，receive 的宾语不仅限于具体的实物，还可以是抽象的效果。因此接触了 receive a warm welcome，receive a rude reply，receive praise and abuse，receive a great deal of attention 等词组后，对于 receive 这个单词将会有更深刻的理解和更灵活的运用。

额外收获

关于本文背景介绍

瑞士是欧洲中部的一个小国家，与法国、德国、奥地利、意大利接壤。国家虽小，却有三种官方语言：German，French and Italian。瑞士境内多山，大约 60%的面积属于阿尔卑斯山区。

本文提到的圣伯纳德狗体形极大，大约 190 磅。它们是救生天使，穿行在白雪皑皑的阿尔卑斯山巅，营救在瑞士的阿尔卑斯山区迷路或失踪的人，以其传奇性的救护能力著名。当雪崩发生后，行人被困在雪地里，圣伯纳德狗就会出动，即使在 2、3 米深的厚雪中它们也能开出道来，所以营救身陷雪崩的登山者是再合适不过了。因此这种狗被瑞士人视为国宝。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 9 Flying cats

本节重点和难点

- 主语从句
- "越……越……"结构
- 动词不定式作后置定语
- life 作可数名词和不可数名词

本课词汇

fascinate ['fæsineit] *vt.* 使着迷,使感兴趣;惊呆 *vi.* 迷人,令人入神

affectionate [ə'fekʃənit] *adj.* 挚爱的,有深情的,充满柔情的

mysterious [mi'stiəriəs] *adj.* 难以理解的,神秘的;秘密的,无人知的

submissive [səb'misiv] *adj.* 服从的,顺从的;谦恭的

feline ['fi:lain] *adj.* 猫的 *n.* 猫科动物

independence [ˌindi'pendəns] *n.* 独立,自主

【用法】Independence Day(美国国庆,7月4日)前没有 the。

high-rise ['hairaiz] *adj.* 高层的

windowsill ['windəuˌsil] *n.* 窗台

paratrooper ['pærəˌtru:pə] *n.* 伞兵

squirrel ['skwirəl] *n.* 松鼠

air-resistance ['eə-ri'zistəns] *n.* 空气阻力

impact ['impækt] *n.* 撞击,冲击力,碰撞;印象,影响 [im'pækt] *v.* 压入,楔入;挤在一起;影响

【词组】give an impact to... 对……起冲击作用

课文详解

1. Cats never fails to fascinate human beings.

【译文】猫总能吸引人类。

【用法】(1)never fail to do 双重否定,表示肯定

never/not/hardly/no 等否定词+without

There is no fire without smoke. 无风不起浪。

It is not uncommon... 司空见惯的是……

It is not uncommon to see young lovers billing and cooing in the street.

年轻的恋人们在街上谈情说爱是司空见惯的。

It is not unusual that when a child has a problem, he often turns to his intimate friends for sympathy and advice, leaving his parents totally in the dark.

当一个孩子有了问题,他通常向亲密的朋友寻求帮助和建议,而将父母丢在一边。

(2) sth. fascinate sb. = sb. be interested in sth. = sb. be fond of sth. = sb. like sth. = sb. be crazy about sth.

fascinate 程度较 attract 更深一层。

2. They can be friendly and affectionate towards humans, but they lead mysterious lives of their own as well.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【译文】它们可以对人友好而充满柔情，但是它们又有自己神秘的生活方式。

【词汇】**affectionate** *adj*. 亲切的，充满深情的

an affectionate couple 恩爱的一对；an affectionate hug 亲切的拥抱

affection 挚爱，慈爱：He has a deep affection for his daughter. 他非常疼爱她的女儿。

【词根】fect-做 effect *n*. 效果，影响；affect *vt*. 影响；affected *adj*. 做作的；affectation *n*. 装腔作势；defect *n*. 缺点；perfect *adj*. 完美的

【联想】"喜欢和爱"的词：

loving：表示爱的

She is very loving towards the children. 她对孩子十分慈爱。

affectionate：柔情的；挚爱的

He received an affectionate letter from his sister. 他收到姐姐一封充满挚爱的信。

fond：喜欢的；溺爱的

Her anxiety is typical of the fond mother who is afraid to lose her son.

她整天害怕失去自己的儿子，这种忧虑正是溺爱儿女的母亲的典型表现。

devoted：忠诚的；关切的

She is a devoted wife and mother. 她是位贤妻良母。

He is devoted to his family and work. 他忠于自己的家庭和事业。

adoring：崇拜的；爱慕的

She looked at him with adoring eyes. 她用爱慕的目光看着他。

passionate：激昂的；热情的；热烈的

He is said to have been a passionate lover. 据说他是个热烈的情人。

His letters to her were very passionate. 他给她的信热情洋溢。

partial：偏爱的；偏袒的；偏心的

I am partial to a bit of cheese; can I have some more, please?

我喜欢吃奶酪；还可以再给我点吗？

Stop being so partial; we know you like them better than us.

别这样偏心了，我们知道你喜欢他们多于我们。

3. They never become submissive like dogs and horses.

【译文】它们从不像狗和马一样那么顺从。

【用法】A is submissive to B = A submit to B：A 对 B 顺从

词根 miss 投，送：missile *n*. 导弹；mission *n*. 使命，使节团；dismiss 解散

正因为 mit 本意是传送，submit 本意指由下往上传，上交

submit the essay to the professor 把论文交给教授

4. Most cats remain suspicious of humans all their lives.

【译文】大多数猫都终生对人存有戒心。

【用法】suspicious 猜疑的；多疑的。作补语用时，后面常接 of，如：He became suspicious of her. 他开始对她起了疑心。suspicious 既表示"猜疑的"又表示"被猜疑的"。

【词汇】**remain** *v*. 保持不变（后面可以直接跟形容词、名词、分词作表语）

Despite the danger, she remained calm. 尽管面临危险，她仍保持冷静。

She remained a widow for the rest of her life. 丈夫去世后她一直没有再嫁人。

The situation remains unchanged. 形势一直没有改变。

He remained standing for a good hour. 他足足站了一个小时。

【句型】定语从句与同位语从句的区别

同位语从句与其先行词之间是解释与被解释的关系；而定语从句与其先行词之间是修饰与被修饰的关系。比较：

The rumor (that) he spread everywhere turned out to be not true.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

他到处传播的谣言结果证明是错的。（定语从句）

The rumor that Tom was a thief turned out to be not true.

传言说汤姆是个小偷，结果证明是错的。（同位语从句）

5. Apparently, there is a good deal of truth in this idea.

【译文】显然，这种说法里面包含着很多真实性。

【用法】There is an element of truth in this idea. 你说的有那么点道理。

There is little truth in what you say. 你说的没什么道理。

6. A cat's ability to survive falls is based on fact.

【译文】猫在跌落时能够大难不死是有事实作为依据的。

【词汇】(1)base sth. on 以……为某事根据，如：He based himself on the interests of the people. 他凡事从人民的利益出发。

(2) survive

survive earthquake 在地震中幸存

She survived her husband by 3 years. 她比丈夫多活三年。

切记：survive 是及物动词，后面不要受中文影响加 from。

有些动词表面看要加介词，实际上不用

survive... sb. 幸免
interview sb. 会见
divorce sb. 与……离婚
contact 联系

The little girl survive the flood. 小女孩在洪水中幸存下来。

I will marry my daughter to him. 我将把女儿嫁给他。

【用法】动词不定式作定语，与所修饰的名词有三种逻辑关系：

1)同位关系

All our attempts to rescue the child from drowning were in vain.

我们所有拯救这个孩子被淹没的企图都是徒然的。

常见的名词有：ability, agreement, ambition, anxiety, arrangement, attempt, claim, decision, determination, eagerness, failure, hope, inclination, need, plan, promise, refusal, resolution, tendency, wish, reluctance, willingness

2)主谓关系

He is the best man to do the job. 他是做这项工作的最佳人选。

The train to arrive is from New York. 就要到达的火车是从纽约开来的。

3)动宾关系

I have a letter to write. 我有封信要写。

I bought a magazine for her to read on plane. 我买了一本杂志给她在飞机上看。

在这种情况下，如果动词不定式的动词是不及物的，后面就应该加上适当的介词。

I need a pen to write with. (to write with a pen)我需要用笔写。

比如下文就有：there are plenty of high-rise windowsills to fall from 有许多高层建筑的窗台板掉下来。

请注意，下列名词只能用 to do 作定语：

right 权力

I have the right to vote.

ability 能力

He has the ability to speak Spanish.

effort 努力

In his effort to run business he earns good money.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

dream 梦

I have a dream to become an artist.

7. All these cats had one experience in common: they had fallen off high buildings, yet only eight of them died from shock or injuries.

【译文】所有这些猫都有一个共同的经历：它们都曾从高层建筑上摔下来过，但只有其中的八只猫死于震荡或跌伤。

【用法】(1)in common 共同的，公有的。形容词短语，常后置修饰名词，如：

The two have nothing in common. 两者没有共同之处。

have...in common 中间可以加修饰程度：

The two brothers have little in common. 这兄弟俩没有多少共同之处。

We had a great deal in common. 我们有很多共同之处。

也可以像课文中那样加具体内容：

We have one hobby in common. 我们有一个共同的爱好。

(2)die from 死于(某种原因，不包括疾病、过度悲伤等)：The soldier died from a wound in the chest. 那个士兵因胸部受伤而死。

die of 死于(疾病，饥饿，过度悲伤等)：Many people died of cancer. 很多人死于癌症。

(3)可模仿句型 be the ideal...for, have no shortage of

NCE is the ideal material for English studies for there is no shortage of classic sentences and structures.《新概念英语》是学习英语的理想教材，因为它不缺少经典句型和结构。

8. 'Cats behave like well-trained paratroopers,' a doctor said.

【译文】"猫就像训练有素的跳伞队员，"一位医生说。

9. This increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact when they hit the ground.

【译文】这样就加大了空气阻力，并减小了它们着地时冲击力带来的震荡。

【用法】注意推敲 hit the ground 和 reach the ground 的不同。

额外收获

关于猫的一些用语：

Has the cat got your tongue? 你哑了吗？

The cat is out of the bag. 事情穿帮了。

When the cat is away, the mice will play. 山中无老虎，猴子称霸王。

顺便谈谈中西成语差异：

语言是表达思想的，而思想是客观的反映，人类有许多共同的生活经验，共同感受，所以不同的文化有不少的重合处(cultural overlaps)。在英汉两种语言中，同一名词往往有相同的内涵意义或联想意义。如：雪都比喻白，狐狸都比喻狡猾，猴子都比喻机灵。但由于受到客观条件的制约(如生产劳动等)，不同的民族往往用不同的名词来比喻表达同一思想。例如：汉语用"山中无老虎，猴子称霸王"英语用"In the land of blind, the one-eyed man is king"。汉语说"体壮如牛"，英语说" as strong as a horse"。汉语表示一个人大口喝水常说"牛饮"，而英美人却说"drink like a fish"。类似的成语还有：

胆小如鼠	as timid as a rabbit
如鱼得水	like a duck to water
近朱者赤，近墨者黑	who keeps company with the wolf will learn to howl
多如牛毛	as plentiful as blackberries
蠢得像猪	as stupid as a goose
害群之马	black horse
画蛇添足	paint the lily
热锅上的蚂蚁	like a cat on a hot tin roof
湿得像落汤鸡	as wet as a drowned rat

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

瘦得像猴子	as thin as a shadow
一丘之貉	birds of a feather
无风不起浪	no smoke without fire
挂羊头卖狗肉	cry up wine and sell vinegar
对牛弹琴	cast pearls before swine
爱屋及乌	love me, love my dog.

英汉成语的差异可以概括为以下几个方面的不同。

1. 比喻上的不同

中国人常常用"杀鸡取卵"来比喻一个人贪心过甚，以至于一无所得。而英语则用"kill the goose that lays golden eggs"来表达这个意思。还有如：

瓮中之鳖	like a rat in a hole
无风不起浪	no smoke without fire

—It's lunch time. Do you have anything to eat?

(现在到吃中饭的时了，你有什么东西可吃的？)

—only half a sandwich. (只有半个三明治。)

—That won't be enough. You eat like a bird, but I eat like a horse.

(那不够的，你的饭量很小，而我的饭量很大。)

2. 地域文化的不同

中国人常常用"雨后春笋"来形容事物的迅速发展和大量涌现。英语则用"just like mushrooms"(和蘑菇一样众多)来形容同样的意思。竹子不是英国土生土长的植物，甚至连"bamboo"(竹)这个词也是引进的外来词。还有，中国人会用"炎炎夏日"来形容酷暑难当，"夏天"常与酷暑炎热的天气联系在一起，而英国人则只会把夏天与温和的天气联系在一起。

3. 风俗习惯上的不同

狗对于英国人来说，既可以用来看门或打猎，也可以视作人的伴侣和爱物。所以英国人对狗有好感，常用来比喻人的生活，如"love me, love my dog"，而汉语成语是"爱屋及乌"。

而中国民间虽有养狗的习惯，但一般在心理上却厌恶鄙视这种动物，常用来形容坏人坏事。如：狗嘴里吐不出象牙。A filthy mouth can't utter decent words.

4. 历史来源的不同

"忽冷忽热"这个汉语成语没有深层次意义上的历史来源，而相对应的英语成语"blow hot and cold"是出自《伊索寓言》，讲一个人冬夜在山林里迷路了，碰到山林小神(satyr)领他回自己的小屋。路上这人不断呵气，山林小神问他干什么，他说手冻麻木了，呵气取暖。到家后，山林小神给他端来一碗热气腾腾的粥，那人端到嘴边又吹气。山林小神问他又干什么，他回答说粥很烫，想把粥吹凉。山林小神对他说："你嘴里既吹热又吹冷(blow hot and cold with the same breath)，这样的人我不接待，你走吧。"寓言原喻"避免与性情模棱两可的人交往"，现意："动摇不定，反复无常"。

5. 宗教信仰的不同

中国人信仰佛教，西方人信仰基督教。所以汉语成语"谋事在人，成事在天"在英语中的说法是"Man propose, God dispose."

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 10 The loss of the Titanic

本节重点和难点

- 过去完成时表示"过去的过去"
- "so+形容词或副词+that 从句"句型
- from 后接副词或前置词
- "to one's+表示感情的名词"构成的短语

本课词汇

Southampton [sauθ'æmptən](地名)南安普敦

colossal [kə'lɔsl] *adj.* 巨大的

watertight ['wɔːtətait] *adj.* 不漏水的,不透水的

compartment [kəm'pɑːtmənt] *n.* 密封舱

flood [flʌd] *v.* 淹没,涌到

float [fləut] *v.* (使)漂浮

tragic ['trædʒik] *adj.* 悲惨的

liner ['lainə] *n.* 邮轮,班船;班机

voyage ['vɔiidʒ] *n.* 航海,航程 *v.* 航海,航行

iceberg ['aisbəːg] *n.* 冰山

lookout ['lukaut] *n.* 瞭望员

collision [kə'liʒən] *n.* 碰撞,冲突

【词组】come into collision with 和……相撞,冲突,抵触

narrowly ['nærəuli] *adv.* 勉强地,仅仅

miss [mis] *v.* 错过,未赶上;惦念,想念;逃脱,遗漏,省掉

【词组】give sb. a miss 故意避开某人/miss out (on) sth. 省掉,遗漏,未得到……,没有成功/near miss 虽不命中目标但近得足够毁坏目标/not miss much 保持警惕

【用法】miss 作"错过……机会","差点没有……"解,后面接动名词作宾语,不接不定式。如:I'm sorry I missed seeing you while in Beijing. 很遗憾在北京时我没有见到你。

slight [slait] *adj.* 轻微的,微小的;纤细的,瘦弱的

【词组】not in the slightest 一点儿也不,完全不

trembling ['trembliŋ] *adj.* 震颤的

faint [feint] *adj.* 微弱的,眩晕的 *vi.* 眩晕,昏倒

【用法】faint 作"眩晕的"解时,只作表语。

horror ['hɔrə] *n.* 恐惧,战栗

abandon[ə'bændən] *vt.* 放弃;丢弃,离弃;抛弃

【词组】abandon oneself to 听任于/with abandon 尽情地;任意地

【用法】abandon 作"放弃"解时,宾语通常是表示事物的名词;作"抛弃"解时,宾语通常是表示人、场所或地点的名词。

plunge (into) [plʌndʒ] *vi.* 跳入,投入

lifeboat ['laifbəut]*n.* 救生船

课文详解

1. At that time, however, she was not only the largest ship that had ever been built, but was regarded as unsinkable, for she had sixteen watertight compartments.

【译文】当时,这艘船不仅是造船史上建造的最大的一艘船,而且也被认为是不会沉没的,因为她有 16 个密封舱。

【用法】regard...as 表示"把……看作,把……认为是";as 后面既可以跟名词,又可以跟形容词作宾语补语。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

表示大的词汇：colossal，tremendous，giant，titanic，gigantic，immense。

ever *adv.* 永远，始终，不断地重复。往往放在最高级或序数词后面，翻译成"有史以来，史无前例"等。

This is the first international meeting that has ever been held in an Asian country.

这是有史以来第一次在亚洲国家举行的国际性会议。

TopSage.com

【词汇】watertight *adj.* 不漏水的

tight 义为 not allowing the passage of，所以密封瓶是 airtight bottle。

【联想】 compartment *n.* 密封舱，火车车厢内的分隔间

part-分开，部分：depart *v.* 离开，死；impartial *adj.* 公平的；participate *vt.* 参加；participant *n.* 参加者；particle *n.* 分子，微粒；counterpart *n.* 相对的人(或物)

2. Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float.

【译文】 即使有两个舱进水，她仍可漂浮在水面上。

【词汇】float *vi.* 漂浮，船在水中漂浮和尘埃气球在空气中漂浮都用这个词。

3. The tragic sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life.

【译文】 这艘巨轮首航就下沉，造成大批人员死亡。人们将永远记着这艘巨轮的沉没惨剧。

【词汇】liner *n.* 客轮，邮轮：airliner 客机；line 航线；airline 航空公司

【联想】 journey，tour，travel，trip，voyage，excursion，expedition，cruise

这些名词均含"旅行"之意。

journey：最普通用词，侧重指时间较长、距离较远的单程陆上旅行，也指水上或空中的旅行。

tour：指最后返回出发地，旅途中有停留游览点，距离可长可短，目的各异的周游或巡行。

travel：泛指旅行的行为而不指某次具体的旅行，多指到远方作长期旅行，不强调直接目的地，单、复数均可用。

trip：普通用词，口语多用，常指为公务或游玩作的较短暂的旅行。

voyage：指在水上旅行，尤指海上旅行，也可指空中旅行。

excursion：较正式用词，常指不超过一天的短时期娱乐性游玩，也可指乘火车或轮船往返特定景点的远足旅游。

expedition：指有特定目的的远征或探险。

cruise：主要指乘船的游览并在多处停靠。

At first I was afraid the long journey would be too much for her.

起初我担心她不能走这样远的路。

I wish you a good journey.(祝你)一路平安。

The family made a weekend excursion to a camp ground. 全家周末去野营地旅行。

The whole excursion took ten hours. 整个短途旅游花了十个小时。

My brother was once a member of the Mount Everest Expedition.

我弟弟曾是珠穆朗玛峰登山队的队员。

Our country has sent several parties of people on all expedition to Antarctic.

我国已派了几队人到南极探险。

They are now making a bridal tour. 他们正在新婚旅行。

I go to work by train, and the trip takes 40 minutes.

我坐火车上班，路上花 40 分钟。

I can't afford a trip to Europe. 我负担不起去欧洲旅游的费用。

This trip was cancelled because of the snowstorm. 因为暴风雪，旅行取消了。

"The travels of Marco Polo" is one of the most interesting books that I have ever read.

《马可波罗游记》是我生平读过的最有意思的一本书。

Is he back from his travels yet? 他旅游回来了吗？

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He made a long ocean voyage to Africa. 他远航去了非洲。

We made a rough voyage from London to Australia.

我们作了一次从伦敦到澳大利亚的艰苦航行。

【用法】with heavy loss of life

引申"伤亡人数"casualty

多用复数形式 casualties，表示"伤亡（人数），死伤者，损失"，例如：a train wreck with an unknown number of casualties（一次伤亡人数不明的火车事故）；casualty clearing station（野战医院）；The corner grocery was a casualty of the expanding supermarkets.（街角的杂货店是日益扩大的超级市场的受害者。）此外，casualty department 还可以表示"临时救治所；急诊室"。

4. Four days after setting out, while the *Titanic* was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic, a huge iceberg was suddenly spotted by a look-out.

【译文】"泰坦尼克"起航后的第四天，它正行驶在北大西洋冰冷的海面上。突然，瞭望员发现一座冰山。

【词汇】**iceberg** *n.* 冰山

the tip of the iceberg 冰山的一角，端倪

This air crash is seen as merely the tip of an iceberg. 这次客机坠毁事件看来只是事情的端倪。

5. After the alarm had been given, the great ship turned sharply to avoid a direct collision.

【译文】警报响得很及时，巨轮急转弯，以避免与冰山正面相撞。

【词汇】**collide** *v.* 可以指车辆、船只、飞机碰撞，也可以指思想等冲突。

6. The *Titanic* turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice which rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her.

【译文】"泰坦尼克号"及时拐弯，紧贴着高出海面 100 英尺的巨大冰墙擦过去。

【用法】narrowly missing 现在分词短语作状语，表示结果，一般位于句末，其逻辑主语为主句的主语。

Her husband died in 1942, leaving her with five children.

她丈夫 1942 年死了，把五个孩子丢给她。

The snow lasted a week, resulting in a serious traffic problem in the area.

雪下了一个星期，给这一地区造成了严重的交通问题。

He didn't come today, thereby making it necessary for us to find someone to do his work.

他今天没来，使得我们必须找个人做他的工作。

【词汇】**narrowly** *adv.* 差一点，仅仅，勉强（与 miss，escape 连用）

He narrowly escaped being drowned. 她险些淹死。

We narrowly missed hitting the other car. 我们差一点撞上另一辆汽车。

She narrowly missed winning an Oscar. 她差一点获得奥斯卡奖。

【辨析】in time; on time; at a time; at one time; at the time; by the time; in no time; at no time

① in time 意为"及时或在提到的时间之前"，而 on time 意为"准时，按规定的时间"。

② in no time 意为"很快"，而 at no time 意为"在任何时候都不"，两者意思相去甚远。

③ at a time 与 at one time 这两个词组中 a 与 one 都表示"一"的概念，但两者意义完全不同。at a time 意为"每次，一次"，而 at one time 意为"过去某个时候，从前有个时候"。

④ at the time 意为"在所提到的那个时候，而 by the time 意为"到……时候为止"，指某一动作在提到的某一时间或某一动作发生之前已经完成，常用过去完成时。

7. Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain went down to see what had happened.

【译文】突然，从船舱下部传来一声轻微的颤音，船长走下去查看究竟。

【用法】下列动词表示的动作速度由快到慢：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

shiver 打寒战
tremble(人、物)颤抖
stir 扰动,搅动
shake 握手,摇晃
quiver 内心的战栗

slight 轻微的(声音)
faint 昏迷的,微弱的:faint breath 微弱呼吸
dim (光线)微弱的
dizzy 眩晕的
gentle 轻,温柔的

8. Below, the captain realized to his horror that the *Titanic* was sinking rapidly, for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded!

【译文】在下面,船长惊恐地发现"泰坦尼克"号正在急速下沉,因为16个密封舱已有5个进水。

【词 组】 to one's delight/relief/horror/joy/satisfaction/surprise/dismay/disappointment/astonishment/anger/annoyance/embarrassment/amazement/shame

9. The order to abandon ship was given and hundreds of people plunged into the icy water.

【译文】于是,他发出了弃船的命令,几百人跳进了冰冷刺骨的海水里。

【词汇】**abandon** *vt.* 抛弃,放弃
desert 抛弃(情感上)
cast 掷
throw away 扔掉
discard 弃掉(无用之物)

额外收获

英语中比较特殊的副词:

1. 有些副词,它们虽然属于同源现象,但在语意方面却毫不相干。

1) late/lately
Dick got up late last Tuesday. (迟,晚)
Her husband has finished writing a new book lately. (近来)

2) most/mostly
Which question did you think was most difficult? (最)
The drink was mostly tea. (主要地)

3) just/justly
Our teacher has just returned from Lanzhou. (刚刚)
He was treated justly. (公正地)

4) free/freely
The books are given away free. (免费地)
You may speak freely. (自由地)

5) hard/hardly
Work hard, and you'll succeed in time. (努力地)
His father could hardly believe it was true. (几乎不)

6) clean/cleanly
I clean forgot about it. (完全地)
This knife doesn't cut cleanly. (干净利落地)

7) clear/clearly
The bird on the tree got clear away. (完全地)
His words were clearly wrong. (显而易见地)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8) close/closely

The student stood close to his head teacher. (接近地)

All the prisoners were closely watched. (严密地)

9) dead/deadly

She stopped dead. (突然地)

The face of the wounded was deadly pale. (非常)

注:deadly 也可以作形容词,例如 a deadly wound(致命的)。

10) fair/airly

We should play fair. ("公平地",用于某些固定搭配中)

His English is fairly good. ("相当",常常用来修饰褒义形容词或副词)

11) sharp/sharply

The plane took off at l0 o'clock sharp in the morning. (准时地)

The road turns very sharply. (突然地)

注:有时 sharp 也能作"突然地",如 We turned sharp to the left at the second crossroads.

12) high/highly

They held their heads high. (高高地)

I have always thought very highly of him. (高度地,极为赞许地)

13) deep/deeply

They dug deep for the treasure. (深地)

He was deeply hurt. (深深地)

14) firm/firmly

If we stand firm, I am sure we shall be successful. (坚持地)

We must firmly bear this in mind. (牢固地)

2. 某些与形容词同形的副词和以-ly 结尾的副词意义上有一定的联系,但仍存在区别。

1) direct/directly

Send the book direct to me. (直线地,不绕圈子地)

Answer me directly. (立刻,马上)

2) easy/easily

Easy come, easy go. ("容易地",用于某些固定搭配中)

He finished his homework easily that day. (容易地)

3) pretty/prettily

She speaks English pretty well. (相当地)

Jane dressed prettily for the palace ball. (得体地,漂亮地)

4) slow/slowly

The farmers decided to go slow. (固定搭配,go slow 意思是"怠工"。在其他表达中,副词一般用 slowly)

This time he drove his car slowly and carefully. (慢慢地)

5) wide/widely

Open your mouth wide so that I can examine your teeth better. (充分地)

He is always taking in English knowledge widely. (广泛地)

3. 但是有些与形容词同形的副词和以-ly 结尾的副词,在用法方面没有多大区别,一般可以通用。例如:副词 loud 和 loudly 作"大声地"解释时,可以通用。

Don't talk so loud/loudly. Please talk in a low voice.

sound 和 soundly 作"熟(睡)"讲可以通用。

His father was sleeping sound/soundly.

此外,soundly 还可以当"健康地"讲。

Both his body and mind were developing soundly.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 11 Not guilty

本节重点和难点

- as 引导的非限制性定语从句
- 瞬间动词的进行时表示将来
- from 后接副词或前置词
- 动词 have 的用法

本课词汇

guilty ['gilti] *adj.* 有罪的，内疚的

declare [di'klɛə] *vt.* 断言，声称，宣布，宣告

【词组】declare off 宣布取消 /declare oneself 发表意见；表明态度；宣布自己的身份

professional [prə'feʃənəl] *n.* 专业人员，内行 *adj.* 专门的，职业的

smuggler ['smʌglə] *n.* 走私犯

officious [ə'fiʃəs] *adj.* 好管闲事的

look someone in the eye 无所畏惧地正视某人

confidently ['kɔnfidəntli] *adv.* 确信地，自信地

dreadful ['dredfəl] *adj.* (尤作定语)使人震惊的

pounce [pauns] *vi.* 猛扑，突然袭击

perfume ['pə:fju:m] *n.* 香味，芳香；香水，香料

【用法】perfume 多指具有鲜花香味的香水。

sarcastically [sɑ:'kæstikəli] *adv.* 讽刺地

exempt [ig'zempt] *adj.* 被免除的

import duty 进口税

mixture ['mikstʃə] *n.* 混合；混合物，混合剂

unscrew [ʌn'skru:] *vt.* 拧开

nostril ['nɔstril] *n.* 鼻孔

chalk-mark *n.* 粉笔记号

baggage ['bægidʒ] *n.* 行李

【词组】baggage car(铁路的)行李车/baggage claim(机场的)行李领取处

【用法】英国英语中用 luggage，baggage 主要用于美国。baggage 是总称，一件行李是 a piece of baggage。

课文详解

1. Customs Officers are quite tolerant these days, but they can still stop you when you are going through the Green Channel and have nothing to declare.

【译文】现在的海关官员往往相当宽容。但是，当你通过绿色通道，没有任何东西需要申报时，他们仍可以拦住你。

【用法】表示“仁慈宽厚”的词：

tolerant：容忍的，宽容的

He is a Muslim but is very tolerant towards those who have different religious opinions.

他是个穆斯林，但他很能容忍有不同宗教见解的人。

merciful：宽大的，仁慈的

The king was merciful and did not kill his enemies. 国王很仁慈，没有杀死他的敌人。

lenient：宽大的，宽厚的；不严格的；迁就的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Be lenient with her; she is only a child. 对她宽大点，她还是个孩子。

You are too lenient with these children; you must make them work harder.

你对这些孩子太迁就了，你应该让他们更努力点。

clement:(气候条件)温和的；宽厚的

The weather is much more clement today. 今天的天气温和多了。

He wore a clement smile on his face. 他脸上挂着仁慈的微笑。

understanding:体谅人的

She was very helpful and understanding about what happened.

她帮了很大的忙，对所发生的事情也很体谅。

【词组】go through

(1)通过 (2)经历，经受 (3)仔细检查：

The country has gone through too many wars. 这个国家经历了太多的战争。

She went through Tom's jacket pockets and eventually found the keys.

她仔细检查了汤姆的外衣口袋，最终找到了钥匙。

2. Even really honest people are often made to feel guilty.

【译文】甚至是最诚实的人也常被弄得有负罪感。

【用法】"make, see, hear, notice, feel"用在主动语态中时，复合宾语不定式不带"to"，但是，当这种结构改为被动式时，必须带"to"：We heard her sing. = She was heard to sing. 我们听到她唱歌。

【词汇】**guilty** *adj.* 有罪的

guiltless *adj.* 无罪的，无辜的：be guiltless of 没有犯……罪

【辨析】criminal 和 guilty 这两个形容词均表示"犯罪的"之意。

criminal:侧重指某种行为是违犯法律的，因而应受到惩罚。

guilty:主要指某种行为违反道德标准，也可指违犯法律。

3. The hardened professional smuggler, on the other hand, is never troubled by such feelings, even if he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase.

【译文】另一方面，老练的职业走私犯即使在手提箱里藏着 500 块金表，也处之泰然。

【用法】hidden in his suitcase"藏在手提箱里的"为过去分词短语置后修饰 watches，这样的结构相当于谓语为被动态结构的定语从句。

【词汇】**hardened** *adj.* 老练的，根深蒂固的

a hardened criminal 一个惯犯，一个死不悔改的罪犯

harden *vt.* 使变硬；使变得冷酷无情

Dennis is becoming hardened to failure. 丹尼斯对失败变得不在乎了。

4. "No," I answered confidently.

【译文】"没有。"我自信地回答说。

【词根】fid-信任，相信：confide *v.* 信任，信赖；confidant *n.* 知己，心腹；confidential *adj.* 机密的；diffident *adj.* 无自信的，羞怯的；fidelity *n.* 忠诚；精确

5. The officer went through the case with great care.

【译文】那位官员十分仔细地把箱子检查了一遍。

【用法】with great care"十分仔细地"为英语中常用的"介词 with+抽象名词"结构。

with great care 比 carefully 更正式，更书卷气。

with+抽象名词：with delight/great care/difficulty/ease/joy/satisfaction

We heard with joy that she had escaped injury. 听说她没有受伤，真令人欣慰。

The man walked with difficulty. 那个男子步履艰难。

We won the football match with ease. 我们轻松地赢了那场比赛。

6. Suddenly, I saw the Officer's face light up.

【译文】突然，我看到官员脸上露出了得意的神色。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

【用法】eye light up/face light up 都表示"某人突然间十分高兴"。

7. "You should have declared that. Perfume is not exempt from import duty."

【译文】"你刚才应当申报，香水是不免税的。"

【用法】exempt"被免除(责任、义务等)的；被豁免的"作形容词，常用于 be exempt from 结构中，如：He's exempt from taxation. 他被免除纳税。

TopSage.com

【词汇】**perfume** *n.* 香水，香味

表示"气味"的词：

smell：*n.* 气味，闻、嗅，嗅觉

odo(u)r：*n.* 气味、名声、意味

fragrance：*n.* 芳香、香味、香水

Those roses have a delightful fragrance. 那些玫瑰花散发出一种令人愉悦的香味。

scent：*vt.* (动物等)嗅出……的气味，嗅出……的存在 *n.* (动物的)臭迹，遗臭

Our dog lost the fox's scent. 我们的狗失去了狐狸的气味。

perfume：*n.* 香味、香水、香料 *vt.* 使充满香气

aroma：*n.* 芳香、风味、韵味

flavor：*n.* 味道

savor：*n.* 滋味、气味、食欲 *v.* 有……的滋味

The meat had cooked too long and lost its savor.

肉煮的时间太长了，失去了本身的味道。

stink：*vt.* 散发出恶臭，发臭味 *n.* 恶臭，难闻的气味

stench：*n.* 臭气、恶臭

特别提一下 stink(恶臭)曾经用来比喻好闻的气味，以前有过这样的说法："That perfume of yours stinks."(您用的香水很好闻)。后来 stink 经历了由"好闻"到"有味""恶臭"的演变。比如，如果有人觉得某条狗很臭，就会说"That dog stinks."。stink 的变化殃及其他与气味有关的词，比如 smell(气味)，也由"好闻"逐渐变成"有怪味"。如今，如果说什么东西 smells 一般都是指这东西"不太好闻"了。就连 odor 这个以前常常用来形容 colorless and odorless(无色无味)的"科学"用语，也有变"坏"的趋势。

exempt *adj.* 被免除的(＋from)：He is exempt from military service because of his bad health. 他因身体不好而免服兵役。

vt. 免除，豁免 exempt sb. from

The school exempts good pupils from examination. 这所学校让优秀的学生免试。

She was exempted from paying tax. 她被允许免交税。

联想同根词：empty，preemptive

preemptive 的意思是"先发制人的、抢先的"。例如：a preemptive offer for the property our competitors wanted to buy(对我们的竞争对手想购买的房地产抢先提出的报价)。The army launched a preemptive strike against the enemy. (军队对敌人发起了先发制人的攻击)。

8. The Officer unscrewed the cap and put the bottle to his nostrils.

【译文】海关官员拧开瓶盖，把瓶子放到鼻子底下。

【词汇】**unscrew** *v.* 旋开，打开(注意前缀 un 的用法)

9. He was greeted by an unpleasant smell which convinced him that I was telling the truth.

【译文】一股怪味袭来，使他相信了我说的是真话。

【用法】be greeted by 是一个中性词组，后面可以加褒义宾语也可以加贬义宾语。

I was greeted by a sweet smell. 甜味扑鼻而来。

I was greeted by the freshness of spring. 春意跃入眼帘。

be greeted by a warm welcome 受到热情欢迎

【句型】as 和 which 引导的定语从句

www.TopSage.com

(1)as 有“正如，就像”之意，在非限制性定语从句中充当主语、宾语或表语，从句可位于主句的前面、中间或后面，一般用逗号与主句隔开。

As we had expected, her performance was wonderful. 正如我们期待的，她的演出很精彩。

A panda, as we know, is a lovely animal. 正如我们知道的那样，熊猫是一种可爱的动物。

Tom is the tallest in our class, as you know. 就像你知道的，汤姆是我们班最高的。

但 which 引导的非限制性定语从句一般只能放在主句之后。例如：

The result of the experiment was very good, which we hadn't expected.

实验结果非常好，我们没有预料到。

(2)在主谓宾结构的非限制性定语从句中，which 和 as 作宾语时可互换使用。

He was an Englishman, which/as I knew from his accent.

从他的口音我听出，他是个英国人。

作主语时通常用 which，而不用 as。但在“主语＋be＋done”结构中，as 作主语。例如：

He passed the examination, as was known. 正如人们所知道的，他通过了考试。

(3)as 引导非限制性定语从句时，通常用在表示肯定意义的从句中，而不能用在表示否定意义的从句中；which 则不受此限制。例如：

Mummy treats me just as a baby, which(不用 as) I can't bear.

妈妈像对待婴儿一样对我，使我不能忍受。

She married again, which(不用 as) was unexpected. 出人意料的是，她再婚了。

(4)在宾补结构的非限制性定语从句中，作主语或宾语时，宜用 which，而不用 as。例如：

He believed in God, which (不用 as) I find strange. 他信仰上帝，我觉得奇怪。

He changed his mind, which(不用 as) made me very angry. 他改变了主意，这让我很生气。

(5)定语从句中动词若为表示知觉的词，如 see、expect、say、know 等时，用 as 而不用 which。

As we expected/know, Xiao Ming took the first place in the game.

正如我们期待的/知道的，小明获得了比赛的冠军。

(6)as 引导的定语从句与 it 作形式主语的主语从句和以 what 引导的主语从句的区别。试比较：

As is known to everybody, the moon travels round the earth once every month.

It is known to everybody that the moon travels round the earth once every month.

What is known to everybody is that the moon travels round the earth once every month.

众所周知，月亮每月绕地球一周。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 12 Life on a desert island

本节重点和难点

- 动词的现在分词作状语
- the other 和 another 的区别
- have sth. done 的用法
- as 引导的定语从句

本课词汇

desert ['dezət] *n.* 沙漠，不毛之地

unrealistic ['ʌnriə'listik] *adj.* 不真实的，不现实的

paradise ['pærədais] *n.* 天堂

wretched ['retʃid] *adj.* 悲惨的

starve [stɑːv] *v.* 饿死，挨饿，饿得慌

【词组】starve down (out) 以饥饿迫使投降

element ['elimənt] *n.* 成分

opportunity [ˌɔpə'tjuːniti] *n.* 机会

【词组】a golden opportunity 绝好的机会/at the first opportunity 一有机会

coral ['kɔrəl] *n.* 珊瑚

Virgin Islands ['vəːdʒin 'ailəndz]（地名）维尔京群岛

Miami [mai'æmi]（地名）迈阿密

dinghy ['diŋgi] *n.* 救生橡皮筏

Caribbean [kæri'biːən]（地名）加勒比海

spear [spiə] *n.* 矛，枪

lobster ['lɔbstə] *n.* 龙虾

tanker ['tæŋkə] *n.* 油船

genuinely ['dʒenjuinli] *adv.* 真正地，真诚地

Robinson Crusoe ['rɔbinsən 'kruːsəu] 鲁宾孙·克鲁索（小说《鲁宾孙漂流记》主人公）

课文详解

1. We sometimes imagine a desert island to be a sort of paradise where the sun always shines.

【译文】我们有时想象荒岛是终日阳光普照的天堂。

【用法】(1)动词 imagine 可在"动词＋宾语＋动词不定式"结构中使用。

(2)where the sun always shines 为定语从句，置后修饰 paradise。

【词汇】**paradise** *n.* 天堂，乐土：

Hangzhou is dubbed as the paradise on earth. 杭州被称为"人间天堂"。

Forests are a paradise of wildlife. 森林是野生动物的乐土。

【辨析】heaven、sky、paradise 这些名词均有"天"或"天堂"之意。

heaven：作"天空"解时，常用复数，文学用词；作"天堂"解时，多用大写形式，采用单数。

sky：普通用词，指人们头顶上的天空，一般属于笼罩地球的空气层。较少用于指天国或天堂。

paradise 与 heaven 同义，宗教色彩浓厚，指好人死后灵魂长存之处，口语中表示乐园或乐土，在宗教典故中，指天主教与基督教中的伊甸乐园。

2. Ripe fruit falls from the trees and you never have to work.

【译文】成熟的水果从树上掉下来，人们根本无需劳动。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】ripe corn 熟玉米

He is a worker ripe in experience. 他是个技术熟练的工人。

mature 成熟的(思想)

full-grown 长成的

3. Life on a desert island is wretched.

【译文】荒岛生活很可怕。

【用法】miserable, wretched, unhappy, sorry 这些形容词均含"不幸的"之意。

miserable:指因贫穷、不幸或屈辱等外部因素给人造成精神痛苦、烦恼或肉体折磨,令人同情和可怜。

wretched:多指由于疾病、担忧、忧伤等造成的不幸和痛苦,在外表上显得沮丧、可怜、失望,语气比 miserable 强。

unhappy:侧重指精神上的不快或失望。

sorry:常作礼貌用词,表遗憾、婉惜。也指说话人表示同情、悲哀等,感情色彩较强。

4. You either starve to death or live like Robinson Crusoe waiting for a boat which never comes.

【译文】要么饿死,要么像鲁宾逊一样生活,天天盼望船只,却不见其踪影。

【词汇】starve *v.* 饥饿,饿死

hunger, famine, starvation 这些名词均有"饥饿"之意。

hunger:普通用词,指人体对于食物迫切需要的正常生理现象。

famine:指因天灾人祸而引起大规模饥荒;用作引申,指严重缺乏某种物资或人力。

starvation:语气比 hunger 强得多。指因长期缺乏食物所造成的痛苦,甚至死亡,侧重指人为的灾难所致。

5. Two men who recently spent five days on a coral island wished they had stayed there longer.

【译文】最近有两个人在一座珊瑚岛上呆了五天,他们真希望在那儿再多呆一些日子。

【用法】wish 后面的宾语从句

wish 具有强烈的感情色彩,表示难以实现的愿望或者与事实相违背的情况。

(1)对说话当时的情况表示愿望:宾语从句用一般过去时

I wish I knew his address. (But I don't know.)

(2)对将来表示希望或祝愿:宾语从句用 would/could+动词原形

I wish you would shut up.

(3)对过去的事情表示遗憾后悔:宾语从句用过去完成时或者 would/could+现在完成时

I wish I had been there.

I wish I could have gone with you to the concert last night.

表愿望可以用 wish 或 if only,其中 wish 常指尚有可能发生的事,而 if only 则强调所希望的状况并不存在。在 wish/if only 后要用过去时表现在,用过去完成时表过去。

(1)They wished they had stayed there longer. 他们希望在那儿待了更久。

(2)I wish you would do as you are told. 我希望你能按照吩咐去做。

(3)I wish she could see me now. 我希望她现在能看到我。

(4)I wish I had more time to spare. 我真希望我有更多的时间。

(5)I wish I hadn't said anything about it. 我真希望我什么也没说。

(6)I wish you hadn't spent so much money. 我希望你没花那么多钱。

(7)If only the weather would change. 如果天气变化就好了。

(8)If only you would try a little harder! 如果你能更加努力些就好了!

(9)If only we could have gone to the party! 如果我们能够参加那个聚会该多好啊!

(10)If only I would become a scientist. 如果我能够成为一个科学家就好了。

6. They quickly loaded a small rubber dinghy with food, matches, and tins of beer and rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【译文】他们迅速把食物、火柴、罐装啤酒装到一只小小的橡皮救生筏上，然后在加勒比海上划行了几英里，到了一座小珊瑚岛。

【词汇】**load** *v.* 装载货物，照相机装胶卷，枪支上膛等

7. They caught lobster and fish every day, and, as one of them put it "ate like kings".

【译文】他们天天捕捉龙虾和鱼，正如其中一位所说，"吃得像国王一样好"。

【用法】理解 put 的意思：说，表达

How to put it in Chinese? 这个用汉语怎么说？

Let me put it in another way. 让我用另一种方式表达。

8. When a passing tanker rescued them five days later, both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave.

【译文】五天后，一条油轮从那儿路过，搭救了他们。这二位不得不离开那个荒岛时，还真的感到遗憾呢！

【用法】**genuine** (= sincere/authentic) *adj.* 真的，名副其实的

I'm genuinely sorry for what I said. 我对我说的话表示真诚的歉意。

His suitcase is made of genuine leather. 他的手提箱是真皮的。

a very genuine person 一个真诚的人

【词根】gen-/gener-生：gender *n.* 性别；gene *n.* 基因；generate *vt.* 产生，造成；generation *n.* 一代人；genetics *n.* 遗传学；genius *n.* 天才；congenial *adj.* 意气相投的；ingenious *adj.* 灵敏的，灵巧的；ingenuous *adj.* 纯真的，单纯的

【联想】表示"坦率诚恳"的词：

frank：坦白的，直率的

He had a frank and friendly look. 他的表情直率友好。

If you want my frank opinion, I don't think the plan will succeed.

如果你要我说实话的话，我不觉得这计划会成功。

open：坦率的，开诚布公的

Let's be open with each other. 让我们彼此坦诚相待吧。

There was open hatred between the two men. 这两个男人彼此公开表示仇恨。

aboveboard：光明正大的

His part in the affair was quite open and aboveboard.

在这件事情上他的行为十分光明磊落。

forthcoming：乐于帮忙的，诚实友好的

He was quite forthcoming about what happened; he told us everything.

关于所发生的事情，他十分诚实，把一切都告诉我们了。

forthright：直率的，直截了当的

His forthright behavior shows that he is honest but he seems rude to some people.

他的直率行为显示他的诚实，但在一些人看来他未免也太粗鲁了。

straightforward：直接的，坦率的

He gave me a straightforward answer. 他给了我一个直截了当的回答。

It is a straightforward matter. 这是一件简单明白的事情。

额外收获

(1)不错的写作句型：

Most of us have formed an unrealistic picture of life on a desert island. We sometimes imagine a desert island to be a sort of paradise where the sun always shines.

The other side of the picture is quite the opposite.

There is an element of truth...

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2)写作中的常用万能句型

① 用于文章开头的句型：

Faced with…,quite a few people argue that…;But other people conceive differently.

There is a general discussion today about the issue of…;Those who object to…argue that…;They believe that…;But people who favor…,on the other hand,argue that…

Currently there is a widespread concern that…

Now people in growing number are coming to realize that…

Now it is commonly held that…;they think…;But I doubt whether…

Recently the issue of…has been brought to public attention.

One of the great men once said that…Now more and more people share this belief.

Until recently,…has been regarded as…. But people are taking a fresh look at it.

Sb. argues/maintains/holds/insists/believes that…

More and more people are realizing/have come to realize…

There is no denying/doubt that…

② 用于文章结尾的句型：

From what has been discussed above/taking into account all these factors,we may safely arrive at/draw/come to/reach the conclusion that…

It is high time that we put considerable/great/special emphasis on…

We must look for all immediate method, because the present situation of…, if permitted to continue,will sure lead to/result in…

Many solutions/methods are being offered here,all of them make some sense,but none is quite satisfactory.

The problem should be examined in a new way.

There is no immediate solution to the problem of…, but…might be helpful/beneficial. No easy method can be at hand to solve the problem of…,but the general awareness of the necessity/importance of…might be the first step on the right way.

There is little doubt/denying that…

It is,therefore,obvious/evident that the task of…requires immediate attention.

As far as…be concerned,I believe/think that…

In conclusion,…

In my opinion,I am in favor of…

Personally,I prefer to…

In short,…should learn to…;only in this way can the most difficult problems be solved properly.

As far as I am concerned. I agree with the opinion that…

③ 表示不同看法的句型：

Different people have/hold different opinions/views on the question/problem/matter. Some believe that… Others argue that…;Still others maintain that…

They are quite different from each other in their opinions.

Some people hold the opinion that it is good to…

They think quite differently on this question.

Opinions vary from individual to individual,from culture to culture.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 13 "It's only me"

本节重点和难点

- 现在分词作状语
- "as"的用法
- 表示"一……就……"的几种结构
- 宾语补足语

本课词汇

costume ['kɔstjuːm] *n.* 戏装，服装

consist [kən'sist] *vi.* 由……组成，由……构成；在于，存在于

sheet [ʃiːt] *n.* 被单

effective [i'fektiv] *adj.* 有效的，生效的

【词组】be effective on 对……有效应；对……起作用/become effective (法律、决议、协定等)生效/be far from effective 很不得力

comfortable ['kʌmftəblə] *adj.* 舒适的

storeroom ['stɔːrum] *n.* 贮藏室

Electricity Board 供电局

meter ['miːtə] *n.* 计价器，仪表，表

pace [peis] *n.* (一)步，步速，速度，节奏 *vi.* 踱步，用步量

【词组】at a snail's pace 慢条斯理地；以蜗牛爬行的速度/force the pace (赛跑时)拼命加快速度/go the pace 飞速前进；〈比喻〉过放荡生活，挥霍无度/go through one's pace 显本领；显身手/keep pace with 与……齐步前进；跟上……/mend one's pace 放快步子/off the pace 跑在第一名之后/put sb. /sth. through his/its paces 考查某人(某物)的本领(性能)；考验某人(某物)是否合用/set the pace 为别人定速度(步调)；树榜样/show one's paces (马)显示速度(步法)；〈比喻〉显出自己的本领/try sb.'s paces 试某人本领

【用法】1. 作"步幅(一步宽)"讲，一般约为75厘米，或2.5英尺。2. 作"步速"讲，除指事物发展速度外，常指人和马的步速。3. 作"踱步"讲，常指来回慢慢地走动。

flee [fliː](fled) *v.* 逃离，逃避

slam [slæm] *vt.* 砰地关上

课文详解

1. She intended to dress up as a ghost and as she had made her costume the night before, she was impatient to try it on.

【译文】她打算装扮成鬼的模样。头天晚上她已把化装服做好，这时她急于想试试。

【用法】dress up as...装扮成……，如：The warmongers tried to dress themselves up as "angels of peace." 战争贩子们企图把自己打扮成"和平天使"。

The children dressed up as pirates. 孩子们装扮成海盗。

Dressed up as a white-collar, Alf went to work.

艾尔夫打扮成白领的样子去上班。(过去分词作伴随状语)

注意本文出现的四处表示穿衣的词组：dress up as/put on/try on/wear

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Though the costume consisted only of a sheet, it was very effective.

【译文】尽管化装服仅由一个被单制成，却十分逼真。

【用法】(1)costume 和生活服装对应，指戏服，化装服，民族服装

national costume, ancient costume

(2)consist of 不用于被动语态或进行时态

Our class consists of 10 boys and 10 girls. 我们班有 10 个男生和 10 个女生。

注意区分它与 be made of、be composed of、constitute 的区别。

3. She wanted to find out whether it would be comfortable to wear.

【译文】她想看看穿起来是否舒服。

【用法】在间接引语中，可用 whether 或 if 引导一个一般疑问句(即无疑问词引导的问句)，如：We want to know whether/if we can get there in time. 我们想知道我们是否可以及时到达那儿。

当表示两种选择时常用 whether，特别是在书面表达中。在动词 discuss(讨论)后只能用 whether，不能用 if。在介词后或带 to 的动词不定式前只能用 whether。如：He asked whether to start the work or wait for them. 他询问是开始工作还是等他们。

【词汇】**comfortable** *adj*. 舒适的，舒服的；自在的

a comfortable chair/pair of shoes/income 舒服的椅子/鞋子/相当不错的收入

live/lead a comfortable life 过着舒服的生活

She doesn't feel comfortable with strangers. 她在生人面前不自在。

4. Just as Mrs. Richards was entering the dining room, there was a knock on the front door.

【译文】理查兹夫人刚刚走进餐厅，前门响起了敲门声。

【用法】there was a knock on the door.

模仿：there is a ring on the door 门铃响了一声

5. Not wanting to frighten the poor man, Mrs. Richards quickly hid in the small storeroom under stairs.

【译文】理查兹夫人不想吓到这个可怜人，赶紧躲到楼梯下面的小储藏室里。

【用法】(1)Not wanting to frighten the poor man 是现在分词短语作原因状语，分词的主语与主句主语一致，因而将主语省略。

Being unable to afford a car, he bought a bicycle. 由于买不起汽车，他买了一辆自行车。

Not knowing what to do he telephoned the police. 因为不知道怎么办，他给警察打了个电话。

Being interested in the relationship of language and thought, Whorf developed the idea that the structure of language determines the structure of habitual thought in a society. (考研，翻译)

基于对语言和思维之间关系的兴趣，沃尔夫建立了语言的结构决定社会习惯性思维这一观点。

3/30 L18：Fearing the authorities, Eric remained in hiding after the war was over.

由于害怕当局，埃里克在战争结束后继续深藏不露。

(2)hid 为 hide(躲藏)的过去式，hide-hid-hidden

6. Mrs. Richards realized that it must be the man from the Electricity Board who had come to read the meter.

【译文】理查兹夫人这才想到一定是供电局来人查电表了。

【用法】定语从句与先行词的分离

定语从句一般紧跟在所修饰的先行词的后面，但有时会被其他修饰成分隔开。

No one suspected that there might be someone else on the farm who had never been seen.

谁也没想到农场里竟会有一个从不露面的人。

...in a village fifty miles away where he had remained ever since.

……在距此 50 英里外的一座村子里定居下来。

7. The man let out a cry and jumped back several paces.

【译文】那人大叫了一声，惊退了几步。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】(1)let out a cry 大叫一声。这里 let out 表示"发出(声音)"之意，通常不用进行或完成时态表达此意义，如：She let out a cry when she was knocked down. 她被撞倒时，大叫一声。

let out a cry/a laugh/a sigh/black smoke/bad smell/a secret

(2)utter，express，ronounce 三个表示"说出，发声"的动词

utter 指发出任何听得见的声音，强调发出的声音具有突然性和爆发性。

express 指用语言表达自己的思想或感情。

pronounce 可表示人的发音或具有发音能力；在正式场合中，指宣读、宣判等。

She uttered a scream of terror when she saw a snake. 当她看见一条蛇时，发出了一声惊恐的尖叫。

The old man uttered a sigh in the dark room. 在漆黑的屋子里老人发出一声叹息。

It can not be expressed by words. 无法用语言来表达它(不可言传)。

Can you express yourself in English? 你能用英语表达你的意思吗?

My baby can pronounce this word without any difficulty. 我的孩子读这个词没有任何困难。

I now pronounce judgement on the issue. 我现在宣布对这一问题的意见。

(3)pace 和 step 的区别

后者一般只与 walk 搭配；而前者强调步幅，可与任何行走方式搭配，如：jump/run/move several paces。

8. When Mrs. Richarcls walked towards him, he fled, slamming the door behind him.

【译文】当理查兹夫人朝他走去，只见他"砰"的一声关上门逃走了。

【用法】(1)fled 是 flee(逃跑)的过去式，其过去式和过去分词一样。

flee 和 escape 的区别：前者强调过程，后者强调结果。

flee 逃离(某个危险的境地)

They were forced to flee(from)the country/flee abroad. 他们被迫逃离这个国家/逃到国外。

She fled the kidnappers and telephoned the police. 她从绑架者那里逃脱，给警方打了电话。

escape(从某个囚禁的地方，如监狱，笼子)逃出

They managed to escape from the burning house. 他们设法从那所着火的房子里逃了出来。

(2)slamming the door behind him 是现在分词短语作伴随状语；slam 用力关门，后面用 behind 表示他过去之后把门关上了。我们也可以用 close 和 shut 表示"关门"。

【词汇】**slam** *v.* 砰的一声关上

常见的拟声词：

bubble 冒泡，沸腾；	whistle 口哨声；	rustle 沙沙声；	drum 鼓号；
ring 铃声；	chug 机器的喀嗒声；	bang 猛撞；	bomb 炸弹；
boom 兴旺，隆隆声；	scratch 刮，擦；	bump 撞击；	dump 倾倒，嘭的一声放下；
gallop 马哒哒地飞奔；	drip 滴下；	drop 滴；	pump 气筒；
crack 破裂；	click 点击；	snap 突然折断；	tap 轻敲

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 14 A noble gangster

本节重点和难点

- 动词的非谓语形式。
- would rather... that... 的用法。
- 关系副词 when、how 和 where 引导定语从句时的用法。

本课词汇

gangster ['gæŋstə] *n.* 暴徒，强盗

Chicago [ʃi'kɑːgəu]（地名）芝加哥

protection [prə'tekʃən] *n.* 防御，保护

promptly ['prɔmptli] *adv.* 准时地，迅速地

destroy [di'strɔi] *v.* 破坏，消灭

【词组】destroy sb.'s hopes(career, reputation) 摧毁某人的希望（事业，声誉）

remarkable [ri'mɑːkəbəl] *adj.* 非凡的，显著的

【词组】remarkable for... 因……而出众

band [bænd] *n.* 带子，布带；乐队；（收音机的）波段

Florence ['flɔrəns]（地名）佛罗伦萨

city-state [ˌsiti'steit] *n.* 城邦

hire ['haiə] *n.* 租用，雇用；租金；工资 *v.* 雇用；租

【词组】hire out 出租/on hire 供租用

prince [prins] *n.* 王子，亲王

Florentine ['flɔrəntain] *n.* 佛罗伦萨人（意大利）

funeral ['fjuːnərəl] *n.* 葬礼

dedicate ['dedikeit] *vt.* 奉献，献给

【词组】dedicate oneself to 献身于；专心致力于

【辨析】dedicate *v.* 贡献，奉献；delicate *adj.* 细致的，奥妙的，精美的

to the memory of 纪念

valiant ['væljənt] *adj.* 勇敢的，英勇的

课文详解

1. There was a time when the owners of shops and businesses in Chicago had to pay large sums of money to gangsters in return for "protection."

【译文】曾经有一个时期，芝加哥的店主和商行老板们不得不拿出大笔的钱给歹徒以换取"保护"。

【用法】in return for...作为对……的回报，作为……的交换

What can I do in return for your kindness? 我怎么做才能报答你的好意呢？

【词汇】**gangster** *n.* 匪徒，暴徒

一些不法之徒：smuggler, kidnapper, pirate, trafficker

pickpocket 三只手；扒手

引申"三"的各种表达：

1. 三倍 triple

He tripled his income. 他使自己的收入增至三倍。

2. 三级风 gentle breeze

3. 三长两短 unexpected misfortune

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Any unexpected misfortune happened to my son, I would not live any longer.
我的儿子要是有个三长两短，我就不想活了。

4. 三次方程 cubic equation

I must work out the cubic equation. 我必须解出这道三次方程。

5. 三番五次 again and again

I have talked about the topic again and again, so I don't want to speak it any more.
这个话题我已经三番五次地说过，我不想再说了。

6. 三令五申 repeated injunctions

All of you must know that the repeated injunctions must be obeyed.
你们必须知道，三令五申的法令必须遵守。

7. 三心二意 be of two minds

Jim was of two minds in class this morning.
今天早上吉姆上课时三心二意，心不在焉。

8. 三言两语 in a few words

Mr. Lee explained the whole thing in a few words, and the reporters were not satisfied with his answer. 李先生三言两语解释了整个事件，记者对他的回答不满意。

9. 三角恋爱 love triangle

Tom and Mary are in love triangle, and they have their own families. It's very dangerous.
汤姆和玛丽正处于三角恋爱之中，他们各自有家，这很危险。

10. 三下五除二 neat and quick

Well done, the job was finished in neat and quick.
干得漂亮，这项工作三下五除二就完成了。

11. 三思而后行 look before you leap

No matter what you want to do, please look before you leap.
不管你想做什么事，请三思而后行。

12. 三寸不烂之舌 have a silver tongue

Tom has a silver tongue, and he can persuade John to give up his crazy plan.
汤姆会用他的三寸不烂之舌说服约翰放弃他的疯狂计划。

【写作】 There was a time when 再次回顾第 8 课和 13 课英国人的讲话风格，是不是有启示了？
"在世界的某个地方，人们习惯用点头表示不。"

Somewhere in the world 这种大众化的平庸表达落伍啦，不妨试着模仿地道英国人的口气：There is a place in the world where people express no by nodding. 这样的语句是不是为你的文章多添了几分雅致？

2. If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business by destroying his shop.

【译文】 如果交款不及时，歹徒们就会很快捣毁他的商店，让他破产。

【用法】 (1) put sb. out of business

put 在这里理解为"使某人处于一个境地"。

What you said put me in a bad mood. 你的话让我心情很不好。

(2) prompt 及时的

punctual 准时的

(3) destroy, damage, spoil 的区别

【写作】 一篇好文章一定做到两个字——简洁。

句中不应有任何不必要的词。只要意思充分地表达了，用的词越少越好。用词过多只会使意思模糊，而不是更清晰。所以最好在写完一篇文章后，仔细检查一两遍，删去一些不必要的词。试比较：

繁冗：It was blue in color.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

It was small in size.

Mary is a quiet and careful woman.

He returned in the early part of the month of August.

简洁:It was blue.

It was small.

Mary is quiet and careful.

He returned in the early August.

重复有时可加重语气,但不必要地重复相同的词或相同意思的不同的词都应该避免。

繁冗:He gave many reasons for the failure, but the reasons he gave were not convincing.

简洁:He gave many reasons for the failure, but none of them were convincing.

有时为了简洁起见,需要改变句子结构:

繁冗:There was a pine tree that stood like a giant on the top of the mountain. It towered over the trees around it.

简洁:The pine tree on the top of the mountain stood like a giant and towered over the trees around it.

The giant pine tree on the top of the mountain towered over the trees around it.

以上例子证明有时从句可以压缩为短语,短语可以压缩为单词而不改变原来的意思;也证明两个句子有时可以合并,把表达次要意思的句子改为分词短语、定语从句或别的形式。

3. Obtaining "protection money" is not a modern crime.

【译文】勒索"保护金"并不是一种现代的罪恶行径。

【用法】obtaining 表现主语的多样性。

用现在分词作主语来代替老掉牙的句型 it is not a modern crime to obtain...,是不是活泼了很多啊?!

4. As long ago as the fourteenth century, an Englishman, Sir John Hawkwood, made the remarkable discovery that people would rather pay large sums of money than have their life work destroyed by gangsters.

【译文】早在14世纪,英国人约翰·霍克伍德就有过非凡的发现:人们情愿拿出大笔的钱,也不愿毕生的心血毁于歹徒之手。

【用法】(1)as long ago/early/recently/late as"早/近在……"用来加强语气,一般用于书面语中。

Maria died as long ago as 1920. 玛丽亚早在1920年就去世了。

I saw him as recently as last March. 去年三月我还见到他呢。

I saw her as late as last week. 上个星期我还看到她呢。

(2)would rather do A than do B

would rather do

would rather not do

would rather than...宁愿……而不愿……

还有 would sooner, had rather, had sooner 都表示"宁愿、宁可"的意思:

If I have a choice, I had sooner not continue my studies at this school.

假如我有机会选择,我会尽早停止在这个学校的学习。

I would rather stay here than go home. =I would stay here rather than go home.

我宁愿待在这里也不愿回家。

(3)have sth. done 在这里不是叫别人帮你做事,而是遭受一个你不愿意看到的结果。比如:

I had my purse stolen on my way here. 在来这儿的路上我的钱包被偷了。

【词汇】remarkable *adj*. 不同寻常的,显著的:Divorce rate has registered a remarkable rise in the past few years. 在过去的几年里,离婚率显著增加了。

significant, considerable, marked, noticeable, notable, perceivable, sizeable, dramatic, drastic 都有类似含义。

www.TopSage.com

5. Six hundred years ago, Sir John Hawkwood arrived in Italy with a band of soldiers and settled near Florence.

【译文】600 年前，约翰·霍克伍德爵士带着一队士兵来到意大利，在佛罗伦萨附近驻扎下来。

【词根】band-绑：bandage husband

6. He soon made a name for himself and came to be known to the Italians as Giovanni Acuto.

【译文】他很快就出了名，意大利人叫他乔凡尼·阿库托。

【用法】(1)make a name for oneself/make one's name 出名，成名

Yang Liwei made a name for himself as the first Chinese spaceman.

杨利伟作为中国第一位宇航员出了名。

(2)be known to others as 可以替代 call sb. sth.。

如：we call Heavenly Lake a famous tourist attraction.

现在可以改善一下：Heavenly Lake is known to us all as a famous tourist attraction.

(3)come 与动词不定式连用，表示经过一个过程而发生某种情况，"逐渐地"：

How did you come to know him? 你是怎样逐渐了解他的？

He came to realize that he was mistaken. 他逐渐意识到自己搞错了。

I hope we shall be friends and come to understand each other.

我希望我们能够做朋友并且逐渐了解彼此。

7. Whenever the Italian city-states were at war with each other, Hawkwood used to hire his soldiers to princes who were willing to pay the high price he demanded.

【译文】每次意大利各城邦之间打仗，霍克伍德便把他的士兵出租给愿给他出高价的君主。

【用法】be at war 静态，fight 动态。

8. When he died at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him a state funeral and had a picture painted which was dedicated to the memory of "the most valiant soldier and most notable leader, Signor Giovanni Haukodue".

【译文】他 80 岁那年死去时，佛罗伦萨人为他举行了国葬，并为他画像以纪念这位"骁勇无比的战士、杰出的领袖乔凡尼·阿库托先生"。

【词汇】**dedicate** *v.* 奉献，献给：dedicate...to...

He dedicate his first book to his mother. 他把他的第一本书献给他母亲。

They dedicated themselves to helping the poor. 他们致力于帮助穷人。

dedicate 和 devote 这两个动词均有"奉献"之意。

dedicate：正式用词，指献身于某一崇高事业或目的，也可指把著作献给他人。

devote：普通用词，指决心把全部身心、精力、时间等献给某一目标、某一个人或致力于某一事业。

A dedicated teacher 一位有敬业精神的老师

A dedicated worker 一位工作勤勤恳恳的工人

引申：工作狂 workaholic

workaholic 这个词是根据 alcoholic 这个词衍生出来的。alcoholic 是指饮酒上瘾的人，当然 workaholic 就是指对工作上瘾的人。有些人在工作上喜欢花很多时间，他干工作的时间比别人长。他一开口就谈工作，不谈别的什么，好像对工作有瘾一样。

几十年前美国有一位教会辅导员，名叫维恩奥茨，他从早到晚忙个不停，成了典型的工作狂。他工作时连家人都不能见到他。后来维恩奥茨写了一本名为《一个工作狂的忏悔录》的书。书中第一次使用 workaholic 这个词，意思是指那些只知道工作，不顾家庭，没有正常生活的人。例：

People call Mr. Green workaholic. He spends most of his time in the office, pays no attention to his wife and kids, and never goes on vacation with them. 人们管格林先生叫工作狂。他把大多数时间花在办公室里，不注意他的妻子和孩子，从不和他们去度假。

memory

记一句口语：if my memory serves me. 如果我没记错的话。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】文化：英美国家聚会
(1)birthday/wedding party 生日/婚礼(非常正式)
(2)strawberry-picking party 采摘节
(3)brown-bag party 自带食品聚会(牛皮纸袋聚会)
(4)Christmas tree-trimming party 装扮树
(5)cocktail party 鸡尾酒会
(6)fall fofiage party 秋天观景聚会
(7)stag party 男性参加的聚会
(8)house-warming party 暖房聚会(迁新居)
(9)garden party 花园聚会
(10)quitting party 女性聚会
(11)gay party(lesbian)男(女)同性恋聚会
【词根】val-强壮：valid 健康的，有效的；invalid 有病的，病人；prevalent 盛行的，普遍的

额外收获

补充 rather than 的用法：

rather than 意为"而不是、而没有"，侧重客观上的差别，还可以表示"与其……，倒不如(或宁可)……"，侧重句子主语或说话人主观上的选择。rather than 前后一般应为名词、代词、动名词、形容词、谓语动词、动词不定式、介词短语，甚至分句等。下面分别举例说明。

1. 接名词
He is an artist rather than a politician.
他是位艺术家，而不是政治家。(与其说他是政治家，倒不如说他是艺术家。)
We ought to invest in new machinery rather than building.
我们该在新机器上而不是在建筑物上投资。
I would buy a computer rather than a motor bike. 我要买台电脑，而不是摩托车。
2. 接代词
It ought to be me rather than you that sign the letter. 在信上签名的该是我，而不是你。
The person who should be praised is you rather than me. 该受到表扬的人是你，而不是我。
3. 接动名词
I always prefer getting up early rather than going to school without breakfast.
我总是宁愿早起床，而不愿不吃早饭就去上学。
He enjoys reading rather than watching TV. 他喜欢读书而不喜欢看电视。
He was engaged in writing rather than reading the newspaper. 他在忙着写东西，而不是在看报纸。
4. 接形容词
I call her hair chestnut rather than brown. 我宁愿说她的头发是栗色的，而不愿说她的头发是棕色的。
Taking exercise every day makes him look younger rather than older.
每天锻炼身体使他显得年轻而不是年老。
The colour seems green rather than blue. 这颜色好像是绿的，而不是蓝的。
5. 接谓语动词
She telephoned rather than wrote. 她打了电话，而没有写信。
She cried rather than smiled. 她哭了，而不是笑了。
He would die rather than give up smoking. 他宁死也不愿戒烟。
6. 接动词不定式
I decided to write rather than(to)telephone. 我决定写信而不打电话。
She likes to keep things rather than(to)throw them away.
她喜欢把东西保存起来而不是随手将其扔掉。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Rather than go there, I'd prefer to stay here on my own. 我宁愿一个人呆在这儿,而不愿去那儿。

7. 接介词短语

I'd prefer to go in summer rather than in winter. 我宁愿夏天去,而不愿冬天去。

We'll have tea in the garden rather than in the house. 我们要在花园里喝茶而不想在屋里喝茶。

She is reading in the library rather than in the classroom. 她正在图书馆里看书而不是在教室里。

8. 接分句

John went to the seaside yesterday rather than he went where he often goes.

约翰昨天到海滨去了,没到他常去的地方。

You should help me rather than I should help you. 你应当帮我,而不是我应当帮你。

使用 rather than 时,还应注意以下两点:

(1) rather than 很像并列连词。其前后都应是相互对应的词语,但接不定式时,常可省去不定式符号 to。

(2) rather than 也可分开使用,和 would 或 had 构成"would/had rather...than"结构,than 前后也是相互对等的结构。试比较:

She would rather have the small one than the large one. 她宁愿要小的,也不愿要大的。

Wouldn't you rather be liked than feared? 你不是宁愿受人爱戴,而不愿让人惧怕吗?

但当 would rather 被用作谓语动词后接宾语从句时,从句中的谓语动词应为虚拟形式。例如:

I'd rather you came tomorrow than today. 我宁愿你明天来,而不是今天来。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble

本节重点和难点

- 宾语从句中使用“should+动词原形”虚拟语气的动词
- 由 or 连接的多个名词作主语的句子的主谓一致
- 介词 with 的用法
- 几个连续的动作共同作谓语

本课词汇

appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieit] *vt.* 感激，欣赏

【词组】appreciate doing 感谢……

【用法】常用于“appreciate it if”结构中，例：He would much appreciate it if you could do him a favor. 如果你能帮他个忙，他会非常感谢。

pocket money ['pɔkit-ˌmʌni] 零用钱 (money for small need)

rattle ['rætl] *vi.* 格格作响

thrifty ['θrifti] *adj.* 节俭的

price [prais] *n.* 价格；代价 *vt.* 标价，定价

【词组】at a high price 以很高的代价/not at any price 无论如何不/price oneself out of the market 自己定价过高，使人不敢问津

nephew ['nefju:] *n.* 侄子，外甥

bounce [bauns] *v.* 弹起，跳起

pavement ['peivmənt] *n.* 人行道

【词组】on the pavement 徘徊街头；没有住处；被遗弃

stick [stik] *n.* 棍，棒，手杖 *v.* 刺，戳，扎；粘贴

【词组】stick at 坚持不懈地做……/stick by 忠于；坚持；维护/stick out 伸出；突出/stick together 粘贴在一起；团结一致/stick to sth. 信守；忠于；坚持；坚守/stick up for 支持；维护

fire-brigade ['faiə brɪ'geid] *n.* 消防队

grease [gri:s] *n.* 油脂，润滑剂

课文详解

1. 看课题回忆第 6 课相同的词组

2. Children always appreciate small gifts of money.

【译文】孩子们总是喜欢得到一些零花钱。

【词汇】**appreciate** *vt.* 欣赏，感激

appreciate works of art 欣赏艺术作品；

We appreciate your helping us. 谢谢你帮助我们。

preci-=price 价值；precious 宝贵的；preciousness 宝贵；depreciate 贬值，轻视；depreciation 贬值；所以 appreciate 还有升值的意思。

3. Mum or dad, of course, provide a regular supply of pocket money, but uncles and aunts are always a source of extra income.

【译文】爸爸妈妈当然经常会给孩子零花钱，但是，叔舅婶姨也是孩子们额外收入的来源。

【用法】provide a regular supply of=be a source of sth.

学习作者的写作手法，用两个截然不同的短语表达同一个意思。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. With some children, small sums go a long way.

【译文】对于有些孩子，少量的钱可以花很长时间。

【用法】(1) with some children "至于有些孩子"，介词 with 在这里意为"至于"(concerning, in the case of)。句中将作状语的介词短语 with some children 提前，起到强调和使上下文更紧凑的作用。

(2) Go a long way 已由空间概念转换成时间概念：last a long period of time。

5. If fifty pence pieces are not exchanged for sweets, they rattle for months inside money boxes.

【译文】如果 50 便士不拿来换糖吃，则可以放在储蓄罐里叮当响上好几个月。

【词汇】rattle-snake *n.* 响尾蛇

6. Only very thrifty children manage to fill up a money box.

【译文】但是能把储蓄罐装满的只有屈指可数的几个特别节俭的孩子。

【用法】fill up a money box

仔细观察一下这句话，大家有没有这样的疑问：fill 是个及物动词，可以直接跟宾语，为什么这里作者要加一个介词 up？这里的 up 起了强调作用，强调前面那个动作的完全、彻底，有 completely 的意思。因此，up 在这里强调：孩子一般并不是满足于把钱放进储蓄罐，而是把储蓄罐填得满满的。

up 的这种用法，前文也有出现：第 7 课 chew up the money(up 在这里强调，狗一般并不是把钱咬成一半或几部分，而是喜欢把钱咬得粉碎)。

掌握 up 这个用法，相信可以解释大家很多的疑团。Have you finished up the dinner? 原来你会以为这里的 up 是画蛇添足了，现在知道了，up 是强调问话人的一种口气：你到底有没有把饭全吃掉？没有 up 就会变成：你吃完饭了吗？句子的语气变浅，问话人想要表达的意思也就变了味。

同样，我们可以说：

牛奶你到底喝光了没有？Have you drunk up the milk?

门有没有完全锁好了？Have you locked up the door?

你的储蓄罐有没有装满啊？Have you filled up your money box?

我厌烦了城市生活。I am fed up with life in the city.

"改革开放"政策，为什么英语中是 open-up policy，而不单单是 open policy，也是强调我们的开放是全面的开放，是敞开国门，走向世界的开放。

另有一个词与 up 有着异曲同工之妙，就是 out，也可以跟在动词后面表示动作的完全性。如：die out(死光，绝种)，sell out(货物售罄)，give out(精疲力竭)，put out the fire(把火完全扑灭)，write/list out the things I want(把我要的东西都列出来)。

【词汇】thrifty *adj.* 节俭的，节约的：a thrifty housewife/meal 节俭的家庭主妇/简单的一顿饭；be thrifty with grain 节约粮食

frugal, stingy, tight-fisted 都有"节俭的"之意。

【辨析】economical, thrifty 这些词都表示"节约的"之意。

economical：指正当使用财物，强调节省，避免浪费。

thrifty：侧重减缩开支，积蓄收入。

7. Very few of the fifty pence pieces and pound coins I have given him have found their way there.

【译文】我给了他不少 50 便士的硬币，但没有几个存到储蓄罐里。

【词组】find one's way(to/into...) 1. 到达目的地 2. 流入，进入

Rivers find their way to the sea. 条条江河通大海。

Nowaday computers have found their way to the common households in China.

如今在中国电脑已经进入寻常百姓家。

8. On his way to the sweet shop, he dropped his fifty pence and it bounced along the pavement and then disappeared down a drain.

【译文】在他去糖果店的路上，50 便士掉在地上，在人行道上跳了几下，掉进了阴沟里。

【用法】bounce 与 spring 的区别：前者在硬表面上跳，后者在软表面上跳。

另外 bounce 常常引申为一个人精力充沛：a bouncy person 精力充沛的人

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**pavement** *n.* 人行道(不是斑马线)

引申 pave the way for:make possible 为……铺平道路

The agreement paves the way for a lasting peace. 这项协议为持久的和平铺平了道路。

9. George took off his jacket, rolled up his sleeves and pushed his right arm through the drain cover.

【译文】乔治脱掉外套,卷起袖子,将右胳膊伸进了阴沟盖。

【用法】体会作者的几个用词:along, down, roll up, push through, anywhere, rub, using 等。

10. He could not find his fifty pence anywhere, and what is more, he could not get his arm out.

【译文】但他摸了半天也没找到那50便士硬币,他的胳膊反倒退不出来了。

【用法】what is more 而且;更糟的是。作插入语,用以通过新的附加信息对前文所述作进一步的强调。

what is worse, even worse, to pour oil on the fire 都表示类似含义。

过渡词语承上启下、穿针引线,可使段落的联系更为紧密,层次更为分明。下面是主体段写作中一些常用的过渡词语:

1)表示顺序的过渡词语:

firstly, secondly, thirdly...; first, second, third,...; first of all, in the first place, in the second place, in the first instance, in the second instance, for one thing,... for another, to begin with, next, also, besides, furthermore, moreover, in addition, what is more, beyond that, finally, last but not least

2)表示因果关系的过渡词语

consequently, as a consequence, as a result, therefore, thus, so, accordingly, because of this, hence, for this reason, given the reasons

3)表示比较的过渡词语

equally important, likewise, similarly, in the same way

4)表示对比转折的过渡词语

however, on the contrary, yet, whereas, on the other hand, in/by contrast, conversely, nevertheless, instead

5)表示举例的过渡词语

for example, for instance, as an example, as an illustration, as a case in point, let's take... as an example, such as, say, namely

11. A crowd of people gathered round him and a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter, but George was firmly stuck.

【译文】这时在他周围围了许多人,一位女士在乔治胳膊上抹了肥皂、黄油,但乔治的胳膊仍然卡得紧紧的。

【用法】stick 粘,卡住(fish bone/drawer/zip 等)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 16 Mary had a little lamb

本节重点和难点

- 多个形容词修饰同一个名词时的顺序
- it 作形式主语
- it 作形式宾语
- it is said that 句型结构

本课词汇

prize [praiz] *adj.* 珍贵的

tie [tai] *vt.* 系，拴

【词组】tie up 捆绑；包扎；联合

theft [θeft] *n.* 偷窃，窃案

accuse [əˈkjuːz] *vt.* 控告；谴责

【用法】accuse 后接 of 短语表示指控的内容；后接 for 短语表示指控的原因。

【辨析】accuse 后接 of；其对象称为 the accused 或 the accused person (man, woman)。

He accused them of drinking wine while driving. 他指控他们驾车时饮酒。

与之含义相近的 charge 为正式用语，意为"正式公开控告某行为"，后接 with。

deny [diˈnai] *vt.* 否定，否认，拒绝接受，拒绝给予

【词组】deny oneself sth. 节制；克己；摒弃/deny oneself to 不会见（客人）；谢绝（来客）

ashamed [əˈʃeimd] *adj.* 惭愧的，害臊的，羞愧的

【词组】be ashamed of 以……为耻辱/be ashamed of oneself for 羞愧；为……而羞愧/feel ashamed for sb. 替某人感到羞愧

apologize [əˈpɔlədʒaiz] *vi.* 道歉，认错

【用法】apologize to sb. for sth. 或 for doing sth. 为某事向某人道歉（不能直接接宾语）

dye [dai] *n.* 染料，染色 *v.* 着色于，染色

课文详解

1. She kept it tied to a tree in a field during the day and went to fetch it every evening.

【译文】她白天把羔羊拴在地里的一棵树上，每天晚上把它牵回家。

【用法】tie...to...把……拴（系）在……

【词汇】**tie** *vt.* 拴，系；untie 解开

tie a dog to a post 把狗拴在柱子上

be tied in a wedlock 结为伉俪

Two actresses tied for the Best Actress Award. 两名女演员并列获得最佳女演员奖。

tie *n.* 联系，平局，领带

maintain close ties with the masses 与群众保持密切联系

The match end in a tie. 比赛打成平局。

【联想】过去分词作宾语补足语 keep it tied to a tree

I keep this gun loaded. 我总是把枪装上子弹。

You'd better had your shoes mended. 你最好请人把鞋子补一补。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He has difficulty making himself understood. 他不能让别人理解自己。

He wanted his eggs fried. 他想把鸡蛋煎着吃。

He once heard the song sung in German. 又一次他听人用德语唱这支歌。

2. Dimitri immediately went to Aleko's house and angrily accused him of stealing the lamb.

【译文】迪米特里立刻去了阿列科家，气呼呼地指责他偷了羔羊。

【词汇】**accuse** *vt.* 指责，指控：accuse sb. of...谴责某人……；指控某人犯……罪

He was accused of corruption/robbery/murder/fraud/taking bribes. 他被控受贿/抢劫/谋杀/欺诈/行贿。

The teacher accused him of cheating in the examination. 老师指责他考试作弊。

The driver was accused of speeding. 这个司机被指控超速。

be falsely accused of fraud 被诬告行骗

3. Aleko denied taking it and led Dimitri into his backyard.

【译文】阿列科不承认，并把迪米特里领进院子。

【用法】deny doing sth.

There is no denying that...很显然……

There is no denying that this is a serious blow to the government.

很显然，这件事给政府一个严重的打击。

There is no blinking/sidestepping the fact that...不能否认这一事实……

There is no blinking the fact that Tom was her blue-eyed boy. 不可否认，汤姆是她最喜欢的男孩。

4. Ashamed of having acted so rashly, Dimitri apologized to Aleko for having accused him.

【译文】迪米特里为自己的鲁莽感到不好意思，向阿列科道了歉，说是错怪了他。

【用法】apologize to...for...因……向……道歉

【词汇】**ashamed** *adj.*"感到羞耻，惭愧"，在句中作表语 be ashamed of...

You ought to be ashamed of yourself/your behaviour. 你应该为自己/自己的行为感到羞耻。

He was ashamed of having lied to her. 他因对她撒了谎而感到惭愧。

它与 shameful 的区别：

shameful 可耻的：shameful behavior 可耻的行为；shameless 无耻的，不要脸的

5. Its wool, which had been dyed black, had been washed clean by rain!

【译文】染成黑色的羊毛被雨水冲得干干净净！

【用法】形容词 black 和 clean 在这里作主语补足语，修饰 the wool。

【词汇】**dye** *v.* 染(dyes, dyed, dyeing) dye sth. + *adj.*

She dyed the dress green. 她把连衣裙染成绿色。

Sunset dyed the sky red. 夕阳染红了天空。

区分它与 52 课 tint 的差别。

6. It was true that he had just bought a lamb, he explained, but his lamb was black.

【译文】不错，他的确刚买了一只羔羊，他解释说，但他的羔羊是黑色的。

It is true that...but...诚然……，但是……(转折)

It is true that she is a charming lady, but she is cold-hearted to others.

确实她很迷人，但对待别人都很冷漠。

It is true that China is a developing country, but she has great potential for development.

不错，中国是发展中国家，但她具有不可估量的发展潜力。

7. One of Mary's prize possessions...

【译文】玛丽最珍贵的财产之一……

【用法】(1)prize 在此作为形容词，意为"珍贵的"。

(2)possession 表示"财产"，通常用复数形式，如 personal possessions 个人财产。

prize *n.* 奖品，奖金，奖赏

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

precious *adj*. (本身具有价值)珍贵的

- valuable(内在价值)有价值的
- invaluable 无价的
- prize(情感上有价值)珍爱的
- dear 价格高,贵的

额外收获

形容词短语作状语,表示原因。

Afraid of difficulties, they prefer to take the easy road.

由于害怕困难,他们更愿意走那条好走的路。

Worried about her daughter, she went to London to visit her.

由于挂念女儿,她到伦敦去看她。

Anxious for a quick decision, the chairman called for a vote.

主席急于快速做出决定,要求投票表决。

Overjoyed, she dashed out of the house.

她大喜过望,急忙跑了出去。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world

本节重点和难点

- 介词+关系代词引导的定语从句
- 介词短语+关系代词引导的定语从句
- so... that... 与 so that... 结构的用法及区别
- 现在完成进行时

本课词汇

suspension [səs'penʃən] *n.* 悬,吊

agreeable [ə'gri:əbəl] *adj.* 宜人的

situation ['sitju'eiʃən] *n.* 状况,形势,局面;位置,场所;职位,职务;立场,处境

【辨析】situation 指与他物相关时的位置,position 指物自身的位置。

locate [ləu'keit] *v.* 找出……的位置,指出……的位置,使坐落于,位于

【词组】be located 位于(同 be situated)

immortal [i'mɔ:tl] *adj.* 不朽的,永存的

Brooklyn ['bruklin](地名)布鲁克林

Staten Island ['stætən 'ailənd](地名)斯塔顿岛

span [spæn] *n.* 跨度

take... into account 对……加以考虑

cable ['keibəl] *n.* 缆绳

concrete ['kɔnkri:t] *n.* 混凝土 *adj.* 具体的,实质的,有形的 *v.* 用混凝土修筑

【词组】in the concrete 具体地;实际上

【辨析】concrete 是指通过感官能看到、听到、触到的具体东西,与 abstract 相对;specific 是与"一般,模糊,笼统"相对的具体,即指具体细节。

suspend [səs'pend] *vt.* 悬挂

length [leŋθ] *n.* 根,段

estimate ['estimeit] *v.* 评估,估价 *n.* ['estimət] 估计,估价,评价

capacity [kə'pæsiti] *n.* 能力,接受力;容量,能量,容积

immensity [i'mensiti] *n.* 巨大

elegant ['eligənt] *adj.* 优雅的,文雅的;简练的,简洁的

faintly ['feintli] *adv.* 微细地,微微地

课文详解

1. The longest suspension bridge in the world

【译文】世界上最长的吊桥

【词汇】suspension bridge 吊桥

suspension, suspend

pend-pens-悬挂:independence 独立;pending 未决定的;pendulum 钟摆

suspend:暂缓,停职,停学

Fred is suspended from school for a week for bad conduct.

弗雷德因品行不良被停学一周。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Verrazano, an Italian about whom little is known, sailed into New York Harbour in 1524 and named it Angouleme.

【译文】1524年，一位鲜为人知的意大利人维拉萨诺驾船驶进纽约港，并将该港命名为安古拉姆。

【用法】name与surname

1. name可用作名词、动词或形容词。

① 名词

a. 指人、动物、事物等的"名字，名称"时，为可数名词。如：I forget the names of the two places. 我忘了这两个地方的名字了。

b. 作"名义"解时，为不可数名词，不能与不定冠词连用，但可被物主代词修饰，如：He is a mathematician in name but not in reality. 他是个有名无实的数学家。

c. 作"名声，名誉"解时，为可数名词，但通常用单数形式，可与不定冠词或物主代词连用。如：This school has a name for good science teaching. 这所学校以优良的理科教学而出名。

d. 作"名人"解时，为可数名词，常与big、famous、great等连用。如：He is a great name in medicine. 他是医学界的名人。

② 动词

a. 作"给……取名(命名)"解，此时其后不可接as。如：They named the child John. 他们给小孩取名为约翰。

b. 作"说出……的名字，列举，提到"解。如：Can you name all the plants in the garden? 你能说出花园里所有植物的名字吗？

c. 作"任命，提名"解时，其后除跟宾语外，还可以带宾语补足语，宾语补足语可直接用名词表示，也可用"as/for+名词"表示，或以"to be+名词"结构表示。宾语补足语和指职务的名词，其前不加冠词。如：They name him monitor of the class. 他们提名他当班长。

d. 作"指定，确定(日子、价钱)"解。如：We've named August 23rd for our wedding day. 我们已选定8月23日为我们结婚的日子。

e. name after作"照……命名，以……的名字命名"解。如：Our eldest son was named George after his uncle. 我们的长子随他舅父的名字取名为乔治。

2. surname可用作名词或动词。

① 作名词，它作"姓，诨名，绰号"解。如：Alan Smith's surname is Smith. 阿兰·史密斯的姓是"Smith"。

② 作及物动词，它表示"给……取绰号(别号)"。如：He was surnamed the"Owl", from his habit of burning the midnight oil. 他因有熬夜的习惯而得了"夜猫子"的绰号。

3. He described it as a very agreeable situation located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river.

【译文】他对该港作了这样的描述："地理位置十分适宜，位于两座小山的中间，一条大河从中间流过。"

【用法】(1)as+宾语补语

as在宾语后通常引出宾语补足语，可用于该句型的动词有see, view, look upon, recognize, regard, treat, accept, take等：He caught sight of a figure whom he immediately recognized as Bill Wilkins. 他看到一个人影，马上就认出他是比尔·威尔金斯。

(2)agreeable *adj.*

① 心情愉快的，令人愉快的，宜人的：agreeable weather 宜人的天气/an agreeable person 讨人欢喜的人/Her voice is agreeable to the ear. 她的声音悦耳。

② 赞成的，同意的，感兴趣的：He was quite agreeable to my proposal. 他对我的提议很感兴趣。

(3)located within...为形容词短语作定语，修饰situation。

体会be packed with、be crowded with以及be loaded with的程度区别。

感受学过的几个"位于"的异同：be located, be situated, stand(第3课)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(4)介词短语 in the midst of which 引导一个定语从句修饰 two hills;in the midst of 表示"在……的中间"。

Sound is a tool by means of which people communicate ideas with each other.

声音是人们互相交流思想的工具。

Here's the dictionary,in the back of which you'll find a list of proper names.

这就是那本辞典,在它的后面你可以看到一个专有名词表。

In the midst of which flowed a great river. 其中流淌着一条大河。

表示方位的介词短语放句首句子全部倒装。

In the center of the school stands a fountain. 在学校的中央有一座喷泉。

(5)a great river 这里指 the Hadson River(哈得逊河),在从句中作主语。

4. Though Verrazano is by no means considered to be a great explorer, his name will probably remain immortal, for on November 21st, 1964, the greatest bridge in the world was named after him.

【译文】虽然维拉萨诺绝对算不上一个伟大的探险家,但他的名字将流芳百世,因为 1964 年 11 月 21 日建成的一座世界上最长的吊桥是以他的名字命名的。

【辨析】

(1) by this means, by means of

① by this means 作"凭(用)这种手段"。如:You can do it by this means. 你可用这种方法做。

② by means of(等于 with the help of)"用,依靠,借助于"。如:I think this can be done by means of electricity. 我想可以使用电做到这一点。

(2)name after(为纪念某人某物)以……命名,同 takes one's name from。如:This island is named after its discoverer. 这座孤岛以它发现人的名字命名。John is named after his grandpa. 约翰是以他爷爷的名字命名的。Harvard University was named after its founder, John Harvard. 哈佛大学是以其创始人约翰·哈佛的名字而命名的。The machine is named after its inventor. 这台机器是以其发明者的名字命名的。

【词汇】immortal *adj*. 永生的,流芳百世的

Shakespeare is one of those immortals. 莎士比亚是流芳百世的伟人之一。

mort-死亡:immortality 不朽,不死;mortal 不免一死的;mortally 致命地;mortician 殡葬业者;mortgage 抵押

5. It has a span of 4,260 feet.

【译文】桥的跨度达 4,260 英尺。

【用法】span"跨度",既可以指空间也可以指时间,如:a span of a century 一个世纪的时间

Over a span of three years a surprising amount has been achieved.

在三年的时间里,取得了惊人的成就。

life span 寿命

【联想】形容高度深度长度的句型:

rise to a height of 高度达到

extend to a depth of 深度达到

The coastline extends/stretches thousands of meters. 海岸线有好几千米长。

6. It has been estimated that if the bridge were packed with cars, it would still only be carrying a third of its total capacity.

【译文】据估计,若桥上摆满了汽车,也只不过是桥的总承载力的 1/3。

【用法】(1)It has been estimated that..."据估计",that 引导主语从句,it 作形式主语。

(2)if 引导一个非真实条件句,从句用虚拟语气,因而动词用 were 而不是 was。

(3)情态动词 would 与动词进行式(be carrying)连用,表示在当时桥上摆满汽车的情况下,其承载量只是总量的 1/3。

(4)be packed with 意为"挤满,塞满",如:The bus was packed with people. 公共汽车里挤满了人。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(5)capacity: *n.* 容量,容积;承受量

The seating capacity of the theatre is 1500. 这歌剧院有 1500 个座位。

The factory has a productive capacity of 200 cars a week.

这家工厂的最高生产能力为每星期 200 辆汽车。

a capacity crowd 坐得满满的观众

He attended my party in a private capacity. 他以秘密身份参加了我的晚会。

7. Despite its immensity, it is both simple and elegant, fulfilling its designer's dream to create "an enormous object drawn as faintly as possible".

【译文】尽管此桥很大,但它的结构简单,造型优美,实现了设计者企图创造一个"尽量用细线条勾画出一个庞然大物"的梦想。

【词汇】**elegant** *adj.* 优美的,别致的

an elegant woman 一个高雅的女子;an elegant piece of furniture 一件精美的家具;elegant clothes 精致的衣服;elegant manners 优雅的举止

leg-,lect-选择;elegance *n.* 典雅,高雅;elegible 合格的;negligible 可疏忽的,不重要的;negligent 疏忽的;negligence 疏忽

额外收获

1. 带介词的关系代词

在正式的用法中,可以用介词加关系代词来引导定语从句。关系代词 whom 指人;关系代词 which 指物,whose 既可指人,又可指物。如:

(1)prep + which/whom...

The person to whom this letter was addressed died three years ago.

这封信的收信人三年前去世了。

(2) prep + which/whose...

The minister was the person in whose honor the state dinner was given.

这就是为他举行国宴的那位部长。

In 1980 he caught a serious illness from whose effect he still suffers.

1980 年,他得了一场大病,到现在他还在受病痛的折磨。

2. 写文章时应注意句子类型的多样化。这样文章中的句子长短错落有致,更能吸引读者的目光;由此谈谈英语中写作的句型:

(1)陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句

就用途来分,句子有陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句四种。

(2)简单句、并列句、复合句和并列复合句。

句子按结构划分为简单句、并列句、复合句和并列复合句。其中复合句包括一个主句和一个或更多的从句,并用连词来表明它们之间的关系。短的简单句常用来表达需要强调的重要意思。长的复合句由于可以容纳多种修饰语而能清楚准确地表达复杂的意思。

(3)松散句、圆周句和对偶句

从修辞的角度看,句子有松散句、圆周句和对偶句之分。松散句把主要意思放在次要意思之前,先说最重要的事情,因而读者在看到最初的几个词后就知道这句话的意思。圆周句的安排则相反:把最重要的意思放到最后面,并且直到最后一个词时句子的结构才完整,读者只有看完整句话才知道要说什么。

试比较:

She decided to study English though she was interested in music.(松散句)

Although she was interested in music, she finally decided to study English.(圆周句)

再例如:

It is a truth universally acknowledged, that a single man in possession of a good fortune must be in

www.TopSage.com

want of a wife.

——Jane Austen

这是《傲慢与偏见》的第一句话。它明显是个圆周句，因为它的结构和意思在最后一个词之前都不完整。这种结构形成意思上的高潮，最后一个词是最重要的词，同时由于在这之前堆积了很多词，因而准备很充分。

归纳：松散句比较明白、简单、自然和直接；圆周句比较复杂、着重、正式和文雅。

两个结构相似但是意思相反的平行从句便是对偶句。

In Plato's opinion man was made for philosophy; in Bacon's opinion philosophy was made for man.

——Thomas Babington Macaulay

对偶句会给人留下深刻的印象，且声调和节奏优美。对偶句主要用于说明文、辩论文和演说等正式文体中。

(4)短句和长句

短句一般语气重；长句则适宜于准确表达复杂的思想，因为它含有很多修饰语。短句可陈述重要的事实和想法；长句则可解释观点和理论或描写有很多细节的事物。

以上讨论了各种句子的结构，基本原则是结构应与要表达的思想相符。换句话说，思想决定结构的选择。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 18 Electric currents in modern art

本节重点和难点

- 表示“不再”的短语
- 形容词化的动词的过去分词
- “情态动词＋have＋过去分词”表示对过去的推测
- 动词的过去分词作状语

本课词汇

current ['kʌrənt] *adj.* 流行的，通用的；当前的，现在的 *n.* 水流，气流，电流；潮流，趋势

【词组】current account 活期存折

sculpture ['skʌlptʃə] *n.* 雕塑品

mistaken [mis'teikən] *adj.* 错误的

gallery ['gæləri] *n.* 美术馆

exhibit [ig'zibit] *v.* 展出，显出，陈列 *n.* 展品，展览

oddly ['ɔdli] *adv.* 奇特地，古怪地

attach [ə'tætʃ] *vt.* 系，缚

【词组】attach oneself to 依附；参加（党派等）；热爱，依恋/attach...to 认为有（重要性、意义等）；归因于；适用于/be attached to 喜爱；爱慕；附属于

sphere [sfiə] *v.* 球，球体；范围，领域

【词组】sphere of influence 势力范围

magnetize ['mægnitaiz] *vt.* 使磁化

repel [ri'pel] *vt.* 排斥

flicker ['flikə] *vi.* 闪烁

emit [i'mit] *vt.* 放射，发射

flash [flæʃ] *n.* 闪烁，闪光；徽章；很短的新闻电报 *v.* 闪光，闪烁；闪现，闪过；突然发出，似闪光般发出

prehistoric [ˌpri:hi'stɔrik] *adj.* 史前的

electronic [iˌlek'trɔnik] *adj.* 电子的

peculiar [pi'kju:ljə] *adj.* 特有的，特殊的

shock [ʃɔk] *n.* 震动，冲击；震惊，休克；电击 *vt.* 使震惊；（使）触电

【词组】die of shock 死于休克

emotionally [i'məuʃənəli] *adv.* 感情上地

课文详解

1. Electric currents in modern art

【译文】现代艺术中的电流

【词组】cur-跑：occur 发生；occurrence 事件，发生；recur 再发生，重现；incur 招致

electric current 电流

air current 气流

water current 水流

current affairs 时事

currency *n.* 货币：foreign currency 外币

2. In spite of this, some people—including myself—were surprised by a recent exhibition of modern sculpture.

www.TopSage.com

【译文】尽管如此，最近举办的一次现代雕塑展览还是使一些人(包括我在内)大吃了一惊。

【词根】hibit-拿；exhibitioner 展览者；exhibitor 参加展览会的人；inhibit 阻止，抑制；inhibited 性格拘谨的，内向的；prohibit 禁止；prohibition 禁止；prohibitor 禁止者

3. Oddly shaped forms that are suspended from the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are quite familiar to everybody.

【译文】人们所熟悉的是悬挂在天花板上、造型奇特、随风飘荡的雕塑品。

【用法】(1)oddly shaped 为过去分词短语作定语，修饰 forms。forms 在此指(展品)"种类"，意即"奇形怪状的(展品)种类"。

(2)that are...a gust of wind 为定语从句，置后修饰 forms。从 oddly 至 a gust of wind 构成句子的主语部分。

(3)be familiar to sb. ...(某事物)为某人所熟悉

Is this area familiar to you? 你熟悉这一地区吗?

be familiar with sth...(某人)熟悉……

I am not really familiar with the custom here. 我并不真正通晓这里的风俗。

The house is familiar to him. = He is familiar with the house. 他很熟悉这所房子。

【词组】in response to = in answer to 作为对……的答复，反应：She went to open the door in response to the knock. 她听到敲门声去开门。

in response 作为回答，作为反应：He waved his hand in response. 他挥手作答。

respond to 对……作出反应：She didn't respond to his advances. 她对他的求爱没有作出反应。

4. Lined up against the wall, there were long thin wires attached to the metal spheres.

【译文】靠墙排列着许多细长的电线，而电线又连着金属球。

【用法】(1)lined up against the wall 为过去分词短语作状语，说明主语 wires 的状况。

against 有"靠着"的意思

rest the piano against the wall 把钢琴靠墙放下

lean against the blackboard 靠着黑板

(2)attached to the metal spheres 为过去分词短语作定语，后置修饰 wires。attach...to..."把……同……连/结/系在一起"。

【词汇】**attach** *vt.* 连，系

A is attached to B...A 和 B 连在一起

Attached, you will find...随函附上……(相当于第 8 课的 enclosed)

5. The spheres had been magnetized and attracted and repelled each other all the time.

【译文】金属球经过磁化，相互之间不断地吸引和排斥。

【用法】(1)magnetize 使磁化，magnetic 为其形容词"有磁性的"；

(2)attract 与 repel 分别为"吸引"，"排斥"：

Like attracts like. 物以类聚。

Water repels oil. 油水不相溶。

【词汇】**repel** *vt.* 排斥

-pel：驱赶

compel 强迫；dispel 驱散；expel 开除，驱逐；propel 促进

repellent *adj.* 防……的，令人厌恶的；*n.* 驱虫剂

The idea of eating dog meat is repellent to him. 他一想到吃狗肉就恶心。

6. These lights flickered continuously like traffic lights which have gone mad.

【译文】灯炮一刻不停地闪烁着，就像失去了控制的红绿灯。

【用法】(1)which have gone mad 为定语从句，修饰 traffic lights。go mad 原意为"发疯"、"发狂"，这里用来表示"失控"之意，为拟人手法，go 为系动词。

(2)flicker 与 flash 的不同：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

flicker(灯光等)摇曳,不稳定昏暗的光;a flickering candle 摇曳的蜡烛;

flash 迅速猛烈刺眼的光,比如闪电;a flash in the pan 昙花一现

7. Sparks were emitted from small black boxes and red lamps flashed on and off angrily.

【译文】小黑盒子里迸出火花,红色灯泡发怒似地忽明忽暗。

【用法】(1)on and off"断断续续地,间歇地",修饰动词的副词短语。

(2)angrily 为副词,修饰 flash,同 go mad 一样,作者使用了拟人手法。

【词汇】**emit** *vt.* 排放;放射,发出:The chimney emitted a cloud of smoke. 烟囱冒出一股浓烟。

emission 排放

the exhaust emitted by cars 汽车排放的废气

8. These peculiar forms not only seemed designed to shock people emotionally, but to give them electric shocks as well!

【译文】好像设计这些奇形怪状的产品不仅是为了给人感情上的强烈刺激,而且还想给人以电击似的!

【词汇】**peculiar** *adj.* 奇怪的,异常的;特有的(to)

This style of cooking is peculiar to the southwest of the country.

这种烹饪风格是这个国家西南部所特有的。

额外收获

1. angry *adj.* 拟人用法

要想写出活泼的句子,优美的文章,离不开修辞手法的运用。很多学生写文章时,仅仅满足把事情说清楚,平铺直叙,只注重语言通顺不通顺,合理不合理,对语言的运用不作深究,忽略了修辞与写作的"攀枝结节"。

下面我们欣赏一些常用的修辞手法:

(1)比喻,拟人——比喻能化抽象为形象,拟人能变无灵为有灵;试比较以下两例:

The bad news was a dagger into her heart.(隐喻)

The bad news knocked at her door at midnight.(拟人)

前句说明了坏消息对她的打击如同刀子戳她的心一样难受,通过两者的相似点,使人感到坏消息的强烈程度;后者把坏消息比成一个撞击房门的活生生的人,说明了坏消息在深更半夜突然而至。这比简单说 She got the bad news at midnight. 形象多了。

(2)夸张——夸张能强化语义,突出形象,渲染感情。试比较以下两例:

She was extremely anxious.(她十分紧张。)意思一目了然,表现却显得单薄。如果改成 She had her heart in her mouth. 是不是味道完全不一样了? 同样再看一句:

She went home, crying terribly.

She went home in a flood of tears. /She went home, tears streaming down.

与使用夸张手法的后者相比,前者要黯然失色了许多吧?

(3)反语——反语可以表示挖苦讽刺,有时更增添幽默诙谐的情趣,让你的语言更俏皮:

If people keep telling you to quit smoking, don't listen... They are probably trying to trick you into living longer.(如果有人苦口婆心劝你戒烟,不要理他……他们大概是想骗你活得长些。)这是美国防癌协会的一则戒烟广告。它改变了正面说教的传统方式,而采用了反语方式进行规劝。烟民们会在反语中得到警惕:惟有戒烟才有利于健康,才能活得长久。可见,在一定语言环境中,反语比正说更有力量,更能达到效果。

(4)押韵——相同(相似)音节的重复很容易引起读者的注意,使语句具有和谐的韵律美:

Our hopes, our hearts, our hands are with those on every continent who are building democracy and freedom.

我们的希望、我们的内心、我们的双手与各大洲为民主和自由而奋斗的人民紧紧相连。

这是美国前总统克林顿就职演说中的一句话,他利用头韵(hope, heart, hand 三个单词清辅音三次

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

重复/h/)使得演说音韵悠扬，节奏明朗。

许多英语谚语利用押韵给人一种音韵美，不但增强了英语谚语的艺术魅力，也使它更易于诵读和记忆，可谓诵之金声玉振，闻之行云流水。如：Live and learn.（活到老，学到老。）；No sweat，no sweet.（不劳动，不得食。）

英语中的修辞手法品目繁多，诸如反复、通感、借代、委婉、矛盾修辞等等。据粗略统计，莎士比亚剧作中就有60多种，而上文只对常见的修辞格加以简要介绍。大家记住，文章中有效地运用修辞手法，能化平淡为新奇，化呆板为鲜活，化枯燥为生动，化冗杂为洗练，化晦涩为明快，化一般为艺术，唤起美感，娱人耳目，增强语言的表现力、说服力和感染力！

2. 分清 in the center of 和 in the middle of 的区别：前者只用于空间概念，后者时间、空间通用。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 19 A very dear cat

本节重点和难点

- that 引导的原因状语从句
- 动词的现在分词短语作状语
- 动词的过去分词短语作定语
- 双宾语结构

本课词汇

dear [diə] *adj.* 珍贵的，心爱的；昂贵的

kidnapper ['kidnæpə] *n.* 绑架者

considerable [kən'sidərəbl] *adj.* 相当大的

【用法】considerable 作"大量的"解时，只能修饰不可数名词。

wealthy ['welθi] *adj.* 富的，有钱的

orderly ['ɔːdəli] *adj.* 整齐的，有秩序的 *adv.* 依次地，有条理地

【词组】an orderly study 整洁的书房/an orderly person 有条理的人/intense and orderly work 紧张有序的工作

worried ['wʌrid] *adj.* 担心的，焦虑的

disappearance [ˌdisə'piərəns] *n.* 消失，失踪

anonymous [ə'nɔniməs] *adj.* 匿名的

ransom ['rænsəm] *n.* 赎金

cardboard ['kɑːdbɔːd] *n.* 硬纸板

withdraw [wið'drɔː] (withdrew [wið'druː], withdrawn [wið'drɔːn]) *v.* (从银行)取钱

punctually ['pʌŋktʃuəli] *adv.* 准时地

astound [ə'staund] *vt.* 使大吃一惊

课文详解

1. Mrs. Eleanor Ramsay, a very wealthy old lady, has shared a flat with her cat, Rastus, for a great many years.

【译文】埃莉诺·拉姆齐太太是一个非常富有的老妇人，多年来，一直同她养的猫拉斯特斯住在一所公寓里。

【用法】在英语中，如果某一名词由若干形容词来修饰，通常要有一定的顺序。其排列顺序的几条主要规则如下：

①修饰性形容词＋说明用途的形容词＋名词，如：an expensive tennis racket 一只昂贵的网球拍/a big dining room 一个大餐厅

②说明制造材料的形容词＋说明用途的形容词＋名词，如：a big wooden dining room 一个木制大餐厅

③说明来源的形容词＋说明制造材料的形容词＋名词，如：a pair of British leather boots 一双英国皮靴/a European writing desk 一张欧式写字台

④说明颜色的形容词＋说明来源的形容词＋其他，如：a pair of red Spanish leather boots 一双红色的西班牙皮靴

⑤说明年龄、形状、大小、程度等的形容词＋说明颜色的形容词＋其他，如：a pair of new red

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Spanish leather boots 一双新的红色西班牙皮靴

在实际使用中，形容词的排列顺序十分复杂，而且中英文中的形容词顺序的排列有所不同，还应在学习中多加体会。

【词汇】**wealthy** *adj.* 有钱的，富的：a wealthy man 一个富人；*n.* 财富：a man of wealth 一个富人

-y 形容词后缀，加在名词后面，表示"有……的，……多的"

rainy，icy，bloody，worthy，guilty，faulty，greedy，spicy

-y 名词后缀，加在形容词后面，构成抽象名词，表示性质、情况、状态

difficulty，jealousy，modesty，beggary，honesty，mastery，jeopardy

后缀往往能改变词性，但不改变意思；前缀不改变词性，但往往改变意思。

2. Rastus leads an orderly life.

【译文】拉斯特斯过着有规律的生活。

【用法】orderly 意为"有秩序的，有规律的"。

ly 作形容词后缀一般理解为两种：

(1) 情感：friendly，deadly，lovely，lonely，likely，lively，ugly，brotherly

(2) 频率：daily，weekly，monthly，yearly，early

3. Three days after Rastus' disappearance, Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter.

【解析】拉斯特斯失踪了 3 天后，拉姆齐太太收到一封匿名信。

【词汇】**disappearance** *n.* 失踪(appearance 出现，appear 出现)

dis-表示"否定，反对，除去，分开"：disagree，disapprove，disbelieve，discourage，disguise，disregard，distract，differ，difficult，diffident

anonymous *adj.* 匿名的

an anonymous letter 一封匿名信

anonymity *n.* 无名，匿名：work in anonymity 默默无闻地工作

nonym-名字：synonym，antonym

4. The writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands and would be returned immediately if Mrs. Ramsay paid a ransom of £1,000.

【译文】写信人声称拉斯特斯安然无恙，只要拉姆齐太太愿意支付 1,000 英镑赎金，便可以立即将猫送还。

5. At first, she decided to go to the police, but fearing that she would never see Rastus again—the letter had made that quite clear—she changed her mind.

【译文】开始拉姆齐太太打算报告警察，但又害怕再也见不到拉斯特斯了——这点，信上说得十分明白——于是便改变了主意。

【用法】make...clear"讲清楚，阐明"，宾语太长，可把宾语补足语提到宾语的前面。

She with made her objections clear. 她明确表示反对。

6. She withdrew £1,000 from her bank and followed the kidnapper's instructions.

【译文】她从银行取出 1,000 英镑，并照绑架者的要求做了。

【用法】(1) withdraw troops/order/labour/money/custom 后面形形色色宾语很多

(2) follow sb.'s instructions/advice/directions/teachings 遵从某人的吩咐/建议/指导/教导

follow sb.'s example 以某人为榜样

follow the crowd 随大流

follow the pattern 循规蹈矩

follow the suit 学样

7. The next morning, the box had disappeared but Mrs. Ramsay was sure that the kidnapper would keep his word.

【译文】第二天早晨，放钱的盒子不见了，但拉姆齐太太确信绑架者是会履行诺言的。

【用法】(1) word *n.* "诺言"，只用单数形式：keep/break one's word 守信用/不守信用

www.TopSage.com

大家网

You can trust him; he's a man of his word. 你可以相信他，他是个守信用的人。

keep one's word = fulfill one's word 遵守诺言

(2) sure enough：不出所料，果真

TopSage.com

He promised to come and sure enough he did. 他允诺要来，果真来了。

8. The police were astounded when Mrs. Ramsay told them what she had done.

【译文】拉姆齐太太把她所做的事告诉了警察，警察听后大为吃惊。

【辨析】surprise, wonder, startle, astonish, amaze, alarm, frighten, dumbfound

(1) surprise "使惊讶"，是最一般的用语，表示突然的或出于意外的意味。如：His answer surprised her. 他的回答使她深为惊讶。

(2) wonder "惊异，惊叹"，意味是最弱或不定的用语。如：I had ceased to wonder at the cruelty of Fate. 对命运的残忍我不再感到惊异。

(3) startle 指"使吃惊，惊跳"，由于突然的惊吓，使某人或某物惊得跳起来。如：Sirens always statle me. 汽笛声总是把我吓一大跳。

(4) astonish"使惊愕，使吃惊"，较 surprise 意味加强，特指不可解释的事情，用于不可理解的事。另外，astonish 所表示惊异的时间较 surprise 长久。如：He astonished many people by failing in college work after getting high grades in high school. 他在中学得到很高分数而在大学中不及格，令许多人感到惊愕。

(5) amaze"使惊愕"。较以上各词意味更强，含有心理上的混乱惶惑之意。astonish 指对感情(emotion)而言，amaze 对理智(intellect)而言。如：New scientific discoveries constantly amaze us. 新的科学发明常使我们感到惊异。

(6) alarm"使惊骇，报知危险"之意。如：The noise of the shot alarmed hundreds of birds. 枪声惊动了千百只鸟。

(7) frighten"使惊怖，使害怕"。如：The barking of the dog frightened the burglar away. 狗吠声将那贼人吓跑了。

(8) dumbfound"使惊讶得发呆"，指使人吃惊得说不出话来。如：The news was so shocking that it dumbfounded us for a moment. 那消息真令人震惊，它使我们一时目瞪口呆。

9. Considering the amount she paid, he was dear in more ways than one!

【译文】想到她所花的那笔钱，她的心疼就具有双重意义了。

【用法】由动词转化而来的介词

considering 鉴于 concerning/regarding/touching/respecting 关于；pending 待决；including 包括；notwithstanding 虽然，尽管；following 在……后；according to 根据

Notwithstanding some financial problems, the school has had a successful year. 虽然有些经费问题，这个学校一年来还是很成功的。He took charge of the family business following his father's death. 他父亲去世后他就接手了这个家族企业。Considering the strength of the opposition, we did very well to score two goals. 考虑到对方的实力，我们进了两个球就很不错了。Given the lack of fit between gifted students and their schools, it is not surprising that such students often have little good to say about their school experience. 针对有天赋的学生与学校之间缺少适当的沟通这一弊端，这样的学生通常不会说该校教学经验的好话，这是不足为奇的。

10. A very dear cat

【译文】一只贵重的宝贝猫

【用法】dear 一词的双关用法

双关——双关即用一个词或一句话表达两层不同的意思，或插科打诨，或借题发挥，或旁敲侧击，或指桑骂槐，使语言妙趣横生。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

比如我们课文中的 dear 包含两层意思:1)宝贝的,心爱的,2)是这位女士用高昂的代价换来的。

双关是英语中非常常见,极其活跃的一种修辞。

Why people are so tired in April? Because they have just gone through a long march. march 是一语双关,因此这种修辞手法在谜语中大量运用。

双关在生活中比比皆是:

We must all hang together, otherwise we shall all hang together.(我们大家必须紧密地团结在一起,否则我们大家必然会一起被绞死。)这句名言出自美国政治家、作家富兰克林之口,句中两处用到 hang 这个词,妙在一语双关,前者意为"挂,捆,绑",引申为"团结";后者则表示"绞刑,上吊",深刻而幽默地说明了不团结便灭亡的道理。

A deal with us means a good deal to you.

和我们做买卖意味着您做了一笔好买卖。

该句的妙处在于很好地利用了句中 deal 的三种含义,"做买卖"、"一笔好买卖"和"许多"。a good deal 构成一个绝妙的双关。

广告词中的双关:

1)All is well that ends well.

这则广告实际是一条英语成语,意思是"结局好,全都好"。但广告制作者把它用于香烟广告中,ends 就具有了双重意义:动词"结束"和名词"香烟蒂"。这句香烟广告词可以套用原来成语的翻译模式,译成"烟蒂好,烟就好"。

2)The driver is safer when the road is dry;The road is safer when the driver is dry.

这则宣传交通安全的广告运用了 dry 一词的两重词义(干燥的;没饮酒的)构成双关,对司机很有警示作用。翻译时,dry 一词的两重意义在上、下句中只能各取一意:路面干燥,司机安全;司机清醒,道路安全。

3)A better stretch for the long stretch.(航空公司广告)

这是一词多义的双关。第一个"stretch"是"伸展"的意思,第二个"stretch"意为"连续的一段时间",广告的意思是"为旅客在长时间的旅行中提供更好地自由伸展的空间。"两个"stretch"前后呼应,使消费者一听就感到舒服惬意。

4)Try our sweet corn. You'll smile from ear to ear.(甜玉米广告)

短语"from ear to ear"(笑得合不拢嘴)中的"ear"(耳朵)又有"玉米穗"的含义。这则广告利用双关语 ear 表达了双重的意思:"你一尝就会吃一穗又一穗,高兴得合不拢嘴。"

5)You will go nuts for the nuts you get in Nux.(坚果广告)

"Nux"为坚果商标,发音与"nuts"相近,短语"go nuts"表示"兴高采烈",第二个"nuts"义为"坚果",三者连用各取其义,充满情趣。

谐音双关:

More sun and air for your son and heir.

充足的阳光,清新的空气,一切为了您的子孙后代。

在这则海滨浴场的宣传广告中,制作者巧妙地运用了 sun-son,air-heir 这两对谐音字,使广告语言不仅和谐悦耳,读来朗朗上口,而且风趣幽默,具有感召力。

双关的翻译

双关的神韵和风采,在译文中尽量保留。如:

First gentleman: Thou art always figuring disease in me, but thou art full of error, I am sound.

Lucio: Nay, not as one would say, healthy; but so sound as things that are hollow; impiety has made

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

a feast of thee.（整个对话之谐趣尽系双关词汇 sound。）

绅士甲：你总以为我有病，其实你大错特错，我的身体响当当的。

路奇奥：响当当的，可并不结实，就像空心的东西那样响当当的，你的骨头都空了，好色的毛病把你掏空了。

额外收获

同位语

在一个名词的后面，可以跟另一个名词性的结构，进一步说明他是谁或它是什么，这种名词性结构叫同位语。

His only interest in life, playing football, has brought him many friends.

他生活中唯一感兴趣的东西——踢足球使他得到很多朋友。

Paul Jones, the famous art critic, died in his sleep last night.

保罗·约翰，一个著名的艺术批评家，昨晚在睡梦中死去。

如果句子主语是一个人称代词，它的同位语通常要提到主语前面。

Formerly a worker himself, he was now an engineer.

他过去是工人，现在当了工程师。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 20 Pioneer pilots

本节重点和难点

- 过去完成进行时的用法
- be going to 表示计划或安排好将来要发生的动作
- 动词不定式作后置定语
- "enough"的用法

本课词汇

pioneer [ˌpaiəˈniə] *n.* 先驱，开拓者，创导者

lord [lɔːd] *n.* 主人，长官，君主，贵族；上帝，基督

【词组】(as) drunk as a lord〈口语〉酩酊大醉/live like a lord 过着贵族似的豪华生活/Lord bless me!（=Lord bless my soul!）老天爷保佑！哎呀！/lord of creation 万物之灵；人类/treat sb. like a lord 阔绰地款待某人

Calais [ˈkælei]（地名）加来

overland [ˌəuvəˈlænd] *adj.* 陆上的

课文详解

1. Pioneer pilots

【译文】飞行员的先驱

【词缀】-eer 人：engineer 工程师；mountaineer 登山者；profiteer 投机商人；volunteer 志愿者；auctioneer 拍卖师

2. Over a year passed before the first attempt was made.

【译文】一年多过去了才有人出来进行第一次尝试。

【辨析】before long 和 long before

before long（不久以后）和 long before（很久以前）在这里都是副词。before long 作 before a long time has passed 解，是"不久以后"。如：He came before long. 是"（过去某时的）不久以后他来了。"不是"他在长久以前来了。"又如：I hope to see you before long. 我希望不久以后见到你。

long before（很久以前），一般指过去某时很久以前的时间，也就是说在直接引语中用 long ago，而在间接引语中应改为 long before。

一般说来 before long 多用于将来时和过去时的句子，而 long before 常用于过去（完成）时的句子中。

Over a year passed before... 这里的 before 要引起注意，不要落入俗套翻成"在……之前"，最好把中文的口气翻出来"才"。

类似句子参见第 2 课，很经典：It struck thirteen times before it stopped.

3. He had travelled only seven miles across the Channel when his engine failed and he was forced to land on the sea.

【译文】他只在海峡上空飞行了 7 英里，引擎就发生了故障，他只好降落在海面上。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**fail** *vi*. 失灵，出故障

The rocket's engine failed a few seconds after takeoff. 发射后几秒钟，火箭的发动机便失灵了。

The president's health is failing fast. 总统的健康每况愈下。

failure 衰竭：She died of heart failure. 她死于心脏衰竭。

【辨析】force，have，make，oblige

这些词作动词都指运用不可抗拒的物质上、精神上的力量，驱使或强迫人去做某事，或去完成某个动作。

(1) force 通常指使用权力、能量或力气完成某事或制止反抗，是上述词中语气最强的词，宾语的动作常带有不情愿的意味。如：to force a confession out of someone 迫使某人招供。

(2) have 通常只用于 have sth. done 表示"让别人做某事"，即"让某事由别人来完成"，或 have sb. do 和 have sb. doing 都表示"让(使)某人做某事。"它们的复合宾语的逻辑主语都是动作的发出者。美国英语习惯用 have 代替 make。如：She intended to have her daughter educated in Japan. 她打算让女儿到日本读书。

(3) make 表示强迫的意思，使用频率高，意为"使做某事或成为……"。如：Money makes the mare (to) go. 有钱能使鬼推磨。

(4) oblige 意为"不得不"，指由于生理上、理智上或道德上的需要，促使某人做某事，强迫的意味较弱，常用被动语态。如：Courtesy obliges a man to respond to an invitation. 礼貌迫使人接受邀请。

【用法】when his engine failed 这里的 when 是中国学生最容易疏忽的意思："突然"。

如：I am watering the flowers when it begins to rain. 我正在浇花，突然下雨了。

4. It looked as if there would be an exciting race across the Channel.

【译文】看来会有一场激烈的飞越英吉利海峡的竞争。

【用法】as if"仿佛，好像"引导方式状语从句，从句用虚拟语气。

as if/though 均表示"好像"、"似乎"、"仿佛……似的"之意，as if 更为普遍。英语中常用 as(像，如)或 as...as...(像……一样)结构的句子进行实际比较，而通常用 as if/though 进行非事实的比喻或夸张，因此它们引导的从句中通常使用虚拟语气。

It looked/looks as if...看来可能……，看来像是……

It looks as if there will be a strike. 看起来会有一场罢工。

It looks as if we shall have to walk from here. 看来我们得从这里步行过去。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 21 Daniel Mendoza

本节重点和难点

- not... until...结构的用法
- so... that...结构的用法
- for 作介词表示原因及作连词表示原因
- 非限制定语从句

本课词汇

boxing ['bɔksiŋ] *n.* 拳击

boxer ['bɔksə] *n.* 拳击手

bare [beə] *adj.* 裸体的；稀少的，微少的，勉强的 *vt.* 露出，暴露

prize-fighter *n.* 职业拳击家

crude [kru:d] *adj.* 简陋的，粗糙的；天然的，未加工的；粗鲁的，粗俗的

【辨析】raw 指生的，原状的，用于未经加工的东西；crude 指经过加工的半成品或不成熟的东西；rude 指制作简单、粗陋的东西。

marquis ['mɑ:kwis] *n.* 侯爵

technically ['teknikəli] *adv.* 严格根据法律意义地

science ['saiəns] *n.* 科学

in one's day 在某人的全盛时期

popularity [ˌpɔpju'læriti] *n.* 名望，声誉

adore [ə'dɔ:] *vt.* 崇敬，崇拜

alike [ə'laik] *adj.* 相像的，相同的（一般作表语） *adv.* 一样地，相似地

【辨析】alike 指彼此在外貌、性格、方法等方面完全相像，只作表语，能用 much、very much、exactly、somewhat 等词修饰；like 指在很多方面相似，可作定语和表语，可用 very 修饰；similar 指部分或大部分相似，强调不同事物之间的相似之处暗示不同之处可暂时忽略或不予理睬。

fame [feim] *n.* 传说，名声，名誉

【辨析】fame 一般指好的意思；reputation 指公众对某人的看法，有好有坏。

eminent ['eminənt] *adj.* 杰出的

bitterly ['bitəli] *adv.* 厉害地，激烈地

bet [bet] *vt.* 打赌 *n.* 赌注，打赌

【词组】bet sb. on 与某人打赌/I bet〈口语〉一定，必定……/make a bet 打赌

【用法】1. I bet 相当于 I'm sure，后接的 that 从句中的谓语动词可用一般现在时表示将来时。2. you bet 相当于 certainly。

academy [ə'kædəmi] *n.*（高等）专科院校

extravagant [ik'strævəgənt] *adj.* 挥霍的

poverty ['pɔvəti] *n.* 贫穷，贫困

课文详解

1. In those days, boxers fought with bare fists for prize money.

【译文】当时，拳击手不戴手套，为争夺奖金而搏斗。

【用法】(1)in those days 意为 at that time“在那时”；day 意为“时代，时期”，作此意时多用复数形

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

式，如：In the days of great revolutionary upheavals. 在伟大的革命大变动的日子里。

in one's young/old days 在某人青年/老年时期

(2)fought with bare fists 赤拳搏斗。这里 fight(...)with...表示"用……搏斗"之意。除此含义外，它还可表达出"在……帮助下战斗"、"同……战斗"之意，如 In war, soldiers fought with guns. 战争中，士兵们用枪作战。

【辨析】fight, struggle

1. 作动词

(1) 表示"战斗，斗争"的意思时，fight 可用作及物动词和不及物动词，而 struggle 只用作不及物动词。如：fight a fire(a disease)和火(疾病)作斗争。

(2) fight 表示的意义是争斗者用手、武器或体力同他人作战、战斗或格斗，而 struggle 表示的意义却是通过较大的努力或以激烈的活动形式进行挣扎、抗争或斗争。如：They fought their oppressors with any weapons they could lay hands on. 他们拿起手边的任何武器反抗压迫者。

2. 作名词

(1) fight 可作可数名词表示"战斗，斗争，格斗，拳击，争论(吵)"等意思。如：It was a terrible fight. 这是一次可怕的战斗。

(2) fight 用作不可数名词表示"战斗力，斗志，斗争精神"等意思。如：There's not much fight left in him now. 他现在没多少斗志了。

【辨析】bare, naked

bare 指部分裸露，naked 指全身裸露：她裸露的双肩 her bare shoulders

A group of naked boys swam in the river. 一群光着身子的男孩在河里游泳。

2. One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza who was born in 1764.

【译文】拳击史上最引人注目的人物之一是丹尼尔·门多萨，他生于 1764 年。

【词汇】colourful *adj.* 色彩鲜艳的；引人注目的，有趣的：a colorful athlete 一位引人注目的运动员

3. The use of gloves was not introduced until 1860, when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules.

【译文】1860 年昆斯伯里多侯爵第一次为拳击比赛制定了规则，拳击比赛这才用上了手套。

【用法】(1)这里 when 义为 at that time。

(2)draw up：起草，草拟；draw up a plan/a list of candidates 拟定计划/候选人名单

【辨析】introduce, present, recommend

(1) introduce 是正式用语，多指"介绍"(人或事)，后面不接双宾语。如：First the chairman introduced the speaker to the audience. 首先主席向听众介绍了作报告的人。

(2) present 主要指"把某人介绍给上级或地位较高的人"，常用于被动语态。如：He has been presented to the emperor. 他已被介绍见了皇帝。

(3) recommend 指"推荐，介绍"，表示倾向性，后面可跟宾语或双宾语。如：He recommended me a book. 他向我推荐了一本书。

4. Though he was technically a prizefighter, Mendoza did much to change crude prizefighting into a sport, for he brought science to the game.

【译文】虽然门多萨严格来讲不过是个职业拳击手，但在把这种粗野的拳击变成一种体育运动方面，他作出了重大贡献。

【用法】(1)change...into...把……变成……，如：He changed the neat room into a mess. 他把整洁的房间变成了一个又脏又乱的窝。

(2)bring...to...把……引进，把……加入到……，如：Liberation has brought profound changes to the mountain regions. 解放已经使山区产生了深刻的变化。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**science** *n.* 科学

sci-知道；scientist 科学家；scientific 科学的；conscious 有知觉的，意识到的；unconscious 没有知觉的；subconscious 潜意识的；conscience 良心；conscientious 尽职尽责的；omniscient 无所不知的；pseudoscience 伪科学

5. In his day, Mendoza enjoyed tremendous popularity.

【译文】门多萨在他的全盛时期深受大家欢迎。

【用法】(1)popularity 的各种搭配(enjoy, gain, lose...)

(2)in one's day 全盛时期

6. He was adored by rich and poor alike.

【译文】无论是富人还是穷人都对他推崇备至。

【用法】(1)adore"崇拜，喜爱"

(2)这里的 alike 为副词，修饰动词 adore，表示"同样地"之意，如："Sun" and "son" differ widely in meaning but are pronounced exactly alike. "sun"和"son"两个词意义大不相同，而读音则完全相同。alike 也可作补足语或后置定语形容词，其前可用 much、very much、somewhat、exactly 修饰。alike 前面可以加一对反义词翻译为：无论……还是……。

7. Mendoza rose to fame swiftly after a boxing-match when he was only fourteen years old.

【译文】门多萨在 14 岁时参加了一场拳击赛后一举成名。

【用法】rise to fame/stardom/the top of one's profession 成名/成为明星/成为自己行业中的佼佼者。

8. This attracted the attention of Richard Humphries who was then the most eminent boxer in England.

【译文】这引起了当时英国拳坛名将理查德·汉弗莱斯的注意。

【辨析】famous, well-known, eminent 均有"出名的，著名的"之意，它们的区别是：

(1) famous 与 well-known 意思相同，但语气更强，表示"在大范围内为人所知"：The city of Wei Fang is famous for kites. 潍坊以风筝著称。

(2) well-known 表示"被许多人知道"，但只在一定的范围内：He is not only a famous novelist, but also a well-known drama critic. 他不仅是一位著名的小说家，而且也是一位小有名气的戏剧评论家。

(3) eminent 用于在某个领域从事严肃工作的人，如科学家、艺术家：an eminent surgeon/lawyer 著名的外科医生/律师

【词根】-min-突出；eminence 卓越，高地；eminently 突出地，卓越地；supereminent 出类拔萃的；imminent 逼近，迫近；imminence（尤指不愉快的事情）逼近，迫近；prominent 突出的，显著的；prominence 突出，显著

The imminence of the exams made them work harder. 考试迫在眉睫，迫使他们努力学习。

9. In fact, Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him.

【译文】事实上，门多萨不久便名声大振，致使汉弗莱斯与他反目为敌。

【用法】turn against sb. 反对某人

turn sb. against sb. 使某人反对某人

His ex-wife has turned the children against him.

他的前妻唆使孩子与他作对。

10. The two men quarrelled bitterly and it was clear that the argument could only be settled by a fight.

【译文】两个人争吵不休，显而易见，只有较量一番才能解决问题。

【用法】注意一些形容词和其副词的意思不一样：terrible, comfortable, narrow 等。

11. The public bet a great deal of money on Mendoza, but he was defeated.

【译文】公众把大笔赌注下到了门多萨身上，但他却输了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】bet 和 gamble 的区别

几句口语：

I bet it snows tomorrow.
- You bet= You're right.
- make a bet on sth. 打赌
- That's right. /okay 我赞成，同意
- That's it.
- That's for sure.
- I'm for you.
- I'm with you.
- You said it. 你说到了。（表同意）
- You can say that again. 你说得对。你说的在理。

12. Mendoza met Humphries in the ring on a later occasion and he lost for a second time.

【译文】后来，门多萨与汉弗莱斯再次在拳击场上较量，门多萨又输了一场。

【用法】on a later occasion；on the last occasion

occasion 在 2、3 册都是黄金单词。

13. It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion of England.

【译文】直到 1790 年他们第 3 次对垒，门多萨才终于击败了汉弗莱斯，成了全英拳击冠军。

【用法】It is not until＋时间＋that...

It was not until midnight that it stopped raining. 直到午夜，雨才停。

It was not until the beginning of this century that scientists discovered a cure for this disease.

直到本世纪初，科学家才发现这种病的治疗方法。

Not until＋时间＋助动词＋从句

Not until midnight did it stop raining. 直至午夜，雨才停。

Not until the beginning of this century did scientists discover a cure for this disease.

直到本世纪初，科学家才发现这种疾病的治愈方法。

【辨析】until 和 till 的区别

这两个连词意义相同。肯定形式表示的意思是"做某事直至某时"，动词必须是延续性的。否定形式表达的意思是"直至某时才做某事"，动词为延续性或非延续性都可以。正确使用这两个连词的关键之一就在于判断句中的动词该用肯定式还是否定式。

肯定句：

I slept until midnight. 我一直睡到半夜。

Wait till I call you. 等着我叫你。

否定句：

She didn't arrive until 6 o'clock. 她直到 6 点才到。

Don't get off the bus until it has stopped. 公共汽车停稳后再下车。

I didn't manage to do it until you had explained how. 直到你教我后，我才会做。

区别：

1)until 可用于句首，而 till 通常不用于句首。

Until you told me, I had heard nothing of what happened.

在你告诉我以前，出了什么事我一点也不知道。

2)在 until when 疑问句中，until 要放在句首。

Until when are you staying? 你待到什么时候？

www.TopSage.com

Until next Monday. 待到下周一。

14. He earned enormous sums of money and was paid as much as £100 for a single appearance.

【译文】门多萨挣来大笔大笔的钱，一次出场费就可多达100英镑。

【用法】注意本文中 appearance 的翻译：出场。appear on the stage 登台

挖掘单词在不同语境的不同含义。

额外收获

拳击史

拳击起源于埃及。公元前4世纪古埃及的象形文字中，已有拳击护具“皮绷带”的叙述。大约公元前17世纪，经地中海的克里特岛传播到古希腊。公元前688年被列为第23届古代奥运会比赛项目。公元1世纪，拳击在罗马帝国十分盛行。

自从古罗马皇帝西奥多雷斯下令禁止拳击后，拳坛几乎寂寞了4个多世纪。主要原因是由于人们对古罗马拳击的粗野影响难以接受；另一方面因为欧洲各地时兴骑马斗剑，马上技术抑制了拳击的发展。当时，骑士体育是属于统治阶级和贵族的，而拳击作为一种自卫技术、娱乐活动，在民间仍然不断地流行着，只是不能公开比赛。

公元8世纪，奥斯曼大帝执政，法庭制定了一种新制度：“斗审”。就是在审判中遇到疑难案件，命令诉讼双方进行决斗，胜利者获胜诉。如果是贵族间的诉讼，就按贵族习俗骑马、穿护身甲胄进行斗剑；而平民间的诉讼，则以拳击决胜负。从此，拳击在平民百姓中更为广泛地流传了。

到了16世纪，拳击运动越过了多巴海峡，传播到了英国。公元18世纪初，在英国出现了有奖的拳击比赛。1719年产生了被称为现代拳击始祖的第一位英国拳击冠军詹姆斯·菲格(1695—1734年)，并把冠军保持了11年之久，获得了“无敌将军”的美称。菲格的拳击是没有防护的徒手的“生死”型格斗。他创立了世界上最早的拳击学校，成为英国拳击运动员的培养摇篮。

菲格死后，他的得意门生约翰·布劳顿(1704—1789年)继承了他的拳击事业。

公元1792年，英国拳击冠军门多萨为了推广拳击，加入马戏团到英伦三岛各地表演拳击，积极宣传拳击。1798年他写成拳击史上第一本拳击指南，定名为“拳击艺术”，深受人们的欢迎。门多萨是位研究拳击的先驱者，也是开展拳击运动的功臣。他整理并总结了一套防御技术。他使人们有了给动作命名的意识，增加了拳击的艺术性和客观性，把拳击由原始带向文明，把它变成了一种有规有据的文明游戏。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 22 By heart

本节重点和难点

- "should十动词原形"的虚拟语气
- if引导的宾语从句
- 形容词作状语
- 动词不定式作不定代词的后置定语

本课词汇

run [rʌn] *vi.* 连续上演

【词组】in the long run 从长远来看;最终/run across (into)偶遇;撞见/run after 追赶;追求;跟踪/run away (with) (携……)逃走/run for 竞选/run out of 用完/run over 溢出;浏览;(车辆等)碾过

lines [lainz] *n.* 台词

part [pɑːt] *n.* 台词,角色

【词组】part with 放弃;离开;向……告别/play a part (in) (在……中)扮演角色;参与/take part in 参加/take the part of 袒护;扶持/the better part of ……的大部分

falter ['fɔːltə] *vi.* 结结巴巴地说

cast [kɑːst] *vt.* 投,扔,掷;铸造 *n.* 演员表

【词组】cast about for 设法找寻/cast aside 抛弃,丢掉/cast away 扔掉/cast down 沮丧,泄气/cast in one's lot with 决心与……共患难/cast off 扔掉/cast out 驱逐/cast up 加在一起

role [rəul] *n.* 角色,任务

【词组】fill the role of... 担任……的任务;play a role in... 在……中起作用

aristocrat ['æristəkræt] *n.* 贵族

imprison [im'prizən] *vt.* 监禁,关押

the Bastille [bæs'tiːl]巴士底狱(14至18世纪的巴黎城堡和国家监狱)

gaoler ['dʒeilə] *n.* (监狱)看守

colleague ['kɔliːg] *n.* 同事,同僚

curtain ['kəːtn] *n.* 幕,窗帘

final ['fainəl] *adj.* 最后的

reveal [ri'viːl] *vt.* 露出,揭示

【词组】reveal itself 出现;呈现

【辨析】reveal、discover、disclose、divulge 这四个词均含有"发现,揭示秘密"的意思。reveal 就好比揭开了面纱或盖子一样使人看清楚,如:One day the truth about these events will be revealed. 总有一天这些事会真相大白的。discover 指发现现存的、并不掩盖的,但原来并不为人所知的事物,如:It is said Columbus discovered America in 1492. 据说在1492年哥伦布发现了美洲。disclose 指让人知道先前保密或还不知道的事情,如:He disclosed a secret. 他披露了一个秘密。divulge 指把不应该说的秘密透露给别人,如:Who divulged our plan to the secret police? 谁向秘密警察透露了我们的计划?

cell [sel] *n.* 细胞;小囚房;电池;蜂房

【辨析】battery "电池(组),电瓶",由几个 cell 组成为一个 battery。通常1.5伏特的干电池为一个 cell,也可称 battery。

blank [blæŋk] *adj.* 空白的,空着的;茫然的 *n.* 空白,空白表格

【词组】fill in the blank 填空

squint [skwint] *vt.* 眯眼看

dim [dim] *adj.* 朦胧的,模糊不清的;昏暗的

sire ['saiə] *n.* (古用法)陛下

proceed [prə'siːd] *vi.* 继续进行

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

课文详解

1. Some plays are so successful that they run for years on end.

【译文】有些剧目十分成功,以致连续上演好几年。

【用法】(1)on end 连续地,不断地。副词短语,可用来指人的行为或任何事物的延续性,如:The boss made us work for thirteen hours a day on end. 老板迫使我们每天连续工作 13 个小时。He sat there for hours on end. 他连续几个小时坐在那里。

此外,on end 还可表示"竖着"之意,用来指物体竖立放着,有时也可用来形容人因惊讶、害怕等而汗毛倒立,如:She put her desk on end. 她把桌子竖着放。The ghost story set their hair on end. 那个鬼故事使他们毛骨悚然。

(2)for years 较 for several years 更加简洁。

【词汇】**run** *v.* 连演,连映=be on show

run wild 猖獗:Corruption is running wild among officals at all ranks. 各级官吏中腐败盛行。

2. In many ways, this is unfortunate for the poor actors who are required to go on repeating the same lines night after night.

【译文】这样一来,可怜的演员们可倒霉了。因为他们需要一夜连着一夜地重复同样的台词。

3. One would expect them to know their parts by heart and never have cause to falter.

【译文】人们以为这些演员会将台词熟记于心,绝不会临场结巴的。

【用法】(1)这里的 one 用来指泛指的人,意即"任何一个人"。

(2)have no cause to do 没有任何理由做……。文中使用了表示否定的副词 never。句中的 to falter 作名词 cause 的定语,意即"结巴的理由。"

【词汇】**falter** *v.* 踌躇,摇摇晃晃地走;支支吾吾地(结结巴巴地)说

She managed to falter out a few words of thanks. 她结结巴巴地说了几句感谢的话。

4. Yet...

【译文】但情况却并不总是这样。

【用法】掌握过渡句:Yet...

5. A famous actor in a highly successful play was once cast in the role of an aristocrat who had been imprisoned in the Bastille for twenty years.

【译文】有一位演员曾在一出极为成功的剧目中扮演一个贵族角色,这个贵族已在巴士底狱关押了 20 年。

【用法】(1)be cast in the role of 被安排(分配)扮演……角色。其中的介词短语 in the role of 为"以/作为……角色"之意。如:The unknown girl was cast in a role of a thief. 这个不知名的女孩被指定扮演一个小偷。

be cast in the role of=play the role of

(2)关系代词 who 引导定语从句,后置修饰 aristocrat。

(3)imprison(=to put in prison)监禁,囚禁:

Because of his crime, he was imprisoned for one year. 由于他的罪行,他被监禁了一年。

【词汇】**imprison** *vt.* 关押;束缚

He was imprisoned yesterday.

They were imprisoned for 2 years.

由上述两例可以看出,imprison 作为动词,动态静态都可以用。

imprisonment *n.* 监禁:He was sentenced to life imprisonment. 他被判处无期徒刑。

【辨析】sentence, condemn, judge, convict, doom

这些动词均含有"判决、宜判"之意。

sentence:法律用词,指根据罪犯所犯罪行的轻重而宜判处罚。

condemn:普通用词,指法院对审理结束的案件作出的定罪判刑。

judge:指对案件作出审理判决,但判决内容较笼统,不如 sentence 和 condemn 使用广泛。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

convict：法律用词，指审判后判定有罪，但未作最后判决。

doom：书面用词，指郑重地宣判某人有罪。

6. In the last act, a gaoler would always come on to the stage with a letter which he would hand to the prisoner.

【译文】在最后一幕中，狱卒手持一封信上场，然后将信交给狱中那位贵族。

【用法】(1)gaoler=jailor。英国人常用 gaoler，美国人常用 jailor。

(2)come on 在戏剧表演或体育比赛中常用来表示"轮到上场/上台"之意，如：The next player came on. 轮到下一个演员出场了。

(3)这里的 would 理解为"过去的习惯"，类似 used to do sth.。

would 与 used to 都可用来表示过去经常性或习惯性的动作，常常可以换用。如：

When we were boys we used to/would go swimming every summer.

小时候，每到夏天我们都要去游泳。

He used to/would spend every penny he earned on books. 过去，他通常把挣来的钱全花在买书上。

would 与 used to 都不能用来表示动作发生的具体频度或具体的一段时间。例如，不能说：

I would/used to go to France six times.

He used to live in Africa for twenty years.

上两句应改成：

I have been to France six times. 我去过法国六次。

He had lived in Africa for twenty years. 他在非洲住过 20 年。

would 与 used to 的区别主要有以下几点：

a. used to 可指过去的状态或情况，would 则不能。如：

School children used to know the story of how Abraham Lincoln walked five miles to return a penny he'd overcharged a customer.（不能用 would）

过去，学校的孩子们都知道亚伯拉罕·林肯怎样步行 5 英里退还多收顾客 1 便士的故事。

Yet, he cannot but remember China as it used to be.（不能用 would）然而，他不会不记得旧日的中国。

b. would 表示反复发生的动作。如果某一动作没有反复性，就不能用 would，只能用 used to。如：

And from that day on, as soon as the table was cleared and the dishes were gone, mother would disappear into her sewing room to practice. 从那天起，只要碗盘撤掉、饭桌一清理干净，妈妈就马上躲进做针线活的房间练习起来。（具有反复性）

I used to live in Beijing. 我过去住在北京。（没有反复性）

c. used to 表示过去经常性或习惯性的动作或状态现在已经结束，would 则表示有可能再发生。如：

People used to believe that the earth was flat.

过去，人们总以为地球是扁平的。（现在已不再这样认为）

He would go to the park as soon as he was free. 过去，他一有空就去公园。（现在有可能再去）

注意：used to 的否定式和疑问句：

过去我不喜欢歌剧。

I used not to like opera.

I usedn't to like opera.

I didn't use to like opera.

过去你喜欢歌剧吗？

Used you to like opera?

Did you use to like opera?

Didn't you use to like opera? 你过去不喜欢歌剧吗？

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

You used to like opera, didn't you? 你过去喜欢歌剧，是吗？

There used to be a church here, usedn't there? 过去这里有座教堂，是不是？

【辨析】jail, prison

jail *n.* 监狱。在英国指民事监狱，在美国指收容犯有轻罪的人或未经判决的人的收容所或看守所等，现在也指监狱。如：They have Birdsong in jail. 他们把伯德森押在牢里。

prison *n.* 监狱。指大型的监狱，监禁判刑的罪犯、等待受审的嫌疑犯、俘虏等的地方。如：The court committed a prisoner to jail. 该法庭将罪犯投入监狱。

The thief was sent to prison for a year. 那个小偷被判处一年监禁。

He came out of prison. 他出狱了。

7. Even though the noble was expected to read the letter at each performance, he always insisted that it should be written out in full.

【译文】尽管那个贵族每场戏都得念一遍那封信，但他还是坚持要求将信的全文写在信纸上。

【用法】在表示建议、命令或请求的动词后，宾语从句的谓语由 should＋动词原形构成。

常见的此类动词有：insist, suggest, order, command, demand, recommend, request, require, ask, propose, advise, beg, direct, plead, pray, propose, urge, move, desire, determine, prefer。

由这些动词变化而来的抽象名词后面跟同位语从句或表语从句时，同位语从句也要用虚拟语气，如：advice, decision, desire, demand, suggestion, motion, pray, resolution, wish, preference, proposal, recommendation, requirement, idea, order。

注意：当 insist 表示“坚持认为”，suggest 表示“依我看，恐怕”的意思时，从句用陈述语气。

She insisted that she was innocent. 她坚持认为她是无辜的。

I suggest that you are not telling the truth. 依我看你没有说实话。

I suggest that the car crash was not accidental. 恐怕这起撞车事故不是偶然的。

8. The curtain went up on the final act of the play and revealed the aristocrat sitting alone behind bars in his dark cell.

【译文】大幕拉开，最后一幕戏开演，贵族独自一人坐在铁窗后阴暗的牢房里。

【词汇】**reveal** *v.* 显示：a revealing night dress 一件暴露的晚礼服；a revealing slip of tongue 一时说漏嘴

9. Just then, the gaoler appeared with the precious letter in his hands.

【译文】这时狱卒上场，手里拿着那封珍贵的信。

【用法】appear *vi.* 不要硬译成“出现”，而是“登台”，参考第 21 课。

10. He entered the cell and presented the letter to the aristocrat.

【译文】狱卒走进牢房，把信交给贵族。

【用法】present 较 hand 更为恭敬。present sth. to sb. 把某物交给（送给）某人；向某人提出某事。使用时通常将 sth. 放在动词之后，后面跟 to sb. 如：They've presented their reports to their teacher. 他们已向老师交了他们的报告。

当将 sb. 置于 present 之后时，通常使用 present sb. with sth. 的结构，如：They presented the president with a bouquet of flowers on behalf of the students. 他们代表学生向总统献花。

11. But the copy he gave him had not been written out in full as usual.

【译文】但这回狱卒给贵族的信没有像往常那样写有全文。

【用法】write out 中的 out 理解为“动作的完全”，这里强调这份信一字不落地写下来。

12. It was simply a blank sheet of paper.

【译文】而是一张白纸。

【词汇】**blank** *adj* 空白的 *n.* 空白表格，空白

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

bl-：blanch 漂白；bleak 苍白

13. Then squinting his eyes, he said: 'The light is dim. Read the letter to me.'

【译文】然后，眼珠一转，他说道："光线太暗，请给我读一下这封信。"

【用法】squinting his eyes 眼珠一转，这里为现在分词短语，作方式状语，表明做 said 动作时的方式。

【词汇】**squint** *vt.* 眯着眼睛看：The sun was so bright I had to squint. 太阳光太强，我不得不眯起眼睛。

比较多种看：gaze，gape，glare，stare，peer，peep

14. With this, he hurried off the stage.

【译文】他边说边匆匆下台。

【用法】with 表示伴随动作，"随着，和……同时"；而下一句 he returned a few moments later with a pair of glasses and the usual copy of the letter 中的 with 同样也表示伴随状态；this 指代上一句的回答，with this 说明他边回答边匆匆离开舞台；hurry off 匆匆离开，等于 hurry away from，hasten off。

With these，说着，……
At this，听到这些

15. Much to the aristocrat's amusement, the gaoler returned a few moments later with a pair of glasses and the usual copy of the letter which he proceeded to read to the prisoner.

【译文】贵族感到非常好笑的是：一会儿工夫，狱卒重新登台，拿来一副眼镜以及平时使用的那封信，然后为那囚犯念了起来。

【用法】(1)就结构而言，这里的关系代词 which 引导限定性定语从句。但实际上，限定性和非限定性定语从句往往不因结构而定，而主要以该定语从句与先行词的语义关系而定。当它们之间的关系密不可分时，通常为限定性定语从句，反之则为非限定性定语从句。由于就语义而言，句中 the letter 与 which 引导的定语从句关系比较松散，因此可视作非限定性定语从句来翻译。

(2)proceed *v.*（尤指停顿或打断后）继续进行 proceed to do sth.

After drinking a cup of tea, mother proceeded to cook the dinner. 喝完一杯茶，妈妈接着做晚饭。

-ceed，-ced 走：succeed 成功；secede 脱离；intercede 调停；exceed 优于，胜过

额外收获

1. 掌握几个伴随状语：

anxious to see

squinting his eyes

finding that

2. Don't pull my leg.（口语）别逗我。

lay a joke on sb.（书面语）开玩笑
play a trick on sb.（书面语）

3. 修饰谓语动词的状语（副词，分词短语，形容词短语，介词短语，从句等）被称为"评注性状语"。而"评注性状语"是修饰整个句子的状语，位置灵活，可以在句首、句中或句尾。按结构划分可以分为下列几类：

(1)不定式或现在分词短语充当评注性状语

To make matters worse, the room is rather small, so I have to temporarily put my books on the floors. 更糟糕的是，房间很小，于是我不得不暂时把书放在地上。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Geoffery is very popluar at parties, to be sure. 无可否认，Geoffery 在社交聚会活动中很受欢迎。

I doubt, speaking as a layman, whether the plan you put forward at the meeting is suited to our company. 说句行外话，我怀疑你在会议中提出的计划是否适合我们公司的情况。

类似的还有：to be frank; to tell you the truth; to sum up; judging from; generally speaking。

(2)介词短语充当评注性状语

To his surprise, his daughter said she hadn't enjoyed his speech.

令他感到吃惊的是，女儿说不喜欢他的演说。

In all frankness, he disagrees with you. 坦白地说，他不同意你的意见。

(3)as、if 等连词引导的分句充当评注性状语

As it turned out/As it happened, the grass had taken root in many places.

结果许多地方都长出了青草。

If I may say so, his lecture was not much of a success.

他的讲座并不十分成功——如果可以这么说的话。

What annoys me, they are constantly smoking in the office.

令人感到讨厌的是，他们总是在办公室里抽烟。

(4)-ly 副词充当评注性状语

a)表示话语可靠性的程度有 probably, apparently, evidently, obviously, plainly, conceivably, possibly, presumably, arguably 等等。例如：

Obviously, he was tired of administrative work. 显然，他是不想干行政工作了。

Apparently, he knew the town well. 显然，他很熟悉这个城市。

Presumably, they have sold their house. 他们大概已经把房子卖了。

Conceivably, that is an inspired question. 可以想象，那是经人授意而提出的问题。

b)表示"确定"的评注性状语有 certainly, surely, admittedly, allegedly, undoubtedly, definitely, incontestably, unarguably, clearly 等等。例如：

Certainly, your children disliked me. 你的孩子肯定不喜欢我。

Surely, you have saved some money? 想必你已经攒了一些钱了吧？

Undoubtedly, he is more intelligent than his brother. 肯定地说，他比他的兄弟聪明。

Admittedly, I had no right to be there, but I had lost my way.

无可否认，我没有权利待在那里，但我迷路了。

c)表示惊讶、迷惘、失望、安慰、谅解、遗憾等感情的评注性状语有 amazingly, astonishingly, astoundingly, bewilderingly, surprisingly, disappointingly, annoyingly, comfortingly, amusingly, understandably, regrettably, strangely, curiously 等等。例如：

Surprisingly, he ate a lot. 令人惊奇的是，他食量很大。

Curiously, the students seemed to know the questions already.

奇怪的是，学生们似乎已经知道了题目。

Understandably, no patriot wants to fall into disrepute.

可以理解，没有哪个爱国人士甘心声名扫地。

Regrettably, he had forgotten all his promises. 令人遗憾的是，他竟忘了他的一切承诺。

Annoyingly for his father, John failed the exam several times.

令他父亲烦恼的是，约翰连续几次考试不及格。

Amusingly, he did not explain his position to me. 有趣的是，他没有向我说明他的立场。

d)表示悲伤、高兴、希望、感谢、幸运等感情的评注性状语有 sadly, happily, thankfully, hopefully, unhappily, fortunately, luckily, unfortunately, unluckily 等等。例如：

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Unhappily, he went home without leave. 令人不快的是，他未经请假就回家了。

Luckily, she was not hurt in the accident. 幸运的是，她在事故中没有受伤。

Fortunately, he passed the exam and was admitted to college. 幸运的是，他通过了考试，进了大学。

Thankfully, everyone returned to the camp safe and sound. 谢天谢地，每个人都回到营地，平安无事。

Hopefully, the two sides may come to an agreement on this issue.

如果顺利的话，双方可望在这个问题上达成协议。

e)表示正确、错误、聪明、愚蠢等意义的评注性状语有 rightly, correctly, cleverly, wisely, incorrectly, wrongly, foolishly, unwisely, absurdly, preposterously, unreasonably, unjustly 等等。例如：

Rightly, the judge received praise for his decision.

当然，那法官因其决定而受到赞扬。

You telephoned the police station first, quite rightly. 你首先打电话报警，很对。

Wisely, he answered the soldiers' questions foolishly when he was captured.

他被捉时，装疯卖傻回答大兵的问题，这点做得很聪明。

Not unreasonably, he protested strongly against it. 他对此强烈抗议，那是不无道理的。

Foolishly, the girl did not ask your name. 那姑娘竟然没有问你姓名，太蠢了。

f)表示寻常、罕见等意义的评注性状语有 conventionally, rarely, traditionally, (not) unusually 等等。例如：

Rarely, very rarely, the master would admit defeat. 那位大师竟也承认失败，难得，很难得啊。

Traditionally, second-hand car prices drop in the autumn and rise in the spring.

按照惯例，二手汽车通常在秋季降价，春季涨价。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 23 One man's meat is another man's poison

本节重点和难点

- 对现在事实进行假设的虚拟语气
- wh-疑问代词引导的宾语从句
- 形容词作宾语补足语的结构
- 动词不定式作宾语的结构

本课词汇

poison ['pɔizn] *n.* 毒物，毒药 *v.* 放毒，毒害

【词组】hate sb. like poison 恨之入骨；深恶痛绝

illogical [i'lɔdʒikəl] *adj.* 不合逻辑的

octopus ['ɔktəpəs] *n.* 章鱼，八爪鱼

delicacy ['delikəsi] *n.* 精美的食物

repulsive [ri'pʌlsiv] *adj.* 使人反感的

stomach ['stʌmək] *n.* 胃，胃口

【用法】1. have no stomach for(doing)sth. "不想做某事，对某事无兴趣，对某物无胃口"。I have no stomach for such adventures. 我没有兴趣进行这样的冒险。2. 作及物动词表示"忍受，忍耐"时，常用于疑问句和否定句。I can't stomach such an insult. 我无法忍受这种侮辱。

turn [tə:n] *vi.* 恶心

【词组】by turns 轮流地；交替地/in turn 依次地；轮流地；反而/take turns at 轮流/turn down 关小；拒绝；翻下/turn in 上床睡觉；上交/turn into 变成；使成为/turn off 关上/turn on 打开/turn out 关掉；赶出；翻出；出来；制造/turn over (使)翻倒；翻身；仔细考虑/turn to 起劲地开始工作；求助于；查阅/turn up 开大；(被)折起；出现；(被)发现

fry [frai] *v.* 油炸，油煎

【词组】frying pan 长柄煎锅

fat [fæt] *n.* 脂肪

abuse [ə'bju:z] *vt.* 滥用，妄用；伤害，虐待；辱骂

snail [sneil] *n.* 蜗牛

luxury ['lʌkʃəri] *n.* 奢侈，奢侈品，豪华

associate [ə'səuʃieit] *vt.* 把……和……联系起来，和……发生联系 *vi.* 和……来往，和……共事 *n.* 共事的人，伙伴

despise [di'spaiz] *v.* 轻视，蔑视

appeal [ə'pi:l] *vi.* 有吸引力，引起共鸣

【词组】lodge (enter) an appeal 提出上诉/make an appeal to sb. 向某人提出呼吁；引起某人兴趣

【用法】appeal to 后接呼吁的对象；appeal for 后接呼吁的事项。

stroll [strəul] *n.* 散步，溜达

impulse ['impʌls] *n.* 冲动

dozen ['dʌzn] *n.* 一打，十二个；十来个，十几个

【词组】by the dozen 按打计算/dozens of 许多/six of one and half a dozen of the other 半斤八两/talk (speak) nineteen to the dozen 喋喋不休

fancy ['fænsi] *v.* 喜爱，喜欢

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. One man's meat is another man's poison.

【译文】各有所爱。

【用法】理解 poisoned 和 poisonous 的区别：

前者指被下毒 poisoned soup

后者指本身有毒 poisonous snake

【联想】〈谚语〉各有所爱。类似的表达有：There's no accounting for tastes.（＝Tastes differ.）〈谚语〉人各有所好。

另外，本课从饮食方面引申出来的常见谚语还有：

It's no use crying over spilt milk. 覆水难收。

You cannot eat the cake and have it. 鱼与熊掌不可兼得。

其他与食物名称有关的习惯用语：

(1)—Did Ann get her raise yet? 安妮加薪了吗？

—No, but she's as cool as a cucumber. 没有，但她很镇定，一点不急。

—Well, she's the most important person in her group. She has nothing to worry about.

她是她所在部门里最重要的人，没什么可担心的。

(2)—David has helped the company save lots of money. But I've helped the company, too.

大卫已帮公司节约了好多钱。不过，我也帮了公司。

—Oh? How? 是吗？怎么帮的？

—I've helped them spend the money David saved.

我帮他们把大卫节约的钱花掉了。

—You're a real nut. 你这个人真怪。

(3)—Is Bob going to be laid off? 鲍勃会被解雇吗？

—No, he's the top banana in his group. You don't have to worry about him.

不会的，他是部门里最重要的人，你不必为他担心。

补充一些在写作中可以引用谚语的句型：

1) As a popular saying goes, "Every coin has two sides".（事事都有两面性）

2) As a proverb says, "Where there is a will there is a way."（有志者事竟成）

3) As a popular saying goes, "A man is known by the company he keeps."（观其交友，知其为人）

4) As is known to all, "No pains, no gains".（没有苦，就没有甜）

2. People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten.

【译文】在决定什么能吃而什么不能吃的时候，人们往往变得不合情理。

【用法】动词 decide 后为由关系代词 what 引导的两个并列宾语从句。用关系代词 what 与用关系代词 what/which 引导的从句不同，前者包含了关系代词 what/which 与"先行词"在内的含义。因此，当句中已有先行词时，其后不能使用 what。

【词汇】**illogical** *adj*. 不合逻辑的

前缀 in 遇到 l 被同化成 il：illegible, illegal

3. If you lived in the Mediterranean, for instance, you would consider octopus a great delicacy.

【译文】比如，如果你住在地中海地区，你会把章鱼视作美味佳肴。

【用法】(1) if 引导的从句用的是一般过去时表示与现在事实相反的虚拟语气，因而主句用 would ＋V 原型。

(2) for instance＝for example"例如"。

(3) consider octopus a great delicacy 是"consider＋宾语＋宾补"结构，"把……视作"；delicacy 为"佳肴"。

consider sth. sth. 代替 consider sth. to be sth. 符合用语经济原则避免行文拖沓。

【词汇】**octopus** *n*. 章鱼，八爪鱼，oct-八；October 十月（罗马历为八月）；octogenarian 八十多岁的人

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词缀】几个常见的数字前缀：

一 uni-，mono-：uniform 制服，monocycle 独轮车

二 bi-，twi-：bicycle 自行车，twilight 黄昏，黎明

三 tri-tricycle：triangle 三角形；tripple 三倍

四 quadri-：quadruple 四倍

五 penta-：pentagon 五角大楼

十 deca-：decade 十年

4. You would not be able to understand why some people find it repulsive.

【译文】你不能理解为什么有人一见章鱼就恶心。

【用法】repulsive *adj*. 来自动词 repulse

pulse 作为词根意思是：strike drive

compulsory 强迫的，强制的；expulsion 开除；impulse 冲动；impulsive 冲动的

5. On the other hand, your stomach would turn at the idea of frying potatoes in animal fat—the normally accepted practice in many northern countries.

【译文】另一方面，一想到用动物油炸土豆你就会感到反胃，而这在北方的许多国家是广为接受的做法。

【用法】(1)at the idea of 一想到。类似的结构还有 at the mention of(一提到)、at the sight of(一看到)、at the thought of(一想到)、at the sound of (一听到)等。

He shudders at the idea of death. 他一想到死就不寒而栗。

I was glad at the thought of getting something to eat. 我一想到能弄点吃的，就感到高兴。

I often feel repulsion at the sight of a toad. 我一看到癞蛤蟆就恶心。

Many people turn pale at the mere mention of AIDS. 很多人一提到艾滋病就吓得脸色发白。

(2)the normally accepted practice in many northern countries 破折号后这部分为说明性内容，是对 frying potatoes in animal fat 这一做法的进一步说明。这种形式多用于表示在对人/事物的表述后又想到或要追加说明的内容。当这样的说明性语句出现在句中时，通常需在其前后各标注一破折号。

(3)practice：thing done frequently 这里代替 cooking method

(4) find *vt.* "觉得，感到，认为"，后面跟名词，形容词或介词短语作宾语补足语。

I found him a disappointment. 我觉得他这个人令人失望。

I don't find that joke funny at all. 我一点也不觉得那个玩笑有什么好笑。

I found myself in almost total agreement with Tony. 我觉得我几乎与托尼意见完全一致。

6. The sad truth is that most of us have been brought up to eat certain foods and we stick to them all our lives.

【译文】不无遗憾的是，我们中的大部分人，生来就只吃某几种食品，而且一辈子都这样。

【用法】be brought up to do 从小到大一直作某件事(参考 54 课第一句)

7. No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail.

【译文】没有一种生物所受到的赞美和厌恶会超过在花园里常见的蜗牛了。

【用法】(1)more...than...中的 more 之后可接名词、形容词、副词和动词(修饰动词时，通常置于该动词之后)。这种结构通常用于表达事物之间的差别。当 more 后接名词时，more 为形容词；当为其他词性时，则为副词。than 为从属连词，引导出比较状语从句。本句中的 than 后是一省略的从句，为避免重复，省略了 has received。整个结构有"比……要……"、"与其说……倒不如说……"之意，如：His new clothes is much more beautiful than his last. 他的新衣服比前一套要好看得多。/More people like reading than watching TV. 喜欢看书的人比喜欢看电视的人多。

8. Cooked in wine, snails are a great luxury in various parts of the world.

【译文】蜗牛加酒烧煮后，便成了世界上许多地方的一道珍奇的名菜。

【用法】(1) luxury *n.* (注意它褒义、贬义双重含义。)[U]奢侈，奢华，享受：They led a life of luxury. 他们生活奢华。a luxury hotel 一个奢华的酒店[C]奢侈品：We can't spend money on luxuries.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

我们买不起奢侈品。It's a real luxury relaxing on the beach. 在海滩上休息真是一种享受。

(2)cooked in wine...

过去分词在句中作状语，可以表示：

① 动作发生的背景或情况：

Built in 1192, the bridge is over 700 years old.

这座桥始建于 1192 年，有超过 700 年的历史了。

② 原因：

Born into a farmer family, he had only two years of schooling.

他生于一个农民家庭，仅上了两年学。

③ 时间：

Arriving at the station, he found his train gone.

他到达车站，发现火车已经开走了。

④ 假设：

Compared with you, I had a long way to go.

与你相比，我还有很长的路要走。

9. There are countless people who, ever since their early years, have learned to associate snails with food.

【译文】有不计其数的人们从小就知道蜗牛可做菜。

【词根】soci-交往：society 社会；social 社会的；sociable 好交际的；socialite 社会名流；socialize 使社会化；socialization 社会化；dissociate 分裂，使脱离；dissociable 孤僻的

10. My friend, Robert, lives in a country where snails are despised.

【译文】但我的朋友罗伯特却住在一个厌恶蜗牛的国家中。

【词汇】**despise** *vt.* 藐视，鄙视，看不起

【词根】spis-spic-看：despicable 可鄙的，卑鄙的；suspicion 怀疑；suspicious 怀疑的；conspicuous 引人瞩目的，明显的；perspicuous 易懂的，表达清楚的

11. The idea never appealed to me very much, but one day, after a heavy shower, I happened to be walking in my garden when I noticed a huge number of snails taking a stroll on some of my prize plants.

【译文】一开始，他的这一想法没有引起我多大的兴趣，后来一天，一场大雨后，我在花园里漫无目的地散步，突然注意到许多的蜗牛在我的一些心爱的花木上慢悠悠地蠕动着。

【用法】(1)appeal to... 对……有吸引力，投合……的兴趣(心意)，如：Good work appeals to everyone. 好作品无人不爱。

(2)句子中的连词 when 为倒装用法，就逻辑而言，它应置于 I happened to be walking in my garden 之前，而 I noticed...为其主句。when 的这种倒装用法通常用来描述事件的意外性或突发性。

(3)句中 taking a stroll(在散步)是以拟人法来形容蜗牛的动作。

sth. appeal to sb. = sth. fascinate sb.

【词汇】**appeal** *n.* 吸引力(for)：Qiongyao's novels have lost their appeal for me. 琼瑶的小说已对我失去吸引力。

12. Acting on a sudden impulse, I collected several dozen, put them in a paper bag, and took them to Robert.

【译文】我一时冲动，逮了几十只，装进一只纸袋里，带着去找罗伯特。

【用法】(1)acting on a sudden impulse 为分词短语，作原因状语。act on 常用来表示"按照，根据，凭……行动，对……起作用"之意，如：I acted on the teacher's advice. 我按照老师的建议做的。

(2)dozen 后省略了 of snails。当 dozen 同数词或 many、several、some 等形容词连用时，复数不加-s。I've told you a dozen times not to do that. 我屡次告诫你不要做那件事。

dozens of 很多：I have been to there dozens of times. 我去过那里好多次了。

(3)impulse *n.* 冲动：a man of impulse 一个容易冲动的人；have an impulse to do sth. 突然想做某事

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

on (an) impulse 凭一时冲动:She always acts on impulse. 她总是凭一时冲动行事。

He bought the car on impulse. 他凭一时冲动买了汽车。

13. To our dismay, we saw that there were snails everywhere: they had escaped from the paper bag and had taken complete possession of the hall!

【译文】使我们惊愕的是门厅里到处爬满了蜗牛:它们从纸袋里逃了出来,爬得满厅都是!

【用法】take possession of 占据,占有:

The terrorists took possession of the Embassy. 恐怖分子占领了大使馆。

额外收获

为防止用词重复,经常用不同词表达同一意思,这里有几段文字,看了或许会有启示:

【写作】凡是批改学生英语作文的老师都有一种感觉,用词贫乏、词语重复现象非常严重。例如布置学生写一篇 My View on Retirement,某同学会这样写:

Retirement often brings people many problems such as"What shall I do today" problem, though they may not have economical problems. People observe that apart from economical problems, retirement also brings many psychological problems. Many people often get illnesses and even deteriorate rapidly when people are retired.

这一段英语尽管在语法上没有太大的问题,但实在是令人难以诵读。问题就是有太多不必要的重复。在总共只有 46 个词的段落中,retirement 就重复了两次,problems 重复了五次,economical 重复了两次,people 重复了四次,many 重复了三次,often 重复了两次。如此高的用词重复率,怎能使文章生动呢?

这段英文翻译成中文是这样的:退休常常带来许多问题,即使没有经济问题,也会碰到"今天我应该做什么事"的问题。人们注意到退休不仅会带来经济上的问题,而且还会带来巨大的心理问题,许多人退休后经常得病,甚至身体迅速变坏。

看了中文以后,有人会问:中文里不是也出现了那么多重复吗? 到了英文里为什么就文章黯然失色呢? 因为学生作文中词语重复现象不仅和贫乏的词汇量有关,另一个很重要的原因就是受汉语遣词造句习惯的影响。

汉语是一种意合性语言。汉语中几个相关句子的组织,不是靠连词等语言手段,而主要靠句子内在的意思来连接。也就是说句子的意思必须清楚明白了,歧义性和模糊性要低,句子才能行文连贯流畅。这样,在缺少"因为、所以、然而"等连词的帮助时,依靠词语的简单重复来增加句子的凝聚力,便是很自然的了。而英语不一样,它是形合性语言,它要有连词保证句子意思的连接,这样就可以无所顾忌地追求词的变化。

其次,汉语的重复倾向还和其语音文字的特点有密切关系。从美学心理的角度出发,读起来顺口,听起来悦耳,文章往往追求音节整齐和均匀,这样就出现某些词的重复。如"脸发红,心发慌"要比"脸发红,心慌得很"顺畅和谐。在汉语口语中我们还会说"谢谢,谢谢","对不起,对不起"。而英语的美学观就有所不同。一般不大有人会说"sorry, sorry"或"thank you, thank you"。

因此在英语写作中"Never use the same word or write the same thing twice in a sentence unless you are repeating intentionally for emphasis or for clarity."(J. Hodges and M. Whitten: Harbrace College handbook, p. 244)。

用词单一会使语言枯燥无味、苍白无力;而选词多样化可以加强语言的表现力,使文章的表达更丰富。比如上面的那段一经改动后味道就完全不同了:

Retirement often brings many problems surrounding the"What shall I do today?" question, even though there may be no economical cares. It has been observed that withdrawal from work, quite aside from exerting financial pressures, brings enormous psychological troubles. Large numbers of people tend to get some illnesses and even deteriorate rapidly when jobless。

在这段文字中,"退休"分别用了 retirement, withdrawal from work 和 jobless 来表达;"问题"分别用了 problem, question, care, pressure 和 trouble 来表达;而"许多",一处用了 many,另一处用了

www.TopSage.com

enormous，还有一处用了 large number of；"经济"的意思和 care 搭配时用 economical，和 pressure 搭配时用 financial；"经常"分别用 often 和 tend to 表达；"人们"只用了一次 people，其余的三处分别用了 there be 结构：there may be no economical cares，被动结构：it has been observed that，省略结构：when jobless.

类似英语中用词的多样化例子很多，我们不妨再来欣赏几段：

(1) Hard work isn't the whole story either. Some of these high-achieving students actually put in fewer hours than their lower-scoring classmates. The students at the top of the class get there by mastering a few basic techniques that others can easily learn. Here, according to education experts and students themselves, are the secrets of A students. ——Edwin Kiester *Secrets of Students*

这一段中，讲到"好学生"，作者分别用了 high-achieving students，students at the top of the class，A students 来表示，而没有单单用 good students 这个短语。其实我们还可以用 outstanding boys and girls 或者 students of high abilities，superior students 等短语替代。

(2) The deafening noise, and the glare of the engine fire, would have a bad effect on nerves. Further, being moved through the air at a high speed would do great injury to delicate lungs. The sudden plunging of a train into the darkness of a tunnel, and the equally sudden rush into full daylight, would cause great damage to eyesight.

这段文字中，讲到"对……有损害"，作者用了三个不同的词组，使读者耳目一新：have a bad effect on、do great injury to 和 cause great damage。而当表达"猛冲"这个概念时，作者也注意了词的变化，分别用 plunge 和 rush 表达。

(3) A typical example of this ability is the case of a woman who claims that her intuition prevented each of her five children from serious accidents. Another interesting illustration of this six sense involves the famous escape artist.

作者在这段文字中，用同义词 example、illustration 和 case 表示"例子"；而"直觉"用了 intuition、six sense 以及 this ability 来代替。

通过欣赏上述的例子我们不难发现，所谓"Variety breeds vividness"可谓言之有理。在同一语境中发掘几个意思相同的表达方式交替运用，既可以使语言活泼多姿，也能利用这些表达得同中之异，互相补充，使内容表达得更加周密。我们可以通过三种方法挑选意思相同的表达：同(近)义词，上义词和统称词。

1) 同(近)义词

英语中的同(近)义词异常丰富，所以我们在表达概念的时候有充裕的同义词可供选择。例：

Members of the family give each other moral support and practical help.

家庭成员不仅在思想上互帮互助，在生活上也要互帮互助。

Sometimes, differences of opinion among scientists have nothing to do with scientific facts but rather reflect conflicting personal or social values.

有时候，科学家在观点上的不同和科学研究并没多大关系，而是反映了他们个人或社会价值的不同。

2) 上义词

利用词的上义和下义的关系：rose 和 flower、bed 和 furniture、apple 和 fruit 虽然意思不同，但它们是上义和下义的关系。例：

The telephone rang and he reached for the instrument.

电话铃响了，他伸手去摸电话。

Red-light running has always been regarded as a minor wrongdoing, so it has never been taken seriously. When the violation becomes habitual, however, a great deal more than a traffic problem is involved.

人们常把闯红灯看成小错，不当一回事。然而闯红灯一旦形成习惯，问题远非是违反交通规则。

闯红灯、超速、酒后驾驶都属于违反交通规则，因此用 violation 来指代闯红灯是非常清楚的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3)统称词

统称词就是那些指代范围更大、意思更含糊的词，如 thing、task 等。例：

如果参军人伍的是有头脑的年轻人，他就不会习惯队伍里的一切，因为队伍里总是抹杀人的个性。

如果把出现的三个“队伍”分别译成 join the army，dislike the army，the army，就重复过多，请看下面译文：

The bright young man who is drafted hates the whole business because an army tries to eliminate the individual differences in men.

这里的 is drafted 是 join the army 的同一词组，因此属于同义词替代。而统称词 business 和 army 虽然风马牛不相及，但放到上下文里，就很清楚都指 army。

Why do food prices keep on rising when there seems to be much more food? Is the abundance only temporary or has it come to stay?

为什么一方面粮价不断上涨，另一方面粮食似乎很充裕呢？粮食充裕是暂时的还是一直持续下去？

统称词 abundance 可以指任何东西的充裕，而在这个特定的语境中指代粮食充裕。

注意：三册 59 课也体现了这个问题，文章一共有 10 处不同单词表示“收藏品”。

www.TopSage.com

LESSON 24 A skeleton in the cupboard

大家网 TopSage.com

本节重点和难点

- 先行词为表示时间的名词的定语从句
- 带有插入语的句子的成分分析
- 使役动词的宾语补足语
- 动词的现在分词和过去分词作状语

本课词汇

skeleton ['skelitn] *n.* 骨骼；骨架；梗概，提要

【词组】a skeleton at the feast 扫兴的东西(或家伙)/a skeleton in the cupboard (house, closet) 家丑，见不得人的事

seemingly ['si:miŋli] *adv.* 表面上

respectable [ris'pektəbl] *adj.* 体面的

conceal [kən'si:l] *vt.* 隐藏，隐瞒

【词组】conceal from sb. 对某人隐瞒/conceal oneself 潜伏；埋伏

【辨析】conceal 和 hide 均有"隐藏"的意思，但前者措施生硬，意义较强烈，指有意的严密隐藏。hide 一般用语，可以是故意，也可以是偶然的"隐藏"。

dramatic [drə'mætik] *adj.* 戏剧性的，剧烈的，令人兴奋的

ruin ['ru:in] *vt.* 使毁灭，毁坏 *n.* 毁灭，毁坏，(*pl.*)废墟

【词组】in ruins 成废墟；被毁灭

heroine ['herəuin] *n.* 女英雄，女主角

fiction ['fikʃən] *n.* 虚构之物，捏造的故事，小说

【辨析】novel 是长篇小说，短篇小说为 short story。fiction 为"小说"的总称，包括 novel 和 short story 等。

to varying degrees 在不同程度上

medicine ['medisən] *n.* 医学

guest room ['gest-rum] *n.* 来客住房

unpack [ʌn'pæk] *vt.* 打开行李取出

stack [stæk] *vt.* 堆放

underclothes ['ʌndəkləuðz] *n.* 内衣裤

drawer [drɔ:r] *n.* 抽屉

【词组】a chest of drawers 五斗橱/be out of the top drawer(英国英语)发育良好的

petrify ['petrifai] *vt.* 使发呆，使吓得要死

dangle ['dæŋgəl] *vi.* 摇摇晃晃

sway [swei] *v.* 摇动，摇晃

unsympathetic [ˌʌnˌsimpə'θetik] *adj.* 若无其事的，冷漠无情的

medical ['medikəl] *adj.* 医学的

课文详解

1. a skeleton in the cupboard

【译文】"家丑"

【用法】skeleton *n.* 骷髅

He was starved to a living skeleton. 他饿得只剩下一把骨头。

A skeleton in the cupboard(英国英语)/closet(美国英语)：家丑

I feel that she has a couple of skeletons in her cupboard. 我觉得她有几件不可告人的丑事。

I don't have skeletons in my closet. 我没有什么不可告人的秘密。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

相似短语：

(1)air(wash) one's dirty linen in public

英文释义为：make public something embarrassing that should be kept secret，中文可译为泄密，说出不应该说的话等。例如：

Everyone in the office knew that the manager and the secretary were angry with each other because they aired their dirty linen in public.

办公室里的每个人都知道经理同秘书关系不睦，因为他们在大庭广众之下说出了他们吵架的事。

(2)skeleton at the feast 表达"令人生厌，扫兴的事"。例如：

Never talk about a dangerous thunderstorm with a sailor before he begins a new voyage at the sea, which will be thought of as a skeleton at the feast.

千万别在水手出航之前同他说海上风暴有多么危险，这是最令他讨厌的话题。

2. We often read in novels how a seemingly respectable person or family has some terrible secret which has been concealed from strangers for years.

【译文】在小说中，我们经常读到一个表面上受人尊重的人物或家庭，却有着某种多年不为人所知的骇人听闻的秘密。

【用法】(1)how 为连接副词，引导一个宾语从句。which 为关系代词，引导一个定语从句，置后修饰先行词 secret。

(2)seemingly *adv.*（和形容词搭配）看似（事实和表象不符）

He is seemingly intelligent, but in fact he isn't. 他看似聪明，其实不然。

(3)区分 respectable, respectful, respective

respectable 令人尊敬，体面的：respectable person/family

respectful 充满敬意的：I am respectful to him.

respective 分别：My parents' salaries rise to 3000 and 5000 respectively.

(4)conceal 和 hide 的区别

前者为及物动词后面一定加宾语；后者可以作及物也可以作不及物动词。

3. The English language possesses a vivid saying to describe this sort of situation.

【译文】英语中有一个生动的说法来形容这种情况。

【用法】possess 为静态动词，不能用于进行时结构中，即使表示说话时正在进行的事情也如此，如：I like this movie. 我喜欢这部电影。（不可说：I'm liking...）/Do you know his address? 你知道他的地址吗？（不可说：Are you knowing...?）

然而，还有一些动词，既可用作静态动词，也可用作动态动词，但表达不同的语义。只有用作表达动态动词的语义时，方可使用进行时态结构。

【词汇】vivid *adj.* 生动的；活泼的；颜色鲜艳的

【词根】viv-生命，生存：survive 继续存在，比……活得长久；revive 复活，苏醒；vivacious 活泼的

4. At some dramatic moment in the story, the terrible secret becomes known and a reputation is ruined.

【译文】在小说的某个戏剧性时刻，可怕的秘密公诸于世，接着便是某人的声誉扫地。

【用法】(1)ruin

① *n.* 作名词时，主要表示"毁灭，失败，破产，毁坏；倒霉的东西；(pl.)废墟，遗迹；造成毁灭的原因；祸因"。如：His enemies planned the duke's ruin. 公爵的仇人们策划使他垮台。

② *v.* 作不及物动词时，主要表示"毁灭，毁坏，弄糟，破坏，毁掉前程"。作及物动词时，主要表示"破产，弄糟"。

(2)ruin 与下面词汇的区别

destroy：to damage it so much that it is completely ruined. 破坏，毁灭

The enemy soldiers destroyed everything in sight when they captured the village.

当占领那个村庄时，敌人破坏了他们所见到的任何东西。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

damage: to hurt or lower the value of something. 损害,毁坏,加害于

The car was damaged in the accident. 汽车在交通事故中被毁坏。

ruin: to destroy gradually, little by little. An object that has been ruined has lost all its value or usefulness, which can't be repaired or fixed. 使破产,使沦落,毁坏

TopSage.com

Moths ruined good woolen clothes by eating holes in them.

蛾通过在好的羊毛衣服上啃洞来破坏它们。

spoil: to ruin something so it can't be used. 使变质,使变坏,使腐败

Milk will spoil if it is not kept cold. 牛奶如果不冷藏会变质。

demolish: to destroy big or substantial things such as buildings. 推毁、推翻、拆毁(尤指大建筑物)

Many buildings had to be demolished before the new highway could be built.

在新的高速路建成之前,许多建筑需要拆毁。

exterminate: to destroy in a big way or in large amount. 消灭,根除

wreck: to break, destroy, or spoil completely. 毁坏,毁灭某物

(3) reputation *n.* 名誉,名声

它的搭配(enjoy, gain, lose, ruin, live up to)。

5. The reader's hair stands on end when he reads in the final pages of the novel that the heroine, a dear old lady who had always been so kind to everybody, had, in her youth, poisoned every one of her five husbands.

【译文】当读者读到小说最后几页了解到书中女主人公,那位一向待大家很好的可爱的老妇人年轻时一连毒死了她的五个丈夫时,不禁会毛骨悚然。

【用法】hair stands on end(见 22 课 on end 用法)就是汗毛竖起来的意思嘛。或者我们再学一个表达 Octopus gives you gooseflesh. 章鱼给你鹅肉? 不是啦。Give sb. gooseflesh 是使某人起鸡皮疙瘩的意思。英语真的很有趣吧?

6. It is all very well for such things to occur in fiction.

【译文】这种事发生在小说中是无可非议的。

【用法】It's all very well (for sb.) to do sth., but... ……固然可以,但是……(常用来表示不满或讥讽)

It's all very well for you to say that, but what can I do? 你说得容易,可我又有什么办法?

7. To varying degrees, we all have secrets which we do not want even our closest friends to learn, but few of us have skeletons in the cupboard.

【译文】尽管我们人人都有各种大小秘密,连最亲密的朋友都不愿让他们知道,但我们当中极少有人有柜中骷髅。

【用法】vary *vi.* 变化,有所不同。to varying degrees 修饰 secrets:

Students here vary in age from 12 to 20.

...has become a hot topic among people recently. Opinions vary from person to person.

various 各种各样的;varying 不同的;variable 变化多端的;varied 不同的,已变的

8. The only person I know who has a skeleton in the cupboard is George Carlton, and he is very proud of the fact.

【译文】我所认识的唯一的在柜中藏骷髅的人便是乔治·卡尔顿,他甚至引以为自豪。

【用法】双层定语从句:先行词先被一个限定性定语从句修饰,然后整个句子再被另一个限定性定语从句修饰。如:She's the only girl I know who can play the guitar. 她是我认识的唯一一个会弹吉它的女孩。

这两个定语从句处在不同的层次上:第一个定语从句 I know 修饰 the only girl;第二个关系从句 who can play the guitar 进一步修饰 the only girl I know。再如:

He is the only person that I know who speaks five foreign languages.

他是我认识的唯一一个会说五种语言的人。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

9. He told me to unpack my things and then come down to dinner.

【译文】他让我打开行装后下楼吃饭。

【用法】unpack *v.* 打开行李取出：Have you unpacked yet?

pack *vt.* 把……装入箱子：

We leave tomorrow but I haven't begun to pack yet! 我们明天走，可是我还没开始装行李呢！

Remember to pack your toothbrush. 记得把牙刷放进行李里。

10. After I had stacked my shirts and underclothes in two empty drawers, I decided to hang one of the two suits I had brought with me in the cupboard.

【译文】将衬衫、内衣放进两个空抽屉里，然后我想把随身带来的两套西服中的一套挂到大衣柜里去。

【用法】underclothes *n.* 内衣(shorts brief)

【词缀】under-下面的，不足的：underpants 内裤；underground 地下的；underline 在……下画线；undermine 在无形中损害；undernourished 营养不良的；undernourishment 营养不良；understaffed 人手不够的；underage 未成年的；underemployment 就业不足的；underestimate 低估；undergraduate 本科生

11. The sudden movement of the door made it sway slightly and it gave me the impression that it was about to leap out at me.

【译文】由于柜门突然打开，它也随之轻微摇晃起来，让我觉得它好像马上就要跳出柜门朝我扑过来似的。

【用法】(1)这里的 that 为连接代词。由于 impression 在从句中不承担任何成分，因此 that 引导的是一个同位语从句。

(2)impression 这里不是印象，而是“错觉”。

(3)leap 较 jump 幅度更大些，比如青蛙、牛蛙跳。

leap out at me 这里的 at 带有攻击性，如：laugh at, shoot at, sneer at, aim at, protest at。

(4)几个“摇摆”的不同：dangle, sway, swing

dangle 往往上面的顶点有东西拴着；sway 指来回轻轻不规则摇摆；swing 指来回幅度相同(钟摆)。

【词缀】sw-转动：swerve 急转弯，突然转向；swift 迅速的；swing 摇荡；switch 转换器

【辨析】vibrate(*v.*)“摇动，震动”。指一种快速而不断的震动。

sway(*v.*)“摇动，摆动”。指有弹力的东西被压弯后又恢复原位的摆动。

swing(*v.*)“摇动，摆动”。指任何一头固定而另一头活动的动作，也泛指不正规的动作。

rock(*v.*)“摇动，摆动”。指轻微的摇动，也指剧烈的摇摆。

例：

The whole house vibrates whenever a heavy lorry passes.

每当重型货车经过时，整个房子都会震颤。

Dick's heavy footsteps upstairs make the old house vibrate.

迪克在楼上沉重的脚步弄得那旧房子直颤动。

The branches of the tree swayed in the wind. 树枝迎风摇晃。

His resolution swayed after the first failure. 在第一次失败之后他的决心就动摇了。

The pendulum stopped swinging. 钟摆停止了摆动。

The lantern hanging overhead swung in the wind. 吊在高处的灯在风中摇动。

Mother is rocking her baby into sleep. 母亲在摇她的婴儿入睡。

The earthquake rocks houses. 地震使房屋震动。

【联想】be about to/be to/be going to

(1)be about to 意为“正要，将要”，表示马上的将来，而不是长久的将来，它不可与表将来的状语连用。

例如：He was about to start. 他快要启程了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2)be to 表示做计划中的活动,be to 还可表示从过去的观点看将要发生的行为,含有"必将要"、"注定要"之意。

例如:He was later to regret his mind. 以后他对自己这一想法会后悔的。

(3)be going to 表示打算、准备做的事,它的"将来"比 will 更近些。

例如:We are going to play football this afternoon. 今天下午我们要踢足球。

12. "Oh, that," he said with a smile as if he were talking about an old friend.

【译文】"噢,是它呀!"他笑着说道,俨然在谈论一位老朋友。

【用法】as if 用法

1. as if 从句用陈述语气的情况

表示说话者认为句子所述的是真实的或极有可能发生或存在的事实。如:

It sounds as if it is raining. 听起来像是在下雨。

He talks as if he is drunk. 从他谈话的样子来看他是醉了。

2. as if 从句用虚拟语气的情况

表示说话人认为句子所述的是不真实的或极少有可能发生或存在的情况。

从句虚拟语气动词时态的形式如下:

(1)如果从句表示与现在事实相反,谓语动词用一般过去时。如:

You look as if you didn't care.

你看上去好像并不在乎。

He talks as if he knew where she was.

他说话的样子好像他知道她在哪里似的。

(2)从句表示与过去事实相反,谓语动词用"had+过去分词"。如:

He talks about Rome as if he had been there before.

他说起罗马来好像他以前去过罗马似的。

The girl listened as if she had been turned to stone.

那女孩倾听着,一动也不动,像已经变成了石头似的。

(3)从句表示与将来事实相反,谓语动词用"would/could/might+动词原形"。如:

He opened his mouth as if he would say something.

他张开嘴好像要说什么。

It looks as if it might snow. 看来好像要下雪了。

3. as if 还可用于省略句中

如果 as if 引导的从句是"主语+系动词"结构,可省略主语和系动词,这样 as if 后就只剩下名词、不定式、形容词(短语)、介词短语或分词。如:

He acts as if(he was)a fool. 他做事像个傻子。

Tom raised his hands as if(he was going)to say something.

汤姆举起手好像要说什么。

She left the room hurriedly as if(she was)angry.

她匆忙离开房间,好像生气的样子。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 25 The *Cutty Sark*

本节重点和难点

- 动词不定式作后置定语的用法
- it 作形式主语的用法
- 与过去事实相反的虚拟语气
- 只能用关系代词 that 修饰某物的定语从句

本课词汇

impressive [im'presiv] *adj.* 印象深刻的，感人的

steamship ['stiːmˌʃip] *n.* 蒸汽轮船

vessel ['vesl] *n.* 容器，器皿；船，舰；管，血管

【用法】1. vessel 作"器皿"解时，主要指盛液体的，如桶、壶、瓶、碗、杯等。2. vessel 在宗教中可指"人"。如：a chosen vessel(被上帝选中的人)，weaker vessel(妇女、女性)。

era ['iərə] *n.* 代，阶段，纪元

Java ['dʒɑːvə](地名)爪哇

rudder ['rʌdə] *n.* 舵

roll [rəul] *v.* 颠簸，摇摆

steer [stiə] *v.* 驾驶，掌舵

【词组】steer clear of 机灵地脱身；避开

temporary ['tempərəri] *adj.* 暂时的，临时的

plank [plæŋk] *n.* 木板

fit [fit] *v.* 安装

equator [i'kweitə] *n.* (地球)赤道

call in at 停靠

delay [di'lei] *v.*；*n.* 推迟，耽搁，延迟

【词组】without delay 毫不拖延地；立即

no doubt 毫无疑问

课文详解

1. Before they were replaced by steamships, sailing vessels like the *Cutty Sark* were used to carry tea from China and wool from Australia.

【译文】在蒸汽船取代帆船之前，"卡蒂萨克"号之类的帆船被用来从中国运回茶叶，从澳大利亚运回羊毛。

【用法】boat，ship 和 vessel 的区别：boat 通常比 ship 小，但在非正式场合下，两者可换用；vessel 可代替前两者，但是更为正式，通常用在文学体中：A camel is known as the ship of the desert. 骆驼被认为是沙漠之舟。

vessel 和 vehicle (所有车辆)一样，是个统称词，可以指任何类型的船只。

vessel (*n.*)"容器"。指盛装液体的用具。

container (*n.*)"容器"。指盛装固体或液体的日常用具。

例如：

A heat exchanger, in a narrow sense is a vessel. 从狭义来说，换热器是一种容器。

He began putting the sacred vessels away. 他开始把神器收起来。

I couldn't find my soap container. 我找不到我的肥皂盒了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Another thousand metres along the coast stood the fat silver containers at Whitegate.
顺海岸再过去 1000 米，在怀特盖特，矗立着一些巨大的银色储油罐。

2. The only other ship to match her was the *Thermopylae*.

【译文】唯一可以与之一比高低的是“塞姆皮雷”号帆船。

【用法】match

(1)(=be equal to)匹敌，相比。与介词 in/for 连用：No one can match him in singing. 论唱歌谁也比不过他。

He's no match for John in tennis. 打网球他不是约翰的对手。

(2)(=to be suitable for use, esp. in color or pattern)匹配，相配：The picture matches the story. 这幅图和故事很相配。

【词汇】**unmatched** *adj.* 无比的，无敌的：He remains unmatched as a writer of satire. 他作为讽刺作家无人能比。

【辨析】match、equal、rival 这些动词均含“相称，比得上，与……相比”之意。

match：指对手之间力量、强度、性能或利益等的较量或竞争。

equal：指在数量、价值或程度等方面完全相等。

rival：指某人或某物在和对手竞争中，在能力、质量等方面都能与之相匹敌，都能比得上。

【联想】表示比赛中领先落后的短语：

be the first to reach; take the lead; be ahead; lose the lead; lag/hang behind

3. It marks the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

【译文】它标志着帆船伟大传统的结束与一个新纪元的开始。

【辨析】times, age, era

(1)times (pl.)指历史上的一个阶段，即“时代，时期”：In ancient times, it was difficult for people to get enough food. 在古代，人们难以找到足够的食物。

in ancient times(在古代，在古时候); Roman times(古罗马时代); in the time(s) of the Stuarts(斯图亚特王朝时代)

(2)age 指特定的历史阶段；经常大写，并与其他词构成专有名词：the Iron Age(铁器时代); the Stone Age(石器时代); the Middle Ages(中世纪); in the modern age(在当今时代)

The space age dawned in the 20th century. 航天时代开始于 20 世纪。

(3)era(纪元)是指地球或人类社会历史上的一段很长的时期，尤其是指以某些特别事件或发展为标志的：Christian era starts from the birth of Christ. 公历纪元是从基督的诞生开始的。

4. A temporary rudder was made on board from spare planks and it was fitted with great difficulty.

【译文】船员用备用的木板在船上赶制了一只应急用的舵，并克服重重困难将舵安装就位。

【用法】(1)介词短语 on board 在句中作地点状语。正常语序是将其放在 from spare planks 之后，现提前起到使文字更为紧凑和对该地点状语加以强调的作用。

介词短语 from spare planks 与句中动词 make 搭配使用，构成词组 be made from...(由……制成)。

(2)with great difficulty 为“介词+抽象名词”构成的短语，在句中作状语。

【词汇】**temporary** *adj.* 临时的：a temporary job/government 临时工作/政府

tempor-时间：contemporary *adj.* 当代的；同时代人的

temporize *v.* 见风使舵：a temporizing politician 一个见风使舵的政客

delay *n.*; *v.* 耽搁，耽误(往后放)：

They delayed publishing the report until after the election. 他们把报告推迟到选举之后才发表。

【词组】**serve as sth.** = be used as 被用作

She serves as a teacher.

This book serves as a weapon.

The sound made by bird can serve as language.

The picture serves as an impressive reminder of my miserable childhood. 这里提到“使人想起”没有

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

用 remind sb. of sth. 而是用 serve as a reminder of sth. 符合英国人的表达习惯，在写作中多使用抽象名词，更加符合英美人的写作习惯。

Watching too much TV will affect one's studies.

Heavy exposure to TV will interfere with one's studies.

过度看电视会影响一个人的学习。

If you compare the two lifestyles carefully, you'll find the former is superior to the latter.

Careful comparison of the two life styles will show the superiority of the former over the later.

如果你比较一下这两种生活方式，你就会发现前者比后者要好。

5. After crossing the Equator, the captain called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted, but by now the *Thermopylae* was over five hundred miles ahead.

【译文】跨越赤道后，船长将船停靠在一个港口，在那儿换了一只舵，但此时，塞姆皮雷号早已在500多英里之遥了。

【词缀】capt-抓：recapture 夺回；captive 被俘获的，俘虏；captivate 迷住；captor 捕捉者

capture 本意"逮捕人"，引申"攻占城市"，再引申"引起注意力"。

capture/attract/draw/catch/arrest attention 吸引注意力

6. Even this was remarkable, considering that she had had so many delays.

【译文】但考虑到路上的多次耽搁，这个成绩也已很不容易了。

【用法】considering *prep.* 考虑到，就……而论（复习 19 课相同结构）

引导原因状语从句的连词：

in that...原因就在于；on(the)grounds that...因为；for the(simple) reason that...（仅仅）因为；considering that...鉴于；given that...鉴于；now(that)....既然（指新出现的情况）；in as/so much as...由于；not that...,but that...不是因为……而是因为……

She was fortunate in that she had friends to help her. 她很幸运，有一些朋友帮助她。

He left on the grounds that he was ill. 他因病离去。

Considering that they're newcomers, they've accomplished a lot.

考虑到他们是新手，他们干得已经很成功了。

7. There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.

【译文】毫无疑问，如果中途没有失去舵，"卡蒂萨克"肯定会轻易夺冠。

【用法】There is no doubt that...毫无疑问。

There is no doubt that he is the best. 毫无疑问他是最好的。

There is some doubt 后只能带 wh-从句。

There is some doubt whether he will come. 难以肯定他是否会来。

低调陈述(understatement)：就是轻描淡写地来陈述一种想法，低调陈述最基本的表现方法有下列三种：

(1)正话反说：就是用 no, not, none, never 以及否定词缀等否定词与否定表达法来表述肯定的内容，这种表达方式在修辞学中有一个专门术语叫曲言法(litotes)。例如：

There is no doubt about it. 此事毫无疑问。

The sort of medicine is not useless. 这种药并不是没有作用。

(2)回避正面直说或不作正面的回答：就是其中所表达的含意让听话人自己去琢磨，这样用时，"以情态动词+不定式(不定式完成式)"为多。例如：

Why should you be so late today? 你今天怎么来得这么晚？

这样说，比 Why are you so late today? 要委婉得多，其中的含义是：You should come here earlier.

(3)弱说代替强说：就是常用 a bit, almost, a little, hardly, kind of, rather, pretty, scarcely, quite, something of, sort of 等低调词(downtoners)来减轻语气。例如：

By this time they were a little anxious. 这时他们有点儿焦急了。

My shoe has been pressing against my foot, so it hurts a bit. 我的鞋挤脚，所以有点儿疼。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

额外收获

两种非真实条件句：

1. 表示对过去事实进行假设的条件句（先设场景，后举例子）

从句：had＋过去分词，主句：would have＋过去分词

If they hadn't saved us, we would have been drowned in the river.

要不是他们救我们，我们已经在河里淹死了。

If I had taken your advice, I would not have made a big mistake.

我要是听你的劝告，就不会犯大错了。

2. 对现在或将来的情况进行假设的条件句

从句：一般过去时；主句：would＋动词原形

If I had enough money, I would run a company of my own.

我如果有钱，就自己开公司。（但是现在没钱）

若从句中动词为 be，多用 were，不管主语是什么人称。

If it were not raining now, I would go for a walk. 要是现在天没下雨，我就去散步。

注：在书面语中，也可省去 if，把助动词 had、should、were 提到主语之前，如：

Had I taken your advise. I would not have made a big mistake.

要是当初我采纳你的建议，我就不会犯这个大错。

Had they not forseen the danger, they would have been ambushed.

如果他们没有预见到危险，他们早就遭到伏击了。

Had it not been for the reservoir, we'd never have been able to beat the drought.

要不是有水库，我们绝对不可能战胜干旱。

Should there be a flood, what should we do? 假如洪水来了，我们应该怎么做？

Were it not for their assistance, we would be in serious difficulty.

要是没有他们的帮助，我们就会陷入严重的困难中。

茶文化(Tea)

英国人爱喝茶是世界闻名的。然而茶的故乡并不在英国，而在中国，中国是种茶、制茶和饮茶最早的国家，英国最早的茶是300年前从中国运过去的。据说，英语中 tea 的发音原是中国南方某地方言对茶的叫法[ti:]。

到今天，饮茶不仅是英国人所喜爱的消遣方式，而且是一项重要的贸易，英国拥有许多茶叶公司。茶是英国最流行的饮料，将近一半的英国人喜欢饮茶。一位英国剧作家曾经说过："While there is tea, there is hope."（有茶就有希望）。

茶的重要性也体现在英语中，并逐渐融入到英国文化中，甚至成为文学艺术创作的主题。英语中出现了许多与 tea 有关的短语，如：sb.'s cup of tea（某人的一杯茶），指"正合口味，正中下怀"；a tea hound 指爱交际的男子，爱和女人交际的男子；for all the tea in China 指无论如何（也不……）。

英语中也产生许多与 tea 有关的词组，如：tea cup（茶杯），tea caddy（茶筒），tea pot（茶壶），tea tray（茶盘），teapoy（茶几），teagarden（茶园），teacake（当茶点用的一种饼），tea dealer（茶商）。

英国人喝茶比较定时，不像中国人那样随时随地都可以喝茶。英国人习惯于三餐两茶。每天，人们工作、学习一段时间后，需要停下来休息一刻钟左右，喝杯茶，吃点东西，这段时间叫 Tea Break（茶休），茶休一般为一天两次：Morning Tea（上午茶）和 Afternoon Tea（下午茶）。上午茶一般在10点半左右，下午茶一般在下午4、5点钟时。茶休在英国是"雷打不动"的休息时间，这在别的西方国家是没有的。

英国家庭和朋友往来，最喜欢请朋友喝茶。一些家庭喜欢在周末下午请朋友共享茶点，举行一个小小的 Tea Party（茶会）。这种非正式的茶会，少则二三人，多则数十人。一般家庭都有茶叶、茶具和茶点。下午茶一定要浓，主人在厨房将茶和各色点心准备好后，用茶车（Tea Wagon）推入客厅或户外，供客人享用，客人们一边品茶，一边聊天。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin

本节重点和难点

- it 作形式宾语的用法
- 用主动的结构表示被动含义的动词
- “so+形容词或副词+that 从句”结构
- than 引导的定语从句

本课词汇

influence ['influəns] *n.* 影响，感化

【词组】under the influence of 在……的影响下；have influence over 有左右……的力量；have influence on/upon 对……有影响

【用法】作名词时，后常接 on/upon；作及物动词时，后可接 to do，此时宾语为人。influence 通常指通过劝说、行动或树立榜样来改变一个人的行为或思想，是潜移默化的影响，也可指自然力的作用；affect 指足够能引起反应或引出相应反响的刺激因素，着重指使事物受到不良的影响或指一个人的感情受到某种影响。

pride [praid] *v.* 骄傲

taste [teist] *v.* 品尝，辨味；有……味道；体验，感到 *n.* 滋味；味觉；趣味，鉴赏力

【词组】in bad(poor) taste 趣味很低，不得体，不礼貌/in good taste(相当于 in taste)文雅的，得体的/to one's taste 合某人口味，中意/have high taste in 对……有高的鉴赏力

【用法】1. 作“有……味道，尝味道”讲时，不用进行时，常与 can、could 连用。2. 作“吃起来有……味道”讲时，后接形容词。3. 作“吃起来像……的味道”讲时，后接 of，有时也接 like。

exert [ig'zəːt] *vt.* 施加(压力)

subtle ['sʌtl] *adj.* 微妙的，难以捉摸的

advertiser ['ædvətaɪzə] *n.* 做广告的人

classify ['klæsifai] *vt.* 分类

get...for nothing 免费获取

magic ['mædʒik] *n.* 魔术，戏法 *adj.* 有魔力的，魔术的

【词组】as if by magic 像使用魔术般；不可思议地；飞快地/like magic 不可思议地快；立刻；马上

go wrong 出毛病，失误

sample ['sɑːmpəl] *n.* 样品，样本 *v.* 抽样，取样

【词组】be up to sample (货物)符合样品规格；与样货相符

devise [di'vaiz] *vt.* 设计，发明，想出

capture ['kæptʃə] *n.* 捕获，俘虏 *v.* 夺得，攻占

manufacturer [ˌmænju'fæktʃərə] *n.* 制造商

wheelbarrow ['wiːlˌbærəu] *n.* 手推车

boot [buːt] *n.* (汽车后部的)行李箱

ingredient [in'griːdiənt] *n.* 配料，成分

crane [krein] *n.* 鹤；起重机

anticipate [æn'tisipeit] *vt.* 预料，预期

【辨析】anticipate 和 expect 这两个词都有“预期”的意思。anticipate 指以高兴或恐惧的心情期待所想之事或预料之事的发生。例如：He anticipates a wonderful vacation. 他期待一个快乐的假期。expect 较为常用，通常指感觉其事必将发生。例如：He expects to take a vacation in May. 他期望在五月休假。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

课文详解

1. No one can avoid being influenced by advertisements.

【译文】没有人能避免受广告的影响。

【联想】flu-流动;influential 有影响力的;fluent 流利的;fluency 流利;fluid 流质的,流体;flush 脸红;affluent 富裕的,丰富的

flu 还有"流感"的意思,来源于 influenza。

【用法】英语节略词:

一般说来,节略词多限于非正式场合,尤其在日常生活中,经常使用的词被节略的机会最多。节略词和原词一样有语法形态的变化,名词可以与冠词连用,也可以有复数形式.例如:烫发(permanent wave)的节略词 perm 可以有现在分词 perming 和过去分词 permed 的形式。

Ad:advertisement 广告
Auto:automobile 汽车
Biz:business 商业
Cig:cigarette 香烟
Coke:cocacola 可口可乐
Co-op:Co-operative store 合作商店
delt:delicatessen 熟食
disco:discotheque 迪斯科
dorm:dormitary 宿舍
exam:examination 考试
grad:graduate 毕业生
lab:laboratory 实验室
hosp:hospital 医院
kilo:kilogram 千克
mike:microphone 扬声器
medic:medical personnel 医护人员
mod:modern 现代
nuke:nuclear 核
pc:percent 百分比
perm:permanent wave 烫发
ped:pedestrian 行人
photo:photograph 相片
pic:picture 照片
pix:pictures 电影
porn:pornography 黄色书刊
pro:professional 职业的
phone:telephone 电话
sec:secretary 秘书
uni: university 大学
vet: veterinary surgeon 兽医
atomomb: atom bomb 原子弹
blacketeer:black marketeer 黑市商人
cinemanufacturer:cinema manufacturer 电影制片人
fruice:fruit juice 果汁
slanguage:slang language 方言俗语
teleceiver:television receiver 电视接收机

2. Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste, we are no longer free to choose the things we want, for advertising exerts a subtle influence on us.

【译文】尽管我们可能对自己的良好鉴赏力感到自豪,但我们已不再能任意选择我们想要的东西,这是因为广告在我们身上施加了一种潜移默化的影响。

【用法】(1)这是一个由 as 引导的让步状语从句,整句话意思为:Though/Although we may be very satisfied with our ability to judge, we don't have much freedom to pick up things we need.

(2)subtle change 微妙的变化

subtle differences in meaning 意思的微妙差别

(3)exert an influence on 对……有影响;对……施加影响。名词 influence 常可同 have、exercise、produce 等动词搭配,后面使用介词 upon 或 on,分别表达"对……有影响"、"对……施加影响"、"对……产生影响"等,如:He exerted an influence on the election. 他对选举施加了影响。

注意有关 pride 的三个词组:be proud of, take pride in, pride oneself on

(4)exert *vt.* 施加 exert pressure/influence/control/fascination on sb.,例:

Roman culture exerts a far-reaching influence on English proverbs.

罗马文化对英语谚语有着深远的影响。

3. In their efforts to persuade us to buy this or that product, advertisers have made a close study of human nature and have classified all our little weaknesses.

【译文】做广告的人在力图劝说我们买下这种产品或那种产品之前,已经仔细地研究了人的本性,

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

并把人的弱点进行了分类。

【词汇】classify *vt.* 分类；class *n.* 等级

【词缀】-fy 使……化，使变成……：justify 证明……为应该；liquefy 使液化；petrify 使石化，使惊呆；beautify 美化；simplify 简化；falsify 伪造；glorify 使光荣；electrify 使兴奋；intensify 加强；purify 净化

4. They devise hundreds of competitions which will enable us to win huge sums of money.

【译文】他们设计数以百计的竞赛，竞赛中有人可赢得巨额奖金。

【用法】(1)enable sb. to do sth. 和 make it possible for sb. to do 在很多场合下可以替换。

(2)注意 devise 和 device 的区别。

5. Before long, biscuits of all shapes and sizes began arriving at the factory.

【译文】不久，形状各异、大小不一的饼干陆续送到了工厂。

【用法】of all sizes 各种大小

to varying degrees 各种程度

6. It had been baked by a college student who had used over 1,000 pounds of flour, 800 pounds of sugar, 200 pounds of fat, and 400 pounds of various other ingredients.

【译文】它是由一个大学生烘制的，用去 1,000 多磅面粉、800 磅食糖、200 磅动物脂肪及 400 磅其他各种原料。

【联想】食品包装盒上除了材料 ingredient 之外往往还印有：

净重 net weight；净含量 net volume；储藏寿命 shelf life；保质期 best use before/date of expiration；不含防腐剂 No preservatives.

7. It was so heavy that a crane had to be used to remove it from the lorry.

【译文】饼干太重了，用了一台起重机才把它从卡车上卸下。

【词汇】**crane** *n.* 起重机；鹤 *v.* 伸长(脖子)

crane one's neck to get a better view 伸长脖子好看得清楚些

remove *v.* 抹去灰尘、革职，赶走，卸载货物，祛除雀斑都可以用这个单词。

8. The manufacturers had to pay more money than they had anticipated, for they bought the biscuit from the student for $ 24,000.

【译文】饼干公司不得不付出比他们预计多得多的钱，因为为买下那学生烘制的饼干他们支付了 24,000 美元。

【用法】More than they had... 这句话中间省略了 what。

还原：more than what they had...

额外收获

1. 名词作动词

(1)table：名词，桌子；当动词用，是指开会时延期讨论提案等，也就是暂缓审议。例如：

They tabled the motion at the meeting. 他们在会上摆出暂缓审议。

We are tabling this matter until further notice. 我们延期讨论这件事，以后再说。

(2)pride：名词，荣誉；当动词用，是指感到得意或自豪。例如：

We prided ourselves on our good work. 我们为自己工作的表现而自豪。

I have long prided myself on being a good teacher. 我一向以身为一名称职的老师而自豪。

(3)carpet：名词，地毯；当动词用，是覆盖的意思。

The flower girls carpeted the floor with rose petals before the bride's entrance.

新娘进来前，花童将玫瑰花瓣撒满了地板。

During the winter time my roof is carpeted with white snow. 冬天时我家的屋顶上盖满了白雪。

(4)floor：名词，地板；当动词用，是踩足汽车的油门、加速开车或使人惊讶。

As soon as I saw his gun, I floored my car. 我一见到他有枪，立即踩足油门加速开车。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

When you see a police car, don't floor it. 当你看到警车时，别开快车。

The news really floored me; I hadn't been expecting it at all.

这个消息真使我吃惊到不知所措，这完全出乎我的意料。

(5) top：名词，顶端；当动词用，是做得更好或高过某人。

If he had tried harder, he could have topped his class.

假如他以前用功些，他会在班里(成绩)名列前茅的。

The tax-cut issue will top today's agenda. 减税问题将是今天的主要议题。

Mr. Lin tops me by three inches. 林先生比我高三英寸。

(6) flag：名词，旗帜；当动词用，是指打旗号或做手势来传达讯息。

When my car broke down, I flagged a police car.

当我的汽车抛锚的时候，我打了个信号招来一辆警车。

The beach life-guards usually flag one another for communication.

海滨救生员通常用旗号传达讯息。

(7) club：名词，俱乐部、高尔夫球棒；当动词用，是用棍棒打人。

The security officers should not club any suspect who does not resist arrest.

保安人员对任何没有拒捕的嫌犯都不该用棍棒殴打。

I saw the police clubbing a suspected robber. 我看到警察用棍棒打了一个抢劫嫌疑犯。

(8) soldier：名词，士兵；当动词用，是指不畏困难，坚持下去。

The Marine Corps usually have to soldier on under the hardest conditions.

海军陆战队通常在最艰难的情况下，仍要勇敢前进。

He doesn't like the job but he'll soldier on until they can find a replacement for him.

他不喜欢这个工作，但他会继续干下去，直到他们找到接替他的人为止。

(9) duck：名词，鸭子；当动词用，是逃避、躲避、回避的意思。

His speech was full of generalizations, and ducked all the real issues.

他的讲话全是泛泛而谈，回避了所有实质性的问题。

(10) chair：名词，椅子、主席(chairperson)；当动词用，是担任主席。

He has chaired a committee on international affairs. 他担任国际事务委员会的主席。

She will chair the math department next semester. 下学期她将担任数学系主任。

(11) doctor：名词，医生、大夫；当动词用，是指篡改、对……做手脚。

They were charged with doctoring the election results. 他们因篡改选举结果而受到控告。

to doctor the number 是做假账的意思，相当于 to cook the book。

He tried to doctor the number before tax time. 他在报税前设法做假账。

(12) cushion：名词，坐垫；当动词用，是指缓和或降低撞击或震动。

Powerful shock absorbers cushion our landing. 有效的减震装置缓解了我们着陆时的冲撞力。

Nothing can cushion the sorrow of her mother's death. 什么也不能减轻她丧母的悲痛。

(13) cap：名词，便帽；当动词用，是指限额、约束或制止。

The new law has capped the crabbing season in our area.

新法令限制了本地区捕蟹的时节。(即不准随时捕蟹)

Our school will cap the white student enrollment to promote its diversity programs.

本校为了促进生源的种族多元化，对白人学生的生源加以了限制。

(14) showcase：名词，陈列柜；当动词用，是指展览或亮相。

She fully showcased her ability in the debate. 她在这场辩论赛中充分展示了自己的才华。

The real estate company is showcasing many new houses in the newspaper.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

该房地产公司在报纸上展示多款新房型。

(15)grandfather:名词,祖父;当动词用,是指保护(免受限制)或保持现状。

Our current employees will be grandfathered under the existing health insurance.

现有卫生医疗制度为我们的员工提供了保障。

Everybody would like to grandfather this regulation as it is.

大家都想要保持现有的制度。

The new staff members can not be grandfathered into the old pension system.

新员工不能享受旧有的养老制度。

(16)house:名词,房屋;当动词用,是指供给住所(to provide shelter)。

The farmer has housed the horse in the barn. 农夫把他的马圈在马厩里。

I would be glad to house you for the weekend. 我很高兴这个周末你能够住在我这里。

(17)radio:名词,收音机;当动词用,是指用无线电发送讯息、广播。

At airport the lady radioed for a missing child.

机场,这位女士正在广播寻找一个走失的孩子。

All U. S. ships will have to radio the Coast Guard when they are in trouble.

美国船只如果遇到困难,可以用无线电同海岸巡逻队取得联系。

2. as 引导的让步状语从句

1)much as+从句,...

Much as I admire his courage, I don't think he acted wisely.

我尽管佩服他的勇气,但我认为他这样做是不明智的。

Much as I like you, I will not marry you. 我虽然喜欢你,可不会嫁给你。

Much as she hated cruelty, she couldn't help watch the bullfight.

尽管她非常痛恨残忍的行为,但是却忍不住观看斗牛。

2)*adj.*/*adv.* + as+从句,...

Old as he is, he is still energetic. 他尽管上了岁数,但精力充沛。

Rich as he is, he is not happy. 他虽然有钱,但他不幸福。

Bravely as they fought, they had no chance of winning.

尽管他们打得很勇敢,但是仍无获胜机会。

3)*n.* + as+从句,...(名词不带冠词)

Fool as he looks, he often makes most intelligent proprosals.

他尽管看起来傻,但经常提出一些聪明的建议。

Child as he is, he is knowledgeable. 他虽然只是个孩子,但却懂得很多。

4)*v.* + as +从句,...

Try as I might, I couldn't lift the stone. 我使多大的劲儿也搬不动这块石头。

Object as my parents may, I'll marry you. 不管我父母怎样反对,我都要嫁给你。

注:as 也可换成 though,但不如 as 常用,且 though 不与 much 连用。

3. 其他让步状语从句

1)"wh-ever"和"no matter wh-"引导的让步状语从句("wh-ever"和"no matter wh-"充当让步条件句时可以互换使用):

No matter how busy you are/However busy you are, he always insists on coming with you.

无论你有多忙,他总是坚持与你同行。

Judges, however wise or eminent/no matter how wise or eminent, are human and can make mistakes.

法官,无论有多聪明或多有名,毕竟也是人,也会犯错。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

Whatever others may say/No matter what others may say, stick to your own principles.

不管别人说什么，都要坚持自己的原则。

Whenever I ask him for help/No matter when I ask him for help, he is ready to lend a hand.

无论我何时向他求助，他都乐意伸出援手。

Wherever it went/No matter where it went, it left behind it a trail of dead deer and small animals like rabbits.

无论它到哪儿，身后总是留下一长串死鹿和类似于兔子那样的小动物尸体。

2) Whether...or...引导的让步状语从句：

Most women feel a lack of satisfaction about their life, whether they are married with children or living a wild single life.

大多数妇女对自己的生活缺乏满足感，无论她们是已成家生子还是仍过着自由单身的生活。

Be he friend or enemy/Whether he is a friend or an enemy, we will deal with him fairly in business.

无论他是朋友还是敌人，在商场上我们公平相待。

3)一些公式化的让步状语从句：

Believe it or not, I will marry a millionaire tomorrow. 我明天要嫁给一个百万富翁，信不信由你。

Come what may/No matter what happens/Whatever happens, I will carry out the plan.

无论发生什么情况，我都会执行计划。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy

本节重点和难点

- it 作形式主语的用法
- “主语＋be such＋that 从句”结构
- 后面可以跟状语从句的形容词

本课词汇

philosopher [fi'lɔsəfə] *n.* 哲学家，哲人

wisdom ['wizdəm] *n.* 明智，智慧

priest ['pri:st] *n.* 牧师，神父

spiritual ['spiritjuəl] *adj.* 精神（上）的，心灵的

grudge [grʌdʒ] *vt.* 不愿给，舍不得

surgeon ['sə:dʒən] *n.* 外科医生

passer-by [ˌpa:sə'bai] *n.* 过路人

seek [si:k] *vt.* 寻求

【词组】seek after 寻找，追求/seek for 寻求，找寻/seek out 搜寻出，找到/seek through 搜查遍

【辨析】seek、search 这两个动词指“寻找”。seek 为正式用词，往往指设法找到如工作、生活的地点等。例：They moved to London to seek jobs. 他们搬到伦敦去找工作。seek shelter from the rain 找躲雨的地方。search 指因为想找到某物，而在某个地方仔细看。例：search for a place to sit 找一个坐的地方；They are still searching for survivors of the plane crash. 他们还在搜寻飞机失事后的幸存者。

dignity ['digniti] *n.* 高尚的品质，高贵；庄严，端庄

【词组】beneath sb.'s dignity 损害尊严；有失身份

deliberately [di'libəritli] *adv.* 故意地

consequence ['kɔnsikwəns] *n.* 结果，后果，影响；重要性，要紧（和 of 连用）

【词组】as a consequence 因而；结果/in consequence 因而；结果/in consequence of 因为……的缘故；由于/take the consequences 承担后果

【辨析】consequence 通常指一系列事件发展、产生的必然结果，或一定逻辑推理的结果，与原因关系不密切；result 为普通用词，指直接或间接的原因引起的结果，多用于比较具体明确的事物，它也包括 consequence“后果”或 effects 效果所产生的“最后结果”；effect 指由于行动、步骤、人或事物直接产生的结果或效果，与原因有直接的联系，与 motive“动机”和 cause“原因”相对应。

afflict [ə'flikt] *vt.* 使苦恼，折磨

with ease 容易地，不费力地

nature ['neitʃə] *n.* 大自然

contempt [kən'tempt] *n.* 轻视，鄙视

envious ['enviəs] *adj.* 嫉妒的，羡慕的

课文详解

1. In the light of this statement, teachers live by selling knowledge, philosophers by selling wisdom and priests by selling spiritual comfort.

【译文】根据这种说法，教师靠卖知识为生，哲学家靠卖智慧为生，牧师靠卖精神安慰为生。

【用法】(1) in the light of 按照，根据，考虑到，如：We should apply Marxism in the light of China's

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

specific conditions. 我们应当按照中国的具体情况应用马克思主义。It is to be regarded as excusable in the light of his illness. 考虑到他的病情，这是可以原谅的。

有时该短语还用来表示"当作"、"视为"之意，如：We view extravagance and waste in the light of a grave crime. 我们把奢侈浪费看作极大的犯罪。

(2)live by 通常指以某种职业为生，后面跟动名词；live on 表示以吃某种食物来维持生命。

He lives by fishing and growing potatoes. 他靠捕鱼和种土豆为生。

He lives on fish and potatoes. 他以鱼和土豆为食。

【词汇】philosopher *n.* 哲学家

phil(o)这个前缀表示"loving"，即"喜欢……的"。sopho 这个词根表示"wise"，因此字面意思是"lover of wisdom 热爱智慧的人"。

来看看这两个词根构成的其他词：

philobiblic 有爱书癖的

sophomore 大学二年级学生(有点智慧了)

sophisticated 世故的，老练的

2. Though it may be possible to measure the value of material goods in terms of money, it is extremely difficult to estimate the true value of the services which people perform for us.

【译文】尽管物质产品的价值可以用金钱来衡量，但要估算别人为我们提供的服务的价值却是极其困难的。

【用法】(1)it may be possible to measure... 及后面的 it is extremely difficult to estimate... 中的 it 均为先行词作形式主语，其逻辑主语分别为 to measure... 和 to estimate...。

(2)in terms of 根据，从……方面(来说)，如：He always considers problems in terms of the people's interests. 他总是从人民利益出发来考虑问题。

The book has been well reviewed, but in terms of actual sales/in sales terms, it hasn't been very successful. 这本书受到好评，但是从实际的销售情况来看，它并不太成功。

本文中的 in terms of 可以理解为 expressed by。

3. There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save our lives, yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service.

【译文】有时，我们为了挽救生命，愿意付出我们所拥有的一切。但就在外科大夫给我们提供了这种服务后，我们却可能为所支付的昂贵费用而抱怨。

【用法】(1) grudge 表示"不愿给；怨恨"，后面跟名词或动名词：The cruel boss grudged John even his food. 残忍的老板甚至连饭也不愿给约翰吃。He grudges paying/to pay his taxes. 他不情愿交税。

gr-表示含混粗浊的、发牢骚的声音：

groan 呻吟；grunt 咕哝着说；grumpy 爱发牢骚的；growl 低沉的吼叫，咆哮

(2)There are times when 与 There was a time when (14 课)比较。

【联想】plastic surgery 整容手术

4. The conditions of society are such that skills have to be paid for in the same way that goods are paid at a shop.

【译文】社会上的情况就是如此，技术是必须付钱去买的，就像在商店里要花钱买商品一样。

【用法】(1)in the same way that... 以与……相同的方式。由于 that 相当于 in which，在从句中起状语作用，因此这里的 that 作关系副词。这一用法是因为使用了 the same 所决定的。通常使用 same 时，除其前必须使用定冠词 the 外，需在紧随其后的名词或代词后使用 as，表示"像……一样"，如：Her shirt's the same colour as mine. 她衬衣的颜色同我的一样。

但是当在 same 后的名词或代词之后为从句时，该从句前应使用 that 引导，如：He made the same mistake(that)he'd made on the day before. 他犯了前一天犯过的同样的错误。

(2)such that 那么……，竟至，如此……以至……：

The situation was such that political observers found it difficult to predict.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

形势如此，连政治观察家也觉得难以预料。

The extent of the disaster was such that the local authorities were quite unable to cope.

这次灾情之严重连当地政府也难以应付。

Such was the force of the explosion that all the windows were broken.

爆炸的威力之大，所有的窗户都被震破了。

The situation is such that agreement is unlikely. 情况就是这样，意见无法达成一致。

His anger was such that he lost control of himself. 他非常生气连他自己都控制不了。

5. Beggars almost sell themselves as human beings to arouse the pity of passers-by.

【译文】乞丐出售的几乎是他自己，以引起过路人的怜悯。

【用法】Arouse pity/sympathy/interest/doubt/suspicion

注意和 arise 的区别

6. In seeking independence, they do not sacrifice their human dignity.

【译文】在追求独立自由的同时，他们并不牺牲为人的尊严。

【用法】seek peace/fame/quarrel/information

sought-after 吃香的

sought-after job 吃香的工作

sought-after girl 吃香的女孩

【联想】汉语中的"吃"并非总是对应着英语中的"eat"。当"吃"表示一个实际的进食动作时，可以直译。英语中表示"吃"的动词主要有三个：eat，have 和 take，翻译时选用哪个要根据动词与其宾语的搭配而定。比如"吃一个苹果"，可译为 eat an apple。"一天吃三顿"，译为 have three meals a day。"他在吃晚饭"，译为 He is taking supper.

很多时候"吃"并不表示"吃"这个动作的本义，如：吃亏、吃力、吃苦。当"吃"表示比喻或引申意义时，翻译时应采用意译，译出其比喻意义、引申意义。例如："他们是靠这个吃饭的"，该句中"吃"并非表示"吃饭"这个具体动作，而是引申为"谋生"，因此"靠……吃饭"在此应译为 live on this 或 make a living by this。又如："我吃不准他的意思"，"吃透了文件的精神"，这里的"吃"表示一种比喻，其喻意为"理解"，"领会"，"掌握"，译为 understand，catch，grasp。"吃"表示比喻和引申意义时，常有以下几层意思：

①"遭受"、"承受"、"忍受"，分别对应英语中的 stand，suffer，bear。如："吃得消"译为 be able to stand；"吃亏"译为 suffer losses，get the worst of it；"吃苦"译为 bear hardships。

②表示流行、受欢迎。如：吃香 be popular；吃不开 be unpopular，not in current demand；吃得开 be popular，get along all right

英语中与"吃"对应的成语或谚语有：

吃不了兜着走 be in for it/to be made to smart for it(to smart=suffer acutely)

吃得苦中苦，方为人上人。Hardship increases stature. /If you patiently endure trouble upon trouble，you will rise over the heads of others.

吃老本 to live off one's past gains/to live on one's own fat/to rest on past achievements.

吃力不讨好 to do a hard but thankless job

吃软不吃硬 to be open to persuasion，but not to coercion 或 can be persuaded but not forced

吃闲饭 to lead an idle life/to live in idleness

吃里扒外 to live off one person while secretly helping another

吃着碗里，瞧着锅里。Peep in my cabbage pot；stare in my cupboard. /While eating one dish，he keeps watching for next/to be insatiably greedy.

7. He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences.

【译文】他是故意地选择过那种生活的，并完全清楚以这种方式生活的后果。

【用法】(1)aware *adj.*

① aware 的意思是"意识到的，知道的，认识的"。后面接 of 引起的短语或跟 that 引起的从句。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

② 用在 how,what,when 等词的前面,aware 后的 of 可以省略。

③ aware 一般是表语形容词,前面不能用 very 修饰,习惯用 well,quite 等词。

(2)consequence 比 result 正式得多,可指简单的因果关系(无褒贬之意),但通常表示消极的不良结果,或至少是满意的结果中伴随着不良的因素。

(3)deliberately *adv.* 故意地

She deliberately ignored me when I passed her in the street.

当我在街上碰到她时,她故意不理睬我。

【词汇】deliberate *adj.*(坏事)故意的 *v.* 仔细考虑:The car crash was a deliberate attempt to kill him! 这次撞车是有人蓄意要谋害他。

deliberately 和 on purpose 这两个用作副词的词和词组均有"有意地、故意地"之意。deliberately 指经过深思熟虑后而行事,on purpose 侧重所作所为具有特殊目的。

8. He may never be sure where the next meal is coming from, but he is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people.

【译文】他可能从不知道下顿饭有无着落,但他不像有人那样被成千上万桩愁事所折磨。

【用法】(1) afflict *vt.* 使苦恼,折磨

flict-打击;affliction 痛苦,不幸,灾难;conflict 冲突,斗争

(2) be free from 不受……影响;没有;免于,如:The house is free from thieves. 这所房子没有遭劫。

free from responsibility/anxiety/hunger/starvation/taxation 没有责任/无忧无虑/免遭饥饿/免税

9. We often speak of tramps with contempt and put them in the same class as beggars, but how many of us can honestly say that we have not felt a little envious of their simple way of life and their freedom from care?

【译文】说起流浪汉,我们常常带有轻蔑,并把他们与乞丐归为一类,但是我们中有多少人能够坦率地说我们对流浪汉的简朴生活与无忧无虑的境况不感到有些羡慕呢?

【用法】(1)speak of(about)意为"谈及,说(讲)到(某事或某人)"。

(2)put...in...在句中为"把……归入……"之意。

(3)feel/be envious of 羡慕,虽可用于表示"嫉妒"之意,但一般情况下用来表示对他人的好运、成功等不含恶意的羡慕。

(4)contempt *n.* 蔑视

have/feel a contempt for sb. 看不起某人

He was fined for contempt of court. 他因藐视法庭罪而被罚款。

Familiarity breeds contempt. Distance breeds beauty. 亲昵引起轻视。距离产生美。

contemptuous *adj.* 蔑视的(be contemptuous of)

【联想】be envious of

英文中还有一词表示妒忌:greeneyed。

额外收获

英语中某些颜色的特定含义:

由于各民族文化风俗、地理位置、历史传统、宗教信仰、民族心理、思维习惯等方面的差异,颜色词语有时表现出各民族独特的"个性",带有显著的文化烙印。这就使颜色词语的翻译,可以采用不同的方法。

下面,先让我们来比较一下英汉两种语言中一些常见颜色词汇的异同。

1. red(红色)

无论是在英语国家还是在中国,红色往往与庆祝活动或喜庆日子有关。因为日历中这些日子常用红色字体,因此 red letter day 指的是"纪念日"或"喜庆的日子"。

红色还指"负债"或"亏损",因为人们总是用红笔登记负数。于是就有了这些词组:

www.TopSage.com

red figure：赤字　　red ink：赤字　　in the red：亏损

汉语中常用的带"红"字的词语，翻译成英语，可不一定用"red"，反之亦然。如：

红糖：brown sugar	红运：good luck	火灾：red ruin
红茶：black tea	红利：dividend	血战：red battle
红榜：honour roll	红事：wedding	彩霞：red sky
红豆：love pea	红酒：red wine	

2. black（黑色）　在英语中经常有"不好的"、"坏的"、"邪恶的"这种意味。如：

black money：黑钱（指来源不正当而且没有向政府报税的钱）

black market：黑市交易或黑市（意为暗中进行政府禁止买卖的商品或外汇的交易，或指违法的投机市场）；由此派生出 black market price：黑市价格

3. blue（蓝色）

在英语中通常表示不快乐、忧郁的情绪。如：

in a blue mood：情绪低沉

还常用来表示社会地位高、有权势或出身贵族或王族。如：

He is a real blue blood. 他是真正的贵族。

blue-eyed boys：受到当局宠爱和特别照顾的职工

特别介绍：a blue moon：千载难逢的机会

在英语语言中，与 blue moon 相关的短语还有 once in a blue moon（千载难逢地），cry/ask for the moon（异想天开，想做做不到的事）等。blue moon 的本来含意是指根本不可能发生的事情。

4. green（绿色）

英语中的 green 常用来表示"嫉妒"，如：

green-eyed：嫉妒/眼红

green 还表示"新鲜"或"没有经验、缺乏训练"，如：

green meat：鲜肉

a green hand：新手

green back：美钞（因为美元背面为绿色）（用于口语）

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 28 Five pounds too dear

本节重点和难点

- 动词的现在分词作状语
- 动词的现在分词和过去分词作宾语补足语
- 表示"刚……就……"的几种结构
- 同位语从句

本课词汇

wares [weəz] *n.* 货物,商品

anchor ['æŋkə] *vi.* 抛锚

deck [dek] *n.* 甲板

【词组】clear the decks 清理甲板准备战斗/deck out (with) (用……)装饰;(用……)点缀/on deck 在甲板上;做好行动准备的;(球员)准备上场

silverware ['silvəweə] *n.* 银器

tempt [tempt] *v.* 引诱,诱惑;吸引,使感兴趣

【词组】be tempted to do 很想做(某事)

【用法】1. tempt sb. into sth. (doing)诱惑某人做某事 2. tempt sb. to do sth. 引诱(或吸引)某人做某事。3. 作"诱惑、引诱"讲时,是个贬义词,指设法引诱某人去做荒谬或笨拙的坏事。Hunger tempted him to steal. 饥饿引诱他行窃。

bargain ['bɑːgin] *n.* 买卖,便宜的买卖 *v.* 谈判,协议

【词组】at a good bargain 廉价地,低价地/bargain about/over sth. 就……谈判/bargain with sb. 与……谈判/bargain away 以廉价出售/bargain hunter 到处找便宜货的人/bargain sale 大拍卖

disembark [ˌdisim'bɑːk] *vi.* 下船上岸

assail [ə'seil] *vt.* 袭击,缠住

have no intention of 不打算……,无意……

marble ['mɑːbl] *n.* 大理石,云石

inscribe [ins'kraib] *vt.* 刻写

favour ['feivə] *n.* 好处,优惠

gesticulate [dʒes'tikjuleit] *vt.* 打手势

outrageous [aut'reidʒəs] *adj.* 令人不能容忍的

thrust [θrʌst] *n.* 刺,戳,插入;推力 *v.* 刺戳,插入

【词组】thrust oneself forward 出风头/thrust oneself in 强行闯入;强行介入/thrust out 推出;逐出

课文详解

1. Small boats loaded with wares sped to the great liner as she was entering the harbour.

【译文】当一艘大型班船进港的时候,许多小船载着各种杂货快速向客轮驶来。

【用法】(1) wares *n.* 货郎随身携带的小货物;a pedlar's wares 小贩出售的货物;goods 商店里出售的商品;commodity 常用复数,是正式的经济学术语。

(2)load 本意指往车上装货物,引申为装满,而且给人一种沉甸甸往下沉的感觉。

small boat loaded with wares 装满货物的小船;a tree loaded with fruit 果实累累的树木

也可引申到人身上:

loaded with anxieties 心事重重;loaded with debt 负债累累;loaded with guilt 负罪感极强,充满负罪感;loaded with fat 身上都是脂肪

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Before she had anchored, the men from the boats had climbed on board and the decks were soon covered with colourful rugs from Persia, silks from India, copper coffee pots, and beautiful handmade silverware.

【译文】大船还未下锚，小船上的人就纷纷爬上客轮。一会儿工夫，甲板上就摆满了色彩斑斓的波斯地毯、印度丝绸、铜咖啡壶以及手工制作的漂亮的银器。

【用法】(1)anchorman *n.* 有主持人的意思。

(2) rug 是小地毯，往往是局部的，比如门前一块，茶几周围一块等；carpet 相对大，往往指整个房间的地毯。

as snug as a bug in a rug. 就象臭虫钻在地毯里一样舒服

Let's pull up the covers. There you are, Tom, as snug as a bug in a rug. 被子盖上，就是这样，汤姆，很舒服的。

(3)coffee/tea/flower pot 咖啡壶/茶壶/花盆

melting pot 熔炉

3. It was difficult not to be tempted.

【译文】要想不对这些东西动心是很困难的。

【用法】(1)tempt *vt.* 引诱，诱惑

resist the temptation 抵挡诱惑

seduce 唆使；lure 诱饵，引诱；appeal to 吸引；bewitch 迷惑

seduce sb. into doing sth. 唆使某人做……

(2)It is difficult not to be tempted. 有双重否定的味道，可以模仿：it is difficult not to be disturbed/outraged

4. Many of the tourists on board had begun bargaining with the tradesmen, but I decided not to buy anything until I had disembarked.

【译文】船上的许多游客开始同商贩讨价还价起来，但我打定主意上岸之前什么也不买。

【用法】关于讨价还价的用语：

Hey, don't try to rip me off. I know what this is worth. 别想宰我，我识货。

Can you give me a little deal on this? 这能卖得便宜一点吗？

Can you give me this for cheaper? 能便宜一点卖给我吗？

Is there any discount on bulk purchases? 我多买些能打折吗？

Give me a discount. 给我打个折吧。

How much do you want for this? 这件东西你想卖多少钱？

If you don't give me a better price, I won't buy this. 如果价格不优惠些，我是不会买的。

I can get this cheaper at other places. 这样东西我在别的地方可以买到更便宜的。

What's the lowest you're willing to go? 最低多少钱卖？

Come on, give me a break on this. 别这样，你就让点儿价吧。

The shop tried to rip me off, but I taught them a good lesson.

那个商店企图宰我，结果让我教训了一顿。

I was ripped off. /I was cleaned out. 我被宰了。

5. I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring.

【译文】我刚下船，就被一个人缠住了，他向我兜售一枚钻石戒指。

【用法】(1)assail *vt.* 猛击，困扰：All sorts of problems assailed us suddenly. 各种各样的问题突然袭来，使我们深受困扰。She was assailed by doubts. 她为疑惑所困扰。

(2)no sooner...than 刚……就……

I had no sooner lain down than the telephone rang. 我刚一躺下，电话铃就响了。

如果放在句首，则主谓须倒装：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

No sooner had I lain down than the telephone rang.

hardly/scarcely/barely...when...意思一样，时态相同(主句：过去完成时；从句：一般过去时)，都可以倒装，但是搭配不同(no sooner 后跟 than，hardly 后跟 when)，如：

The game had no sooner begun than it started raining.

The game had hardly begun when it started raining.

比赛刚一开始，就下起雨来。

6. The man went to great lengths to prove that the diamonds were real. As we were walking past a shop, he held a diamond firmly against the window and made a deep impression in the glass.

【译文】那个人竭力想证明那钻石是真货。我们路过一家商店时，他将一颗钻石使劲地往橱窗上一按，在玻璃上留下一道深痕。

【用法】(1)go to great/considerable/any lengths to do sth. 竭力做某事

They went to great lengths to persuade him to give up the plan.

他们不遗余力地说服他放弃那项计划。

(2)impression 印痕，源于单词 press"压"的本意。

7. I examined one of the pens closely.

【译文】我仔细察看了一支钢笔。

【用法】兼有两种形式的副词：

(1)close 与 closely

close 意思是"近"；closely 意思是"仔细地"：

He is sitting close to me. 他紧挨着我坐。

Watch him closely. 仔细看他。

(2)late 与 lately

late 意思是"晚"；lately 意思是"最近"：

You have come too late. 你来得太晚了。

What have you been doing lately? 你最近都在做什么?

(3)deep 与 deeply

deep 意思是"深"，表示空间深度；deeply 时常表示感情上的深度，"深深地"

He pushed the stick deep into the mud. 他把棍子深深地插入泥土里。

Even father was deeply moved by the film. 连父亲也被这部电影深深感动了。

(4)high 与 highly

high 表示空间高度；highly 表示程度，相当于 much：

The plane was flying high. 这架飞机飞得很高。

I think highly of your opinion. 你的看法很有道理。

(5)wide 与 widely

wide 表示空间宽度；widely 意思是"广泛地"，"在许多地方"：

He opened the door wide. 他把门开得大大的。

English is widely used in the world. 英语在世界上被广泛地应用。

(6)free 与 freely

free 的意思是"免费"；freely 的意思是"无限制地"：

You can eat free in my restaurant whenever you like. 无论何时，你都可以在我餐馆免费用餐。

You may speak freely; say what you like. 你可以自由地畅所欲言。

【词汇】genuine *adj*. 不是伪造的，常用来修饰古董、字画、金银、珠宝等，与 fake 相对。a genuine signature/antique 亲笔签名/真的古董；genuine peals 真珍珠；Is this a genuine Ming vase? No, it's a fake. 这是真正的明代花瓶吗？不，这是一个赝品。

genuine, authentic, actual, real, true, factual

这些形容词均有"真的，真实的，实在的"之意。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

genuine：普通常用词，指真正的，货真价实的，强调非人为或非虚假的。

authentic 常可与 genuine 换用，指与事实完全相符，强调准确可靠。

actual：指事物的实际存在，并非出自主观臆造。

real：普通用词，含义较广，有时可与 actual 和 genuine 换用。指一切真实的或表面看不出虚假的事物。

true：指同实际情况或标准完全一致。口语中多用。

factual 与 actual 同义，但更侧重根据事实，不夸大或缩小，不渲染。

8. At the base of the gold cap, the words "made in the U.S.A." had been neatly inscribed.

【译文】金笔帽下方整齐地刻有"美国制造"字样。

【词根】scrib-script-刻：describe 描写；description 描写；manuscript 手稿；postscript 附笔；prescribe 开药方；prescription 处方；subscribe 订购，订阅；conscribe 征兵；conscription 征兵

9. I shook my head and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay £5.

【译文】我摇摇头，伸出 5 根手指表示我只愿出 5 英镑。

【用法】hold *v.* 把东西保持在某个状态，不要仅仅翻译成"拿，握"。

10. Gesticulating wildly, the man acted as if he found my offer outrageous, but he eventually reduced the price to £10.

【译文】那个人激动地打着手势，仿佛我的出价使他不能容忍。但他终于把价钱降到了 10 英镑。

【用法】(1) as if/though 好像，就像，常在动词 act，appear，behave，feel 后引导方式状语从句，从句一般使用虚拟语气，即指现在用过去时，be 用 were 的形式；指过去用过去完成时：

He acts as if he were an expert. 他的举止就像一个专家似的。

They talked as if they had been friends for years. 他们谈话很亲热，就像多年的老朋友似的。

He behaved as if nothing had happened. 他装作若无其事的样子。

As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears,... 好像这还不够让你流泪似的。

gesticulate 来自于 gesture articulate，英语中常见的肢体语言表示法：

(2) 耸肩(to shrug)表示冷淡、无奈或怀疑；

使眼色(to wink at somebody)表示暗示；

挥拳(to shake one's fist at sb.)表示示威；

举杯(to raise one's glass to sb.)表示祝酒；

to thumb 表示 approval；to show a V sign 表示胜利；

对着迎面开来的汽车伸出翘起大拇指的拳头(to thumb a lift)表示请求搭车；

用大拇指点自己的鼻尖，将其余 4 指张开对人摇动(to cock a snook at somebody)表示轻蔑嘲弄之意；

用食指对人摆动则表示 dispproval or warning(to shake one's finger at sb.)；

将大拇指朝下(thumb down)表示反对；

勾一下手指 to crook a finger 是叫人过来的意思；

两个大拇指互相绕转(to twirl one's thumbs)是显得很无聊的样子；

把中指叠在食指上交叉着(to keep one's fingers crossed)暗示希望自己正在做的事不要失败。

【词汇】**outrageous** *adj.* 令人不能容忍的；蛮横的；出乎意料的，惊人的：They charge outrageously high prices. 他们的要价高得惊人。

outrage *n.* 蛮横行为，暴行；义愤：an outrage against public dignity 对公众尊严的肆意践踏

11. No matter how hard I tried, it was impossible to fill this beautiful pen with ink and to this day it has never written a single word!

【译文】然而不管我如何摆弄，那支漂亮的钢笔就是吸不进墨水来。直到今天，那支笔连一个字也没写过！

【用法】a single word 中的 single 起到强调作用。

I won't tell you a single word. 我一个字也不告诉你。

I haven't written a single letter. 我一封信也没写。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【联想】英语中表示强调的方式：

(1)用形容词"very","single"等表示强调，例：

Red Army fought a battle on this very spot. 红军就在此地打过一仗。

Not a single person has been in the office this afternoon.

今天下午竟然没有一个人来过办公室。

(2)用反身代词表示强调，例：

I myself will see her off at the station. 我将亲自到车站为她送行。

(3)用助词"do"表示强调，例：

The baby is generally healthy, but every now and then she does catch a cold.

那孩子的健康状况尚好，但就是偶尔患感冒。

Do be quiet. I told you I had a headache. 务必安静，我告诉过你，我头疼。

(4)用"...and that","...and those","not...too much","否定加否定"等结构表示强调，例：

They fulfilled the task, and that in a few days. 他们在几天内完成的就是那项任务。

I gave her some presents, and those the day before yesterday. 前天我送给她的就是那些礼物。

I can't thank you too much. 我无论怎样感谢你都不过份。

I am not unfaithful to you. 我对你无比忠诚。

(5)用短语"in every way","in no way","by all means","by no means","only too","all too","but too","in heaven","in the world","in hell","on earth","under the sun"等表示强调，例：

His behaviour was in every way perfect. 他的举止确实无可挑剔。

By all means take your son with you. 你一定要把儿子带来。

The news was only too true. 这消息确实是事实。

It was over all too soon! 此事的确了结得很快！

Where in heaven were you then? 当时你到底在哪里？

Nobody under the sun would buy that car. 确实没有人会买那辆车。

(6)用倒装句表示强调，例：

Dishonest he is! 他的确不诚实！

In wine is the truth. 酒后吐真言。

(7)用强调句型表示强调，例：

It was the headmaster who opened the door for me. 正是校长为我开的门。

It was yesterday that we carried out that experiment. 就是在昨天我们做了那个实验。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 29 Funny or not?

本节重点和难点

- 从句充当直接宾语的双宾语结构
- whether 和 if 的区别
- 使役动词的宾语补足语
- 动词不定式作目的状语

本课词汇

largely ['lɑːdʒli] *adv.* 在很大程度上

comic ['kɔmik] *adj.* 喜剧的，使人发笑的

universal [ˌjuːni'vəːsəl] *adj.* 宇宙的；普遍的，通用的

comedian [kə'miːdjən] *n.* 喜剧演员

distasteful [dis'teistfəl] *adj.* 讨厌的

pester ['pestə] *vt.* 缠绕，纠缠

dread [dred] *n.* 恐惧，焦虑 *v.* 害怕

【用法】1. dread 后接动名词和接动词不定式意义相同。2. 过去分词 dreaded 常作定语，意思为"令人惧怕的，可怕的"。

recovery [ri'kʌvəri] *n.* 痊愈，复原；收回，复得

【词组】make a quick recovery 迅速恢复

plaster ['plɑːstə] *n.* 熟石膏

console [kən'səul] *vt.* 安慰，慰问

【辨析】comfort 为一般用语；console 为正式用语；solace 为书面用语。

hobble ['hɔbəl] *vi.* 蹒跚，跛行

compensate ['kɔmpənseit] *v.* 补偿，赔偿，弥补

【用法】常与 for 连用，compensate (sb.) for sth. 赔偿(某人)的……(损失)。

mumble ['mʌmbəl] *vt.* 咕哝，喃喃而语

课文详解

1. Whether we find a joke funny or not largely depends on where we have been brought up.

【译文】我们是否感觉一个笑话可笑，很大程度上取决于我们是在哪儿长大的。

【用法】(1) generally 一般地；mostly 大多数地；chiefly 主要地；largely 很大程度上；for the most part，by and large，on the whole，at large 大体上

(2) where we have been brought up 为地点连词引导的名词性从句，在句中作宾语。

(3) whether 与 if：

在引导宾语从句时，两者一般可以换用；但在下面两种情况下，只能用 whether，不能用 if：

①引导主语从句时

Whether she can stay with her mother-in-law is another matter.

她是否能与婆婆住在一起是另外一回事。

②引导选择条件时 whether...or.../or not

I'll go whether you come with me or stay at home. 我决定去，不管你跟我一起去还是呆在家里。

Whether the accident is your fault or not，you feel terrible at first.

不管事故的责任是否在你，你会首先感到害怕。

③在不定式之前及介词之后

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She doesn't know whether to get married now or wait. 她不知道是现在结婚还是再等一等。

Everything depends on whether we have enough money. 一切取决于我们是否有足够的钱。

(4)名词性从句作主语时的主谓一致:

主语是名词性从句(常用 what, whatever, when, where, why, how, that, whether 等引导放在句首)时,动词通常用单数形式。例如:

What I' am most interested in is American movies. 我最感兴趣的是美国电影。

Whatever he says is of no importance. 无论他说什么都不重要。

Whoever says that is wrong. 无论谁说这话都不对。

That he will come is certain. 他肯定会来。

Why he is late for class is more than I can tell. 为什么他上课迟到,我也说不上来。

但在下面的句子中谓语动词要用复数形式,因为主语从句中的动词是复数,所以主语从句应当作复数看待。例如:

Who are going to attend the meeting have been decided by the manager.

哪些人去参加会议,已由经理做出了决定。

Whoever say that are to be punished. 谁这样讲,就惩罚谁。

由此可见,名词性从句作主语时,谓语动词用单数还是复数,不可一概而论,而要视句子的意义而定。学习时只有灵活处理,才能真正把主谓一致这个语法项目融会贯通。

2. The sense of humour is mysteriously bound up with national characteristics.

【译文】幽默与民族有着神秘莫测的联系。

【词组】be bound up with/be associated with/be connected with 与……有联系

3. Most funny stories are based on comic situations.

【译文】大部分令人发笑的故事都是根据喜剧情节编写的。

【词汇】**comedy** *n.* 喜剧, **tragedy** *n.* 悲剧

4. In spite of national differences, certain funny situations have a universal appeal.

【译文】尽管民族不同,有些滑稽情节却能产生普遍的效果。

【用法】In spite of cultural differences...(文化)尽管文化有差异……

In spite of national differences, both Chinese and Americans share the same love for peace.

尽管民族不同,中国和美国同样热爱和平。

5. However, a new type of humour, which stems largely from the U.S., has recently come into fashion.

【译文】然而,近来一种新式幽默流行了起来,这种幽默主要来自美国。

【词组】**stem from** 来自……,源于……

Her interest in flowers stems from her childhood in the countryside.

她对花卉的兴趣起源于她在乡下度过的童年。

The present difficulties stem from our failure to deal with the problem when it first arose.

当前的困难是由于当初问题出现时我们没有进行处理。

6. It is called "sick humour".

【译文】它被叫作"病态幽默"。

7. From the moment he arrived there, he kept on pestering his doctor to tell him when he would be able to go home.

【译文】从他进医院那一刻起,就一直缠着医生要他告诉自己何时可以回家。

【词汇】**pester** *vi.* 一再要求,纠缠

The beggars pestered the tourists for money. 乞丐们缠着游客要钱。

My daughter has been pestering me to take her to the zoo. 我女儿一直缠着我,要我带她去动物园。

8. Though the doctor did his best, the patient's recovery was slow.

【译文】尽管医生竭力医治,但病人恢复缓慢。

【词汇】**recovery** *n.* 恢复

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Wish you soon recovery. 祝你尽快康复。

I return to good condition. 我恢复健康了。

I regain strength. 我重获力量。

I get well. 我好了。

I'm myself again. 我好了。

I'm not myself today. 我今天身体不好。

9. The following day, however, the doctor consoled him by telling him that his chances of being able to leave hospital in time for New Year celebrations were good.

【译文】然而第二天医生安慰他说，出院欢度新年的可能性还是很大的。

【用法】(1)by telling...good 为介词短语，作方式状语，修饰 consoled。在此介词短语中包含一个由 that 引导的名词性从句，作 telling 的直接宾语。此宾语从句中的主语较长（从 his chances of... celebration），were good 为该主语的谓语动词及其表语部分。

(2)"chances of...were good/chances were good that..."表示"很有可能，很有机会"，如：Chances were good that we would win the battle. 我们很有可能会打胜。

chances that...are slim 机会不大，不太可能……

10. The man took heart and, sure enough, on New Year's Eve he was able to hobble along to a party.

【译文】那个人听后振作了精神。果然，除夕时他可以一瘸一拐地去参加晚会了。

【词汇】eve *n.* 前夕，前夜

Christmas Eve 圣诞夜；New Year's Eve 除夕；on the eve of election 大选的前一夜；on the eve of college entrance exam 高考考试的前一夜

【联想】各种走路方式的表达：

walk：行走，散步

Did you walk back? 你是走回来的吗？

stride：大踏步走，跨过

Can you stride the brook? 你能一步跨过这条小溪吗？

trot：小跑，急走

Need makes the old wife trot. 急时老婆婆也能跑。

waddle：蹒跚而行

the waddle of ducks 鸭子摇摆着走

stagger：蹒跚

The drunkard staggered across the road. 醉汉摇摇摆摆过马路。

totter：走得或动得不稳，踉跄

The child tottered before his parents. 孩子在父母前面踉踉跄跄地走。

shuffle：拖着脚走

The old man shuffled along the road. 那个老汉拖着脚步沿街走。

strut：趾高气扬地走

He struts around like a rooster in a hen house. 他像鸡舍里的公鸡一样昂首阔步。

amble：慢行

Every evening, they amble along the bank. 每天晚上，他们都沿着岸边悠闲地走。

stroll：闲逛

They are strolling through this park. 他们溜达着穿过公园。

saunter：漫步

All afternoon he sauntered up and down, looking at the shop and the people.

整个下午他四处闲逛，瞧瞧商店，看看行人。

wander：漫步徘徊(无目的的)

He was wandering about/down/through/up and down the street. 他徘徊在那条街上。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

roam:漫游(有目的)

The lovers roamed around/through the fields. 那对恋人漫步穿过田间。

trudge:跋涉

The hunter was trudging through the deep snow. 猎人在深深的积雪里艰难跋涉。

tramp:重步行走

Who has been tramping all over the carpet in muddy shoes?

谁穿着泥泞的鞋子在地毯上走了?

11. To compensate for his unpleasant experiences in hospital, the man drank a little more than was good for him.

【译文】为了补偿他在住院期间不愉快的经历,那人喝得稍许多了一点。

【用法】(1)to compensate for...为动词不定式短语,在句中作目的状语,可译为"为了补偿……"。compensate for...与 compensate...for...虽然都具有"补偿"的含义,但前者中的 compensate 为不及物动词,与介词 for 一起作及物动词,其主语常指事物,是补偿的对象,for 后是补偿的原因,如:Nothing can compensate for the loss of his son. 没有什么能补偿他失去的儿子。

而 compensate...for...中的 compensate 则为及物动词,其主语通常为人,是补偿的发起者,其后为被补偿对象,介词 for 后为补偿的原因,如:We must in some way compensate her for her loss. 我们必须以某种方式对她的损失予以补偿。

(2)a little more than was good for him 中 than 后省略了主语 what。be good for...对……有用/有益,如:Sports will be good for your health. 运动有益于健康。This style is good for children. 这种方式适于小孩。

(3)than 引导的定语从句

than 作关系代词引导一个定语从句,than 在定语从句中作主语,同时还保留"比较"的意义。

Don't drink more wine than is good for your health.

不要饮酒过量,过量则不利于身体健康。

We often do more work than is required of us. 我们做的工作经常比要求的要多。

There were more casualties than was reported. 伤亡要比报道的多。

The question should be much more complicated than appears on the surface.

问题的实质远比表面上复杂的多。

比较:than 引导的比较状语从句

On the whole, ambitious students are much more likely to succeed in their studies than are those with little ambition. 从整体上讲,胸怀大志的学生比起那些没有志向的同学在学业上更容易成功。

The surface conditions on the planet Mars are more like the Earth's than are those of any other planet in the solar system. 比起太阳系其他行星,火星的表面状况更接近地球。

区别:在定语从句中,than 既引导定语从句,又作从句的主语;在比较状语从句中,than 仅起引导作用,从句有自己的主语(有时可以把从句的主语和谓语倒装,以保持句子的平衡)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 30 The death of a ghost

本节重点和难点

- 形容词短语作状语
- 动词不定式作状语
- 同位语从句
- it 作形式宾语

本课词汇

labourer ['leibərə] *n.* 劳动者

overnight [əuvə'nait] *adv.* 在夜间，突然，一下子 *adj.* 晚上的，突然的

hay [hei] *n.* 干草

corn [kɔːn] *n.* 谷物

moonlight ['muːnlait] *n.* 月光

conscientious [ˌkɔnʃi'enʃəs] *adj.* 尽职的，认真的

suspect [səs'pekt] *vt.* 怀疑，疑心 ['sʌspekt] *n.* 嫌疑犯，可疑分子

desert ['dezət] *n.* 沙漠，不毛之地 [di'zəːt] *vt.* 抛弃

regiment ['redʒimənt] *n.* 军团

in action 在战斗中

recluse [ri'kluːs] *n.* 隐士

课文详解

1. The death of a ghost

【译文】幽灵之死

【联想】to give up the ghost 是“死”的委婉说法。

ghost town 指被遗弃的城镇(deserted/abandoned town)。

2. For years, villagers believed that Endley Farm was haunted.

【译文】多年来，村民们一直认为恩得利农场在闹鬼。

【词汇】**haunt** *v.* (鬼魂)经常出没于……；萦绕在……心头

His villa is haunted. 他的别墅有鬼。

His smiles still haunt my mind/memory/imagination. 他的微笑一直萦绕在我心头/记忆中/想象里。

3. Farm labourers said that they always woke up to find the work had been done overnight.

【译文】雇工们说，常常一早起来发现有人在夜里把活干了。

【用法】wake up only to find

“…，only to＋动词”意为“……，结果却……”，例：

They don't have to pay for expensive seats at the theatre, the cinema or the opera, only to discover, perhaps, that the show is disappionting. 他们不必花钱去戏院、电影院或歌剧院买价格很贵的票，也许结果却发现所演的节目令人失望。

4. No one suspected that there might be someone else on the farm who had never been seen.

【译文】谁也没想到农场里竟会有一个从未露面的人。

【词汇】**suspect**

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(1) *n.*"嫌疑犯,嫌疑分子"。如:

Are political suspects kept under police observation in your country?

政治嫌疑犯在贵国是由警察监视吗?

(2) *adj.*"可疑的,值得怀疑的",作表语用。如:

That is a rather suspect result. 那个结果颇令人怀疑。

(3) *vt.* ①"疑心,猜想,怀疑",常用搭配结构为:suspect sth.,suspect+从句,suspect sb. to be/do,be suspected。如:

He was suspected,and accused of selling state secrets. 他被怀疑和指控出卖国家机密。

I suspect that he is a thief. = I suspect him to be a thief. 我怀疑他是个小偷。

The girl suspected that her neighbor had stolen her bike. 姑娘怀疑邻居偷了她的自行车。

比较:doubt 对宾语的真实性表示怀疑。

I doubt the truth of his statement. 我怀疑他的话是否真实。

②"猜,以为",相当于 guess 和 suppose。如:

I suspect you may be right. 我想你说的没错。

I suspect that's true. 我看是真的。

5. This was indeed the case.

【译文】但事实上确有此人。

【用法】过渡句 this was indeed the case,和 22 课比较。

6. Everyone went to the funeral, for the"ghost" was none other than Eric Cox,a third brother who was supposed to have died as a young man.

【译文】大家都去参加了葬礼,因为那"鬼"不是别人,正是农场主的三兄弟之一埃里克·考科斯,人们以为他年轻时就死了。

【用法】(1)none other than 不是别人而正是……,如:The killer was none other than the victim's daughter. 杀人犯不是别人,正是受害人的女儿。

none other than/none but 不是别人,正是

nothing other than/nothing but 不是别的,正是……;只是……

He is none other than our president. 他不是别人,正是我们的董事长。

This is nothing other than my hobby. 这只是我的爱好。

(2)a third brother 三兄弟之一,在这里并不是说排行第三,而是指除 Bob 和 Joe 之外的第三个兄弟(one of three brothers);排行老三是 the third brother。又如:a second brother 另一个兄弟(another brother);the second brother 二弟(哥),指排行老二。

(3)as a young man 作"在年轻时"解。

in one's young day 在某人年轻时

7. His father told everybody that Eric had been killed in action.

【译文】他父亲告诉大家,埃里克在战争中被打死了。

【用法】be killed in action 是"在战场上阵亡"。

8. All these years, Eric had lived as a recluse.

【译文】这些年来,埃里克过着隐士生活。

【联想】recluse, hermit, solitary 是三种"隐士"的说法。

额外收获

表示"死"的习语与俚语

be gone 去世

be among the missing 在去世人之中

be no more 再也不存在了

be in heaven 上西天

be ravished from the world by death 被死亡劫去

cross the great divide 跨进了阴曹地府

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

finish off 完结
depart this life 与世长辞
gather home 回老家
give up the ghost 见阎王
go out of this world 离开人间
go the way of all flesh 逝世
go out of nature 身故
go to a better world 去极乐世界
go to glory 上天堂
go to heaven 归天，上天堂
go to the sunset 去阴间
go to sleep forever 长眠
go west 归西
kick the bucket 蹬腿
fall on sleep 沉睡
fall asleep 长眠
make one's exist 去世
meet one's fate 寿数尽了
pass over 去世
pass away 离去，去世
sleep in the grave 睡在坟墓里头
sleep the sleep of death 长眠地下
sleep the final sleep 一睡不起
turn up one's toes 翘脚尖(翘辫子)
one's days on earth end 日子到头了
the last(long, eternal) sleep 长眠
never-ending sleep 永无结束的睡眠

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 31 A lovable eccentric

本节重点和难点

- 动词 prefer 的用法
- “such＋形容词＋名词＋that 从句”结构
- 动名词复合结构
- “it takes sb. some time to do sth.”结构

本课词汇

lovable ['lʌvəbl] *adj*. 可爱的，讨人喜欢的

eccentric [ik'sentrik] *n*. 古怪的人

disregard [ˌdisri'gɑːd] *vt*. 无视，不顾

convention [kən'venʃən] *n*. 大会，会议；协定，公约；常规，习俗

conscious ['kɔnʃəs] *adj*. 意识到的

【用法】be conscious of 后可接复合宾语。

invariably [in'vεəriəbli] *adv*. 总是，常常

routine [ruː'tiːn] *n*. 例行公事，常规 *adj*. 常规的，例行的

【词组】break the routine 打破常规/a daily routine 日常工作

shrewd [ʃruːd] *adj*. 精明的

eccentricity [ˌeksen'trisiti] *n*. 怪癖

legendary ['ledʒəndəri] *adj*. 传说的

snob [snɔb] *n*. 势利小人，媚上欺下的人

intensely [in'tensli] *adv*. 强烈地，剧烈地

bedraggled [bi'drægld] *adj*. 弄湿或弄脏的，拖泥带水的

dump [dʌmp] *vt*. 把……砰的一声抛下

apologetic [əˌpɔlə'dʒetik] *adj*. 道歉的

reprimand ['reprimɑːnd] *vt*. 申斥，谴责

stage [steidʒ] *vt*. 筹划，暗中策划

elaborate [i'læbərit] *adj*. 精心构思的

【辨析】elaborate 指精心做成的；studied 指精细策划的；labored指矫揉造作的

课文详解

1. A lovable eccentric

【译文】可爱的怪人

【联想】可爱 lovely，lovable，sweet，cute，adorable

2. True eccentrics never deliberately set out to draw attention to themselves.

【译文】真正古怪的人从不有意引人注意。

【用法】set out to do 是比较正式的用法。

3. They disregard social conventions without being conscious that they are doing anything extraordinary.

【译文】他们不顾社会习俗，意识不到自己的所作所为有什么特殊之处。

【用法】(1) without...extraordinary 为介词短语，作状语，意即“意识不到他们正做着与众不同的事情”，表示伴随主动词一同发生的情况。

(2) disregard 不顾、漠视、无视。如：She shows a total disregard for/of other people and their feelings. 她显然丝毫不顾及别人以及别人的感情。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**convention**

①集会,会议:an annual convention 年会;a political convention 政治集会

②(参加会议的)代表

③(社会)习俗,惯例

④(国际间的)协定,公约

⑤(对立或交战军队指挥官的)(停战)协定,停火协议

【辨析】比较 disregard, neglect, ignore

disregard 和 ignore 表示主观上不予理会,有视而不见,充耳不闻的味道。

如:He disregards/ignores my feelings. 他根本不顾我的感受。

neglect 表示不小心忽略,如:He neglects a mistake. 他漏过了一个错误。

4. This invariably wins them the love and respect of others, for they add colour to the dull routine of everyday life.

【译文】他们总能赢得别人的爱戴和尊敬,因为他们给单调的日常生活增添了色彩。

【用法】(1)win sb. sth. = win sth. for sb.

It was his goal that won us the match. = It was his goal that won the match for us.

他的进球使我们赢得了这场比赛。

(2)add...to...中的 add 是及物动词,表示"把……添加到……"之意,如:He added his signature to the petition. 他在请愿书上签上了自己的名字。Add 2 to the total. 在总数上再加 2。

当 add 作不及物动词时,其后也用"to+宾语"结构,表示"起到增加的作用"的含义,如:The bad weather only added to our difficulties. 这种坏天气更增加了我们的困难。

The lake adds to the beauty of the village. 这条河流使这个村庄更美了。

(3)everyday 和 every day:前者是形容词,后者是副词短语或名词短语,如:He comes here every day. 他每天来这里。Every day seemed a year. 一日三秋。

5. He was a shrewd and wealthy businessman, but the most people in the town hardly knew anything about this side of his life.

【译文】他是个精明能干、有钱的商人,但镇上大部分人对他生活中的这一个方面几乎一无所知。

【词汇】**shrewd** *adj.* 精明的

shrew *n.* 泼妇,悍妇

shr-尖锐:shriek 尖叫;shrill 尖锐的,刺耳的,愤愤不平的;shrew 泼妇

The newspapers became even shriller in their attacks. 报纸上的抨击变得更加尖锐。

【辨析】keen, acute, penetrating, sharp, shrewd

keen *adj.* "锐利的"。普通用语。一般指刀或尖的锋利。用于比喻时,指看穿一切事物,含有精明和机敏之意。

acute *adj.* "尖锐的"。一般指角的形状。用于比喻时,指思维敏捷。

penetrating *adj.* "锐利的,敏锐"。强调透过细节调查事物根源的能力。

sharp *adj.* "锐利的"。普通用语。一般指刀的锋利。用于比喻时,强调有洞察力,有时含不诚实的意味。

shrewd *adj.* "精明的"。表示精于世故,遇事老谋深算。

例:

He is a keen politician. 他是个厉害的政治家。

Tom keeps a knife with a keen edge. 汤姆有一把锋利的小刀。

He is an acute observer. 他是一个敏锐的观察家。

This is not a right angle, but an acute one. 这不是直角,而是锐角。

The professor gave us a penetrating analysis of the play. 教授给我们作了一次深刻的剧本分析。

Premier Zhou has an extremely penetrating mind. 周总理头脑异常敏锐。

The knife is not sharp enough and need grinding. 这刀不快,需要磨了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

I have a sharp mind for figures. 我头脑聪明，善于计算。

He is too shrewd to trust in bussiness matters. 他在商业事务上太精明了，不能信赖。

He is a shrewd politician. 他是个精明的政客。

6. He was known to us all as Dickie and his eccentricity had become legendary long before he died.

【译文】大家都管他叫迪基。早在他去世前，他的古怪行为就成了传奇故事。

【词汇】**legendary** *adj*. 传奇般的；大名鼎鼎的，非常有名的

a legendary character 一个传奇般的人物

This restaurant is legendary for its fish. 这家餐馆以做鱼出名。

7. Dickie disliked snobs intensely.

【译文】迪基痛恨势利小人。

【词汇】**intensely** *adv*. 强烈地，剧烈地

tens-tend-tent-拉，伸：tense 紧张的；tension 紧张；tend 易于，倾向于；tent 帐篷；attention 注意，殷勤招待；contention 辩论，论点；extend 伸展，扩大

8. One day, he walked into an expensive shop after having been caught in a particularly heavy shower.

【译文】一天他遇上了一场瓢泼大雨，淋得透湿。他走进一家高级商店。

【联想】be/get/caught in a rain/shower/storm/traffic jam/hurricane 遭遇……

9. He wanted to buy a £300 watch for his wife, but he was in such a bedraggled condition that an assistant refused to serve him.

【译文】他想为妻子买一块价值300英镑的手表。但店员见他浑身泥水的样子，竟不肯接待他。

【用法】such…that…如此……以致……，连词 that 后接结果状语从句。由于 such 为一形容词，因此其后需使用名词或名词性短语。如：He showed such concern that people took him to be a relative. 他很关心别人，因而大家都把他当作亲人。

注意 such…that 和 so…that 的转换：

He was in such a bedraggled condition that an assistant…

He was so bedraggled that an assistant…

几组结果状语从句：

(1)so that，that 引导结果状语从句，so 引导表示结果的并列分句。

The bus was packed with people(so)that I couldn't get on.

车上挤满了人，所以我上不去。

It was warm last sunday，so I went and sat on the river bank.

上周日天气温暖，于是我去河岸坐坐。

说明：so that 或 so 引导的状语从句表示结果，主句表示原因。so 是连接性状语，连接两个并列从句，表示因果关系。

(2)so…that，such…that，such that 结构

The ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water.

球重重地打在他身上，他差点落水。

He felt so bad that he didn't want to see anyone.

＝He was in so bad a mood that he didn't want to see anyone.

＝He was in such a bad mood that he didn't want to see anyone.

他情绪很糟糕，谁也不想见。

He told us such funny stories that we all laughed to tears.

他给我们讲了那么滑稽的故事，我们都笑出眼泪来了。

Prof. Smith talked in such simple English that we all could understand him without much difficulty.

史密斯教授说的英语挺简单，我们大家听起来都不吃力。

The length of the bridge was such that the shape of the earth had to be taken into account when it was designed. 桥梁很长，我们在设计中不得不考虑地球的形状。(such 在句中充当代词)

www.TopSage.com

10. Recognizing who the customer was, the manager was most apologetic and reprimanded the assistant severely.

【译文】经理认出顾客是谁，表示了深深的歉意，并狠狠地斥责了店员。

【用法】most 在这里起加强语气的作用，相当于 very。most 前没有定冠词，因此不表示最高级形式。

【词汇】**reprimand** *vt.* 斥责

reprimand sb. for... 因……而训斥某人

The boss reprimanded him for his laziness. 他因为懒惰受到老板的训斥。

The secretary was severly reprimanded for failing to do her duty. 这位秘书因为失职而受到严厉斥责。

由上述两例可以看出：reprimand 一般指上级对下级的责骂。

【联想】apologetic 和 apologize 意义上的差别

后者强调动作上道歉了，但心里有没有愧疚感不知道；前者强调心理上真的感到内疚。

写文章要注意这些细节，比如 thank sb. 和 be thankful to sb. 是有区别的。

11. It took him four years to stage this elaborate joke simply to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about.

【译文】他花了 4 年时间策划这出精心设计的闹剧，只是想证明评论家们有时并不了解他们所谈论的事情。

【词汇】**elaborate** *adj.* 精致的，雅致的，精心构思的：an elaborate excuse 一个精心编造的借口；elaborate on sth. 详细解释某事

额外收获

动名词的逻辑主语

动名词前面可以加一个形容词性物主代词或名词所有格，作为这个动名词的逻辑主语。

Their coming to help was a great encouragement to us.

他们来支援我们对我们是个很大的鼓舞。

Mary's complaining annoyed him. 玛丽的抱怨使他很烦。

Please excuse my interrupting you. 请原谅我打断了你。

I certainly enjoyed Tom's singing. 我很欣赏汤姆唱歌。

Mary's grunting continuously annoyed her husband, and her mother's staying with them was the last straw. 玛丽的不断唠叨已经使她丈夫很烦。她母亲来和他们一块住更使他们的关系雪上加霜。

Xiao Li's being late for school upset the teacher. 小李的迟到让老师很恼火。

Our sole worry is you/your relying on yourself too much.

我们唯一的担心是你这个人太相信自己了。

They insisted Xiao Wang/Xiao Wang's going with them together.

他们坚持要小王和他们一起走。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 32 A lost ship

本节重点和难点

- 动词的现在分词作后置定语
- 主语从句
- 完成进行时的用法
- 同位语从句

本课词汇

salvage ['sælvidʒ] v. 打捞，营救

The Barents Sea (海洋名)巴伦支海

sunken ['sʌnkən] adj. 沉没的

cargo ['kɑːgəu] n. 船载的货物

bullion ['buljən] n. 金条，金砖

scour ['skauə] vt. 搜索

chest [tʃest] n. 胸膛，胸腔；柜，箱

be under the impression that 认为，以为

contents ['kɔntents] n. (pl.)所装的东西

belongings [bi'lɔŋiŋz] n. 所有物，行李

item ['aitəm] n. 条，条款，项目；(新闻等的)一条，一则

【词组】item by item 逐条地/item on the agenda 一项议程/check the items in the list 核对名单/news items 新闻条目/number the items 逐条编号

cruiser ['kruːzə] n. 巡洋舰

find [faind] n. 找到的物品

log book 航海日志

piece [piːs] v. 拼成整体

convoy ['kɔnvɔi] n. 护航

torpedo [tɔː'piːdəu] vt. 用鱼雷袭击

submarine ['sʌbməriːn] n. 潜水艇

naval ['neivəl] adj. 海军的，军舰的

Ministry of Defence 国防部

课文详解

1. The small ship, *Elkor*, which had been searching the Barents Sea for weeks, was on its way home.

【译文】小船“埃尔科”号在巴伦支海搜寻了几个星期之后，正在返航途中。

【用法】be on one's way home/en route home/be homebound

2. The captain knew that another attempt would be made later, for the sunken ship he was trying to find had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion.

【译文】船长知道日后还会再作尝试，因为他试图寻找的沉船上载有一批珍贵的金条。

【用法】sunken 和 sunk 的区别：

前者可以作表语或定语；后者只能作表语，而且作表语时表示船是被击沉的。

this ship is sunken 船沉了

this ship is sunk 船被击沉或撞沉了

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**cargo** *n.*（船、飞机装载的）一批货物

goods 主要指火车或飞机运送的货物：a goods train＝a freight train 货运列车

burden，cargo，load 这些名词均有"负担，负荷"之意。

burden：指沉重、令人不快的负担；指精神负担时常有不堪忍受的意味。

cargo：指用轮船、车辆或飞机长距离运载的货物。

load：普通用词，含义广泛，指人、畜、车、船等负载的东西，指精神负担时，可与 burden 换用，但无感情色彩。

3. The sea bed was scoured with powerful nets and there was tremendous excitement on board when a chest was raised from the bottom.

【译文】他们用结实的网把海床搜索了一遍。当一只箱子从海底被打捞上来时，甲板上的人们激动不已。

【用法】(1)scour＝go through

(2)There was tremendous excitement on board.

这是英语写作的一种常用结构。名词代表人的动作，这里的 excitement 就是动态 be excited 变过来的，然后加上地点就形成了：某人在某地干什么。

There is a knock on the door.（第 13 课）

4. Though the crew were at first under the impression that the lost ship had been found, the contents of the chest proved them wrong.

【译文】虽然船员们起初认为已找到沉船，但海底箱内的物品证明他们弄错了。

【用法】(1)be under the impression that 认为，以为。相当于 have the impression that...，under the impression 后面跟 that 从句：

I was under the impression that you were coming tomorrow.

我以为你明天来呢。

I aked him for a job under the impression that he was the manager.

我以为他是经理，向他求职。

I was under the impression that you were paying for the meal.

我还以为你买单呢。

(2)proved them wrong 中的 wrong 为宾语 them 的补足语，them 指 crew。

【词汇】**contents** *n.* 所装的东西

belongings 所有物；savings 积蓄；earnings 薪水，工资；riches 财富

She lost all her belongings in the fire. 她在火灾中丧失了所有的财产。

5. There were books, clothing, and photographs, together with letters which the seaman had once received from his wife.

【译文】其中有书籍、衣服、照片以及水手收到的妻子的来信。

【用法】together with 注意主谓一致问题：

The only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were unhurt.

飞机上仅有的乘客，一位年轻妇女和她的两个女婴却安然无恙。

"a young woman and her two baby daughters"是"the only passengers"的同位语，"were"与"the only passengers"保持数的一致。

A group of actors, including Rockwall and Merlin, has carried the food baskets to a shady spot under some trees. 一群演员，包括 Rockwall 和 Merlin，已经将食物抬到树阴下。

Salary, as well as job variety and work contribution, is important for the improvement of productivity.

工资、工作的多样性及工作的贡献，对生产率的提高都很重要。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

A young woman, together with her two daughters, has survived the air crash.

一位年轻的妇女和她的两个女儿在空难中幸存下来。

主语后面接同位语名词词组，或后跟由 with, as well as, together with, along with, like, in addition to, as much as, rather than, not, more than, no less than, except, including 等词引出的名词词组，其谓语动词形式不受这些名词词组的影响，而应与这些名词词语前面的主语保持一致。

6. Nothing of value was found, but the numerous items which were brought to the surface proved to be of great interest.

【译文】没发现什么值钱的东西，不过打捞出来的众多物品还是引起了大家极大的兴趣。

【用法】"of ＋抽象名词"主要用于正式文体：

nothing of value＝nothing valuable

The president's visit is of great significance. 总统的访问具有重大意义。

a man of great importance 举足轻重的人物

an issue of wide concern 普遍关心的事情

7. From a heavy gun that was raised, the captain realized that the ship must have been a cruiser.

【译文】从捞起的一门大炮来看，船长认为那艘船一定是艘巡洋舰。

【词汇】**cruiser** *n.* 巡洋舰；游艇

destroyer 驱逐舰；flagship 旗舰；battleship 战舰，主力舰；aircraft carrier 航母

8. The most valuable find of all was the ship's log book, parts of which it was still possible to read.

【译文】打捞到的东西中最有价值的是船上的航海日志，其中有一部分仍然清晰可读。

【用法】表示部分与整体关系的定语从句：parts of which it was still possible to read.

(1)代词/数词/名词 ＋ 介词 ＋ which/whom...

I have many friends, some of whom are businessman.

我有许多朋友，其中一些是商人。

I bought a dozen eggs, six of which broke when I dropped the box at my door.

我买了一打鸡蛋，到门口盒子掉了，鸡蛋摔破了一半儿。

2)代词/数词/名词 ＋ 介词 ＋ which/whose ＋ 名词...

When television was first introduced, the extent to which it would affect society would not have been foreseen. 当电视刚刚问世时，它对社会的影响范围是始料不及的。

在上面两种定语从句中，代词一般是 any, all both, most, some, many, few, much, several, either, neither。数词一般是 one, two, three, half, a number of；名词一般是 majority, purpose, the youngest, the oldest, the smallest, the largest 等。

9. From this the captain was able to piece together all the information that had come to light.

【译文】据此，船长可以将所有的那些已经搞清的材料拼凑起来。

【用法】come to light ＝ become known

It came to light that the old lady was a millionaire. 后来人们才知道这个老妇人是个百万富翁。

【联想】bring to light 揭露：

The investigation brought many new facts to light. 调查揭露了许多新情况。

10. The *Karen* had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine.

【译文】"卡伦"号当年在为其他船只护航驶往俄国途中突然遭到敌方潜水艇鱼雷的袭击。

【词汇】**convoy** *vt.* 护卫，护送。

in convoy 结队：

Cars should cross the desert in convoy in case there is a breakdown.

汽车通过沙漠应结队而行，以防中途车辆抛锚。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

under convey 在护送下：

The weapons were sent under convoy because of the danger of enemy attack.

武器在护送下运走，因为有遭敌人攻击的危险。

vt. 护卫，护送：

A couple of tanks convoyed the trucks across the border.

几辆坦克护送卡车穿过边境。

【词缀】sub-，sup-，suf-，sug-，sum-，sup-，sus- 在……下面：

subway 地铁；subconscious 下意识的；subject 使服从，话题；subscribe 订购；substance 本质，实质，物质；succeed 继承；suffer 受苦，忍受；suggest 建议；summon 召集，召唤；support 支持

11. This was later confirmed by a naval official at the Ministry of Defence after the *Elkor* had returned home.

【译文】这一说法在"埃尔科"号返航后得到国防部一位海军官员的证实。

【联想】sailor，seaman，mariner 这些名词均有"水手，船员"之意。

sailor：普通用词，指任何实际驾驶船只航海或在船上工作的人员。

seaman：指商船船员或海军中的水兵，有时可与 sailor 换用。

mariner：多指直接从事航海和参与驾驶船只的水手。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 33 A day to remember

本节重点和难点

- as if 引导的方式状语从句
- 动词的现在分词作结果状语
- 动词的现在分词作原因状语
- while 引导的时间状语从句

本课词汇

prelude ['prelju:d] *n.* 序幕
unforeseen [ˌʌnfɔ:'si:n] *adj.* 意料之外的
series ['siəri:z] *n.* 系列
catastrophe [kə'tæstrəfi] *n.* 大灾难
crockery ['krɔkəri] *n.* 陶器
suburb ['sʌbə:b] *n.* 郊外，远郊
【用法】suburbs 表示"市郊住宅区，郊区"，前常加 the。
【辨析】outskirts 是比 suburbs 更靠近外边，适合于散步的地区。
collide [kə'laid] *vi.* 碰撞
learner ['lə:nə] *n.* 初学者
panic ['pænik] *n.* 惊慌，惊恐
windscreen ['windskri:n] *n.* 挡风玻璃
alongside [əˌlɔŋ'said] *prep.* 在……旁边；与……并有 *adv.* 并排地，并肩地
【词组】alongside of 在旁边，与……并肩
slide [slaid] *v. n.* 滑，滑动
stray [strei] *adj.* 迷路的，无家可归的
confusion [kən'fju:ʒən] *n.* 混乱
greedily ['gri:dili] *adv.* 贪婪地
devour [di'vauə] *vt.* 狼吞虎咽地吃

课文详解

1. A day may begin well enough, but suddenly everything seems to get out of control.

【译文】一天开始时，可能还不错，但突然间似乎一切都失去了控制。

【用法】get out of control 变得无法控制，如：

Inflation has got out of control. 通货膨胀已失去控制。

get out of control = be out of hand = be unmanageable

2. What invariably happens is that a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment.

【译文】情况经常是这样的，许许多多的事情偏偏赶在同一时刻出问题。

【用法】(1)choose 通常用来指人做出的动作。这里用来指事物做出的动作，为拟人手法，使文章显得更为生动。

(2)go wrong 为"出岔子"、"出问题"之意。

(3)what 在此引导主语从句，并在从句中作主语；that 引导一个表语从句。

What invariably happen is that = Such is the case that

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

3. It is as if a single unimportant event set up a chain of reactions.

【译文】仿佛一件无关紧要的小事引起了一连串的连锁反应似的。

【用法】(1)as if 在此引导一个方式状语从句,从句用虚拟语气,故 set up 是过去式。

(2)a chain of reactions 一连串的连锁反应,a chain of... 一连串的……,如:a chain of coincidences/chemical reactions 一连串的巧合/一系列化学反应。

Domino effect 多米诺效应,连锁反应

(3)set up 表示"引起,造成,引发":She set up a new world record time in the 100 metres. 她创下了新的百米世界纪录。The slump on Wall Street set up a chain reaction in stock markets around the world. 华尔街金融滑坡引起了世界股票市场连锁反应。

4. Let us suppose that you are preparing a meal and keeping an eye on the baby at the same time.

【译文】假设你在做饭,同时又在照看孩子。

【用法】keep an eye on sb. = look after sb./make sure sb. is safe 照看,照顾

5. The telephone rings and this marks the prelude to an unforeseen series of catastrophes.

【译文】这时电话铃响了,它预示着一连串意想不到的灾难的来临。

【词汇】**prelude** *n.*

(1)序曲,前奏曲:prelude to a musical composition 大型乐曲的序曲;the organ prelude to a church service 礼拜仪式前的风琴序奏;Chopin's preludes 肖邦的序曲

(2)开场戏,序幕,序言:the prelude to a revolution 革命的序幕

(3)前兆,预兆:This border raid is the prelude to more serious attacks. 这场边境冲突是更为严重的进攻的先兆。

【辨析】disaster, calamity, catastrophe, misfortune 这些名词均表示"灾难"或"不幸"之意。

disaster:普通用词,指大破坏、痛苦或伤亡。

calamity:多指个人的不幸,比 disaster 严重,强调灾难引起的悲痛以及对于损失的感觉。

catastrophe:语气最强,指可怕的灾难,强调最终的结局。

misfortune:普通用词,多指较为严重的不幸,强调不幸多由外界因素所致。

没赶上火车:oh it's a catastophe

咖啡撒了:oh it's a catastophe

【联想】foresee 派生的几个形容词:foreseen, foreseeable, unforeseeable, unforeseen。

foresee 的同义词:foretell, predict

6. You hang up hurriedly and attend to baby, crockery, etc.

【译文】你急急忙忙挂上电话,赶去照看孩子和餐具。

【用法】(1)and attend to... 意即"去料理孩子、收拾餐具"等。句中的 and 在意义上相当于 to,即 and attend to 相当于作目的状语的动词不定式。这种结构在口语中很常用。attend to 处理,料理,专心于:Could you attend to this matter immediately? 你能不能立即处理这件事?A nurse attends to his needs. 有个护士照顾他。

(2)hang up(on sb.)挂电话。一般用于非正式场合或口语中。

7. As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner.

【译文】好像这一切还不足以使你急得掉泪,你的丈夫接着回来了,事先没打招呼就带来三个客人吃饭。

【用法】(1)as if 在这里为从属连词,引导方式状语从句,其后的 this were 表明该句使用了虚拟语气。

(2)reduce you to tears 使你流泪。这里 reduce 表明"迫使"之意。在表达此义时,该动词之后总是使用"to+名词(名词性短语或动名词)"结构,如:Overwork has reduced him to a physical wreck. 他过度劳累而损害了健康。The fire reduced the house to ashes. 这场火灾把那房子化为灰烬。

reduce...to 使陷入(窘境、更坏的境地)

She was reduced to tears by their criticisms. 他们的批评使她流下了眼泪。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

The bombs reduced the city to ruins. 炸弹使这座城市化为废墟。

They were reduced to begging in the streets. 他们被迫乞讨为生。

【联想】enough

oddly/strangely/curiously/interestingly enough：修饰整个句子＝it seems especially odd/strange/interesting.

TopSage.com

He's lived in France for years, but strangely enough, he can't speak a word of French.

他在法国生活了多年，但奇怪的是他竟连一句法语也不会说。

Interestingly enough, America is now dependent on Africa for 40% of its oil imports.

说来挺有意思的是，如今美国的石油有40%是从非洲进口的。

8. Things can go wrong on a big scale, as a number of people recently discovered in Parramatta, a suburb of Sydney.

【译文】就像许多人最近在悉尼郊区帕拉马塔发现的那样，有时乱子会闹得很大。

【用法】(1)on a big/large/vast/grand/moderate scale 以大规模/适度的规模

on a nationwide/worldwide scale 在全国/世界范围内

(2)as 在此为关系代词，相当于关系代词 which 引导的一个非限定性定语从句。as 作从句中的动词 discovered 的宾语，指 things can go wrong on a big scale 这一事实。as 的这一用法在英语中很常见，如：He caught the last bus, as I told him. 就像我告诉他的那样，他赶上了末班的公共汽车。

9. She suddenly got into a panic and stopped her car.

【译文】她一惊之下突然把车停了下来。

【用法】get into a panic 变得惊慌失措。

【词汇】**panic** *n.* 惊恐，惊慌

panic-striken/get into a panic/be thrown into a panic 惊慌失措的：

The audience were thrown into a panic when the fire started. 起火时观众顿时陷入一片惊慌。

vi. (使)惊慌：The crowd panicked at the sound of the explosion. 听到爆炸声，人群惊慌失措。

10. This made the driver following her brake hard.

【译文】她这一停使得跟在后头的司机也来了个急刹车。

11. As she was thrown forward, the cake went right through the windscreen and landed on the road.

【译文】她往前一冲，蛋糕从挡风玻璃飞了出去掉在马路上。

【用法】(1)as 在此为一从属连词，引导时间状语，表示“正当……的时候”、“正值……之际”之意。

(2)went right...中的 right 为副词，表示“刚好”、“正好”之意，如：I fell right to the bottom of the stairs. 我从楼梯上面一直摔到楼梯下面。

12. Seeing a cake flying through the air, a lorry-driver who was drawing up alongside the car, pulled up all of a sudden.

【译文】此时，一辆卡车正好从后面开到那辆汽车边上，司机看见一块蛋糕从天而降，紧急刹车。

【用法】(1)draw up 追上

(2)pull up 停车

13. The lorry was loaded with empty beer bottles and hundreds of them slid off the back of the vehicle and on to the road.

【译文】卡车上装着空啤酒瓶，成百只瓶子顺势从卡车后面滑出车外落在马路上。

【词汇】**slide** *v.* 滑

sl-滑：sled＝ sledge 雪橇；sleek 有光泽的，整洁而光滑的；sleigh 马拉雪橇；slick 圆滑的，花言巧语的；slicker 油头滑脑的人；a city slicker 油头滑脑的城里人；slip 滑倒；slippery 滑的，不可靠的，狡猾的；slope 斜坡；sly 狡猾的

14. Meanwhile, the traffic piled up behind.

【译文】与此同时，后面的车辆排成了长龙。

【用法】pile up 积聚，越积越多，堆积，如：He piled up the old furniture in the shed. 他把旧家具堆

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

放到棚子里。Evidence was piling up against them. 不利于他们的证据越来越多。

15. It took the police nearly an hour to get the traffic on the move again.

【译文】警察花了将近一个小时才使车辆又开动起来。

【用法】(1)在 get(...)on the move 这一结构中,get 作及物动词,表示"使……开始移动"、"使……开始走动"之意。

(2)on the move 在移动中:Don't jump off a train when it is on the move. 火车未停稳时不要往下跳。

(3)"on+名词"结构表示处于某种状态或某种动作正在进行之中。

be on show/strike/holiday/trip 在上演/罢工/度假/旅行

16. Only two stray dogs benefited from all this confusion, for they greedily devoured what was left of the cake.

【译文】只有两只野狗从这一片混乱中得到了好处,它们贪婪地吃掉了剩下的蛋糕。

【用法】(1) benefit from 从……中获益,得益于,如:He hasn't benefited from the experience. 他虽有经验,却无长进。Who stands to benefit most from the new tax laws? 什么人可能从新的税法中得到最大的好处?

(2)greedy for power/fame/women 渴望权力/名声/好色

【词汇】stray *adj.* 迷失的,离群的;零落的

a stray cat 一只野猫

He was hit by a stray bullet. 他被流弹击中。

str-偏,离,斜:astray *adv.* 迷路,歧途:go astray 误入歧途地;lead sb. astray 使某人误入歧途;strange 陌生的;stranger 陌生人;straggle 掉队,离队单行;straggler 掉队的人:We have to wait for the stragglers to catch up. 我们只好等着掉队的人跟上。

额外收获

中文是动词的世界,每个动作都分得很细,越是常用的字或词语,越是拥有繁多的释义和搭配。

英文这方面比较笼统:

cut(使东西破开)——切(cake)割(finger)砍(tree/person)剪(nail)劈(wood)刻(one's name in the tree)剃(hair)

pull(往后的一个动作)——拉、拖、扯(hair, ear),拔(knife, tooth, gun),吸(pull at the pipe)

hold(固定一个位置)——拿住、夹住、托住、端住、顶住、咬住、支撑住

pick 拾拣摘(blackberry)挖鼻子、剔牙、采(叶子)

carry 带、提、扛、背、托

press 按压挤捏(press the brake/pedal 猛踩)

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 34 A happy discovery

本节重点和难点

- 动词的过去分词作后置定语
- 同位语从句
- 分词的独立结构
- 动词的现在分词作状语

本课词汇

antique [æn'ti:k] *n.* 古玩

fascination [ˌfæsi'neiʃən] *n.* 魅力

forbidding [fə'bidiŋ] *adj.* 令人生畏的

courage ['kʌridʒ] *n.* 勇气，胆量

【词组】 lose courage 失去勇气/take courage 鼓起勇气

pretentious [pri'tenʃəs] *adj.* 自命不凡的，盛气凌人的

labyrinth ['læbərinθ] *n.* 迷宫，曲径

musty ['mʌsti] *adj.* 霉的，发霉的

rarity ['rɛəriti] *n.* 稀罕的东西，珍品

amongest [ə'mʌŋst] *prep.* 在……中(=among)

assorted [ə'sɔ:tid] *adj.* 各式各样的

junk [dʒʌŋk] *n.* 破烂货

litter ['litə] *v.* 使散乱，乱丢垃圾

【用法】 作及物动词时，后接 sth. with sth.。The boy littered the room with toys. 孩子在房间里乱丢玩具。也可用 litter up sth. 或 litter sth. + 状语。litter up one's room 把房间弄得乱七八糟/litter a desk with papers 书桌上堆满了报纸(文件)。

dedicated ['dedikeitid] *adj.* 潜心的，全身心的

【辨析】 dedicated:潜心的;delicate:细致的，精美的

treasure ['treʒə] *n.* 珍宝，珍品

bargain hunter 到处找便宜货买的人

dealer ['di:lə] *n.* 商人，贩子

cherish ['tʃeriʃ] *vt.* 爱护;抚育，珍爱;抱有(希望)，怀有(感情等)

amply ['æmpli] *adv.* 充分地，足够地

masterpiece ['mɑ:stəpi:s] *n.* 杰作，名作

mere [miə] *adj.* 仅仅，只不过;纯粹的

prise [praiz] *vt.* (用杆)撬开(=prize)

carve [kɑ:v] *vt.* 雕刻，刻;切

dagger ['dægə] *n.* 匕首，短剑

miniature ['minjətʃə] *adj.* 小型的

composition [ˌkɔmpə'ziʃən] *n.* 作文，写作，习作，乐曲;构成，组成，结构

课文详解

1. **Antique shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many people.**

【译文】 古玩店对许多人来说有一种特殊的魅力。

【用法】 (1)exert...on...对……施加……，如:He exerted all his influence to make them accept his plan. 他用尽一切影响力使他们接受他的计划。

(2)fascinate 与 fascination

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

fascinate

①迷住,强烈地吸引住:The boy was fascinated by all the toys in the big department store. 那孩子被大百货店里所有的玩具迷住了。

② 使吓呆,使迷惑:The frog was fascinated by the snake. 青蛙被蛇吓呆了。

fascination

①[U]着迷,迷恋:As the children watched with fascination, he mixed the three together. 当孩子们看得人迷时,他将三者混到了一起。I used all my power of fascination on him without success. 我使出全身解数去迷惑他,但没有成功。

② [C,U]强烈的吸引力,迷惑力,魅力:Old books have a fascination for him. 古书对他很有吸引力。Chinese art has a great fascination for her. 中国艺术对她有很大的吸引力。

可以结合所学单词给一个更棒的表达:exert fascination on (26 课)

【词根】 anti-先,前:anticipate 预期;antediluvian 上古的,大洪水时代以前的;ancient 古代的;antecedent 先行的。

【辨析】 ancient,old,antique 这些形容词均含"古代的,古老的"之意。

ancient:指很久以前发生或存在的事物。用于描述历史时,指远古时代。

old:指长期以来一直存在着的事物,与 times 连用指古代,与 days 连用时指从前或旧社会。

antique:指已经很古老或颇有古风的事物,一般都具有较高价值。

2. The more expensive kind of antique shop where rare objects are beautifully displayed in glass cases to keep them free from dust is usually a forbidding place.

【译文】 高档一点的古玩店为了防尘,把奇珍异宝漂亮地陈列在玻璃柜子,那里往往令人望而却步。

【用法】 (1)where 在此为关系副词,引导一个定语从句,修饰 shop。

(2)to keep them free from dust,动词不定式短语,在 where 引导的定语从句中作目的状语,意即"为了使其免沾灰尘",修饰从句中的 are beautifully displayed in glass cases。free from dust 表示"免除",作动词 keep 的宾语补足语。a forbidding place 令人生畏的地方,forbid 表示"禁止",其形容词 forbidding 表示"令人生畏的",forbidden 表示"禁止的"。

(3)forbid 有两个形容词:forbidding,forbidden

forbidding:threatening,frightening 样子冷漠的,令人生畏的

forbidden 被禁止的

Forbidden City 紫禁城

【辨析】 forbid,prohibit,ban 这些动词均有"禁止"之意。

forbid:通俗用语,指直接地、面对面吩咐不许他人采取某种行动。

prohibit:正式用词,多指通过法律手段或制定规则加以禁止。

ban:语气最强,指权威机关明文取消或禁止严重危害公众利益的事或行为,隐含道义上的谴责意味。

3. But no one has to muster up courage to enter a less pretentious antique shop.

【译文】 而对不太装腔作势的古玩店,无论是谁都不用壮着胆子才敢往里进。

【词汇】 **pretentious** *adj*. 矫饰的,装腔作势的,自命不凡的

【用法】 (1) muster up 鼓起,振奋,与 gather、pluck up 意思相同:I couldn't muster up much enthusiasm for it. 我对这件事鼓不起劲来。I shall have to pluck up courage and speak to her about it. 我得鼓起勇气跟她谈这件事。He gathered all his strength and swung the axe. 他用尽全力抡起斧头。

(2)pretend *vt.* 假装;pretended *adj.* 虚假的;pretension *n.* 装腔作势,矫饰

4. There is always hope that in its labyrinth of musty, dark, disordered rooms a real rarity will be found amongst the piles of assorted junk that litter the floors.

【译文】 人们还常希望在发霉、阴暗、杂乱无章、迷宫般的店堂里,从杂乱地摆在地面上的、一堆堆各式各样的破烂货里找到一件稀世珍品。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】(1)There is always hope that... 英语中似乎比较偏爱 there be 结构。

there be 结构是一种表示"存在"的句型。在这种结构中,there 是引导词,虽然位于句首却不是句子的主语,真正的主语是 be 动词后面的名词或名词词组。该语法项目的考查点主要是主谓一致,即谓语动词 be 必须与主语的"数"保持一致。

there be 结构主要遵循"就近原则"和"意义一致原则"。"就近原则"是指当 be 动词后面有不止一个名词时,be 动词的"数"取决于与它最近的名词。例如:

There are 46 students in our class. 我们班有 46 名学生。

There is a book on the desk. 桌子上有一本书。

There is a dictionary and two books on the desk. 桌子上有一本字典和两本书。

There are two books and a dictionary on the desk. 桌子上有两本书和一本词典。

"意义一致原则"是指当 be 动词后面的名词不好判断其"数"时,be 动词的"数"取决于该名词的意义。例如:

There are lots of college students taking part-time jobs nowadays. 现在许多大学生从事兼职工作。

There are some fish in the pool. 水池里有几条鱼。

There is no telling when he will be back. 无法知道他什么时候回来。

此外,还需注意以下两种情况:

(a)be 动词后面的名词是不定代词时,be 动词用单数。例如:

There is nothing to do with you. (此事)与你无关。

There is something wrong with the car. 这辆汽车出了点儿问题。

(b)be 动词后面的名词是不可数名词时,be 动词用单数。例如:

There is some water in the bottle. 瓶子里还有一些水。

There isn't any money left for us. 没给我们留下什么钱。

除了以上几种情况,对 there be 结构的考查还常常与情态动词、非谓语动词、时态等融合在一起进行。下面是较为常见的几种类型:

(a)与情态动词连用。此时,由于情态动词后面只能跟动词原形,所以 be 动词只有一种形式。例如:

There may be a better solution to the problem. 也许有解决这个问题的更好的方法。

There must be a person to cook the dinner. 必须得有个人来做饭。

There can be no doubt about it. 毫无疑问。

There must be many people waiting for you. 肯定有许多人在等你。

注意:there be 也能与 seem to, appear to, be certain to, be likely to, happen to 等半助动词连用构成复合谓语,谓语动词的单复数取决于实义主语的形式:

There appear to be more than 50 people in that bus. 那辆公共汽车上好像有 50 个人。

There happened to be a shower when we set off. 我们出发时碰巧下了场大雨。

There is certain to be continuous updating of computer products.

电脑产品一定会不断更新。

(b)与非谓语动词连用时 be 动词通常不受后面名词"数"的影响。例如:

There being nothing else to do, we went home. 由于无事可做,我们就回家了。

There being a bus stop so near to the house is a great advantage.

有个离家那么近的公共汽车站是个很大的优势。

We were annoyed at there being so much time wasted. 浪费了这么多时间让我们很恼火。

Tom waited for there to be complete silence. 汤姆等着完全安静下来。

It would be surprising for there not to be any objections. 让人吃惊的是竟然没有任何反对意见。

(c)与时态连用。此时 be 动词的"数"要视具体情况而定。例如:

There was a meeting here yesterday. 昨天这里有一个会议。

There has been a house over there. 那边曾经有过一所房子。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

There will be some effective medicines for cancer in decades.

几十年后将会有有效治疗癌症的药物。

(d)与被动语态连用。例如：

There was said to be an accident yesterday here. 据说，昨天这里发生了车祸。

(e)反意疑问句的处理。例如：

There is something wrong, isn't there? 有点儿不对劲儿，是吧？

There used to be some trees in the field, didn't there? 这块地里过去有些树，对吧？

There is nothing left, is there? 什么都没有剩下，是吗？

(f)there be 结构还能表示"存在，发生，出现，坐落"等意义，一般和 come, exist, appear, happen, occur, lie, stand, grow, fly 等词搭配。例如：

There stands all ancient castle in the valley. 山谷里矗立着一座古堡。

There once occurred/happened a bloody fight between the two tribes.

这两个部落之间曾发生过一场血战。

(2) in its labyrinth...rooms 为同位语从句中的地点状语，倒装结构除表明对该状语的强调外，也可使句子显得更为紧凑和语义更为明了。在该地点状语中使用了修饰性暗喻，即把 rooms 比作 labyrinth，它们的关系为修饰与被修饰的关系，在这两部分间用介词 of 连接，意即"像迷宫般的……房间"。

(3)amongst = among 在……当中；……之一

Shelley is among the world's greatest poets. 雪莱是世界上最伟大的诗人之一。

among other things(=as well as other things)以及其他……

Among other things, she plays tennis twice a week.

除了其他活动外，她每星期打两次网球。

【词汇】litter *vt.* 乱扔(废物)；*n.* 乱扔的垃圾

The streets were littered with rubbish. 街上扔满了垃圾。

The streets were full of litter. 街上满是乱扔的垃圾。

5. A truly dedicated bargain hunter must have patience, and above all, the ability to recognize the worth of something when he sees it.

【译文】一个到处找便宜货的人必须具有耐心，尤其重要的是，当他看见珍宝时，必须有鉴别其价值的能力。

【用法】(1)bargain hunter 到处找便宜货的人，hunter 表示"搜索者，探寻者"，我们还可以说：a job/fortune/house/office hunter 求职人员/追求财富的人/租房者/谋求官职的人。

(2)the ability to...it 与 patience 并列作 have 的宾语；to recognize the worth of...it 作 ability 的定语；it 指代 something。

(3)above all 最重要的(most important of all)，如：He longs above all to see his family again. 他尤其渴望再见到家里的人。

(4)dedicated, devoted (复习 14 课)

dedicate...to... 献身于，致力于=devote...to...

The doctor dedicated herself/her life to finding a cure of cancer.

这位医生毕生致力于寻找一种治疗癌症的方法。

6. Like a scientist bent on making a discovery, he must cherish the hope that one day he will be amply rewarded.

【译文】他必须像一个专心致志进行探索的科学家那样抱有这样的希望，即终有一天，他的努力会取得丰硕的成果。

【用法】(1)bent on making a discovery 为过去分词短语，作定语修饰 scientist。bent 一般与 on 或 upon 搭配，后面接名词或动名词，表示"专心致志做某事，下定决心做某事"。如：He seems bent on becoming a teacher. 他好像决心要当老师了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She is bent on a career on the stage. 她倾心于舞台生涯。

She is bent on becoming an actress. 她决心成为一名女演员。

可以把 be bent on 理解为 be devoted to。

(2)one day 副词短语,作时间状语,通常用在过去时或将来时的句子中,表示"(过去的)某一天"或"(将来的)总有一天"之意。

【词汇】**cherish** *vt.* 怀有;心中带有强烈感情:

I cherished the hope that he will come back. 我怀着他会回来的希望。

I cherished memories of my college days. 我心里珍藏着大学时代的回忆。

比较:harbor 怀有(坏的想法或不良动机)

He harbored a secret hatred against his father. 他对父亲暗怀怨恨。

harbor a secret grudge against sb. =cherish resentment toward sb. 对某人怀恨在心

7. He has often described to me how he picked up a masterpiece for a mere £ 50.

【译文】他多次向我详细讲他如何只花 50 英镑便买到一位名家的杰作。

【用法】(1)how 为连接副词,引导宾语从句。

(2)pick up 在此句中作"偶然获得,得到"讲,如:She picked up French when she went to live in France. 她到法国居住后学会了法语。

(3)mere 为边缘形容词(peripheral adjective,即只能作为定语或补足语使用的形容词),不能作为中心形容词(central adjective,即既可作为定语又可作为补足语使用的形容词)来使用。在句子中只能作定语,以强化所修饰名词的含义。

8. The dealer told him that it had just come in, but that he could not be bothered to open it.

【译文】古董商告诉他那只货箱刚到不久,但他嫌麻烦不想把它打开。

【辨析】bother, disturb, plague, trouble, worry.

(1)bother 在程度上要比 disturb 弱得多,一般表示不会给人造成精神负担,仅是轻微的打扰和烦恼:Just pay the bill and I'll stop bothering you. 只要付清账单我就不再打扰你。

(2)disturb 更为强烈,尤其指心烦意乱的心理状态,有时表示严重的精神错乱:He is disturbed about the situation there. 他对那里的局势感到不安。

在口语时,bother 比 disturb 更为强烈;前者表示连续不断的、故意的打扰,而后者则是非故意的,并非针对某个特定的人。

(3)plague 骚扰,打扰。用作主动语态时,指再三故意地骚扰别人,可能有近于疯狂、坚持不放松的意思。用作被动语态时,表示特有的烦躁,反复在脑中不停地冲击,在这组词中是语气最强的一个。

(4)trouble 在意思上与 worry 相同,在程度上介于 bother 与 disturb 之间:I was troubled by the doctor's report. 医生的报告令我烦恼。

在口语中表示给人造成不方便的意思时,trouble 与 bother 更相近,通常换用。

sb. cannot be bothered to do 某人嫌麻烦不愿意做某事

9. Apart from an interesting-looking carved dagger, the box was full of crockery, much of it broken.

【译文】除了一柄式样别致、雕有花纹的匕首外,货箱内装满了陶器,而且大部分都已破碎。

【词汇】**dagger** *n.* 匕首

Dagger 在古代和中世纪,匕首被用作武器,人们通常随身携带。在准备与别人格斗时,他们就会 draw daggers(把匕首抽、拔出来)。所以 at daggers drawn 相当汉语中的剑拔弩张,比喻"誓不两立,关系紧张"。

Palestine and Israel have been at daggers drawn for a long time.

巴勒斯坦和以色列长期以来一直关系紧张。

www.TopSage.com

另一个关于 dagger 的成语 look daggers at sb. 对某人怒目而视，充满敌意的目光犹如锋利的匕首。

【用法】(1)apart from...除……以外。如：Apart from his nose he's quite good-looking. 他除了鼻子以外，哪儿都很好看。

(2)much of it broken 可视为一个插入语，对 crockery 作进一步补充说明。由于语义明确，在 it 与 broken 之间省略了动词 was。在这里，much of it broken 是独立分词结构。分词的独立结构由名词＋分词构成，名词与分词在逻辑上有主谓关系。该结构在句中起状语作用，表示伴随状况、原因等。

With this problem solved, the kind of machine is now regular production. 随着这个问题的解决，这种机器正式投入生产。

10. Frank gently lifted the crockery out of the box and suddenly noticed a miniature painting at the bottom of the packing case.

【译文】弗兰克轻轻地把陶器拿出箱子，突然发现在箱底有一幅微型画。

【词汇】**miniature** *adj*. 微型的，小型的

He looks like a miniature version of his father. 他活像他的爸爸。(他看起来就是他爸爸缩小的版本。)

【词根】mini-小：miniskirt 迷你裙；minimum 最小量，最低限度；minimal 最低限度的；minimize 减少至最小量；minor 小的；minority 少数，未成年；diminish 减少，缩小；diminution 减少，缩小；minute 分钟；minute 精细的，细微的

额外收获

1. 独立主格结构的特点：

(1)独立主格结构的逻辑主语与句子的主语不同，它独立存在。

(2)名词或代词与后面的分词、形容词、副词、不定式、介词等是主谓关系。

(3)独立主格结构一般有逗号与主句分开。

2. 独立主格的各种结构：

(1)名词(或代词)＋现在分词

现在分词表示前面的名词或代词主动进行的动作或状态。如：

The man lay there, his hands trembling. 躺在那儿的那个人双手在发抖。

有时，现在分词 being 或 having been 在独立主格结构中可以省略。如：

The weather(being) fine, we decided to go on an outing. 天气很好，我们决定外出。

(2)名词(或代词)＋过去分词

过去分词表示前面的名词或代词被动完成的动作。如：

The girl lay on her back, her hands crossed under her head.

女孩平躺着，双手交叉放在脑后。

(3)名词(或代词)＋形容词(短语)

形容词(短语)在独立主格结构中说明前面名词或代词的性质、状态等。如：

The floor wet, we had to stay outside for a while. 地板湿了，我们得在外面待一会儿。

(4)名词(或代词)＋副词

副词在独立主格结构中也多是说明名词或代词的状态。如：

The meeting over, we all went home. 会议结束了，我们都回家了。

(5)名词(或代词)＋介词短语

The teacher came in, a book in his hand. 老师手里拿着一本书进来了。

www.TopSage.com

(6)名词(或代词)+不定式(短语)

不定式表示将来的动作。如：

He suggested going for a picnic, Mary to provide the food. 他建议去野餐，玛丽提供食物。

有时独立主格结构中名词前的定语可以省略。如：

The boy sat quietly in the office, (his) eyes closed/(a) book in (his) hand.

那个男孩闭着眼睛/手里拿着书静静地坐在办公室里。

更多例句：

The test finished, we began our holiday.

=When the test was finished, we began our holiday. 考试结束了，我们开始放假。

The president assassinated, the whole country was in deep sorrow.

=After the president was assassinated, the whole country was in deep sorrow.

总统被谋杀了，举国上下沉浸在悲哀之中。

Weather permitting, we are going to visit you tomorrow. 如果天气允许，我们明天去看你。

This done, we went home. 工作完成后，我们才回家。

The meeting gone over, everyone tired to go home earlier. 会议结束后，每个人都想早点回家。

He came into the room, his ears red with cold. 他回到了房子里，耳朵冻红了。

He came out of the library, a large book under his arm. 他夹着本厚书，走出了图书馆。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 35 Justice was done

本节重点和难点

- 形容词作状语
- "疑问词+ever"引导的从句
- 采用"就近原则"的结构
- 动词的现在分词作后置定语

本课词汇

justice ['dʒʌstis] *n.* 公正,正义;司法,法律制裁
【词组】do justice to sb. (sth.) 公平对待某人(某事)/bring sb. to justice 使某人归案复审/a court of justice 法庭

court [kɔːt] *n.* 法庭,法院;球场;院子;宫廷,朝廷
【词组】at court 在宫中/in court 在法庭上

law [lɔː] *n.* 法律,法制,规律,法则,定律
【词组】abide by the law 守法/break the law 违法/go to law against sb. 与……打官司/be at law 在诉讼中/break the law 违法/observe the law 守法
【用法】the law(加定冠词)有两层含义:1. 是法律的总称,为不可数名词。2. 是公安机关和公安人员的总称,在美国口语中指警察,单复数同形。如:Everybody is supposed to be equal before the law. 法律面前应该人人平等。Don't open the door—it might be the law. 别开门,可能是警察。

innocence ['inəsns] *n.* 无罪,清白
【辨析】innocent 无罪的,无害的;blameless 无过失的,无毛病的,不应受指责的;guiltless 无罪的,无辜的。

beyond [bi'jɔnd] *prep.* 在……那边,远于;超出,超过(限度、范围)
【词组】beyond one's power 超出某人的能力/beyond all things 首先,第一/beyond measure 无法衡量

complex ['kɔmpleks] *adj.* 复杂的;合成的,综合的 *n.* 联合体

undertake [ˌʌndə'teik]) *vt.* 着手做,进行

arduous ['ɑːdjuəs] *adj.* 艰苦的

abstract ['æbstrækt] *adj.* 抽象的 *n.* 摘要,提要,根据
【词组】in the abstract 抽象地,观念上地/advanced abstract 会前论文摘要

conception [kən'sepʃən] *n.* 概念,想法

mete out [miːt-aut] 给予,施以,处置

interference [ˌintə'fiərəns] *n.* 干涉

accord [ə'kɔːd] *n.* 一致

premises ['premisiz] *n.* 房屋

disused [dis'juːzd] *adj.* 废弃的,不用的

fireplace ['faiəpleis] *n.* 壁炉

muffle ['mʌfl] *vt.* 压抑(声音)

chip [tʃip] *n.* 屑片,碎片;缺口,瑕疵 *vi.* 削下碎片 *vt.* 削下;将……削成形

blacken ['blækən] *vt.* 使……变黑

emerge [i'məːdʒ] *vi.* 出现,涌现;(问题)冒出,(事实)暴露
【辨析】emerge 多用于从水中、云雾中出现,并与 from 连用;appear 是普通用词。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

课文详解

1. The word *justice* is usually associated with courts of law.

【译文】"正义"这个词常常是同法庭联系在一起的。

【词汇】**court** *n.* 法院;院子;宫廷;take someone to court 控告某人

vt. 讨好,奉承;求婚,求爱:John courted Mary for years. 约翰追求玛丽已多年。a courting couple 一对谈情说爱的男女

2. We might say that justice has been done when a man's innocence or guilt has been proved beyond doubt.

【译文】当一个人被证据确凿地证明无辜或有罪时,我们也许会说正义得到了伸张。

【用法】(1)when 为从属连词,引导时间状语从句,说明主句谓语动词 might say 发生的时间。

(2)beyond doubt 毫无疑问。为加强语气,可在 doubt 前用 all 进行修饰,相当于 without doubt,如:She was beyond all doubt the finest ballerina of her day. 她无疑是她那个时代最优秀的芭蕾舞演员。The news is true,it is beyond all doubt. 这个消息是真的,这一点毫无疑问。

(3)beyond+名词(一般为抽象名词):

beyond belief(难以相信)
beyond comparison(无与伦比)
beyond doubt(无可怀疑)
beyond dispute(无可争议)
beyond words(难以形容)
beyond controversy(无可争辩)
beyond question(无可置疑)
beyond imagination(难以想象)
beyond recovery(康复无望)
beyond measure(难以衡量)
beyond hope(无望)
beyond understanding(无法理解)

The bicycle is beyond repair. 这辆自行车已不能修理了。

Her skill as a musician is beyond praise. 她是一个音乐家,其技巧令人赞叹不已。

【词根】just-正义,正当;just 公平的,正直的;正好,刚刚;injustice 不公正,不公平;justify 证明为正当;justifiable 正当的;unjustifiable 不能证明为正当的

do...justice/do justice to 公平对待某人

bring sb. to justice 把某人绳之以法,缉拿归案,交法院依法惩办

give oneself up to justice 投案自首

3. Those who seek it undertake an arduous journey and can never be sure that they will find it.

【译文】那些寻求正义的人走的是一条崎岖的道路,从来没有把握他们最终将找到正义。

【用法】who 为关系代词,引导定语从句,修饰 those。句中的两个 it 均指 justice。those 为 undertake 与 can be 的主语。

【词汇】**undertake** *vt.* 承担

undertake an arduous journey 面对艰巨任务

Reluctantly,he undertook the mission. 他勉强接受这一任务。

undertaking 任务,事业,殡葬业;undertaker 殡葬承办人

4. There are rare instances when justice almost ceases to be an abstract concept.

【译文】在个别情况下,正义不再是一种抽象概念。

【用法】cease to do...不再……,动词 cease 多用于表示状态、存在等缓慢、逐渐地停止。因 cease 一词较为陈旧,因此现多用 stop 替代。在 cease 后使用动词不定式表示"不再"含义时多带书卷气,且多用于较正式的场合,如:The officer ordered his men to cease fire. 长官命令士兵停火。

【词汇】**abstract** *adj.* 抽象的(反义词 concrete)

tract-拉;tractor 拖拉机;abstraction 抽象,心不在焉;attract 吸引;attraction 吸引;contract 合同;detract 降低;distract 使分心;distraction 分心;extract 摘要;tractable 温顺的,驯良的;intractable 不听话的,倔强的;protract 延长;subtract 减去,扣除;subtraction 减去,扣除;trace 追踪,回溯

concept *n.* 概念

cept-拿,取;accept 接受;acceptable 可接受的;unacceptable 不可接受的;acceptance 接受;accepted 一般公认的;conception 构思,设想,怀孕;except 除了;exception 例外;exceptional 特别的;intercept 拦

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

截，窃听；susceptible 多愁善感的；susceptibility 多愁善感，敏锐的感情。

5. Reward of punishment are meted out quite independent of human interference.

【译文】奖惩的实施是不受人的意志支配的。

【用法】(1)mete out...给予，分配，如：The judge meted out severe penalties. 法官对犯人予以严惩。

(2)independent of...不受……，不依赖……，这里是形容词短语作方式状语。形容词 independent 通常与介词 of 连用(此点与 dependent 不同，dependent 通常与介词 on 连用)，如：He is old enough to be independent of his parents. 他年岁已大，不必依赖父母。

This is an objective law independent of man's will，这是一条不以人的意志为转移的客观规律。

The seasons change，independent of anyone's wishes. 四季轮换，不以任何人的希望为转移。

6. When we use a phrase like "it serves him right", we are, in part, admitting that a certain set of circumstances has enabled justice to act of its own accord.

【译文】当我们说"他罪有应得"这句话的时候，我们部分地承认了某种特定的环境使得正义自动地起了作用。

【用法】(1)it serves him right 他罪有应得。

(2)in part 在某种程度上，部分地。有时为了加强语气，可在 part 前使用表示程度的形容词 large 或 great，即 in large/great part(在很大程度上；大部分地)，如：His success was due in part to luck. 他成功的部分原因是运气好。

(3)a certain set of 这里为"某些特定的"之意。

(4)of one's own accord 自愿地，自动地。介词短语，作状语，如：He joined the army of his own accord. 他自愿地参了军。

be in accord with 与……一致

The two sides are completely in accord with each on this matter.

双方在这个问题上意见完全一致。

【辨析】according as，according to

这两个词组虽然相似，但它们的结构和使用场合并不相同。according to 表示"根据"、"按照"；而 according as 表示"依照，如果"，有 depending 及 according to whether 的意味。

according as 是连词词组，其后接从句；according to 是介词短语，其后接名词。例：

The thermometer rises or falls according to the high or low temperature.

寒暑表根据气温的高低而升降。

They will be praised or blamed according as their work is good or bad.

给他们的赏罚将视乎他们工作的好坏来决定。

应当在此指出，在现代英语中，according as 的句型结构已很少有人使用。

补充 according to 的例句：

According to the weather report，we shall have cold weather next week.

根据天气报告，下星期天气将要转冷。

You should act according to circumstances. 你们要随机应变。

according to 有个同义短语 in accordance with，但它们的涵义有细微的区别，前者强调"根据……所言"，后者则强调"与……要一致"。另外 in accordance with 多用于正式场合，例如表示与一些原则、规律一致。例：

According to police report，five luxury cars were stolen in Kowloon yesterday.

根据警方报告，昨天在九龙有五辆豪华汽车失窃。

We must proceed in accordance with the rules. 我们必须按照规章办事。

That sentence is not in accordance with the rules of grammar. 那个句子不符合语法规则。

What he has done is not in accord with your instructions. 他的做法与你的指示不一致。

In accordance with your instructions we have suspended work on the heating apparatus.

根据你的指示，我们暂停了供暖设备的施工工作。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. The shop was an old converted house with many large, disused fireplaces and tall, narrow chimneys.

【译文】那是一座老式的、经过改造的房子，店里有许多废置不用的大壁炉和又高又窄的烟囱。

【词汇】**convert** *vt.* 改变，转变：They live in a converted barn. 他们住在一个由谷仓改造的房子里。

convertible *adj.* 可改变的；（货币）可兑换的；*n.* 折篷汽车

vers-vert-转：divert 转移（注意力）；extrovert 外向的人；introvert 内向的人；controvert 反驳，辩论；verse 诗歌；versatile 多方面的，多才多艺的；多面手；adversary 不利的；对手；adversity 逆境；anniversary 周年；conversation 谈话；diverse 不同的；diversity 多样性；reverse 相反的

8. Towards midday, a girl heard a muffled cry coming from behind one of the walls.

【译文】快到中午的时候，一个女售货员听见从一堵墙里传出一种闷声闷气的叫声。

【用法】(1)towards midday

towards 表示快要到某时候

Towards wedding, she is nervous. 婚礼临近，她很紧张。

(2)在介词 from 的后面可以跟副词及另一个介词短语作宾语，形成 from behind, from among, from behind...结构。

The door was suddenly opened from within. 门突然从里面打开。

I heard them calling me from below. 我听到他们从下面叫我。

He came from beyond the mountains. 他从山那一边来。

The men were watching us from above the trees. 那些人从树上往下看我们。

They were mostly elected from among the workers. 他们主要是从工人中选举出来的。

9. She ran to tell the manager who promptly rang up the fire brigade.

【译文】她跑去报告了经理，经理当即给消防队挂了电话。

【用法】从 manager 后面的定语从句得出，定语从句除了可以起修饰作用以外，更可以进一步提供信息，引出下文。这里的 who 完全可以看成是 and he，但若是把句子写成 She ran to tell the manager and he promptly rang up...虽然只有一词之差，细品之下，给人的感觉却大相径庭了。

第 7 课有相同类型的句子：

John went to see his bank manager who sent the remains of wallet and the money to the special department of the Bank of England in Newcastle: the Mutilated Ladies!

我们来看几个句子，体会一下 where、when、who 这些定语从句的引导词是如何把两句话巧妙地连接在一起。

(1)我让 Bill 去开门，Bill 却让女仆去开门。

I asked Bill to open the door who ordered the maid to do so.

(2)我上周五碰到他，然后我们一起吃了一顿饭。

I met him last Friday when we had a dinner together.

(3)我跟着他走进房间，然后我们交谈了半小时。

I followed him into the room where we had a chat for half an hour.

10. They located the right chimney by tapping at the walls and listening for the man's cries.

【译文】他们通过叩击烟囱倾听那人的喊叫声而确定了传出声音的那个烟囱。

【用法】listen for sth.：留心听，集中注意力等待着听到某种声音。

Listen for the moment when the music changes. 留心听音乐变化的那一瞬间。

We're listening for the clock to announce the new year. 我们正等着听时钟报新年。

11. After chipping through a wall which was eighteen inches thick, they found that a man had been trapped in the chimney.

【译文】他们凿透了 18 英寸厚的墙壁，发现有个人卡在了烟囱里。

【用法】be trapped 被卡住，被困住

【词汇】**chip** 作名词是"细条"，french chip 薯条

"缺口"：a chip in my bowl 我碗上的缺口

www.TopSage.com

12. The sorry-looking, blackened figure that emerged, admittd at once that he had tried to break into the shop during the night but had got stuck in the chimney.

【译文】那个看起来满脸沮丧、浑身漆黑的家伙从烟囱里一出来，就承认头天夜里他企图到店里行窃，但让烟囱卡住了。

【用法】(1)get/be stuck 被卡住

(2) break into...闯入，破门而入，与 burst into 意思相同。动词词组，其后直接使用名词或名词性短语，如：His home was broken into last week. 上星期有人闯入他家。

除了上述意思之外，有时还用来表示某行为的突然开始，如：As the president's car arrived, the crowd broke into loud applause. 总统的汽车到达时，群众中爆发出热烈的掌声。

【词汇】emerge *v.*

1. 浮现；出现(＋from/out of)：

The moon emerged from behind a cloud. 月亮从云层后面钻了出来。

2. (问题等)发生，显露；(事实等)暴露：

Nothing emerged from the bilatera talks. 双边会谈没有结果。

3. (从困境等中)摆脱；露头，出头(＋from)

appear *v.*

1. 出现，显露：

Gradually a smile appeared on her face. 她脸上渐渐露出笑容。

2. 似乎，看来好像：

It appears they are right. 看来他们是对的。

He appeared to be talking to himself. 他似乎在自言自语。

3. 出庭，到案：

She will appear in court next Friday. 下星期五她将出庭。

4. 演出；陈列；露面：

The famous singer is appearing this fall at the Music Festival.

这位著名的歌手将在今秋的音乐节上演出。

5. 出版；发表：

His third play appeared under the title"The Web". 他的第三个剧本用《网》作书名出版。

额外收获

本课的小故事让我们想到：

墨菲法则 Murphy's law。20 世纪 40 年代有个美国上尉叫墨菲。据传，一天夜里，他在乡间路上漫步，他一直靠左侧走，这样可以看清楚以及避免前方右边开过来的车子。但他还是被车子撞到了。因为开车的人是刚来美国的英国人，他们习惯车辆靠左行。所以墨菲就提出这种想法，Anything that might go wrong will go wrong. "凡是有可能出差错的事终将出差错。"

The bus is always late but today when I was late it came on time...that, Murphy's law.

公共汽车总是迟到，可是今天我迟到了，它却准时到了，这就是墨菲法则。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 36 A chance in a million

本节重点和难点

- 形容词的独立结构
- “动词＋宾语＋宾语补足语”结构
- 同位语从句
- do 用作助动词表示强调

本课词汇

credulous ['kredjuləs] *adj.* 轻信的

improbable [im'prɔbəbəl] *adj.* 不太可能的

obscure [əb'skjuə] *adj.* 卑微的，不起眼的

maid servant 女仆

presume [pri'zjuːm] *vt.* 以为，假设

wickedly ['wikidli] *adv.* 邪恶地

plot [plɔt] *n.* 小块土地；情节；秘密计划，阴谋 *v.* 密谋

【词组】plot against sb.（sth.）密谋反对某人（某事）/plot to do sth. 密谋做某事

【辨析】plot 指个人或团体为了获得非法的利益所做的阴谋；conspire 指重大的阴谋犯罪，特指反叛；scheme 指暗中策划一种狡诈手段来谋求私利。

downfall ['daunfɔːl] *n.* 垮台

naive [nai'iːv] *adj.* 天真的

unacceptable [ˌʌnək'septəbəl] *adj.* 不能接受的

conspire [kən'spaiə] *vt.* 协力促成

incredible [in'kredəbl] *adj.* 不可置信的，不可思议的；惊人的；大量的

resemblance [ri'zembləns] *n.* 相似

pour scorn on 奚落，嘲弄

acquaint [ə'kweint] *vt.* 使了解；使认识

【词组】acquaint oneself/sb. with 使自己（或某人）熟悉

needless to say 无需多说

reunite [ˌriːjuː'nait] *v.* 使团聚

assume [ə'sjuːm] *vt.* 假定，揣测；装出……的样子；开始担任，承担 *vi.* 装腔作势

课文详解

1. In the nineteenth century, a novelist would bring his story to a conclusion by presenting his readers with a series of coincidences—most of them wildly improbable.

【译文】19 世纪时，小说家常在小说结尾处向读者提供一系列的巧合来结束故事——大部分是牵强附会，极不可能的。

【用法】(1) bring...to a conclusion 使……结束，完成，如：He took the teacher's advice and brought the matter to an early conclusion. 他采取了老师的建议，使事情早日了结。

(2)介词 by 引导的介词短语在句子中作方式状语。

(3)a series of...一系列的……，如：He saw a series of white arrows painted on the road. 他看见马路上画有一连串白色箭头。

本句中的破折号引出补充说明的词语，补充说明 a series of coincidences。在 most of them 与 wildly improbable 之间省略了系动词 were。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(4)wildly *adv.* 极，非常：

a wildly romantic book 一本极富浪漫情调的书；a wildly inaccurate estimate 极不准确的估计；wildly inefficient 极其缺乏效率

TopSage.com

2. Readers happily accepted the fact that an obscure maidservant was really the hero's mother.

【译文】当时的读者却愉快地接受这样一些事实：一个低贱的女佣实际上是主人公的母亲。

【词汇】**happily**: *adv.* 乐意地，愿意地

happy to do sth. = willing to do sth. 乐意做……：

We will be happy to help you if you need us. 如果你需要，我们很乐意帮助。

obscure *adj.* (人)默默无闻的，微贱的，(地点)偏僻的：

an obsecure poet 一位无名诗人；an obscure mountain village 一个偏僻的山村

cure-注意：secure 安全的；security 安全；accurate 准确的；accuracy 准确性；cure 治疗，治愈；curious 好奇的；curiosity 好奇；manicure 修指甲

【辨析】dark, dim, gloomy, obscure, vague,

这些形容词都含有"完全地或不完全地缺少光亮"之意。

dark：最普通用词，指缺乏自然光线或人工照明，使某物漆黑无光或光线十分微弱。

dim：指光线不足或视力较差，不能清晰地看见物体。

gloomy：指光线不足或部分光线受阻而出现的阴暗。

obscure：指因光线不充足而使物体灰暗不清，失去光泽或若隐若现。作借喻时指因复杂、深奥或含糊而难于理解。

vague：通常作借喻用，形容抽象事物。

3. A long-lost brother, who was presumed dead, was really alive all the time and wickedly plotting to bring about the hero's downfall.

【译文】一个失踪多年的亲兄弟，人们都以为他死了，其实却一直活着，而且用心险恶地密谋要把主人公搞垮。

【用法】(1)who 为关系代词，引导一个非限定性定语从句，该从句中 dead 作从句主语 who 的补足语。

(2)plotting 为现在分词，与前文中的 really alive all the time 共用 was，表示正在进行时态。虽然与其使用同一个 was，但就词性而言，was really alive...中的 was 为谓语动词，而在 was plotting...中的 was 为助动词。

(3)bring about 造成，导致，引起，产生，如：What brought about his illness? 他怎么得病的？

【辨析】assume, presume, suppose, guess, postulate

这些动词均含为"假设，猜想，推测"之意。

assume：指有很少或完全无根据的武断推测或不合逻辑的推理。

presume：侧重以过去经验或根据现实的某些感觉把某事认定为是事实。

suppose：常用词，意义较广泛，指缺乏确切事实，根据一些现象进行的推测，也可指为论证而提出合乎逻辑推理的某种假定，有时仅表示自己的意见。

guess：常用词，指毫无根据仅凭个人主观臆断或碰运气的猜测。

postulate：指为证实一个理论的正确性而进行的假设。

【联想】(1)wicked = evil

(2)plot 密谋；conspire 合谋

虽都是贬义注意侧重点不同。

(3)long-lost 长期失散的

注意这个构词法 well-behaved 举止得当的

(4)downfall 源自词组 fall down

类似：outbreak, break out

intake, take in

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

4. Yet, in real life, circumstances do sometimes conspire to bring about coincidences which anyone but a nineteenth century novelist would find incredible.

【译文】然而，在现实生活中，有时确实会出现一些巧合。这些巧合除了19世纪的小说家外谁也不会相信。

【用法】(1)do 为助动词，用来加强语气，意为"确实"。

(2)but 为介词，意为"除……之外"。本句中由其构成的介词短语作定语，修饰 anyone，如：Nobody knew it but me. 除了我以外，没有人知道这件事。

在表示此意时，but 与介词 except 的意思相近，但其语气不强，经常和 no one, none, nothing, all, anything, who, where 等词连用。

anything but 根本不；nothing but 只不过是；all but 几乎，差一点，除……以外其余都是；but for 要不是；but＋从句，若不是……

Alone in a deserted house, he was so busy with his research work that he felt anything but lonely.

虽然他孤独一人住在这幢房子里，但他埋头于研究工作，一点也没有感到孤独。

The party was all but over when we arrived. 我们到达时，聚会已近尾声。

But for the rain, we would have had a nice holiday. 要不是因为下雨，我们的假日一定过得很惬意。

(3)conspire，(巧合地)协力促成，如：All things conspired towards that result(或 conspired to bring about that result). 一切因素凑在一起，导致了那个结果。

conspire to do 共同导致，合力促成

Bad engine and bad weather conspired to ruin our plan.

引擎坏了，天气又不好，这一切毁了我们的计划。

(4)credible 和 credulous 都有"相信"的意思。

①credible，"可信的"，含有被动的意味，如：

The rumour seems hardly credible. 这个谣言很难令人相信。

② credulous，"轻信的"，指不加研究和考查就信以为真，含有主动的意味，如：

He is credulows enough to believe every rumour. 他易轻信，把一切谣言都信以为真。

【词根】cred-相信；credit 信用，名誉，学分；discredit 怀疑，玷污，耻辱；discreditable 无信用的，耻辱的；credential 学历，介绍信；credo＝creed 信条；accredited 得到某一组织授权的；an accredited representative of the firm 公司的授权代表

5. After they had gone on, Mrs. Bussman commented on the workman's close resemblance to her husband and even suggested that he might be his brother.

【译文】当他们继续往前走时，巴斯曼太太说那位工人酷似她丈夫，甚至猜测他可能就是他的兄弟。

【用法】(1) go on 继续往前走。

(2) comment on...对……进行评论，如：Everyone commented on her new hat. 大家都在评论她的新帽子。

(3) suggest 动词，suggest 之后可以接 v-ing，也可以接 that 从句，从句中的动词在(正式)英语中通常用 should do 型虚拟式，但是有时 should 可以省略。例如：He suggested going out for a walk. 他建议出去散步。

请注意，当 suggest 不表示"建议"的意思时，其用法不受以上规则的制约。例如：Are you suggesting that I am telling a lie? 你的意思是说我在撒谎吗？

【联想】resemblance＝likeness

A have a striking resemblance to B

a strong resemblance between A and B

A 和 B 很相像

6. Franz poured scorn on the idea, pointing out that his brother had been killed in action during the war.

【译文】弗朗兹对此不屑一顾，指出他兄弟已在战争中阵亡了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】(1)pour scorn on"嘲弄;对……表示轻视";有时用 pour contempt/ridicule on: He poured scorn on my question. 他对我的问题表示蔑视。

(2)pointing out that...为现在分词短语,在句子中作伴随状语,修饰动词 poured.

(3)in action 在战斗中。

【联想】(1)scorn = contempt

scornful *adj*. 轻蔑的:a scornful laugh 轻蔑的笑声

(2)pour scorn/contempt on

类似词组补充:

It's up to you to pour oil on troubled water or on old flames.

从这两个词组中看看有什么区别?

pour oil on troubled water 平息怒气

pour oil on old flames 火上浇油

7. Though Mrs. Bussman was fully acquainted with this story, she thought that there was a chance in million that she might be right.

【译文】尽管巴斯曼太太十分熟悉这一说法,但她仍然认为自己的想法有百万分之一的可能性。

【用法】a chance in a million 百万分之一的可能性

chances that...are good 很有可能……

【词汇】**acquaint** *vt*.

使熟悉;使了解:

I am acquainted with her. 我认识她。

We should acquaint Western readers with the present situation of China.

我们应让西方读者了解中国的现状。

通知:

Please acquaint him with my arrival. 请通知他我到了。

I acquainted her with my intention. 我把我的意图告诉她。

8. The hospital had been bombed and Hans had made his way back into Western Germany on foot.

【译文】医院遭到轰炸,汉斯步行回到了西德。

【用法】make one's way 去,前往,前进

这个词组的变体 find/feel/fight/force/wind one's way。

额外收获

谈谈英语中的数词翻译:

英语中的有些数词在汉译时可以等值翻译。但是,也有不少数词在汉译中不能等值翻译,或者完全不译出来。这种翻译处理方法是为了使汉译句子能符合汉语的表达习惯。以下分别举例说明。

(1)等值翻译:

a drop in the ocean 沧海一粟

within a stone's throw 一箭之遥

kill two birds with one stone 一箭双雕

A fall into the pit, a gain in your wit. 吃一堑,长一智。

(2)不等值翻译:

They are six of one and half a dozen of the other. 他们是半斤八两。

on second thoughts 再三考虑

by ones and twos 三三两两地,零零落落地

Two heads are better than one. 三个臭皮匠胜过诸葛亮。

——Can you come down a little? ——Sorry, it's one price for all.

——你能便宜一点卖吗? ——对不起,不讲价。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

He had one over the eight after he drank only half bottle of the wine.
他才喝了半瓶酒就醉得七歪八倒了。
one-two 是"拳击中连击两次",而不是"一二"。
two-time 是"对人不忠",而不是"两次"。
in two twos 是"立刻",而不是"两两之间"。
three-score 是"六十",而不是"三分"。
four o'clock 是"紫茉莉或食蜜鸟",而不是"四点"。
four Hundred 是"名流、上层",而不是"四百"。
five-finger 是"贼",类似汉语的"三只手",而不是"五指"。
Seven-Hill City 是"罗马",而不是"七山市"。
特别解释 at sixes and sevens:七零八落,乱七八糟
They held a party last night and everything was at sixes and sevens when the guests left.
昨晚他们开了一个家庭聚会。当客人散尽之后,一切物品都挪了位置。
It's far from the only authorities who are at sixes and sevens on this problem.
在这个问题上,不只权威部门意见分歧,众说纷纭。
The members couldn't come to an agreement. They were at sixes and sevens.
委员们不能达成一致意见。他们各持己见。
(3)数字不必译出:
One man's meat is another man's poison. 人各有所好。
I'll love you three score and ten. 我会一辈子爱你的。
Ten to one he has forgotten it. 很可能他已经忘了。
His mark in math is second to none in the class. 他的数学分数在班上是名列前茅的。
She is a second Lei Feng. 她是雷锋式的人物。
I always believe my sixth sense. 我总相信我的直觉。
He talks about you nine times out of ten when we have a chitchat. 每次我们闲聊他几乎都谈及你。
The parson officially pronounced that they became one. 牧师正式宣告他们成婚。
I used to study in France in the year one. 我早年曾在法国学习。
The young man found himself one too many. 这位小伙子发现自己是个多余的人。
He is a fool of the first water. 他是个大傻瓜。
We must put two and two together. 我们必须依据事实推理。
The skirts are second to none in this shop. 在这个商店里,这些裙子是最上等的。
Tom's uncle is a three-bottle man. 汤姆的叔叔是个大酒徒。
The film seems to have a third dimension. 这部电影看起来有真实感。
The novel is full of four-letter words. 那本小说里脏话连篇。
The fourth estate is a powerful force in modern society. 新闻界在现代社会里势力强大。
The poor old man seems to be a fifth wheel in the family. 那位可怜的老人似乎是家里多余的人。
I'm in the seventh heaven when I listen to Mozart's music. 我听莫扎特的音乐时,感到如临仙境。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 37 The Westhaven Express

本节重点和难点

- 表语从句
- 表示否定意义的副词或短语置于句首时，句子要部分倒装
- "it dawns on sb. that..."句型
- 双宾语结构

本课词汇

express [iks'pres] *v.* 表示，表达 *n.* 快车

【词组】express... as 把……表示为/express oneself 表达自己的意见，表示态度/by express 搭快车；用快递/for the express purpose of 为了……的特殊目的

punctual ['pʌŋktʃuəl] *adj.* 准时的，正点的

condition [kən'diʃən] *v.* 使习惯于

unshakable [ʌn'ʃeikəbl] *adj.* 不可动摇的

faith ['feiθ] *n.* 信任

cancel ['kænsəl] *v.* 取消，把……作废；删去，划掉

exceptionally [ik'sepʃənəli] *adv.* 例外地

dislocate ['disləkeit] *vt.* 使混乱

blame [bleim] *vt.* 责备；把……归咎于 *n.* 责任；责怪，责备

【词组】bear/take the blame 承担责任

【用法】blame sb. for sth. 相当于 blame sth. on sb. 其宾语为人时，后接 for，为口语用；若宾语为事物时，后接 on，为书面语，意为"为某事物责备某人，把某事归咎于某人"。be to blame (for)意为"应受谴责，应负责任"。

consult [kən'sʌlt] *vt.* 找……商议；找……诊治；翻阅 *vi.* 商议，商量

【用法】consult 用作及物动词，后跟人作其宾语时，是指主语"征求某人的意见"，是单方面的"请教"；用作不及物动词与 with 连用后接人时，是指"与某人协商"，是相互的、平等的"商议"。

direct [di'rekt] *adv.* 径直地

odd [ɔd] *adj.* 古怪的，奇怪的；临时的，不固定的；单只的，不成对的；奇数的，单的；余的，带出头的

【词组】odd and/or even 猜单双的游戏/odd job 临时工作，杂务/odd month 大月(有 31 天的月)

reflect [ri'flekt] *v.* 反射；仔细考虑；反映

【词组】reflect on/upon 仔细考虑

take advantage of 利用

mighty ['maiti] *adj.* 强有力的

dawdle ['dɔːdl] *vi.* 慢吞吞地前进

chug [tʃʌg] *vi.* 咔嚓咔嚓地响

lodge [lɔdʒ] *vi.* 暂住，借宿 *vt.* 供……以临时住宿

complaint [kəm'pleint] *n.* 抱怨

triumph ['traiəmf] *n.* 胜利，成功 *vi.* 战胜，得胜

in black and white 白纸黑字

asterisk ['æstərisk] *n.* 星号

conduct [kən'dʌkt] *vt.* 引导，带领；导电，传热

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. After years of conditioning, most of us have developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables.

【译文】经过多年适应，大多数人对火车时刻表产生了一种不可动摇的信念。

【用法】(1) faith in...为名词词组，faith 后常使用介词 in 表示"对……的信念"之意，如：They should have faith in the masses. 他们应该相信群众。He advised me not to put my faith in such a book. 他建议我不要相信这种书。

(2)挖掘 develop 的用法，如：

Do you know where I can develop my films?

你知道我可以在哪里洗相片吗？

2. Ships may be delayed by storms; air flights may be cancelled because of bad weather; but trains must be on time.

【译文】轮船船期可能因为风暴而推延，飞机航班可能因恶劣天气而取消，唯有火车必然是准点的。

【词汇】**cancel** *vt.* 取消

cancel：取消，解除

He has cancelled his leave of absence. 他取消了假期。

abolish：废除，废止

Bad customs should be abolished. 坏的风俗应当废除。

eliminate：消灭，排除

We should eliminate the false and retain the true. 我们应该去伪存真。

repeal：撤消，废除

Some laws should be repealed. 一些法律应该废除。

exterminate：根除，消灭

Colonialism must be exterminated. 殖民主义必须被消灭。

3. Only an exceptionally heavy snow fall might temporarily dislocate railway services.

【译文】只有非同寻常的大雪才有可能暂时打乱铁路运行。

【词汇】**dislocate** *vt.* 使脱臼；使混乱

I dislocate my shoulder when I was playing tennis. 我打网球时肩膀脱臼了。

The storm caused considerable dislocation of traffic. 暴风雨使得交通大乱。

4. It is all too easy to blame the railway authorities when something does go wrong.

【译文】一旦铁路真的出了问题，人们便不加思索地责备铁路当局。

【用法】(1)too 的几个结构

① 在"too...to..."结构中，动词不定式作结果状语时表示否定意义。如果表示肯定意义，则需在不定式之前加 not，如：He is too wise not to see that. 他很聪明，不会不懂那件事。

② 动词不定式作 too 后面的形容词或副词的宾语或原因状语时，不表示否定意义，这时的 too 相当于 very，并常被 but、all、only 所前置修饰，如：He was(but)too eager to get home. 他归心似箭。

③too 被 not/never 前置修饰时，动词不定式作结果状语、宾语或原因状语，均不表示否定意义，如：It is never too late to learn. 活到老，学到老。(学习永远不晚。)

(2)does 为助动词，这里表示强调，意即"真的"、"的确"。

(3)all too：太，极；甚：These scenes of violence are all too familiar. 这些暴力场面简直是太熟悉了。all too often：往往

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

5. The truth is that when mistakes occur, they are more likely to be *ours* than *theirs*.

【译文】事实上，一旦有误，与其说错在他们，不如说错在我们自己。

【用法】(1)that 在此引导表语从句，说明主语 truth 的内容。when 为从属连词，在 that 引导的从句中引导一个时间状语从句。

(2)likely, possible 与 probable 这三词都有"可能"的意思。

① likely "可能的"，指经过权衡、判断后，认为某事是真实的，大概会发生，如：He is the likeliest candidate for the president. 他是总统的最有可能的候选人。

② possible"可能的"，强调客观上有可能性，但希望很小，如：He is a possible choice. 他是可能的人选。

③probable"可能的"和 possible 相比，语气较强，指有根据、合情理、值得相信的事物，有"大概""很可能"的意味，如：It seems to me much more probable that she will refuse. 我看她很可能拒绝。

(3)课文中 ours 和 theirs 均为斜体表示强调，应重读。ours＝our mistakes, theirs＝the mistakes of the railway authorities。

(4)more...than... 与其说……不如说……，例：

He is a man who is more brave than wise. 与其说他是一个勇敢的人，不如说他是一个聪明人。

He is more mad than stupid. 他与其说是笨，不如说是疯。

He is more of a politician than a scholar. 与其说他是个学者，不如说是个政客。

6. I reflected that there must be a great many people besides myself who wishes to take advantage of this excellent service.

【译文】我想除我之外，想利用快车之便的也一定大有人在。

【用法】(1)besides，介词，表示"除包括……之外还包括"之意。该介词短语作定语，修饰 people。

(2)take advantage of 利用。在使用这个短语时，在介词 of 后可以是人，也可是物作其宾语，但所表示的语义往往不同。当以人为宾语时，往往含贬义，主要指利用某人的弱点而占某人的便宜，因此常表示"欺骗"、"捉弄"的含义，如：Don't try to take advantage of me; I know fully well what you are up to. 别想捉弄我，你想干什么我都知道。

但是当以物为宾语时，既可用于褒义又可用于贬义。作褒义表示"利用"；作贬义表示"乘机利用"，往往指利用别人的不幸或不利等攻击或打击别人，以达到自己的目的，如：I should like to take advantage of this opportunity to apologize to you. 我想借此机会向你道歉。

【词汇】**reflect** *vt.* 意思及用法如下：

(1)反射

A bright surface will reflect sunlight. 光亮的表面能反射阳光。

(2)(常与 that, how 连用)表达；反映

Their actions reflect their thoughts. 他们的行动反映了他们的思想。

(3)(常与 on, upon 连用)仔细考虑

Please reflect on a problem. 请仔细思考一个问题。

7. It suddenly dawned on me that this express was not roaring down the line at ninety miles an hour, but barely chugging along at thirty.

【译文】我突然感到这趟快车并没以时速 90 英里的速度呼啸前进，而是咔嚓咔嚓地向前爬行，时速仅 30 英里。

【用法】dawn on/upon sb. 醒悟，开始明白

The truth began to dawn on him. 他开始明白了真相。

It suddently(gradually) dawned on me that I had caught the wrong train.

我突然发觉(慢慢发现)我乘错了火车。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

It finally dawned on me that he had been lying. 最后我才明白他一直在撒谎。

8. I determined to lodge a complaint as soon as we arrived.

【译文】我决定一到目的地就向铁路部门提意见。

【用法】lodge(＝make officially or formally)表示"正式提出",通常与介词 against 连用：He lodged a complaint against his boss with the authorities concerned. 他向有关当局对他的老板提出控诉。

lodge a complaint 提出不满意见

lodge an appeal 上诉

lodge a claim 要求赔偿损失

lodged staff 寄宿职工

lodgement 住处

9. There was a note of triumph in my voice when I told him that it was there in black and white.

【译文】我带着一种胜利者的口吻告诉他那趟车白纸黑字，明明白白印在时刻表上。

【用法】(1)代词 it 指 the train's existence。

(2)in black and white(用)白纸黑字。这里的 black 指写字用的黑水，white 则指写字用的纸。这里用写字材料的具体颜色代替写出的字，是暗喻的一种用法。

英语中和"黑""白"相关的搭配：

① black 黑色

call white black/call black white：混淆是非

black money：黑钱(指来源不正当而且没有向政府报税的钱)

black tie：黑领结；小礼服

in the black：盈利；赚钱；顺差

black and blue：遍体鳞伤的

black sheep：害群之马

black Friday：耶稣受难日；不吉利的星期五

black lie：用心险恶的谎言

blackmail：勒索

The pot calls the kettle black. 五十步笑百步。

② white 白色

white war：没有硝烟的战争，常指"经济竞争"

white sale：大减价

white money：银币

white elephant：无用而累赘的东西

white crow：罕见的事物

the white way：白光大街(指城里灯光灿烂的商业区)

a white lie：善意的谎言

white coffee：牛奶咖啡

white feather：胆怯

【词汇】**triumph** *n.* 胜利；得胜

It was the triumph of civilization over mere force. 这是文明战胜了蛮力。

He brought home the prize in triumph. 他得意洋洋地捧回奖品。

The victor marched off in triumph. 胜利者得意而归。

to return home in triumph 凯旋

a triumph for justice 正义的胜利

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

10. A tiny asterisk conducted me to a footnote at the bottom of the page.

【译文】一个小小的星形符号把我的目光引到了那页底部的一个说明上。

【词汇】**conduct** *vt.* 引导，引向；conductor 乘务员，售票员；乐队指挥

duct-duce-引导：educate，education 教育；produce，production 生产；product 产品；introduce，introduction 介绍；reduce 减少；seduce 勾引；deduce，deduction 推论，推断

额外收获

1. too...to 结构表示肯定含义的情况

我们知道 too...to 结构一般表示否定含义，意为"太……以致于不能"。例：

He is too old to work.

但 too...to 在下列情况下却表示肯定含义：

(1)当 too 前或 to 前有否定词构成双重否定时，例：

English is not too difficult to learn. 英语并不太难学。

He is too wise not to see that. 他很聪明，不会不懂这一点。

(2)当 too 后面是 glad，pleased，happy，delighted，satisfied，ready，willing，kind，apt，good，true，easy，near，careful，well，early，delicious，eager，anxious 等形容词或副词时。例：

They are too anxious to leave. 他们急于离开。

He is too ready to help others. 他总是乐于助人。

与这些词连用时，too 前还常加上 only、all、but、just、simply 等副词，意思不变，因为这些词加上 too 后与 very 同义。例：

I'm only too glad to see you. 见到你非常高兴。

They are but too pleased to hear the news. 他们听到这个消息，非常高兴。

(3)与 cannot 连用时，例：

You cannot be too careful(＝You can never be careful enough) to do your homework.

你做作业越仔细越好(＝无论怎样仔细也不过分)。

(4)当不定式在句中作定语或真正的主语时。例：

There are too many problems to be solved. 有很多问题有待解决。

It is too much to say that he is a fool. 说他是个傻瓜，这太过分了。

2. more than 的用法：

(1)"more than＋名词"表示"多于……"、"非但……尤其是"如：

Modern science is more than a large amount of information.

现代科学不仅仅是大量的信息。

Jason is more than a lecturer; he is a writer, too.

贾森不仅是个讲师，还是个作家。

(2)"more than＋数词"含"以上"或"不止"之意，如：

I have known David for more than 20 years. 我已经认识戴维 20 多年了。

(3)"more than＋形容词"等于"很"或"非常"的意思，如：

In doing scientific experiments, one must be more than careful with the instruments.

当一个人做科学实验的时候，必须很小心。

I assure you I am more than glad to help you. 我向你保证我非常乐于帮助你。

(4)在"more...than..."中，肯定"more"后面的而否定"than"后面的，等于"是……而不是……"，如：

The difference between pure linguistics and applied linguistics is more apparent than real.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

纯语言学和应用语言学之间的区别是表面的而不是实际的。

This book seems to be more a manual than a text. 这本书似乎是说明书而不是教科书。

Catherine is more diligent than intelligent. 凯瑟琳勤奋但不聪慧。

Hearing the loud noise, the boy was more surprised than frightened.

听到那个巨大的响声，那个男孩更多的是吃惊而不是害怕。

(5)"more than"或"more...than..."＋含"can"的分句时表示否定，如：

That's more than I can do. 我不能那么做。

Don't bite off more than you can chew. 不要贪多嚼不烂。

In delivering his lecture, Jason makes sure not to include more things than the students can understand. 在讲座的过程中，吉森确保不涉及额外的学生理解不了的东西。

(6)"No more...than..."表示"不……；不如……"，如：

I can no more do that than anyone else. 我和别人一样做不了那件事。

A learner can no more obtain knowledge without reading than a farmer can get good harvest without ploughing. 学者不读书得不到知识，正如农民不耕作不能获得丰收一样。

"no more...than" 也可用"not any more than..."来取代，因此

Dr. Hu is no more a poet than Dr. Wu is a philosopher.

＝Dr. Hu is not a poet any more than Dr. Wu is a philosopher.

胡博士不是诗人，就像吴博士不是哲学家一样。

此外，"more than"也在一些惯用语中出现，如：

More often than not(经常), people tend to pay attention to what they can take rather than what they can give. 更多情况下，人们往往关注的是怎样得到而不是怎样付出。

All of us are more than a little concerned about(非常关心) my current economic problems.

我们都非常关心我目前的经济问题。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 38 The first calendar

本节重点和难点

- "疑问词＋动词不定式"组成的名词性短语
- 插入语
- 动词的分词短语作后置定语
- it 作形式主语

本课词汇

calender ['kælində] *n.* 日历

historian [his'tɔːriən] *n.* 历史学家

unique [juː'niːk] *adj.* 唯一的，与众不同的

steadily ['stedili] *adv.* 不断地

solely ['səuli] *adv.* 只，唯一

video ['vidiəu] *n.* 录像

CD-ROM [ˌsiːdiː-'rɔm] *n.* （只读）光盘驱动器

bewildering [bi'wildəriŋ] *adj.* 令人迷惑的

deduce [di'djuːs] *v.* 演绎，推断

【词组】deduce from 推断

scanty ['skænti] *adj.* 缺乏的，不足的

clue [kluː] *n.* 线索，暗示

【词组】have no clue 迷惑不解；不懂

【辨析】clue"线索，提示"，指有助于发现真象的事，与 to 连用；hint"暗示"，指间接的或隐蔽的暗示；implication"暗含"，指在文章或说话中，没有直截了当表明之意。

insignificant [ˌinsig'nifikənt] *adj.* 无意义的

shed [ʃed] *vt.* 发射，放射；使流出

【用法】shed 有时表示使流血或流泪，如 Tom shed so much blood from the wound, and perhaps his death was coming. 汤姆的伤口流了好多血，他可能活不长了。

shed light on 阐明

advent ['ædvent] *n.* 出现，到来

agriculture ['ægrikʌltʃə] *n.* 农业

assumption [ə'sʌmpʃən] *n.* 假设

【词组】on the assumption that 以……的设想为根据/with an assumption of 假装……的样子

【用法】assume 一词在变为名词时，是把字母 e 改成 ption。这类动词在变为名词时都有这样共同的变化形式。如：presume *vt.* 假定，假设，名词为 presumption；resume *vt.* 重新占用，继续，名词为 resumption；consume *vt.* 消耗，消费，名词为 consumption。

dot [dɔt] *n.* 小点，似小点之物 *v.* 加以小点；用点制成

【词组】on the dot 准时/to the dot 完全；全部；丝毫不差地

symbol ['simbəl] *n.* 象征；符号，标志

engrave [in'greiv] *vt.* 雕刻

ivory ['aivəri] *n.* 象牙

课文详解

1. Future historians will be in a unique position when they come to record the history of our own times.

【译文】未来的历史学家在写我们这一段历史的时候会别具一格。

【词根】uni-单一：uniform 制服；unanimous 异口同声地；unicorn 独角兽

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. They will hardly know which facts to select from the great mass of evidence that steadily accumulate.

【译文】对于逐渐积累起来的庞大材料,他们几乎不知道选取哪些好。

【用法】(1) select,choose,elect 和 pick out 都有选择的意思。

①select"挑选","选择",更强调客观优劣,或为达到某一目的条件上的优劣而进行的选择,如:She selects top clothes among various pattern. 她在各种样式中选择质量优良的衣服。

②choose"选择",指一般的选择,有时特指抉择,侧重意志或判断,如:I leave it to you to choose between the two methods. 我任你在这两种方法之间作出抉择。

③elect"选举","推选",指通过正式手续选举,这个词后面接人及所任的职位,如:We elected her secretary. 我们选她作秘书。

④pick out"选好","选出",短语动词,除了当"选出"解,还表示"认出","看清楚",如:It took Mary an hour to pick out a new skirt at the store. 玛丽花了一个小时在店里挑了一条裙子。

(2)mass

mass consumption 大规模消费

mass distribution 大规模营销

mass media 大众传播媒介

mass production 大量生产;大规模生产

【词汇】steady 稳定的;稳重的

3. Film, videos, CDs and CD-ROMs are just some of the bewildering amount of information they will have.

【译文】电影、录像、光盘和光盘驱动器只是能为他们提供令人眼花缭乱的大量信息的几种手段。

【辨析】bewilder,puzzle,confuse,embarrass,perplex 这一组词都有"令人迷惑"的意思。

bewilder *vt.* 使困惑,使茫然,强调非常困惑,通常表现为心理和智力的紊乱,语气最重。

He was fired without warning and is completely bewildered about the reason.

他没有得到事先警告就被开除了,完全不明白是什么原因。

puzzle *v.* 使迷惑,感到不解,强调不理解或解决不了。

Where the sunken treasure is puzzles explorers.

沉没宝藏的下落令探险家们大惑不解。

confuse *v.* 一般用语,使混乱,使糊涂,强调因混淆而使人迷乱。

He sent the wrong reports because he confused them with other ones.

他发错了报告,因为他把它们同另外一些报告混淆在一起了。

embarrass *v.* 使窘迫,使为难,使困惑,有令人不快、难为情和内心混乱的意味。

Her boyfriend embarrassed her by teasing her about her new hairstyle in front of others.

她的男友在别人面前嘲笑她的新发型,使她感到难堪。

perplex *v.* 使杂乱,使疑虑,使不安。

The new tax laws perplex me. 新税收法律使我很费解。

4. They will be able, as it were, to see and hear us in action.

【译文】他们能够身临其境般地看我们做事,听我们说话。

【用法】(1)as it were 可以说,好像,打个比方说。为虚拟语气的状语从句,可视为 as if it were so 的省略形式,可用于各种时态的句子中。通常作独立成分的插入语使用,位于句中,前后用逗号分开。其作用是表示所指的那个词或那句话是个比喻说法,如:

The worker is, as it were, a living machine. 这个工人可以说是一部活的机器。

He is, as it were, a walking dictionary. 他可以说是本活字典。

He is, as it were, a modern Sherlock Holmes. 他可以说是个当代的福尔摩斯。

比较:as it is/was 事实上

I had planned to see you, but as it was, I was busy. 我本打算来看你,但事实上我太忙了。

(2)in action 在活动中,在进行中。如:

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

He's a very good basketball player; you really ought to see him in action.
他是个出色的篮球运动员，你确实应该去看看他打球。

5. But the historian attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced with a difficult task.

【译文】但是历史学家企图重现遥远的过去可是一项艰巨的任务。

【用法】be faced with = face

遇到；遭遇（尤指危险或困难等）；面对；偶然碰到，邂逅

The next time you are faced with new material you need to learn...
下次你遇到需要学习的新材料时……

The main difficulty we are faced with today is of supplying food to those in need.
我们今天需要面对的主要困难是向那些贫困的人供应食物。

The house faces the park.
这房子面对公园。

6. He has to deduce what he can from the few scanty clues available.

【译文】他必须根据现有的不充分的线索进行推理。

【用法】(1)在关系代词 what 引导的宾语从句中，为避免重复，he can 后省略了 deduce。

(2)deduce... from 从……推断……表示此义时，deduce 后需使用介词 from，如：Deduce a conclusion from premises. 从前提推出结论。

【词汇】available *adj.* 现成可使用的，在手边的，可利用的；可取得联系的，可得到的

可以作为前置定语或者后置定语

All the available money has been used. 手头的钱都用完了。

We took the first available plane. 我们乘上了第一架能乘上的飞机。

7. Even seemingly insignificant remains can shed interesting light on the history of early man.

【译文】即使看起来微不足道的遗物，也可能揭示人类早期历史中的一些有趣的内容。

【用法】(1)shed light on...照亮，使……清楚地显现出来，阐明，如：The teacher's words shed light on our question. 老师的话阐明了我们的问题。

Recent research has shed new light on the cause of the disease.
近期的研究成果对该病的病因有了新的发现。

(2)early man 早期人类

【词汇】shed *vt.* 流出，溢出：

shed crocodile's tears 鳄鱼的眼泪，假慈悲

Don't shed crocodile's tears for Tom, I know you are looking forward to his sack. 别假惺惺地替汤姆难过了，我知道你巴不得他被炒鱿鱼。

8. Up to now, historians have assumed that calendars came into being with the advent of agriculture, for then man was faced with a real need to understand something about the seasons.

【译文】迄今为止，史学家认为日历是随着农业的出现而产生的。因为当时人们面临着了解四季的实际需要。

【用法】(1)up to now"到目前为止"，多与完成时连用。

(2)come into being/existence 产生，出现；bring...into being/existence 使……产生，如：

When did the Great Wall came into being/existence? 长城是什么时候出现的？

(3)with the advent of agriculture 随着农业的产生。介词短语作状语，修饰 came into being。介词 with 在这里表示"随着"。

【辨析】hypothesis, assumption, presumption, supposition 这些名词均有"假设，假想"之意。

hypothesis：书面用词，指有待作进一步检验或证实的假设。

assumption：侧重主观推测或主观设想。

presumption：着重指以可能性为依据的假设。

supposition 可与 assumption 换用，还可表某种试探性的主观看法或建议。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

9. Historians have long been puzzled by dots, lines and symbols which have been engraved on walls, bones, and the ivory tusks of mammoths.

【译文】长期以来,历史学家一直对雕刻在墙壁上、骨头上、古代长毛象的象牙上的点、线和形形色色的符号感到困惑不解。

【用法】ivory tower 象牙塔,指脱离实际生活的文学家或艺术家的小天地。

university professors in their ivory towers 生活在象牙塔中的教授

【词汇】**symbol** *n.* 象征,符号

Kiss is a symbol of love. 吻是爱的象征。

【辨析】symbol, badge, sign, signal, mark, token, attribute, emblem 这些名词均含"标志、象征、符号"之意。

symbol:指作象征或表达某种深邃意蕴的特殊事物。

badge:一般指金属徽章或写有姓名的带状标志物。

sign:普通用词,指人们公认事物的记号,也可指某种情况的征兆。

signal 指为某一目的而有意发出的信号。

mark:普通用词,含义广泛。既可指方便于辨认而有意做的标记,又可指自然形成的标记或有别于其他事物的特征。

token:语气庄重,指礼品、纪念物等作为表示友谊、爱情等的象征或标志。

attribute:指人或物及其地位、属性的象征。

emblem:指选定象征一个国家、民族或家庭等的图案或实物。

10. They have found that it is connected with the passage of days and the phases of the moon.

【译文】他们发现代码与昼夜更迭和月亮圆缺有关。

【词汇】**phase** 阶段,时期,(月亮)位相

phase in(out)逐步采用(淘汰)

11. It is, in fact, a primitive type of calendar.

【译文】事实上是一种最原始的日历。

【词汇】**primitive** *adj.* 原始的,上古的

prim-首先,最早;prime 首要的,最好的;primeval 原始的;primeval forest 原始森林;prin-先;prince 王子;princess 公主;principal 主要的;principle 原则;prior 在先的,在前的;priority 优先

【辨析】initial, original, primitive

initial *adj.* 开始的,最初的,强调处于事物的起始阶段,也可以指位于开头地方的。

My initial good opinion of him changed with time. 时间长了我对他最初的好印象改变了。

original *adj.* 最初的,最早的;原版的,原物的。指按顺序是首位的,在此前不再有更为原始的同类的东西;也指原件的,原物的,非仿造的东西。

This is the original piano on which the composer created some of his greatest works.

就是在这架钢琴上,这位作曲家创作出了他的一些最伟大的作品。

primitive *adj.* 原始的,上古的,早期的。指处于人类生命或事物发展的早期阶段,也可以指自然的或简朴的。

Primitive tribes live in the Amazon River basin. 原始部落居住在亚马逊河盆地。

额外收获

介绍各种和"kiss"有关的短语:

He blew a kiss at the pretty girl.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

他对那个漂亮女孩做了一个飞吻动作。

kiss-me-quick(垂于额上的)鬈发

give a kiss 接个吻

a Juda's kiss 口蜜腹剑

snatch a kiss 冷不防接个吻

steal a kiss 偷吻，冷不防接个吻

kiss off 不在乎；拒绝

You can kiss off that problem now.

现在你可以不为那个问题操心了。

smooch 与……搂抱亲吻

He planted a big smooch on her. 他深深地吻了她。

peck 匆匆一吻

She gave him a peck on the cheek. 她在他脸颊上匆匆一吻。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 39 Nothing to worry about

本节重点和难点

- 动词的现在分词作状语
- 两种感叹句及它们在形式上的区别
- 双宾语结构
- 名词作状语的用法

本课词汇

rough [rʌf] *adj.* 粗糙的；粗暴的，粗野的；粗略的

【词组】be rough on sb. 对……粗暴苛刻/have a rough time 吃苦，受难/rough and ready 能满足需要但不完美，简陋而有用的/roughly speaking 大体说来

boulder ['bəuldə] *n.* 大石头

pit [pit] *n.* 坑，陷阱，煤矿，矿井

【词组】dig a pit for sb. 为某人挖陷阱；使某人陷入圈套

perturb [pə'tə:b] *vt.* 使不安

underestimate [ˌʌndər'estimeit] *vt.* 低估

swerve [swə:v] *vi.* 急转弯

scoop [sku:p] *vt.* 铲起

hammer ['hæmə] *vi.* 锤击

ominously ['ɔminəsli] *adv.* 不吉祥地

rip [rip] *vt.* 撕，扯

petrol tank 汽油箱

stretch [stretʃ] *v.* (被)拉长，伸，延 *n.* 一段时间，一段路程；拉长，延伸

【词组】at a stretch 一气儿；不停地；连续地/at full stretch 极其紧张地；全力以赴地/by any stretch of imagination 尽管怎样想象；任凭如何异想天开/on/upon the stretch 紧张着

【辨析】stretch 主要指由屈到直、由短到长的"伸长"，有时也指宽度上的"伸展"；draw out 通常指长度上的延伸或时间上的延续；extend 常指超过目前范围的延伸，指空间的延伸(长度、宽度等)，也指时间的延长；有时还指四肢或躯体的伸开。

obstacle ['ɔbstəkl] *n.* 障碍

clump [klʌmp] *n.* 树丛，簇

fissure ['fiʃə] *n.* 裂缝

renew [ri'nju:] *v.* 使更新，恢复；继续

pleading ['pli:diŋ] *n.* 恳求

gear [giə] *n.* 齿轮，汽车排挡

astride [əs'traid] *prep.* 横跨

crack [kræk] *vt.* 使裂开，砸开 *vi.* 发出爆裂声，劈啪地响 *n.* 裂纹，龟裂

【词组】at the crack of dawn 在破晓时/crack down (on)(对……)采取严厉措施，制裁；镇压/crack up 撞坏，撞毁；(在精神上或健康方面)垮掉

课文详解

1. The rough road across the plain soon became so bad that we tried to get Bruce to drive back to the village we had come from.

【译文】穿越平原的道路高低不平，开车走了不远，路面愈加崎岖，我们想劝说布鲁斯把车开回到我们出发的那个村庄去；

www.TopSage.com

【用法】(1)rough road 高低不平的路

(2)so...that...太……以至于……,为关联连词,引导一个结果状语从句。

(3)这里的动词 get 为"劝说"之意。get sb. to do sth. 说服某人做某事

You'll never get him to understand. 你永远也无法让他明白。

Nobody can get him to move away from his old house. 没人能说服他搬出他的老房子。

(4)we had come from 在句子中为定语从句。由于先行词 village 在从句中作介词 from 的宾语,因此在 village 与从句间省略了关系代词 that/which。注意在此句中不应用关系副词 where 连接先行词和此定语从句。

2. Even though the road was littered with boulders and pitted with holes, Bruce was not in the least perturbe.

【译文】尽管路面布满石头,坑坑洼洼,但布鲁斯却一点儿不慌乱。

【用法】be littered with, be pitted with

The Hollywood landscape is littered with would-be superstars who rode the zeitgeist straight into obscurity. With that in mind, it wasn't easy choosing our list of today's biggest stars.

好莱坞的美景被一些自称的超级明星给糟蹋了,他们会使时代思潮相形见绌。想到这些,要从我们的名单中挑选出今天的顶级明星可不容易。

to litter 是乱扔垃圾,to be littered 是被乱扔了垃圾,有被糟蹋之意。

3. It was not that Bruce always underestimated difficulties.

【译文】这并不是说布鲁斯总是低估困难。

【句型】It is not + that..., but+(that)...

It is not that we are more eager or less lazy than our ancestors, but(that) we have, with the passage of time, invented all sorts of social devices to hasten the process. 不是我们比我们的祖先更热切或较少懒惰,而是我们经过一段时间,发明了各种社会设施促进了社会进程。

句中 that 作连词,意思相当于 because。

It was not a question now how much money I should have left over for the rest of the month, but whether I had enough to pay the bill. 现在的问题不再是我应为这个月剩下的日子留多少钱,而是我是否有足够的钱付这顿饭钱。

4. As we bumped over the dusty track, we swerved to avoid large boulders.

【译文】我们在尘土飞扬的道路上颠簸,车子东拐西弯,以躲开那些大石头。

【辨析】bump, clash, collide, conflict 这些动词均含"碰撞"之意。

bump:主要指具体东西的有力碰撞,也可指碰到困难或障碍。

clash:指有力的或带有金属碰击声的打、敲或相互冲击。

collide:多指带毁坏性的猛烈相撞,也可指严重的直接冲突。

conflict:这个词以前可表具体东西的撞击,现在常指冲突或对立。

【词汇】**swerve** *v.* 急转弯;switch 改变,转换器;swing 摆动,秋千;swirvel 使旋转;swirl 旋转,涡动

5. The wheels scooped up stones which hammered ominously under the car.

【译文】车轮搅起的石块锤击车身,发出不祥的锤击声。

【词汇】**ominous** *adj.* 不祥的

omen *n.* 预兆,前兆;a happy omen 吉兆;an ill omen 不祥之兆

6. What a relief it was when the boulders suddenly disappeared, giving way to a stretch of plain where the only obstacles were clumps of bushes.

【译文】大石块突然不见了,前面是一片平地,这里除了一簇簇的矮树丛,别无障碍,这是何等令人欣慰啊!

【用法】(1)what a relief it was when..., 强调句,"当……真是令人欣慰,如释重负",如:What a relief it was when we finally got there in time. 当我们及时到达那儿时,真是如释重负。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(2)giving way to...，现在分词短语，作结果状语。give way to 让位给，转变为，如：I have no intention of giving way to his demands. 我不打算对他的要求让步。

(3)a stretch of...一大片……。翻译中需根据其后的名词确定其量词的使用，如：a stretch of open country 一片旷野；a long stretch of time 一段长时间。

有时根据其"延伸"、"扩展"之意，引申用于：a stretch of the imagination 一阵幻想，想人非非；a stretch of authority 超越权限；by a stretch of language 用牵强附会的语言。

I got out of bed and had a good stretch. 我下了床，美美伸个懒腰。

a stretch of hills 连绵的山丘；a stretch of pleasant beach 一片宜人的海滩

7. Bruce went into a low gear and drove at a terrifying speed, keeping the front wheels astride the crack as he followed its zigzag course.

【译文】布鲁斯挂上慢挡，把两只前轮分别搁在裂缝的两边，顺着弯弯曲曲的裂缝，以发疯的速度向前开去。

【用法】(1)at a terrifying speed 以令人害怕的速度。这里的 terrifying 为夸张用法。

(2)keeping...course，现在分词短语，作方式状语，修饰 drove，其中的介词短语 astride the crack 作 the front wheels 的补足语。

8. Before we had time to worry about what might happen, we were back on the plain again.

【译文】我们还未来得及担心后果，车已重新开上了平地。

【用法】(1)hardly...when...(前后时态保持一致)还没来得及做某事……就……

He had hardly had time to worry about what might happen when we were back on the plane again.

他几乎还未来得及担心后果，我们就重新回到了飞机上。

The great liner had hardly had time to anchor when men from....

巨轮还没来得及抛锚，人们就从……

He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house.

他还没来得及安顿好就卖掉了房子。

Before he settled down, he sold the house. 在他安顿好之前，他卖掉了房子。

(2)before 含义

before 一词作连词时在以下句子中有不同的意义：

(1)Look before you leap. 三思而后行。(在……之前)

(2)Before I could protest, he got to his feet. 不等我申辩，他已站起身来。(不等……就)

Someone called me up in the middle of night, but they hang up before I could answer it.

有人在午夜的时候给我打电话，但我还没接，他就挂断了。

(3)It was a long time before I got to sleep again. 距我再次入睡是一段很长的时间。(之后才)

(4)It wasn't long before he told us about his story. 不久他就告诉了我他的故事。(不多久就)

(5)He would die before give in. 他宁愿死也不屈服。(宁愿……也不……)

9. Bruce charged at it, but in the middle, the car came to a grinding halt.

【译文】布鲁斯向它冲去，但是到了中间，车子嘎吱一声停了下来。

【用法】(1)charge at 向……冲去，如：Suddenly the mad dog charged at me. 突然那只疯狗朝我冲了过来。

(2)come to a grinding halt 嘎嘎地响着停下来，come to a halt 停下来，如：The horse suddenly came to a halt. 那匹马突然停了下来。

【词汇】**grind** *v.* (ground, ground)研磨：freshly-ground coffee 新磨的咖啡

Some people grind their teeth while they are asleep. 有些人睡觉时磨牙。

grind to a halt/standstill：车辆(伴有噪音)缓缓停住

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

【解析】stop, pause, cease, quit, halt, knock off, terminate

stop:停止

pause:暂停

He paused to pick up a stone. 他停下来捡石头。

cease:终止,结束

They ceased(from)quarrelling to cease fire. 他们停止争吵去救火。

quit:离开,离去

He quitted his school/job. 他离开了学校/工作岗位。

halt:使停下来

The soldiers halted for a rest. 士兵们停下来休息。

knock off:使停止

terminate:结束,使终结

The two countries terminated their relations. 两个国家终止了关系。

【引申】have an axe to grind 别有用心,另有企图,怀有私心

He may offer you a post in his firm, but he has an axe to grind, he wants to stand well with your father. 他可能在他的公司里给你安排个职务,但他是别有居心,他想和你父亲搞好关系。

His interest in our venture cannot be sincere, because I knew he has an axe to grind.

他对我们企业的兴趣不可能是真诚的,因为我知道他怀有私心。

In the first place, let me assure you, gentlemen, that I have not an axe to grind.

首先,让我向你们保证,先生们,我没有别的用心。

10. A yellow light on the dashboard flashed angrily and Bruce cheerfully announced that there was no oil in the engine!

【译文】仪表盘上一盏黄灯闪着刺眼的光芒,布鲁斯兴致勃勃地宣布发动机里没油了!

【用法】句子中用 angrily 形容灯的 flash,是一种拟人用法,angrily 与 cheerfully 以对比的方式出现,形成修辞格——对照法(antithesis),即将相反或相对的两个意思或两个词以对等的结构安排在句子中,形成对照,以增强表达效果。如:Speech is silver; silence is golden. 雄辩是银,沉默是金。

额外收获

英语中的重迭词:

英语中有些词是通过重复一个词的基本音节而派生来的,构词学上称之为重迭词(reduplication words)。

fuddy-duddy(大惊小怪的人,为 fuddy 的重迭)

handy-dandy(一种猜对方手中握有什么东西的游戏,为 handy 的重迭)

hoity-toity(轻率,傲慢,来自 hoity)

tittle-tattle(闲聊,来自 tattle)

重迭词的一个显著特点就是具有一定的韵律和较强的节奏感。

它们有的押尾韵,如:

knicker-bocker(纽约人)

jiggery-pockery(欺骗)

walkie-lookie(手提式摄像机)

而有的重迭词既押尾韵又押头韵,如:

niddle-noddle(不断地点头)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

flipperty-flopperty(松驰地、下垂着)

由于重迭词讲究韵律,因此,读起来朗朗上口,听上去娓娓动听,大大地增添了词的表现力。例如:

(1)She pitter-pattered along the hallway.

她在走廊里啪哒啪哒地走。

(2)The bell goes ding-dang.

铃儿在叮当地响。

(3)He is shilly-shally about it in his mind.

对此事,他一直犹豫不决。

(4)The two gossips, when coming together, would tittle-tattle to the slander of others.

那两个长舌妇,碰到一起时总要喋喋不休地诽谤别人。

(5)And all argle-bargling suggested it was at the end of the fair.

而这一片讨价还价的嘈杂声说明集市已近尾音。

(6)The drunken man zig-zagged down the street.

酒鬼在大街上东倒西歪地行走。

(7) She was so round and roly-poly that I used to wonder how she ever moved fast enough to catch a bird.

她身圆体胖,我过去总感到不解的是她何以能捉到一只小鸟。

(8)Willy-nilly, every youth must serve in the army for three years.

每个年轻人,不管是否愿意,都得服三年兵役。

(9)He pooh-poohed the idea.

他对那个想法嗤之以鼻。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 40 Who's who

本节重点和难点

- 动名词短语作主语
- be to do 表示将来发生的动作
- only 置于句首的倒装句
- 现在分词短语作状语

本课词汇

hoax [həuks] *n.* 戏弄

deception [di'sepʃən] *n.* 欺骗

self-respecting *adj.* 有自尊心的，自重的

indulge in 沉湎，沉溺于

pneumatic [njuː'mætik] *adj.* 风动的，气动的

drill [dril] *n.* 钻

silly ['sili] *adj.* 愚蠢的

【辨析】foolish 指缺乏常识，没有判断力，做事欠考虑，因而是愚蠢的；silly 指头脑简单，不懂事，做事讲话极其无聊，毫无意义；stupid 指智力差，反应迟钝。

advance [əd'vaːns] *vi.* 前进，向前移动；取得进展 *n.* 前进，进展；预付，支付

【词组】in advance 在前面，预先/in advance of 在……前面，比……进步，超过

【辨析】advance、progress、proceed 都有"前进，进步"的意思。advance 指具体的人或物，也指科学、运动、知识等前进、进步，强调进步的程度；progress 指经常的、持续的或稳定的前进、进步，常用于抽象事物；proceed 强调继续前进，从一个地方走向另一个地方，有时着重于新的起点。

archway ['aːtʃwei] *n.* 拱形门廊

remonstrate ['remənstreit] *vi.* 规劝，告诫

ironically [ai'rɔnikəli] *adv.* 讽刺地

permission [pə'miʃən] *n.* 许可

grant [graːnt] *v.* 同意，授予，准予

【词组】take it for granted 认为理所当然/grant(ing) that ... (= granted that ...) 假定……；即使……

课文详解

1. Students specialize in a particular type of practical joke: the hoax.

【译文】大学生擅长一种特殊形式的恶作剧——戏弄人。

【用法】practical joke 后的冒号用于引出同位语，hoax 是 joke 的同位语。

elaborate hoax (*n.*)巧妙的骗局

如：Some claim that America's moon landings were just an elaborate hoax.

有人声称美国登陆月球一事不过是个精心设计的骗局。

【词汇】specialize ['speʃəlaiz] *vi.* 专门研究，专门学习，专攻 specialize+in 短语：He specialized in modern language. 他专攻现代语言。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Inviting the fire brigade to put out a nonexistent fire is a crude form of deception which no self-respecting student would ever indulge in.

【译文】请消防队来扑灭一场不存在的大火这是一种低级的骗局，有自尊心的大学生决不去做。

【用法】(1) inviting the fire brigade…是动名词短语作主语；put out 扑灭，作 inviting 的宾语补足语：put out a fire 灭火。

(2)…which no self-respecting student would ever indulge in

=…which self-respecting student would never indulge in

这句话涉及到了语法中的否定转移现象，再补充几类：

① 将 think, believe, suppose, expect, fancy, imagine 等动词后面宾语从句的否定词转移到主句中，即主句的谓语动词用否定式，而从句的谓语动词用肯定式。

I don't think I know you. 我想我并不认识你。

I don't believe he will come. 我相信他不会来。

注意：若谓语动词为 hope，宾语从句中的否定词不能转移。

I hope you weren't ill. 我希望你没有生病。

② 将 seem, appear 等后的从句的否定转移到前面。

It doesn't seem that they know where to go. 看来他们不知道往哪去。

It doesn't appear that we'll have a sunny day tomorrow.

看来我们明天不会碰上好天气。

③ 有时将动名词、介词短语或整个从句的否定转变为对谓语动词的否定。

I don't remember having ever seen such a man.

我记得从未见过这样一个人。

It's not a place where anyone would expect to see strange characters on the street.

在这里，人们不会想到在街上会碰上陌生的人。

(anyone 作主语，从句中的谓语动词不能用否定形式。)

④ 有时状语或状语从句中否定可以转移到谓语动词前。

The ant is not gathering this for itself alone. 蚂蚁不只是为自己采食。

He was not ready to believe something just because Aristotle said so.

他并不因亚里士多德说过如何如何，就轻信此事。

She had not been married many weeks when that man's younger brother saw her and was struck by her beauty. 她结婚还不到几个月，这个人的弟弟就看见她了，并对她的美貌着了迷。

【词汇】**deceive** *vt.* 欺骗

cheat, deceive, trick, fool 这些动词均含有"欺骗"之意。

cheat：普通用词，指用蒙蔽他人的手段取得所需之物，尤多指在赢利的买卖中欺骗人。

deceive：最普通用词，指用虚假外表使人信以为真，或蓄意歪曲事实，或造成错误印象使人上当受骗。

trick：指用阴谋诡计等骗得信任或得到所需之物。

fool：指把别人当傻瓜，愚弄、欺骗别人。

indulge/inˈdʌldʒ/ *v.* 放任；纵容；使(自己)纵情享受沉迷于(in)：indulge in conversation and drink 纵情地畅谈和欢饮/indulge in dreamy ease 沉溺于美梦般的安逸

indulgent *adj.* 放纵的：indulgent parents 溺爱的父母

3. As soon as he had hung up, he went over to the workmen and told them that if a policeman ordered them to go away, they were not to take him seriously.

【译文】挂上电话后，他又马上来到工人那儿，告诉他们若有个警察来让他们走开，不要把他当回事。

【用法】be + to do sth.

www.TopSage.com

(1)打算做某事：She is to get married next month. 她打算下个月结婚。

(2)应该做某事：He asked where he was to put the flowers. 他问他应该把花放在哪里。

(3)必须做某事：No one is to leave this building without the permission of the police. 没有警察的同意，任何人不能离开这座大厦。

4. The workmen told him to do as he pleased and the policeman telephoned for help.

【译文】工人们说，悉听尊便。警察去打电话叫人。

【用法】do as one please(like)悉听尊便

5. Shortly afterwards, four more policemen arrived and remonstrated with the workmen.

【译文】一会儿工夫，又来了 4 个警察，规劝这些工人。

【用法】remonstrate with...规劝……，其后跟表示人的名词。如表示"就……规劝某人"时，通常使用 remonstrate with sb. about/regarding/upon/on sth. 结构，如：The teachers remonstrated with the student on his bad habits. 老师们规劝那个学生改掉坏毛病。

I remonstrated with him about his rudeness. 对他的粗暴无礼，我给他提了意见。

6. As the men refused to stop working, the police attempted to seize the pneumatic drill.

【译文】由于工人拒绝停下手中的活，警察想夺风钻。

【词汇】**seize** *vt.* 抓

grasp：抓住，抓紧

Grasp all and lose all. 样样抓，样样失。

He grasped her by the hand. 他用手抓住她。

clasp：抱紧，紧紧拥抱

The child clasped his doll protectively. 那个孩子保护地抱紧了他的布娃娃。

clutch：(因害怕或痛苦)突然抓住

The mother clutched her baby in her arms. 母亲猛然把她的孩子抱到怀里。

seize：突然用力抓住

The animal seized its prey. 动物紧抓着它的猎物。

snatch：抓、夺、抢夺，偷窃

The thief snatched her purse and ran away. 小偷抢过她的包跑掉了。

grab：抢先，抢占，猛然抓取

She grabbed his arms and pulled him out of the room. 她抓住他的胳膊，把他拖出了房间。

grip：紧握、抓牢

He gripped the nail and pulled it out. 他钳住那根钉子，把它拔了出来。

7. The workmen struggled fiercely and one of them lost his temper.

【译文】两个工人奋力抗争，其中一个发了火。

【辨析】wild, fierce, savage

wild *adj.* "野蛮的"，"未驯服的"。普通用语。指野性的、无节制的行为，无发怒或严厉之意。

fierce *adj.* "凶暴的"。指易怒的和有凶暴脾气的人或动物。

savage *adj.* "野蛮的"，"残酷的"。表示不开化，或缺乏感情的控制力。

Some wild horses still live in the valley. 一些野马还栖息在这个山谷里。

He was a fierce fighter. 他是一个勇猛的斗士。

The fierce robbers come down from the mountains. 凶恶的匪徒从山上下来。

I have never met such savage manners. 我从未见过如此粗暴无礼的举止。

He has a savage temper. 他性情野蛮。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

8. At this, the police pointed out ironically that this would hardly be necessary as the men were already under arrest.

【译文】听到这个，警察讥讽地说，这已经不需要了，因为他俩已经被逮捕了。

【用法】(1)at 和 with 比较

at 表示"一听到"的意思：

At this news the students gave out a cry of joy. 一听到这个信息，这些学生就高兴地大叫起来。

with 表示"说完、做完"的意思：

With these words, he got out of the room. 说完这些话，他就离开了屋子。

(2) under arrest 被捕

under arrest 经常与 hold、place 或 put 连用：

The thief had been put under arrest. 这个小偷被抓了起来。

under + n. ：被……，受……，在……中

be under arrest 被逮捕 be under house arrest 被软禁

be under control/repair/study/treatment/suspicion/consideration/examination/investigation/revision/construction/discussion 被控制住/正在维修中/正在研究中/正在治疗中/受到怀疑/在考虑中/正在审查中/正在调查中/正在修订中/正在重建中/正在讨论中

【词汇】**ironically** *adv.* 讽刺地

irony 反语

使用与真正意义相反的词，正话反说或者反话正说，从对立的角度运用词义来产生特殊的效果。下面就是莎士比亚的戏剧 Julius Caesar 中的一个运用反语的很好的例子，Brutus 出于野心刺杀了 Caesar. Caesar 的好友 Antony 讥讽 Brutus 说：

Here, under leave of Brutus and the rest—
For Brutus is an honorable man;
So are they all, all honorable men—
Come I to speak in Caesar's funeral.
He was my friend, faithful and just to me:
But Brutus says he was ambitious;
And Brutus is an honorable man.

在 Antony 的话里反复使用 honorable 这个词就是一个反语的例子。

英语中有些明喻习语在使用时也是以反语的形式出现的。如：as welcome as a storm 像欢迎暴风雨一样受欢迎(实为"不得人心")；as slender in the middle as a cow in the waist 腰细如牛(实际是"腰粗如牛")；as clear as mud"清如淤泥"等等。

9. Permission was granted and a policeman accompanied him to a pay phone.

【译文】警察同意了，陪他来到一个投币电话前。

【词汇】**grant** *vt.* 同意，准予：

They granted him permission to go. 他们同意让他离开。

She was granted a divorce. 她被判离婚。

The minister granted journalists an interview. 部长答应接见记者。

10. Only when he saw that the man was actually telephoning the police did he realize that they had all been the victims of a hoax.

【译文】当他看到那个工人确实在给警察局打电话时，才意识到他们都成了这场骗局的受害者。

【用法】(1)"only+状语"置于句首，句子要倒装。

(2) victim 受害者：We are victims of the accident. 我们是这场事故的受害者。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

额外收获

关于 only 的特殊结构：

① only 引导的词组或句子放在句首作状语时，通常要用倒装结构。如：

Only in this way can you solve the problem. 只有通过这种方式你才能解决问题。

Only if you study hard can you pass the exam. 只有努力学习才能通过考试。

Only then did I realize my mistake. 只有那时我才意识到自己错了。

② not only...(but also)出现在句首时，如果连接的是两个句子，常用倒装。如：

Not only did we lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.

我们不仅丢了钱，还差点把命丢了。

Not only did he speak correctly, but he also spoke easily. 他不仅说得准确，而且说得很轻松。

③ only 放在不定式前面，常表示不愉快或出乎人们意料的结果。如：

I went all the way to his home only to find him out at a meeting.

我走了大老远到他家里去，不料发现他出去开会了。

I hurried to the post office only to find it closed. 我匆忙赶到邮局，不料已经关门了。

She went home only to find her house burglarized. 她回到家里，发现房子被盗了。

④ "too...to..."结构表示否定意思，但"only too...to..."结构表示肯定意思。如：

The patient is too weak to walk. 那个病人太虚弱了，走不动。

We are only too willing to do it for you. 我们非常愿意为你做那事。

I am only too delighted to accept your invitation. 我非常高兴接受你的邀请。

⑤ 在"one of＋复数名词＋定语从句"的结构中，定语从句一般被看作修饰复数名词，谓语要用复数形式。但在"the only one of＋复数名词＋定语从句"的结构中，定语从句却被看作修饰"the only one"，谓语动词要用单数形式。如：

This is one of the best novels that have been published in the past two years.

这是近两年出版的最好的小说之一。

He was the only one of the boys who was given a prize. 他是这些孩子中唯一受到奖励的。

She is the only one of the girls who has been to the US. 她是那些女孩中唯一去过美国的。

⑥ if only 为虚拟语气的一种，表示愿望或一个未实现的条件，多用于感叹句，其主句常常省略。如：

If only she would marry me! 她要是能和我结婚该多好！

If only he had known about it! 他那时要是知道这件事该多好！

If only you could have been here earlier that day! 要是你那天再早点到这就好了。

If only there were forty-eighty hours in a day. 要是一天有 48 个小时就好了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 41 Illusions of pastoral peace

本节重点和难点

- 定语从句
- 分词短语作后置定语
- 同位语从句
- 分词短语作状语

本课词汇

illusion [i'lu:ʒən] *n.* 幻觉，幻想

pastoral ['pɑ:stərəl] *adj.* 田园的

breed [bri:d](bred) *vt.* 繁殖，饲养 *n.* 品种，种类

rapture ['ræptʃə] *n.* 欣喜若狂

extol [iks'təul] *vt.* 赞美，颂扬

superior [sju:'piəriə] *n. adj.* 上级（的）；更好（的），较好（的）；优秀（的），优越（的）

【用法】 superior 本身已表达了比较的意义，所以没有比较级和最高级，在表示比较时，其后不用 than 而用 to，如：This matter is left to someone superior to you. 这件事还是留给地位比你高的人去处理。

twitter ['twitə] *vi.* 鸟啾啾地叫

glint [glint] *vi.* 闪烁

pasture ['pɑ:stʃə] *n.* 牧场，牧草地

idyllic [ai'dilik] *adj.* 田园诗的

virtually ['və:tʃuəli] *adv.* 实质上

dubious ['dju:bjəs] *adj.* 引起怀疑的，可疑的

privilege ['privilidʒ] *n.* 特权

misery ['mizəri] *n.* 痛苦

acquaintance [ə'kweintəns] *n.* 认识，相识；熟人，认识的人

【词组】 have a nodding acquaintance (with) 点头之交/have a wide acquaintance 结交很广/make the acquaintance of sb. 结交某人

treat [tri:t] *n.* 难得的乐事，享受

dweller ['dwelə] *n.* 居民

stagger ['stægə] *vi.* 蹒跚

exotic [ig'zɔtik] *adj.* 异乎寻常的，外来的

glow [gləu] *n.* 白炽光

descend [di'send] *v.* 下来，下降

【词组】 descend from 从……下来；是……的后裔；源于/descend on (upon) 突然袭击；突然拜访某人/descend to 把人格（或身份）降低；堕落；传下；遗传；下降

tuck away 隐藏

obstinately ['ɔbstinitli] *adv.* 固执地，顽固地

课文详解

1. City born and city bred, I have always regarded the country as something you look at through a train window, or something you occasionally visit during the weekend.

【译文】 我生在城市，长在城市，总认为乡村是透过火车车窗看到的那个样子，或偶尔周末去游玩一下的景象。

【用法】 (1)city born 和 city bred 是两个由“名词＋过去分词”构成的合成词，作形容词使用，可视为在

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

city born 前省略了现在分词 being，作原因状语，在英语中，将形容词或形容词短语用作状语的情况很多。

(2)city born and city bred 中有个重要现象 born and bred

这是压头韵的修辞手法，再如：safe and sound，black and blue

头韵是一种语音修辞方式，它指一组词、一句话或一行诗中重复出现开头字母相同的单词，常用于文章的标题、诗歌及广告语中，简明生动，起到突出重点，加深印象，平衡节奏，宣泄感情的作用。

【词汇】**breed** *vt.* 引起，产生

Quality breeds success.（福特汽车广告）这则广告套用了谚语"Familiarity breeds contempt."

2. Most of my friends live in the city, yet they always go into raptures at the mere mention of the country.

【译文】我的许多朋友都住在城市，但他们只要一提起乡村，就变得欣喜若狂。

【用法】(1)rapture 狂喜：go into raptures(about/over sb./sth.)(为某人/事物)欣喜若狂、着迷：

I didn't like the film much but my boyfriend went into raptures about it.

我不太喜欢那部电影，但我的男朋友却对它着了迷。

rapture 程度深于 happiness，excitement

(2)at the mere mention of...仅仅提到……，这里的介词 at 为"一经"之意。如：He was upset at the mere mention of his father's death. 他一提到他父亲去世的事就很难过。

(3)go into＋一种情感

比如 go into a panic，go into rage(勃然大怒)

3. Though they extol the virtues of the peaceful life, only one of them has ever gone to live in the country and he was back in town within six months.

【译文】尽管他们都交口称赞宁静的乡村生活的种种优点，但其中只有一人真去农村住过，而且不足 6 个月就回来了。

【词汇】**extol** *vt.* 赞美(高于 praise)

比较：worship 对 respect

【联想】anthem 圣歌

anthem 最初是教堂里应答轮唱的赞美诗歌，牧师领唱，唱诗班作答。它来自希腊语 antiphona。另外，anthem 现在还可用来指"国歌"、"校歌"。

4. Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is somehow superior to town life.

【译文】即使他也仍有幻觉，好像乡村生活就是比城市生活优越。

【用法】(1)be/live under an/the illusion(＝in the mistaken belief)表示"错误地认为"，后面跟 that 从句：

They were under the illusion that the company was going well, but in fact it faced bankruptcy.

他们错误地认为公司生意兴隆，但实际上公司面临破产。

(2)be superior to...比……优越，胜过。含比较之意，用于两人或两个事物之间的比较，如：Many critics consider Li Bai superior to Wang Anshi as a poet. 许多评论家认为，作为诗人，李白胜过王安石。His knowledge of Chinese history is superior to mine. 他对中国历史的了解超过我。

be superior to 还可引申为"不为……所影响"、"拒绝"等意，用于此意时，介词可用 above 替换，如：He's superior to/above deceiving. 他拒绝欺骗。A wise man is superior to flattery. 聪明的人不为奉承所动。

当表示"在……方面胜过……"时，通常使用 be superior in...to...或 be superior to...in...这一结构，如：He felt superior in physics to Jack. 他觉得自己的物理比杰克强。

【词汇】**illusion** *n.* 幻觉

lud-演戏：delude 欺骗，哄骗；delusion 欺骗；错觉；collude 串通，共谋；prelude 序幕，前奏

be/live/labor under the/an illusion/delusion that...误以为：

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

She is under the illusion that she'll get the job. 她存有幻想，以为能够得到那份工作。

5. He is forever talking about the friendly people, the clean atmosphere, the closeness to nature and the gentle pace of living.

【译文】他滔滔不绝地大谈那些友善的人们，洁净的空气，贴近大自然的环境和悠闲的生活节奏。

【用法】这里的副词 forever 与进行时态一同使用，表示出作者不满、不快的感情色彩。always、forever、constantly 和 continually 等副词同进行时态一同使用，除表示某事经常发生外，往往还表示说话人对发生的此类事情的不满、厌烦等。

he is forever talking about sth. 解释为"滔滔不绝"＝ is never tired of/is never fed up with doing sth. 不厌其烦

6. Nothing can be compared, he maintains, with the first cock crow, the twittering of birds at dawn, the sight of the rising sun glinting on the trees and pastures.

【译文】他认为雄鸡初啼，清晨鸟鸣及旭日初生照耀着树林与草原的景色都是无与伦比的。

【用法】(1)the＋动名词＋of

① 当动名词(v-ing)带宾语时前面不能加定冠词(the)，但当它后面有 of 介词修饰时，动名词前必须加定冠词，即"the＋v-ing＋of"：The shouting of the children awakened me from my afternoon nap. 孩子的叫喊声把我从午睡中吵醒了。

② 动名词一般表示一个泛泛的概念，因此它前面不用定冠词：Singing is something he enjoys. 唱歌是他的乐趣所在。

(2)compare...with...将……同……相比。用于两者间的比较，以发现其异同之处，如：

Compare this picture with that one, and you'll see which is better.

把这幅画与那幅进行比较，你就会看出哪一个更好。

Nothing can be compared with... 无与伦比

(3)he maintains 他坚持认为。在句子中作插入成分。

(4)glinting on the trees and pastures 为现在分词短语，在句子中作介词宾语 the rising sun 的补足语。分词短语的这一用法，常用于某些介词宾语之后，如：Here is a book of a boy looking for his mother. 这是一本关于一个男孩寻找妈妈的书。

7. This idyllic pastoral scene is only part of the picture.

【译文】但这种田园诗般的乡村风光仅仅是一个侧面。

【用法】the picture：the general situation concerning sb. /sth. 情形，状况

Just a few years ago the picture was very different. 几年前的情况就大不相同了。

The overall picture for farming is encouraging. 农业的总体形势是令人鼓舞的。

on the other side of the picture 事情的另一面

8. Why people are prepared to tolerate a four hour journey each day for the dubious privilege of living in the country is beyond me.

【译文】人们为什么情愿每天在路上奔波 4 个小时去换取值得怀疑的乡间的优点，我是无法理解的。

【用法】(1)be prepared to do sth.；be willing to do sth. 愿意做某事

(2)beyond 的各种用法：

①beyond 作介词用时，使用最广，常用于下列几种情况：

a. 表示位置，意思是"在……的那一边；在……之外；在更远处"。例如：

Beyond the river stood a power station. 过了这条河就是一个发电站。

The sea is beyond that hill. 大海在山的那边。

b. 表示时间，意为"迟于；超过"。例如：

Some shops keep open beyond midnight. 有些商店营业到半夜以后。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

He never sees beyond the present. 他从未看到将来。

c. 表示范围、水平、限度、能力等，意思是“超出；多于；为……所不能及”。在句中常作表语、定语或状语。

(a)作表语

Your work is beyond all praise. 你的作品叫人赞扬不尽。

(b)作定语

These were matters beyond his understanding as yet. 这些事情他那时候还不了解。

(c)作状语

We succeeded beyond our hopes. 我们获得如此成功，是我们始料不及的。

She was really touched beyond words. 她确实感动得无以言表。

d. 用在否定和疑问句中，意思是“除……之外”。例如：

I know nothing beyond what he told me. 除了他告诉我的以外，我什么都不知道。

Is there anything more you can say beyond that? 除了那点之外，你还能说些什么吗？

e. beyond 有时还可表示年龄或数量，意思是“超过”。例如：

He didn't believe in people living beyond 100. 他不相信人能活到 100 岁以上。

At the meeting there were not beyond 20 people. 到会的不超过 20 人。

②beyond 也常作副词用，主要有下面两种用法：

a. 指时空或正在进行中的活动，意思是“在远处；向远处；更远处”。例如：

If we cross the mountains we may find people living in the valley beyond. 如果我们翻过这些大山，我们就可以发现在远处山谷中生活的人们。

I'll go with you to the bridge, but not a step beyond. 我愿意同你一起走到桥头，但再远一步也不去。

b. 表示外加，意思是“此外；以外”。例如：

He told me nothing beyond. 此外他没告诉我什么。

③beyond 也可作名词用，常有下面三种情况：

a. 指“远处的东西”。例如：

That is a river for small boats expending 30 miles back into the beyond. 那是一条小船能上行 30 英里的河流。

b. 表示超出普通经验范围的某种事物。例如：

What can we poor human beings know of the great beyond?

我们可怜的人类能知道来世的什么情况呢？

c. 表示远处的性质或状态。例如：

His dream of beyond was forgotten in the actual life. 他不着边际的梦想被现实生活所吞没。

9. They could be saved so much misery and expense if they chose to live in the city where they rightly belong.

【译文】如果他们安居于本应居住的城内，他们将免除诸多不便与节约大量开支。

【用法】(1) 本句使用了与现在事实不符的虚拟语气结构，可译作“如果他们选择……，他们本可……”(事实是他们未做此选择，因此只能忍受……)。在动词 save 后面可以使用双宾语结构。将此句改为主动语态后为：To live in the city could save them so much misery and expense. 如文中那样，主动语态句子中的间接宾语 them 提前作了主语，而直接宾语 misery and expense 作为保留宾语留在了句子中。

(2)save sb. sth. 为某人节省某物；save doing sth. 免得做某事

It saved us so much time and effort. 它节省了我们那么多的时间和功夫。

Will you go to the shop for me? It will save me a trip. 你能去一下商店吗？那将省得我跑一趟了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

10. If you can do without the few pastoral pleasures of the country, you will find the city can provide you with the best that life can offer.

【译文】如果你能舍弃这不多的乡间乐趣的话,你会发现城市能为你提供生活中最美好的东西。

【用法】do without 没有……也行(=manage without, go without): People can do without many things such as cars. 人们可以没有很多东西,如汽车。

有时用来表达"用不着"之意,如:

We can do without your advices, thank you. 我们用不着你的意见,多谢了。

I can do without wife. 没有老婆我照活!

比较:make do with 将就,凑和

11. Some of my acquaintances in the country come up to town once or twice a year to visit the theatre as a special treat.

【译文】我在乡间的一些熟人每年进城看一、两次戏,这就是他们特殊的享受了。

【用法】come up to town 中 up 为副词,其反义词为 down。

(1)去城市用 up,去乡下用 down,如:

He went up to the city. 他进城了。

He went down to the country. 他下乡了。

(2)向北用 up,向南用 down,如:

The car went up north to Beijing. 这辆车往北去北京了。

(3)入校用 up,离校用 down,如:

He went up to Nanjing University last year. 他去年进了南京大学。

He was sent down from Harvard. 他被哈佛大学开除了。

【辨析】friend, mate, acquaintance, pal 这些名词都有"朋友"之意。

friend:一般用词,指某人喜爱并乐意与之相交往的人。

mate:最普通用词,既可指好友、同事,又可指合伙人,还可指配偶的一方。

acquaintance:指彼此相识,但交往不甚密切,相互间没有深厚情感的人。

pal:口语用词,指十分要好的朋友。

【联想】treat 的含义用法

(1)……请客:

Let's go to have dinner. It's my treat. 我们去吃饭,我请客。

(2)荣幸,享受:

Having dinner with you is my treat. 和你吃饭是件享受的事。

(3)treat sb. to 宴请某人……:

It's my pleasure to treat you to dinner. 能宴请你是我的荣幸。

(4)treat sb. as 按……对待某人:

I treat him as my best friend. 我以最好的朋友来待他。

(5)treat with sb. 与某人商谈:

I can't bring it to a conclusion. I want to treat with you. 我不能得出结论。我想和你商谈一下。

12. For them this is a major operation which involves considerable planning.

【译文】对他们来说,这是需要周密计划一番的大事。

【用法】(1) major operation、considerable planning 与前句中的 special treat 这些用词均具有夸张的色彩,产生诙谐效果,与结果(即下一句内容)一起,更强调在乡村生活的不便。

(2)involve 这里表示"需要"= require/call for

This job involves great ability and will to travel. 这工作需要有能力,愿意出差的人。

www.TopSage.com

13. As the play draws to its close, they wonder whether they will ever catch that last train home.

【译文】当戏快演完时,他们又为是否能赶上末班火车回家而犯愁。

【用法】draw to a close/an end 临近完结:Her life is drawing to an end.她的生命临近终结。

14. Country people run wild when they go shopping in the city and stagger home loaded with as many of the necessities of life as they can carry.

【译文】乡里人进城采购欣喜若狂,每次回家时都买足了外来商品,直到拿不动方才罢休,连走路都摇摇晃晃的。

【词汇】**stagger** *v.* 蹒跚(喝醉了,上年纪了,累了,手上东西太多了,腿瘸了……都可用这个词。但 hobble 只用在腿瘸。)

15. Nor is the city without its moments of beauty.

【译文】城市亦并非没有优美之处。

【用法】nor 并非,也不。为否定词,用于句首时,句子的主语与谓语动词要倒装。

16. There is something comforting about the warm glow shed by advertisements on cold wet winter nights.

【译文】寒冷潮湿的冬夜里,广告灯箱发出的暖光,会给人某种安慰。

【词汇】**glow** *n.* 发光

flash:很快的,像闪电般。

flicker:不稳定的发光,烟火,比如坏灯泡忽闪忽闪,忽明忽暗。

sparkle:很亮,很耀眼,比如钻石或眼睛。

glow 是无烟的发光发热,比如烟火就不能用它。记两个常用的搭配,稳定的灯光一般用 glow,比如课文中用 glow 修饰霓虹灯光。有时候太阳的发光发热也可以用 glow。

glint 闪闪发光,give out small bright flashes,像太阳照在树叶上,一闪一闪,湖面在阳光照射下的一闪一闪,给人有很多小块的感觉。

glisten:在潮湿的或光洁的物体表面闪闪发光。汗珠闪闪的脸:face glistening with sweat。

17. Few thing could be more impressive than the peace that descends on deserted city streets at weekends when the thousands that travel to work every day are tucked away in their homes in the country.

【译文】周末,当成千上万每日进城上班的人们返回他们的乡间寓所之后,空旷的街上笼罩着一种宁静的气氛,没有什么能比此时的宁静更令人难忘了。

【用法】(1)few things 没有什么东西。few 用于表示基本否定的含义,意即"没有什么能比……更令人难忘"。

(2)两个 that 均为关系代词,和关系副词 when 都用来引导定语从句,分别修饰 peace、weekends 和 the thousands。句子中的 the thousands 指成千上万的人。

(3)few things could be more impressive than 是用一个比较级表示最高级,如:I couldn't feel better. 我感觉好得不能再好了。我感觉太好了。

I can't agree with you more. 我太赞同你了。

【词汇】**descend** *vt.* 下来,下降

descend 是个及物动词,后面直接加名词,反义词 ascend"攀登"。

descend mountain/wall/stairs 下山/从墙上下来/下楼

descend on 一种气氛笼罩,也可以指一样东西从上笼罩下来。

Great sorrow descends on Palestine. 忧伤悲痛笼罩巴勒斯坦。

Darkness descends on the city. 夜色笼罩这个城市。

Heavy fog descends on the city. 大雾笼罩着整个城市。

Heavy smoke descends on the street. 浓烟笼罩着这条街。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

18. It has always been a mystery to me why city dwellers, who appreciate all these things, obstinately pretend that they would prefer to live in the country.

【译文】城里人对这一切心里很明白,却偏要执拗地装出他们喜欢住在乡村的样子,这对我来说一直是个谜。

TopSage.com

【辨析】obstinate,stubborn 这两个形容词均可表示"固执的,顽固的"之意。

obstinate:指无理地固执已见或听不进他人忠告、意见等顽固性格。

stubborn:用于褒义指坚定不移,执意顽强;用于贬义指固执已见,侧重生性固执。

额外收获

双重否定句

在英语中,当两个否定词同时否定一个单词或一个否定词否定另一个否定词时,句子中的否定意义就相互抵消,变为肯定。双重否定的作用大多是为了强调,也有的是为了使语气委婉。现就双重否定的表达形式说明如下:

(1)否定词+否定词缀

We do not infrequently go abroad.

我们经常出国。

Nothing is impossible to a willing mind.

天下无难事,只怕有心人。

What's done can not be undone.

已经做了的事后悔也无用。覆水难收。

Nothing is changeless.

一成不变的东西是没有的。一切都在改变。

No cigarette is completely harmless.

没有什么香烟是完全无害的。

(2)否定词+含有否定意义的词

A、否定词+名词

There is no question that we will finish the work within two days.

我们有把握在两天内完成这项工作。

There is no doubt that we will win the first place.

毫无疑问,我们将赢得第一。

B、否定词+动词

She shouldn't refuse us such a reasonable request.

她不应该拒绝我们所提出的这样一个合理要求。

There is no denying the fact.

事实是不能否认的。

He will never forget the accident.

他决不会忘记那次事故。

C、否定词+形容词

There are few people who don't like to buy things made from plastic because they are less expensive than the same thing made of metal as substitutes.

有很多人喜欢买塑料做的东西作为替代品,因为它们比金属制成的同样的东西价钱便宜。

D、否定词+副词。

One is never too old to learn. 活到老学到老。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

It not seldom happens than what seems to be a difficulty is easily overcome by a young person.

常常发生这样的情况,似乎很难的一件事被一个年轻人轻易地克服了。

E、否定词+介词

No gains without pains.

不劳则不获。

There is no smoke without fire.

无风不起浪。

F、否定词+连词 unless, untill, till

Unless you try your best, you will not get success.

除非你努力,否则不可能成功。

Don't get down until the bus stops.

汽车未停,不要下车。

(3)否定词+否定词

Nothing venture, nothing have.

不入虎穴,焉得虎子。

There is no one who lives in this district who doesn't know him.

凡是住在本区的人都不认识他。

There were few in Beijing who know him as a poet.

凡是北京认识他的人,绝大多数都知道他是个诗人。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 42 Modern cavemen

本节重点和难点

- "it is+被强调部分+that(who)从句"强调句型
- 与过去事实相反的虚拟语气
- 现在分词作状语
- 几种常见的后置定语

本课词汇

caveman ['keivmən] *n.* 穴居人

pot-holing ['pɔthəuliŋ] *n.* 洞窟探险

solitude ['sɔlitju:d] *n.* 孤独

lure [ljuə] *vt.* 引诱，诱惑

【辨析】lure 引诱，诱惑，用欲望、贪婪为诱饵去诱惑对方，用于贬义；allure 用较强的感染力吸引别人做某事；entice 诱使，怂恿。

pot-holer ['pɔthəulə] *n.* 洞穴探险者

rambler ['ræmblə] *n.* 漫步者，散步者

undertaking [ˌʌndə'teikiŋ] *n.* 任务，事业

foresight ['fɔ:sait] *n.* 预见

foretell [fɔ:'tel] *vt.* 预言

Grenoble [grə'nəubl]（地名）格勒诺勃

chasm ['kæzəm] *n.* 陷坑

flaw [flɔ:] *n.* 裂隙，缺点

【词组】find(have) flaw in a jewel(an argument/character)宝石（论点、性格）中有瑕疵

distinguished [dis'tiŋgwiʃt] *adj.* 卓越的

Everest ['evərest]（山名）珠穆朗玛峰

wade [weid] *vi.* 跋涉

waterfall ['wɔ:təfɔ:l] *n.* 瀑布

gear [giə] *n.* 一套用具

inflatable [in'fleitəbl] *adj.* 可充气的

rubble ['rʌbl] *n.* 碎石

insistent [in'sistənt] *adj.* 连续的，不断的

booming ['bu:miŋ] *adj.* 隆隆响的

water-spout *n.* 喷水孔

cleft [kleft] *n.* 裂缝

cavern ['kævən] *n.* 大洞穴

stalagmite ['stæləgmait] *n.* 石笋

stalactite ['stæləktait] *n.* 钟乳石

lime-stone 石灰石

glisten ['glisn] *vi.* 闪光

eerie ['iəri] *adj.* 引起恐惧的，怪诞的，可怕的

dome [dəum] *n.* 圆屋顶，似圆屋顶之物

课文详解

1. Cave exploration, or pot-holing, as it has come to be known, is a relatively new sport.

【译文】洞穴勘查，或洞穴探险正如人们所了解的那样，是一项比较新的运动。

【用法】as it has come to be known 是 as 引导的非限制性定语从句，as 指代"cave exploration is a relatively new sport."这句话。代词 it 指 cave exploration 或 pot-holing。as 除可用来引导时间、原因、让步等状语从句外，还可用来引导方式状语从句，表示"正如"之意，如：As the teacher said, we'd better

www.TopSage.com

大家网

work hard. 正如老师说的，我们应该努力学习。

2. Perhaps it is the desire for solitude or the chance of making an unexpected discovery that lures people down to the depths of the earth.

TopSage.com

【译文】也许是寻求独居或意外发现机会吸引着人们来到地下深处。

【用法】(1)本句中 it is...that...结构为强调句式，由正常结构 The desire for solitude or the chance of making an unexpected discovery lures people...变化而来。被强调的部分是正常结构中的主语，即 the desire for...or the chance of...，lures 为句子中的谓语动词。这种结构常常被译作"正是……"。

(2)solitude *n.* 独处：She longed for peace and solitude. 她渴望安宁和独享清净。

sol-孤单：sole *adj.* 唯一的，仅有的；solely *adv.* 仅，只，单独地；solitary *adj.* 独居的；solo *adj.* 独唱的，独奏的；soloist *n.* 独奏者，独唱者；lure *vt.* 引诱

(3)lure sb. to do sth.

lure sb. +介词短语：

He lures Tom into a lane and robs him. 他把汤姆引到一条小路上洗劫一空。

The kidnappers lure the child away from the parents. 绑架者把孩子从父母身边引开。

lure 作名词：

Few people can resist the lure of fame. 很少人能够抵御出名的诱惑。

3. Precautions of this sort are necessary, for it is impossible to foretell the exact nature of the difficulties which will confront the pot-holer.

【译文】作出这样的准备是必要的，因为无法预见到洞穴探险者究竟会遇到什么性质的困难。

【词汇】**confront** *vt.* 使面临，使面对：

The war confronted the country with hardships. 战争使这个国家面临苦难。

vt. 面对，面临

The difficulties that confront us seem insuperable. 我们所面临的困难似乎是不可克服的。

【辨析】meet，encounter，confront，face，contact 这些动词均有"遇见，会见，碰见"之意。

meet：普通用词，本义指双方或多方从不同方向或相反方向作相对运动，最终相碰(遇)。

encounter：通常指遇到困难或挫折，也指偶然或意外地相遇。

confront：不可避免的，面对面的相遇。也指正视困难或问题。

face：侧重双方静止地面对面，或指充满勇气、信心和决心正视人或事。

contact：多指通过书信、电话或直接会面和别人联系。

4. The cave might never have been discovered had not the entrance been spotted by the distinguished French pot-holer, Berger.

【译文】若不是法国著名洞穴探险家伯杰由于偶然的机会发现这个洞口的话，这个洞也许永远不会为人所知。

【用法】"may/might＋have＋过去分词"表示对过去某事作可能性推测的虚拟语气。

【联想】注意比较本文几个表示"水"的词：waterfall，drop；waterspout，shoot；water，drip。

5. They had to edge their way along this, sometimes wading across shallow streams, or swimming across deep pools.

【译文】他们不得不侧着身子往前走，有时蹚过浅溪，有时游过深潭。

【用法】(1)edge one's way 侧身慢慢向前走，我们还可以说：elbow/shoulder one's way 用肘/肩挤过去，squeeze one's way 挤过去。

(2)sometimes wading across...与 or swimming across...为两个现在分词短语，在句子中作方式状语，修饰 edge。

(3) **edge** *v.* 徐徐移动，斜着身子走：He edged his way towards the front of the crowd. 他侧着身子挤到人群前面。She edged her chair closer to mine. 她把椅子向我挪了一些。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

6. In this part of the cave, they could hear an insistent booming sound which they found was caused by a small water-spout shooting down into a pool from the roof of the cave.

TopSage.com

【译文】在这儿，他们可以听见一种连续不断的轰鸣声。后来他们发现这是由山洞顶部的一个小孔里喷出的水柱跌落到水潭中时发出的声音。

【用法】boom *v.* 隆隆响 *vi.* 迅速增长，趋于繁荣，景气 *n.* 隆隆响；繁荣，景气

同义：thrive，flourish，prosper，develop，expand

例句：Bussiness is booming. 生意日趋繁荣。

额外收获

1. 短语：baby boom

要给大家讲两个反应美国经济和社会变化的俗语。在第二次世界大战期间，美国一共有一千三百万人参军服役。他们当中有许多人由于战争而没有时间完成自己的婚姻大事。因此在1945年战争结束后，他们就纷纷开始组织家庭，生儿育女。从1946年到1964年这将近20年的时间里，美国的人口急剧增加，新生婴儿的人数一共有七千八百万人。美国人为这一代人起了一个名字：baby boomers。

大家都知道，baby是指小孩。boomer是来自boom这个字。boom在这里的意思是：飞速的发展。

例句：

President Bill Clinton's election in 1992 was a transfer of power from the old generation to the new generation——he's the first baby boomer to be elected to the White House.

克林顿总统1992年竞选获胜象征着美国政权从老一代转移到新一代。克林顿是战后人口飞速增长期间出生的那一代人当中第一个当选为总统的。

美国人口在第二次世界大战后的将近20年时间内快速增长。可是自那时以来，美国人口的增长率一直在下降。下面这个例句就告诉我们美国人口下降的原因：

例句：

Population growth has slowed down in the United States since the baby boomers became adults. They're simply not having as many children as their parents did.

自从战后人口剧增期间出生的人长大成人以后，美国的人口增长率已经开始下降。因为他们不像他们的父母那样生很多孩子。

另一个表示人的新词是：yuppy，这是一个缩略词，它是由young urban professional这三个词的第一个字母组成的，也就是yup。后面再加上p和y这两个字母来形成第二个音节。所谓yuppies就是那些很有抱负，受过高等教育，住在大城市有专业性的工作，生活很富裕的年轻人。很多baby boomers后来变成了yuppy。

例句：

I guess you can call me a yuppy. I'm 37 and, make enough money to afford the right things in life. See this gold Rolex watch? I eat in the best restaurants and drink a good wine instead of whiskey. Yes, of course, I drive a BMW.

我想你可以把我看作一个"雅痞"。我今年37，我的收入使我有能力享受生活中美好的东西。这只Rolex金表，看见了吗？我到最好的饭馆吃饭，喝上等的葡萄酒，而不喝威士忌。是的，没错，我开的是德国宝马牌汽车。

例句：

The trouble with most yuppies is that they don't have independent minds of their own. They follow the latest fashions in food, wine, clothes, cars and amusement like a herd of sheep.

多数"雅痞"的问题就是他们没有独立自主的想法。他们在吃、喝、穿着、汽车和娱乐方面老是赶时髦。他们就好像一群羊一样。

2. 几种关系代词不能用which的情况

(1) 当先行词为all，little，much，few，everything，none等不定代词时，关系代词用that而不用which。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

I will tell him all that you told me at the ball. 我要把你在舞会上告诉我的全部告诉他。

There are few books that you can read in this book store. 这个书店里基本没有你能读的书。

(2)当先行词既有人又有物时,关系代词用 that,不用 which。

He asked about the factories and workers that he had visited. 他询问曾经参观过的工厂和工人。

(3)当先行词有形容词最高级修饰时,关系代词用 that,而不用 which。

This is the best novel that I have ever read. 这是我读过的最好的小说。

Guilin is one of the most beautiful cities that I have ever visited. 桂林是我游览过的最美的城市。

(4)当先行词由序数词修饰时,关系代词用 that,不用 which。

The first sight that was caught at the Great Wall has made a lasting impression on him.

看到长城的第一眼给他留下了持久的印象。

(5)当先行词被 the only,the very,the same,the right 等修饰时,关系代词用 that,不用 which。

That is the very thing that we can do. 这就是我们能做的事。

It is the only book that he bought himself. 这就是他自己买的那本书。

(6)当先行词被 all,every,any,much,little,few,no 等修饰时,关系代词用 that,不用 which。

You can take any room that you like. 你可以住任何你喜欢的房间。

There is no clothes that fit you here. 这儿没有适合你的衣服。

(7)当主句是以 which 开头的特殊问句时,定语从句关系代词一般用 that 而不用 which。

Which of the books that had pictures was worth reading? 有图片的哪些书值得读?

(8)在强调句型"It is...that..."中,只用 that,不用 which。

It is in this room that he was born twenty years ago. 这就是二十年前他出生时的房间。

(9)在"such(the same)...as..."句型中,关系代词要用 as,而不用 which。

We need such materials as(not which)can bear high temperature. 我们需要这样能耐高温的材料。

(10)表示"正如……那样","正像……"之意时,用 as,不用 which。

Mary was late again,as had been expected. 正像预料中的那样,玛丽又迟到了。

(11)as 引导的定语从句可以放在主句前面,也可以放在主句后面或主句中间,而由 which 引导的定语从句只能放在主句后面。

As we all know, oceans cover more than 70% of the earth. 众所周知,海洋覆盖了地球 70%以上的面积。

3. 强调句

(1)基本结构剖析

该句型的结构形式是:It + is/was +被强调成分 + that/who +其余部分。如果被强调的成分是人时,可以使用 who 来代替 that,当然任何时候都可以用 that 来引导该句型的其余部分。强调句是由普通陈述句转换而来的。通过这种结构可以强调除谓语动词以外的大多数句子成分。如:

It was monitor that we elected Li Ping in our class. (强调宾语补足语)

It was last night that the terrible traffic accident happened. (强调时间状语)

It was very willingly that he agreed to help me with my poor English. (强调方式状语)

It was because she was ill that she was absent from the meeting. (强调原因状语)

(2)特殊句式中的强调句

①在强调一般疑问句中的某一成分时,主句应用一般疑问句语序。如:

Was it last week that he returned the book to the library?

②如果强调的是特殊疑问句中的疑问词,表示"到底"、"究竟"等语气时,就用如下结构:

"特殊疑问词+ is/was + it + that +该句的其余部分"如:

How is it that you usually go to work?

What is it that the child wants to eat?

When was it that you last saw him playing in the garden?

Where was it that she lost her valuable watch?

www.TopSage.com

Why is it that you want to change your job?

Who is it that will be in charge of your class?

③在表语或宾语从句中也可看到这类强调句,其语序是"……连接词+it + is/was + that/who+其余部分"。如:

The problem is how many people it is that/who this hall can hold.

We wonder which team it is that will win the game.

④在强调"not...until"结构中由 until 所引导的短语(或从句)表示的时间状语时,要用固定的强调句型:"It + is/was + not until...+that+其余部分",that 所引导的从句中的谓语动词用肯定式。如:

His father didn't come back from work until 12 o'clock.

It was not until 12 o'clock last night that his father came home from work.

(3)误区点击

①在强调句子的主语时,强调句的谓语动词要与被强调部分保持一致。如:

It is I who/that am speaking over the radio.

It is Mike who/that is always telling lies.

②当被强调部分是时间或地点状语时,连接词只能用 that,而不能用 when 或 where,一定要与定语从句区别开来。如:

It was this village where I was brought up.(定语从句)

It was in this village that I was brought up.(强调句)

分析:一遇到"It is/was…"(时间或地点名词)结构时,首先要想到该句是否是强调句。由于强调句中的"It is/was...that..."只起强调作用,对原句的结构没有影响,故可把"It is/was...that..."去掉,并且把 is/was 与 that 之间的部分放到原句的相应位置,不添加或删去任何成分,看该句能否成立,如能成立,则为强调句;否则是定语从句。在第一句中去掉 It was 和 where,原句变为:I was brought up this village。由于 this village 这个名词短语不能充当地点状语,此句不能成立,故该句不是强调句。在第二句中去掉 It was 和 that 后,原句变为:I was brought up in this village. 此句成立,故该句是强调句。同样的道理:

It was the year when the school was built.(定语从句)

It was in the year that the school was built.(强调句)

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 43 Fully insured

本节重点和难点

- 动词不定式作后置定语
- it 作形式主语
- 过去分词短语作后置定语
- "such＋名词＋that 从句"和"so＋形容词＋that 从句"结构

本课词汇

insure [in'ʃuə] *vt.* 给……保险

【词组】 insure sb. against sth. 给某人上某种险/insure against sth. 为避免……

fete ['feit] *n.* 节日，游园会

premium ['pri:mjəm] *n.* 保险费

recover [ri'kʌvə] *vt.* 弥补

【辨析】 recover 为一般用语，指某人通过自己的努力或他人的帮助失而复得某物或使某物变成原来的样子；retrieve 与 recover 近似，语气较强，指某人通过自己极大的努力才找回失去的东西；restore 是指某人借助他人的力量使某物回到原来的状态或使某物失而复得。

admittedly [əd'mitidli] *adv.* 公认地，诚然地

purchase ['pə:tʃis] *v.* 购买 *n.* 购买的物品

annual ['ænjuəl] *adj.* 每年的，年度的；一年一次的 *n.* 年报，年刊

teenager ['ti:neidʒə] *n.* (13 至 19 岁的)青少年

capsize ['kæpsaiz] *vt.* 倾覆

shiver ['ʃivə] *vi. n.* 战栗，发抖

【词组】 shiver with 因……而发抖

dive [daiv] *n.* 潜水 *vi.* 潜水，跳水，俯冲

【词组】 make a dive for 向……冲去/take a dive 突然下降；(市价)暴跌

haul [hɔ:l] *vt.* 拖

【词组】 haul at/upon a rope 拖绳子；haul down one's flag (colours)投降；haul logs to the saw-mill 把圆木拖到锯木厂

hawser ['hɔ:zə] *n.* 粗绳；钢缆

rim [rim] *n.* 边缘

winch [wintʃ] *n.* 绞车

agonizing ['ægənaiziŋ] *adj.* 使人苦恼的，提心吊胆的

perch [pə:tʃ] *vt.* 坐在高处，处于高处

precariously [pri'keəriəsli] *adv.* 不安全地

overbalance [ˌəuvə'bæləns] *vt.* 失去平衡

clamp [klæmp] *n.* 钳子，夹子

fasten ['fa:sn] *v.* 使牢固，捆在一起，使…朝向某人；抓紧

【词组】 fasten sth. to/onto 系(捆)某物于…

【辨析】 fasten 把两个或更多的东西缚在一起，或使某物固定在某一位置上；tie 指用线、绳、带等将某物扎紧，也表示打结；bind 指缚、捆、绑、扎得很紧。

vertically ['və:tikəli] *adv.* 垂直地

torrent ['tɔrənt] *n.* 激流，洪流

rebound [ri'baund] *vt.* 弹回

课文详解

1. Fully insured

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【译文】全保险

【联想】保险公司提供的很多险种，都是 fully insured 的，例如车险里的全保险，就是说你的车大至翻车出事，小至磕磕碰碰，保险公司都赔。

2. If, however, you were holding an open air garden party or a fete it would be equally possible to insure yourself in the event of bad weather.

【译文】如果你要举办一次露天游园会或盛宴，为避免碰上不好的天气而遭受损失也同样可以投保。

【用法】in the event of 万一；倘若

＝in the case of

例：In the event of rain, the party will be held indoors. 如果下雨，晚会就在室内举行。

In the event of fire, ring the alarm bell. 万一着火，就按响警铃。

in any event/case 无论如何

3. It is not uncommon to hear that a shipping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship.

【译文】航运公司为打捞沉船而提出索赔，这是常有的事。

【用法】双重否定句

It is not uncommon/unusual to do sth.

It is not uncommon for college students to do a part-time job. 大学生做兼职并不罕见。

It is not unusual for a teacher to work a 70-hour week. 教师每周工作 70 小时并不罕见。

It is not uncommon to hear college students fake their term papers from online resources.

大学生从网上抄论文并非罕见。

4. But the claim made by a local authority to recover the cost of salvaging a sunken pie dish must surely be unique.

【译文】但某地当局为打捞一只焙制馅饼的盘子提出索赔，倒是新鲜事儿。

【用法】(1)make a claim for 要求得到

claim 用法：consider one's claim; have a claim to something; make wild claims about doing something; make no claim to be something

They've made a claim for compensation according to the seriousness of the accident.

他们要求根据事故的严重程度得到赔偿。

(2)But the claim made by a local authority to recover...

相当于 But the claim(which is)made by a local authority...

省略了 which is，made by a local authority 是过去分词短语作定语，修饰 claim。

去掉 made by a local authority，可以看出 to recover...也是修饰 claim 的，是动词不定式。

5. It had been purchased by a local authority so that an enormous pie could be baked for an annual fair.

【译文】某地方当局买下它用来焙制一个巨大的馅饼，为一年一度的交易会助兴。

【词汇】**purchase** *v.* 购买

The slave purchased freedom with their blood. 奴隶贸易自由是以奴隶的鲜血换来的。

I was advised to purchase an economical car. 我被推荐购买一辆经济型车。

They pay sales taxes when they make purchases. 当他们购买时会付营业税。

【辨析】purchase, buy

生活中到处都有买卖的概念，英语中表示“购买”的动词很多：buy，purchase，这两个动词均含“购买”之意。

buy：普通日常用词，既可指日常随意购物也可指大的购买。

purchase：正式用词，指大宗购货或购买重要东西。无感情色彩，强调物品的购得。

【词汇】**annual** *adj.* 一年一度的：an annual meeting/report 年会/年度报告，What's your annual

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

salary? 你的年薪是多少？

annually *adv.* The meeting is held annually. 会议每年举行一次。

biannual *adj.* 一年两次的

anniversary *n.* 周年

6. The pie committee decided that the best way to transport the dish would be by canal, so they insured it for the trip.

【译文】馅饼委员会确定运输这只盘子的最佳方案是通过运河水运。所以，他们对这只盘子的运输安全投了保。

【用法】to transport the dish，动词不定式短语，作定语，修饰 way。by canal 以运河水运方式。代词 it 指 dish，这里的 trip 指 to transport the dish。

【词汇】**insure** *vt.* 给……保险：

Luckily, he had insured himself against long-term illness. 幸运的是，他为自己投保了长期病险。

My house is insured against fire. 我的房子保了火险

an insurance company 一家保险公司＝an insurer

（英国英语常用 ensure）

【辨析】ensure，insure，assure，secure

ensure 暗示一种事实上的保证。

insure 强调为确保某一结果而预先采取某一措施。

assure 指消除别人过多的疑虑及担忧。

secure 指确保不会发生意外或不幸。

7. Shivering in their wet clothes, the teenagers looked on while three men dived repeatedly into the water to locate the dish.

【译文】那些孩子们穿着湿衣服浑身哆嗦，看着 3 个工人轮番潜入水中以确定盘子的位置。

【用法】shivering in their wet clothes，现在分词短语作方式状语，修饰 looked on，意即“那些孩子们穿着湿漉漉的衣服颤抖着在一旁观看”。

【辨析】shiver，quake，tremble，shake

shiver：多指因寒冷或恐怖而身体颤抖。

quake：正式用语，多指整体的摇动，如地震。

tremble：因恐惧、愤怒、激动或寒冷而使身体无法控制的摇动。

shake：普通用语。有短暂而迅速地上下摇动之意。

8. The sides of the dish were so smooth that it was almost impossible to attach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it.

【译文】盘子四边十分光滑，要在盘边拴上绳索或链条而同时又不损坏它是很难办到的。

【辨析】boundary，border，rim 都有“边界”之意

boundary：多指作为界线的标识物。

border：较宽的边缘边界，多指地区或国之间的分界，也可以指物体的边缘等。

rim：边，边缘，多指圆形或者类似圆形的物体边缘。

Pacific Rim 环太平洋地区

9. The dish rose to the surface and was gently drawn towards the canal bank. For one agonizing moment, the dish was perched precariously on the bank of the canal, but it suddenly overbalanced and slid back into the water.

【译文】盘子慢慢浮出水面，被轻轻地拽向运河岸边。在令人忐忑不安的瞬间，盘子晃晃悠悠地上了岸，但它突然失去了平衡，又跌回水中。

【词汇】**agonize** *vi.*（＋over）焦虑不已：I spent days agonizing over whether to take the job or not. 我用了好多天苦苦思考是否接受这个工作。

perch *v.* 使处于某种不稳定的位置上；在高处：The hotel perched precariously on a steep hillside.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

旅店在陡峭的山坡上摇摇欲坠。

She perched(herself)on a tall stool in the bar. 她坐在酒吧里的高脚凳上。

【辨析】agony, anguish, torment, torture, grief, misery, distress, sorrow 这些名词均有"苦恼、痛苦"之意。

agony：侧重指精神或身体痛苦的剧烈程度。

anguish：指精神方面令人难以忍受的极度痛苦；用于身体时，多指局部或暂时的痛苦。

torment：强调烦恼或痛苦的长期性。

torture：语气比 torment 强，指在精神或肉体上受到的折磨所产生的痛苦。

grief：指由某种特殊处境或原因造成的强烈的感情上的苦恼与悲痛。

misery：着重痛苦的可悲状态，多含不幸、可怜或悲哀的意味。

distress：多指因思想上的压力、紧张、恐惧、忧虑等所引起的精神上的痛苦，也可指某种灾难带来的痛苦。

sorrow：语气比 grief 弱，指因不幸、损失或失望等所产生的悲伤。

10. The dish now had to be lifted vertically because one edge was resting against the side of the canal.

【译文】这次，盘子必须垂直吊出水面，因为盘子的一边紧靠着运河河岸。

【用法】rest...against...，把……靠在……，如：Rest the ladder against the wall. The ladder rested against the wall. 把梯子靠在墙上。

Don't rest your head against my arm. 别把你的脑袋靠在我胳膊上。

【辨析】vertical, upright

vertical(*adj.*)：直立的。指与水平面垂直或大致垂直。

upright(*adj.*)：直立的。指与一平面大致垂直，强调非倾斜性。可用于比喻。

Please notice, it is a vertical line. 请注意，这是一条垂直线。

The cliff rose in a vertical wall from the sea. 悬崖峭壁矗立于海面之上。

Several columns among the ruins still stood defiantly upright. 废墟中几根柱子依然顽强竖立着。

He is an upright citizen. 他是一位品格端正的公民。

11. The winch was again put into operation and one of the men started up the truck.

【译文】绞盘机再次启动，一位工人发动了急修车的引擎。

【用法】start up 发动，启动，例：

How do you start up this motor-cycle? 这辆摩托车怎么启动？

【联想】关于汽车驾驶的词汇：

driving license 驾驶执照(美作：driver's license)

highway code 交通法规

traffic sign, road sign 交通标志

to accelerate 加速

to brake 制动，刹车

to engage the clutch 接上离合器

to declutch 分开离合器

to stall 发动机停转

to change gear 变速

to start up 启动

to put one's foot down 加速，踏下加速踏板(美作：to step on the gas)

to overtake 向前行驶

to decelerate 减速

top speed 最高速度

speed limit 速度限制

to park 停车

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

car park 停车场(美作:parking lot)

to switch off the motor 熄火

motorway 高速公路(美作:freeway,super-highway)

toll road 收费公路(美作:turnpike)

traffic jam 路障

12. There was a danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again.

【译文】但是当波浪从河对岸折回来时,就有再次把盘子冲进水里的危险。

【用法】that 为连词,引导同位语从句,作 danger 的同位语。plunging into the water again,现在分词短语,作 send 的宾语 dish 的补足语。

【词汇】**rebound** *vi.* 弹回;(价格)反弹:The ball rebounded from/off the wall. 球从墙上弹回。Share prices rebounded today after last week's falls. 股票价格上周下跌后,今天又回升了。

bound *vi.* 跳跃着跑

bounce *vi.* 弹起,弹跳

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 44 Speed and comfort

本节重点和难点

- 现在分词的各种用法
- 现在分词的复合结构
- 与介词 from 连用表示"阻止某人做某事"的动词
- fairly, quite, rather, pretty 的区别

本课词汇

positively ['pɔzitivli] *adv.* 确实地，绝对地
train compartment 火车车厢
cramped [kræmpt] *adj.* 狭窄的
stuffy ['stʌfi] *adj.* 不通风的，闷热的
take one's mind off 使某人注意力转移开
monotonous [mə'nɔtənəs] *adj.* 单调的
rhythm ['riðəm] *n.* 节奏
click [klik] *vt.* 咔嗒咔嗒地响
lull [lʌl] *vt.* 催眠
snatch [snætʃ] *n.* 断断续续，片段
sleeper ['sli:pə] *n.* 卧铺
fumble ['fʌmbl] *vt.* 摸索
inspection [in'spekʃən] *n.* 检查
inevitably [in'evitəbli] *adv.* 不可避免地
destination [desti'neiʃən] *n.* 目的地，终点
exhaust [ig'zɔ:st] *v.* 使精疲力尽，耗尽 *n.* 排气装置
motorway 快车道；高速公路
spacious ['speiʃəs] *adj.* 宽敞的
seasick ['si:sik] *adj.* 晕船的
intimidate [in'timideit] *vt.* 恐吓
exhilarating [ig'ziləreitiŋ] *adj.* 令人高兴的
settle ['setl] *v.* 定居，平静，放松
【词组】settle down 定居；平静下来
escapist [i'skeipist] *n.* 逃避现实的人，逍遥的人
sip [sip] *vt.* 呷，啜饮
champagne [ʃæm'pein] *n.* 香槟酒
refinement [ri'fainmənt] *n.* 高雅
breathtaking ['breθ,teikiŋ] *adj.* 惊心动魄的
soar [sɔ:] *vt.* 高飞
effortlessly ['efətləsli] *adv.* 不费力地
landscape ['lændskeip] *n.* 风景，景色
fresh [freʃ] *adj.* 精神饱满的
uncrumpled [ʌn'krʌmpld] *adj.* 衣冠整洁的，没有垮下来的

课文详解

1. People travelling long distances frequently have to decide whether they would prefer to go by land, sea, or air.

【译文】出远门的人常常需要决定是走旱路、水路，还是坐飞机。

【用法】pople travelling long distances 出远门的人

people travelling a lot 经常旅游的人

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Hardly anyone can positively enjoy sitting in a train for more than a few hours.

【译文】很少有人能够真正喜欢坐几个小时以上的火车。

【用法】hardly anyone＝almost no one 几乎没有人：Hardly anyone likes him，because he's so bad tempered. 几乎没有人喜欢他，因为他脾气太坏。

Hardly a day goes by without... 几乎天天……

Hardly a day goes by without my thinking of her. 我几乎天天想她。

Hardly a day goes by without reading reports of teenagers committing suicide because of mental or academic pressure. 几乎每天都能读到青少年因为精神或学业压力而自杀的报道。

3. Train compartments soon get cramped and stuffy.

【译文】车厢很快就变得拥挤、闷热。

【用法】get cramped and stuffy 注意：英语中常可以用 get 代替 become 表示"变得"。

4. It is almost impossible to take your mind off the journey.

【译文】想摆脱开旅途的困扰是很难的。

【用法】take one's mind off...不想……，将注意力从……上移开，如：The scenes out of the window took her mind off the class. 窗外的景色使她忘记了上课。

take your mind off sth. 暂时将某事忘记(往往是不愉快的事情)

A trip over weekend may take your mind off the working pressure. 周末出去旅游可以让你暂时忘记工作压力。

【词汇】**cramped** *adj*. 狭小的，狭窄的：a cramped office 狭小的办公室；cramped living conditions 拥挤的居住条件

stuff *n*. 填充物

Time is the stuff of life. 光阴是生命的要素。(不要虚度光阴)

5. Reading is only a partial solution, for the monotonous rhythm of the wheels clicking on the rails soon lulls you to sleep.

【译文】看书只能解决部分问题，因为车轮与铁轨间单调的咔嗒声很快就会送你进入梦乡。

【用法】(1)lull someone to sleep 哄某人入睡，如：She lulls her baby to sleep every night. 她每天晚上哄小孩睡觉。

The movement of the train lulled me to sleep. 火车的奔驰摇我轻轻入睡。

His friendly manner lulled her into a false sense of security.

他友好的举止使她产生了一种虚假的安全感。

lullaby *n*. 摇篮曲：The young mother crooned a lullaby. 轻轻的唱了一支摇篮曲。

6. If the landscape is hidden from view, you can enjoy the extraordinary sight of unbroken cloud plains that stretch out for miles before you,...

【译文】如果这种景色被遮住了，你便可以欣赏一下展现在你面前的，一望数英里、连绵不断的云海……

【用法】view 与 sight 均有"风景"的含义。

【辨析】scenery，scene，view，landscape 这几个名词都有"景色"的意思。

scenery：风景，景色，舞台布景，强调从美的角度看，某个国家或地区的总体外貌。

Each year, we spend our vacation in the mountains and enjoy the scenery.

我们每年到山区度假，并欣赏那里的风景。

scene：指从远处看到的某一具体景色、景象，也可以指人物的活动场面；(犯罪的)地点，现场。

They stood gazing at the happy scene of children playing in the park.

他们站在那里，注视着孩子们在公园里玩耍的场景。

view：指从远处或窗户看到的视野范围内的风景；观点，看法。

Our house has a view of the park.

我们的房子可以看到公园的景色。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

landscape:(自然的)风景,景色;风景画。

The landscape seen from the mountains is green and beautiful.

站在群山之巅看到的是一片美丽的绿色。

7. During the day, sleep comes in snatches.

【译文】白天是忽睡忽醒。

【用法】in snatches 断断续续地。也可使用介词 by 代替 in,如:Since then my sister often sleeps in snatches, waking up in horror suddenly. 自那以后,我姐姐的睡眠经常断断续续,会突然惊恐地醒来。

8. If you are lucky enough to get a sleeper, you spend half the night staring at the small blue light in the ceiling, or fumbling to find your ticket for inspection.

【译文】即使你走运弄到一个卧铺,夜间有一半时间你会盯着车顶那盏小蓝灯而睡不着觉;要不然就为查票摸索你的车票。

【词汇】**fumble** *vi.* 注意这是个不及物动词

fumble in the pocket for sth. 在口袋里翻找某物

9. On motorways you can, at least, travel fairly safely at high speeds, but more often than not, the greater part of the journey is spent on roads with few service stations and too much traffic.

【译文】在公路上还好,你至少能以相当快的速度安全地向前行,但旅行的大部分时间都花在路上,而且只有很少的服务设施,交通也很拥挤。

【用法】more often than not 经常,多半,如:More often than not, he has passed the final exam. 多半,他已经通过了期末考试。

More often than not, he is late for work. 他上班往往迟到。

10. You can stretch your legs on the spacious decks, play games, swim, meet interesting people and enjoy good food—always assuming, of course, that the sea is calm.

【译文】你可以在甲板上伸展四肢、做游戏,还能见到各种有趣的人,能享用各种美味佳肴——当然,这一切只有在大海风平浪静的情况下才有可能。

【用法】**assuming**(that)... 假定……

Assuming that you are right about this, what shall we do?

假定你在这件事上是对的,我们该怎么办?

11. Aeroplanes have the reputation of being dangerous and even hardened travellers are intimidated by them.

【译文】飞机以危险而著称,连老资格的旅行者也怕飞机。

【词汇】**reputation** *n.* 名誉,名声

由文章可见它是中性词。

The city has the reputation for its beauty. (褒义)这个城市以其美丽著称。

The city has the reputation for its storms. (贬义)这个城市以暴风雨著名。

【辨析】imitate, intimate, intimidate

imitate:模仿,仿效;复制,仿造。

The boy imitates his father's way of talking. 那个男孩模仿他父亲说话的样子。

intimate:亲密的;温馨的,舒适的。

We have had an intimate friendship since we were young. 我们自年轻时起就建立了亲密的友谊。

intimidate:恐吓,威胁。

An older boy intimidated the little children when he took their lunch money.

一个年龄大一点的男孩恐吓那些小孩子,抢走了他们的午饭钱。

12. But nothing can match them for speed and comfort.

【译文】但就速度与舒适而言,飞机是无与伦比的。

【用法】(1)match,与……相匹敌(=be equal to),如:If the army and the people are united as one, who in the world can match them? 军民团结如一人,试看天下谁能敌?

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2)for 此处作"就……而言"

This hotel can't be matched for service and food. 这家酒店的服务和饭菜是无与伦比的。

No one can match him in speed and agility. 在速度和灵活方面无人是他的对手。

13. The real escapist can watch a free film show and sip champagne on some services.

【译文】真正会享受的人还可以在某些航班上看一场电影和喝香槟。

【文化背景】香槟并不是一种香的水果——槟子酿成的酒，而是由一个地名而得名的，"香槟"是这个地名的译名。法国东北部有一个省，名叫 Champagne，盛产一种起泡的白葡萄酒，颜色为浅橙黄色或浅灰褐色。后来，凡此地产的这种酒，或外地仿造的这种酒，都称做 champagne，即"香槟"，地名变成了普通名词，第一个字母不再大写。现代英语中，有人还把 champagne 简化为 cham。

whiskey 威士忌

"酒"在不少语言中都被称做"生命之水"。拉丁语把"酒"叫做 aquavitae；瑞典语把"酒"叫做 akvavit；法语把"酒"叫做 eau-de-vie，都是"生命之水"的意思。

"威士忌"这一酒名来自盖尔语 uisge beatha，意思也是"生命之水"。英国国王亨利八世特别喜爱这种酒，便将它推而广之，在广泛的流传中，这种酒的名字也由 uisge beatha 演变成 usquebaugh，又变成 whisheybaugh，whiskbae，最后变成 whiskey 或 whisky。

俄国人则更简单，把他们制的酒叫做 Bogka(伏特加)，意思是对"水"的爱称。

14. You soar effortlessly over high mountains and deep valleys.

【译文】你毫不费劲地飞越高山幽谷。

【词汇】soar *vi.* 高飞，翱翔；猛增：soaring prices (temptures) 飞涨的物价(骤升的温度)；Unemployment has soared to 18%. 失业率猛增到 18%。

rocket *n.* 火箭；*vi.* 猛增：rocketing crime (prices) 迅速增长的犯罪率(价格)；Unemployment has rocketed up again. 失业人数再次猛增。

15. However you decide to spend your time, one thing is certain: you will arrive at your destination fresh and uncrumpled.

【译文】不管你打算如何消磨时间，有件事是可以肯定的，即当你抵达目的地时，你感到精神焕发，毫无倦意。

【用法】(1)however 不管，无论。连接副词，引导让步主语从句。fresh and uncrumpled 精神焕发，毫无倦意。可视为伴随状况状语。冒号后的内容为 one thing 的同位语。

(2)形容词常作伴随、原因、时间、方式等状语，表示句子主语或宾语当时的状态或特征。He went to bed, cold and hungry. 他又冷又饿，上床睡觉。

He ran back home, full of fear. 他充满恐惧地跑回家。

Happy, they went back to work again. 他们高兴地回去重新工作了。

额外收获

浅谈介词的翻译：

英语中大多数介词含义灵活，一词多义多用。除了一些常用短语已有译法外，大量介词需要从其基本意义出发，联系上下文加以灵活处理。下面简明地介绍几种基本译法。

(1)转译：英语中常用介词来表达动作意义。汉译时，可将介词转译成动词。

①在作表语的介词短语中，介词常转译为动词，而连系动词则省略不译。如：This machine is out of repair. 这台机器失修了。

②在作目的或原因状语的介词短语中，介词有时转译成动词。如：

The plane crushed out of control. 这架飞机失去控制而坠毁。

The letter E is commonly used for electromotive force. 通常用 E 这个字母表示电动势。

③在作条件、方式或方法状语的介词短语中，介词有时转译成动词。如：

But even the larger molecules with several hundred atoms are too small to be seen with the best optical microscope. 但是，即使有几百个原子的分子也是太小了，用最好的光学显微镜也看不见它们。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

④介词短语作补足语时，其中介词常转译成动词。如：

Heat sets these particles in random motion. 热量使这些粒子作随机运动。

(2)增译：增词不是无中生有，而是要根据上下文特别是与介词搭配的动词或形容词的含义恰当添加。有不少情况，句中与介词搭配的动词或形容词不出现，如照原文结构无法把意思表达清楚，甚至易于误解时，这就需要增词。如：

That's all there is to it. 那就是与此有关的全部内容。(原句中 to＝related to)

The engineer was taken ill with consumption. It was flour on the lungs, the doctor told him at the time. 这个工程师得了肺病、那是由于面粉对肺部的影响，当时医生是这样对他说的。(on≈effect)

因此，熟悉介词与动词或形容词的习惯搭配是增词并正确理解词义的一种重要手段。

(3)分译：介词短语作定语时，往往是定语从句的一种简略形式。介词短语作状语时，有时是状语从句的简略形式。有些介词短语还是并列句的简略形式。因此汉译时，有的可以拆句分译。

①译成并列分句。

The porous wall acts as a kind of seine for separating molecules.

多孔壁的作用就像一把筛子，它把不同质量的分子分开。

②译成让步分句。

With all its disadvantages this design is considered to be one of the best.

这个设计尽管有种种缺点，仍被认为最佳设计之一。

③译成真实或虚拟条件分句。

Man's warm blood makes it difficult for him to live long in the sea without some kind of warmth.

人的血液是热的，如果得不到一定的热量，人就难以长期在海水中生活。

④译成原因分句。

We cannot see it clearly for the fog.

由于有雾，我们看不清它。

The machine is working none the worse for its long service.

这部机器并不因使用的时间长而性能变差了。

⑤译成目的分句。

This body of knowledge is customarily divided for convenience of study into the classifications: mechanics, heat, light, electricity and sound. 为了便于研究起见，通常将这门学科分为力学、热学、光学、电学和声学。

(4)不译：不译或省略翻译是在确切表达原文内容的前提下使译文简练，合乎汉语规范，决不是任意省略某些介词。

①表示时间或地点的英语介词，译成汉语如出现在句首，大都不译。如：

There are four seasons in a year. 一年有四季。

Many water power stations have been built in the country. 我国已建成许多水电站。

②有些介词如 for(为了)，from(从……)，to(对……)，on(在……时)等，可以不译。如：

The barometer is a good instrument for measuring air pressure. 气压计是测量气压的好仪器。

The air was removed from between the two pipes. 两根管子之间的空气已经抽出。

Answers to questions 2 and 3 may be obtained in the laboratory.

问题 2 和 3 的答案可以在实验室里得到。

Most substances expand on heating and contract on cooling. 大多数物质热胀冷缩。

③表示与主语有关的某一方面、范围或内容的介词有时不译，可把介词的宾语译成汉语主语。如：

Something has gone wrong with the engine. 这台发动机出了毛病。

Gold is similar in color to brass. 金子的颜色和黄铜相似。

It's never occurred to me that bats are really guided by their ears.

我从未想到蝙蝠居然是靠耳朵引路的。

www.TopSage.com

④不少 of 介词短语在句中作定语，其中 of(……的)往往不译。如：

The change of electrical energy into mechanical energy is done in motors. 电能变为机械能是通过电动机实现的。(of 短语和 change 在逻辑上有主谓关系，可译成主谓结构。)

Some of the properties of cathode rays are listed below. 现将阴极射线的一些特性开列如下。(第一个 of 短语和 some 在逻辑上有部分关系，of 不译出。)

(5)反译：在不少情况下，有的介词短语如不从反面着笔，译文就不通，这时必须反译。

①beyond，past，against 等表示超过某限度的能力或反对时，其短语有时用反译法。如：

It is post repair. 这东西无法修补了。

There are some arguments against the possibility of life on this planet.

有些论据不同意这颗行星上可能有生物。

Radio telescopes have been able to probe space beyond the range of ordinary optical telescopes. 射电望远镜已能探测普通光学望远镜达不到的宇宙空间。

②off，from 等表示地点，距离时，有时反译。如：

The boat sank off the coast. 这只船在离海岸不远处沉没了。

③but，except，besides 等表示除去、除外时，有时用反译。

Copper is the best conductor but silver. 铜是仅次于银的最优导体。

The molecular formula，C_6H_{14}，does not show anything except the total number of carbon and hydrogen atoms. 分子式 C_6H_{14} 只用来表示碳原子和氢原子的总数。

④from，in 等介词短语作补足语时，有时用反译。如：

An iron case will keep the Earth's magnetic field away from the compass.

铁箱能使地球磁场影响不了指南针。

The signal was shown about the machine being in order. 信号表明机器没有毛病。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 45 The power of the press

本节重点和难点

- 介词短语作后置定语
- 与过去事实相反的虚拟语气
- 形容词作状语
- 可以省略关系代词的定语从句

本课词汇

democratic [ˌdeməˈkrætik] *adj.* 民主的,民主主义的

restrict [riˈstrikt] *v.* 限制,约束

abuse [əˈbjuːz] *vt.* 滥用,妄用;伤害,虐待;辱骂

【词组】an abuse of trust 辜负别人的信任/a stream of abuse 破口大骂

contention [kənˈtenʃən] *n.* 论点

untold [ʌnˈtəuld] *adj.* 数不尽的

South Dakota [sauθ dəˈkəutə] (地名)南达科他州

perpetual [pəˈpetjuəl] *adj.* 永久的

quintuplet [ˈkwintjuplit] *n.* 五胞胎

obscurity [əbˈskjuəriti] *n.* 默默无闻

radically [ˈrædikəli] *adv.* 根本地,彻底地

exclusive [iksˈkluːsiv] *adj.* 独占的,占有的;除外的,排他的

【词组】exclusive of 不计……在内/exclusive to 为……所独享,独有

nursery [ˈnəːsəri] *n.* 育婴室

commercialization [kəməːʃəlaiˈzeiʃən] *n.* 商品化

commodity [kəˈmɔditi] *n.* 商品

课文详解

1. In democratic countries any efforts to restrict the freedom of the press are rightly condemned.

【译文】在民主国家里,任何限制新闻自由的企图都理所当然地受到谴责。

【用法】(1)restrict 与 limit 均有"限制"的意思。

① restrict 与 limit 极相似,通常可互换使用。

② limit,"限制",把某物限制在一定数量或范围内。

(2)to restrict...press,动词不定式短语作定语,修饰 any efforts,即"任何限制新闻自由的企图"。

【词汇】**restrict** *vt.* 限制;把……限制在……

In Britain speed is restricted to 30 mph in towns. 在英国,城里的车速限于每小时 30 英里。

str-拉紧;restriction 限制;restrictive 限制的;strict 严格的;constrict 收紧;district 地区;string 弦,细绳;stringent 严格的;straight 直的;strangle 勒死;stress 强调;distress 使痛苦,痛苦;distressful 痛苦的,贫穷的;stretch 伸展

【辨析】limit,confine,restrict 这些动词均有"限制,限定"之意。

limit:一般指事先确定空间、时间或数量的极限,一旦超越限度,就会造成不良结果。当然也可指不事先规定,自然的或固有的界限。

confine:侧重施加不可逾越的限制,有时暗示束缚、囚禁。

restrict:指把某人或物限制在一定范围之内。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. However, this freedom can easily be abused.

【译文】然而，这种自由很容易被滥用。

【联想】abuse fund/money/power/privilege

3. Acting on the contention that facts are sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering to individuals by publishing details about their private lives.

【译文】记者按事实至上的论点行事，发表有关别人私生活的细节，有时会给当事人造成极大的痛苦。

【用法】act on/upon 按照……行动，行事

on=according to

acting on a sudden impulse 冲动行事

4. Newspapers and magazines offered the family huge sums for the exclusive rights to publish stories and photographs.

【译文】报纸、杂志出高价向他们购买文字、图片的独家报道权。

【用法】sum 总数，总和，一笔钱(如文中之意)。使用该词时更着重于具体数量，而不像 amount 一词那样泛指"大量"。通常用 large、huge、vast 等词形容其量的大，用 small、trivial 等词形容其量的小。

【词汇】**exclusive** *adj.* 独有的：exclusive rights to televise the World Cup 世界杯赛的独家电视转播权

The reporter managed to get an exclusive interview with the Prime Minister. 这位记者对首相进行了独家采访。The bathroom is for the President's exclusive use. 这间浴室是总统专用的。

clud-, clus-关：exclude 把……排除在外；excluding 不包括；include 包括；inclusive 包括的；including 包括

5. The story of a poor family that acquired fame and fortune overnight, dramatically illustrates the power of the press.

【译文】一户穷人一夜之间出名发财的故事戏剧性地说明了新闻报道的威力。

【用法】(1)overnight 为副词，意为"一夜之间，突然间"。

(2)fame and fortune 押头韵

6. As the parents had five children, life was a perpetual against poverty.

【译文】家中已有 5 个孩子，全家人常年在贫困中挣扎。

【用法】(1)as 由于，因为。从属连词，引导一个原因状语从句。

(2)life was a perpetual struggle against poverty 生活成为了同贫困进行的无休止的斗争。句中将 life 比作 a perpetual struggle against poverty，是暗喻手法。

Life is perpetual struggle against poverty. 来代替 The family struggle against poverty perpetually. (把中文动词"挣扎"——struggle 转化成名词 struggle)

【写作】汉语倾向于用动词引领句意，英语则倾向于用介词和名词表达。因此，在英汉互译中考虑这两个特点，决不能"对号入座"，硬译照搬，使译文不仅要符合两种语言习惯，而且尽可能使句子简洁明了。所以，培养对英文中名词和介词的敏感度对摆脱中式英文很关键。

讲到有人在敲门，一般同学会直译成 Somebody is knocking on the door. 这句话虽然没有语法错误，但中文味道太浓，显得平淡无奇。而本册书中一句话会让你眼睛一亮：There is a knock on the door. 这句话读起来更加自然流畅，纯正地道，更加符合英语思维。

类似的名词活用还有：

叔叔阿姨也给孩子们提供一些额外收入。Aunts and uncles are a source of extra income. 来代替 Aunts and uncles provide some extra income. (把中文动词"提供"—provide 转化成名词 source)

从上述例子可以看出，妙用名词，使句子显得生动、流畅而简洁，富有表现力.

7. They would have continued to struggle against economic odds and would have lived in obscurity.

【译文】这家人会继续为克服经济上的拮据而奋斗，并默默无闻地活下去。

【用法】(1)本句中 would have continued 与 would have lived 同上句中的 would have passed 一样，均为虚拟语气，用来表示与过去事实不符的假设情况。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2)in obscurity 默默无闻地；在暗处，如：He always worked in obscurity. 他总是默默无闻地工作。

【词汇】odds *n.* 不利条件，逆境：Against all the odds he recovered from his illness. 非常出人意料，他的病竟然好了。

8. Gifts poured in not only from unknown people, but from baby food and soap manufacturers who wished to advertise their products.

【译文】不但素昧平生的人寄来了大量的礼物，而且婴儿食品、婴儿肥皂制造厂商为了替自己产品做广告也寄来了大量的礼物。

【用法】pour in/flood in 大量涌人

orders for goods poured in 订货单不断涌来

9. Reporters kept pressing for interviews so lawyers had to be employed to act as spokesmen for the family at press conferences.

【译文】由于记者们纷纷要求会见，他们不得不请了律师充当他们家的发言人举行记者招待会。

【用法】(1)press for 强调反复，而且有点强行

press for debt 逼债

(2)The press conference 记者招待会

各种"集会"：

(会议)meeting：A meeting can be large or small，long or shirt. It is usually planned ahead of time. 会议可大可小，可长可短，通常是预先计划好的。

(年会)convention：An annual meeting of an organization or political group. 组织或政治团体每年一次的会议。

(讨论会)conference：A meeting at which two or more people have a formal discussion and exchange views on a subject. 两个或以上的人组成的正式的对于某主题的议论或交换观点的会议。

(代表大会)congress：A formal meeting of representatives of societies or countries to exchange information and opinion. 社会或国家代表们交换信息和观点的正式会议。

(集会)assembly：A group of people who have gathered together for a meeting for the purpose of being informed，being entertained or making group decisions. 由于信息、娱乐或团体决策的目的而聚在一起开会的一伙人。

(协商会)council：A meeting of a small group of people chosen from a large group to serve as advisers or consultants. 由一个大的团体中选出的一个小团体人充当顾问或咨询顾问的会议。

10. While the five babies were still quietly sleeping in oxygen tents in a hospital nursery, their parents were paying the price for fame.

【译文】眼下，五胞胎还静静地躺在医院婴儿室的氧气帐里，他们的父母却为这名声付出了代价，他们再也无法过正常的生活。

【用法】pay the price for sth. 为某事付出代价

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 46 Do it yourself

本节重点和难点

- 主语补足语
- 形容词作状语
- "so＋形容词＋as to do"结构
- 表语从句

本课词汇

plead [pli:d] v. 恳求，请求；为……辩护；提出……为理由

【词组】plead to do sth. 恳求做/plead with sb. to do sth. 恳求某人做/plead for sb. 为某人辩护/plead sth. 为……辩护，以……为借口

ignorance ['ignərəns] n. 无知，愚昧，不了解；不知道

publication [ˌpʌbli'keiʃən] n. 出版物

newlywed ['nju:liwed] n. 新婚夫妇

gaily ['geili] adv. 快乐地

leisure ['leʒə] n. 空暇，闲暇，悠闲，安逸

【词组】at leisure 有空；闲着无事；从从容容地/at one's leisure 当某人空闲的时候；在某人方便时

keen [ki:n] adj. 热心的，渴望的

【词组】be keen about 喜爱，对……着迷/be keen of 在(五官)方面敏锐/be keen on 喜欢，渴望，爱好

【用法】keen 有三个常用的句型：keen ＋on＋动名词；keen＋动词不定式；keen＋从句。

advisory [əd'vaizəri] adj. 咨询的

novice ['nɔvis] n. 新手，初学者

consumer [kən'sju:mə] n. 消费者

assemble [ə'sembl] v. 集合，集会；组装，装配

outlet ['autlet] n. 发泄的出路，出口

creative [kri'eitiv] adj. 有创造力的

handyman ['hændimən] n. 手巧的人

resourceful [ri'sɔ:sful] adj. 足智多谋的

fuse [fju:z] vt. 保险丝熔断

rickety ['rikiti] adj. 摇晃的

clog [klɔg] vt. 堵塞

delusion [di'lu:ʒən] n. 错觉，幻觉

lawnmower 割草机

adjustment [ə'dʒʌstmənt] n. 调整

screw [skru:] n. 螺钉，螺丝 v. 拧，拧紧

【词组】screw down 拧紧；(比喻)约束；迫使降价/screw out (of) 勒索；逼出/screw up 拧紧；钉上；扭曲(脸色)；把……揉成一团；使紧张；弄糟

dismantle [dis'mæntl] vt. 拆卸

chunk [tʃʌŋk] n. 块

snap [snæp] vt. 突然折断

insurmountable [insə'mauntəbl] adj. 难以克服的

jigsaw puzzle ['dʒigsɔ: 'pʌzl] n. 拼图(玩具)

nag [næg] vt. 唠叨

rust [rʌst] vt. 生锈

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. So great is our passion for doing things for ourselves, that we are becoming increasingly less dependent on specialized labour.

【译文】现在我们自己动手做事的热情很高，结果对于专业工人的依赖越来越少了。

【用法】(1)So great is our passion... 为倒装结构，其正常语序为 Our passion for doing things for ourselves is so great...以副词 so 开头的句子通常使用倒装结构。这里将 so great 提前是为了对 great 强调。全句使用的基本句型为 so...that...太……以至于，引导结果状语从句。

在"so＋形容词...that 分句"结构中，如将"so＋形容词"置于句首以示强调时，其后的系动词 be 则要移到主语前面，形成主谓的完全倒装。如：

So moved was she that she could not say a word.

她感动得一句话也说不出来。

在"so＋副词...that 分句"结构中，如将"so＋副词"置于句首以示强调时，其后的主谓作部分倒装。如：

So loudly did he speak that even the people in the next room could hear him. 他的声音那么大，连隔壁屋子里的人都听得见。

So fast does light travel that it is difficult for us to imagine its speed. 光速如此之快，我们很难想象。

(2)become/be dependent on 依赖，依靠，如：In China farming is no longer entirely dependent on the weather. 在中国种田不再完全靠天了。

2. No one can plead ignorance of a subject any longer, for there are countless do-it-yourself publications.

【译文】由于出版了不计其数的教人自己动手做事的书报杂志，没有人再能说对某事一无所知。

【用法】plead 乞求；辩解，以……理由，提出……为借口：

He pleaded family problems for his lack of concentration. 他解释说他注意力分散是因为有家庭问题。

3. Armed with the right tools and materials, the newlyweds gaily embark on the task of decorating their own homes.

【译文】有了合适的工具和材料，新婚夫妇高高兴兴地开始布置新房。

【用法】(1)armed with... materials，过去分词短语，在句中作方式状语，修饰 embark。be armed with...，装备(to be equipped with)，如：They are armed with the modern weapons. 他们配有先进的武器。

(2)embark on 开始从事，如：We will embark on a new undertaking. 我们将着手一项新工作。embark on (upon) 开始，着手，从事：She is about to embark on a diplomatic career. 她将从事外交生涯。

4. Some really keen enthusiasts go so far as to build their own computers.

【译文】有些热衷于自己动手的人甚至自己组装电脑。

【用法】so...as to 与 so as to 的区别：

① so...as to 表示"如此……以致"，与 so...that 意思相同。

② so as to 表示"为了，为的是"，与 in order to 意思相同：

go so far as to do sth. 竟到了……的程度＝go to the length of doing sth.

She went so far as to say that I had cheated her out of her money. 她竟然说我骗了她的钱。

【词汇】keen *adj*. 热心的，渴望的

(1) eager anxious：be keen to do

(2) intense：keen pain

5. Such things provide an excellent outlet for pent up creative energy, but unfortunately not all of us are born handymen.

【译文】这些东西为人们潜在的创造力提供了一个绝妙的用武之地。但不幸的是，我们并非人人都是能工巧匠。

【用法】(1)pent up 被抑制的(repressed)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(2)not all of us

部分否定句：

当句子中出现表示全部概念的词，如 all(全体)，both(两者)，every(每个)，everybody(每个人)，everything(每件事)，everywhere(每个地方)，always(常常)，altogether(全体)，entirely(全部)，wholly(全部)等，如果用 not 否定这些词就使句子产生部分否定，表示"不都……""并非……都"的部分否定意义。

Not everyone likes his novel. 并非人人都喜欢他的小说。

Both methods are not practical. 并非两种方法都可行。

Such a thing is not found everywhere. 这样的事情并非所有的地方都会出现。

A man of learning is not always a man of wisdom. 有学问的人并不一定都是有智慧的人。

All that glitters is not gold. 闪光的东西未必都是金子。

Mary is not always happy. 玛丽并非总是愉快的。

I don't wholly agree. 我并不完全同意。

注意：all 等词加上含否定意义的单词(谓语部分没有 not)表示全部否定。

All germs are invisible to the naked eye. 一切细菌都是肉眼看不见的。

We all dislike him. 我们都不喜欢他。

(3)be born 生来就是，命中注定(be destined to)，如：

He was born a talent. 他生来是个天才。

天生丽质：She was born beautiful.

天生如此：I was born this way/like that.

天生的演员：She is a born actress.

天生的赢家：He is a born winner.

Some people believe interpreters are born not made.

有人认为优秀的口译是天生的不是造就的。

天生一对：They are made for each other.

He is not made for it/he is not cut out for it. 他不是做这事的料子。

Come on, don't give me that, I wasn't born yesterday. 我不是三岁小孩(你别想骗我。)。

first-born 第一胎；French-born 法国出生的

【词汇】**outlet** *n.* 用武之地，感情的宣泄口

provide an excellent outlet for sth. 为……提供一个很好的用武之地

outlay 开支，花费；outlook 前景，远景；output 产量；outset 开端，开头；outcome 后果，结果；outbreak(坏事的)爆发，突发；inlet 水(或其他液体)的入口；income 收入；input 输入，投入；intake 摄入量；inflow 流入，流入量

【联想】handyman 和 craftsman 的区别：前者指家里简单的修修补补；后者指真的有一门手艺的手艺人。

6. Some wives tend to believe that their husbands are infinitely resourceful and can fix anything.

【译文】妻子常常认为她们的丈夫无比聪明能干。

【用法】tend to do sth. ; be likely to do sth. 倾向于做某事，常常做某事

It tends to rain a lot here in the spring. 春季这里经常下雨。

He tends to get angry when people disagree with him. 人们不同意他的观点时，他就会生气。

7. When lights fuse, furniture gets rickety, pipes get clogged, or vacuum cleaners fail to operate, wives automatically assume that their husbands will somehow put things right.

【译文】每当电灯保险丝烧断、家具榫头松动、管道堵塞、吸尘器出故障时，有些妻子认为丈夫总有办法。

【词汇】**fuse** *vt.* 保险丝熔断

【联想】defuse 缓和，平息：to defuse a bomb 拆除炸弹的引信；to defuse racial tension in the

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

community 缓和这个社区的种族间的紧张局势；to defuse a dangerous situation 缓和危险局面

8. The worst thing about the do-it-yourself game is that sometimes husbands live under the delusion that they can do anything even when they have been repeatedly proved wrong.

【译文】自己动手的例子中最糟糕的是，有时甚至是男人尽管接连失败却还误以为自己什么都行。

【用法】live/be/labour under a delusion 抱错误的想法，痴心妄想，如：

He is under a delusion in this thing. 他对这件事有错误的想法。

9. It had broken down the previous summer, and though I promised to repair it, I had never got round to it.

【译文】那台割草机去年夏天就坏了，尽管我答应修，但一直没抽出时间。

【用法】get round to doing＝spare time for sth.

10. I would not hear of the suggestion and said that I would fix it myself.

【译文】我不愿听妻子的建议，说我自己会修。

【用法】not hear of：（出于善意而）不允许做某事：She wanted to walk home but I wouldn't hear of it. 她想步行回家，但我就是不同意。

11. As far as I could see, it needed only a minor adjustment: a turn of a screw here, a little tightening up there, a drop of oil and it would be as good as new.

【译文】在我看来，只需稍加调整即可，这儿紧紧螺丝，那儿固定一下，再加几滴油，它就会像新的一样了。

【用法】（1）句中 a turn of...、a little tightening...、a drop of... 作 adjustment 的同位语，说明 adjustment 所包含的内容。

（2）as good as（＝almost，actually），几乎，实际上，如：

The work is as good as perfect. 这工作几乎是完美的。

12. After buying a new chain I was faced with the insurmountable task of putting the confusing jigsaw puzzle together again.

【译文】我买来一根新链条后，面临的就是如何把这些令人眼花缭乱的拼板重新组装起来。

【用法】句中使用 insurmountable 和 confusing 两个较大的分词分别修饰 task 和 jigsaw puzzle，具有夸张意味，并以暗喻手法，将 lawnmower 比作 jigsaw puzzle（拼图游戏，七巧板）更有利于产生喜剧效果。

【词汇】insurmountable *adj.* 不可克服的，难以对付的；surmountable *adj.* 可以克服的；surmount *vt.* 克服；在……顶上；mount *vt.* 登上，骑上，跨上，爬上

insurmountable problems/obstacles 难以解决的问题/不可克服的障碍

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 47 Too high a price?

本节重点和难点

- 省略关系代词的定语从句
- 现在分词和过去分词作后置定语
- it 作形式主语
- 介词短语作名词的后置定语

本课词汇

overpopulated [ˌəuvəˈpɔpjuˈleitid] *adj.* 人口过剩的，人口过密的

over-industrialized 过度工业化的

sheer [ʃiə] *adj.* 纯粹的，十足的，完全的；极薄的，透明的；陡峭的，垂直的 *adv.* 安全地，彻底地；垂直地

worldwide [ˈwəːldwaid] *adj.* 全世界的

overwhelm [ˌəuvəˈwelm] *vt.* 打翻，倾覆，淹没（尤指水）；击败，压倒；制服，控制；使不安，使窘困

pollute [pəˈluːt] *vt.* 弄脏，污染；玷污，败坏

pesticide [ˈpestisaid] *n.* 杀虫剂

fertilizer [ˈfəːtilaizə] *n.* 肥料，受精媒介物

salmonella [ˌsælməˈnelə] *n.* 沙门氏菌

listeria [lisˈtiəriə] *n.* 利斯特杆菌

vegetarian [ˌvedʒiˈtɛəriən] *n.* 吃素的人，素食主义者 *adj.* 素食（主义）的；（全是）蔬菜的，素菜的

organically-grown 有机培植的

insidious [inˈsidiəs] *adj.* 隐伏的；狡诈的

urban [ˈəːbən] *adj.* 城市的，都市的

burglar [ˈbəːglə] *n.* 夜盗，窃贼

burgle [ˈbəːgl] *vt.* 破门盗窃（某处），入户盗窃

scream [skriːm] *vt.* 尖叫，尖叫着说出，尖叫着发出 *vi.*（机器、汽笛等）发出尖锐刺耳的声音，（风）呼啸；强烈要求，大叫大嚷着抗议 *n.* 尖叫，尖锐刺耳的声音；引人捧腹大笑的人（事）

【辨析】scream 指由于痛苦、恐惧、兴奋而发出的尖叫或尖笑声，并持续一段时间。screech 指人发出尖叫声，或机器发出的粗糙而又刺耳的声音，shriek 指因生气、激动、害怕而尖叫或尖声呼号。如：She was screaming hysterically。她歇斯底里地尖叫着。The car came to a screeching halt. 汽车嘎的一声突然停住了。"Help!" she shrieked. "救命！"她尖声呼叫。

profound [prəˈfaund] *adj.* 深奥的，意义深远的；渊博的，造诣深的；深邃的，深厚的，深切的

irritation [iriˈteiʃən] *n.* 刺激，烦恼，刺激物

incessantly [inˈsesntli] *adv.* 不间断地

whine [wain] *n.* 哀鸣声，呜呜声 *vi.* 发哀鸣声，发呜呜声；哀诉，抱怨

helicopter [ˈhelikɔptə] *n.* 直升飞机 *v.* 乘直升飞机

maximum [ˈmæksiməm] *n.* 最大量，最大数，最大限度，顶点，极限，极大（值）*adj.* 最大的，最多的，最高的，顶点的

technology [tekˈnɔlədʒi] *n.* 技术，工艺（学）；工业技术；（总称）术语

contribution [ˈkɔntriˈbjuːʃən] *n.* 捐款，捐献，捐助，贡献物，捐献物；投稿，投寄的来稿

mobile [ˈməubail, ˈməubi(ː)l] *adj.* 运动的，活动的，可动的；流动的，机动的，能快速移动的；易变的，多变的，灵活的 *n.* 运动物体，活动装置；动态雕刻；[美国英语]相当于 automobile

snore [snɔː] *vi.* 打呼噜，打鼾；鼾睡 *n.* 鼾声；

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

呼噜

offender [ə'fendə] *n.* 触犯(法律的,规矩的)人;冒犯人的人、令人生气的人

staggering ['stægəriŋ] *adj.* 蹒跚的,犹豫的

trumpet ['trʌmpit] *n.* 喇叭,小号;(象等发出的)喇叭似的叫声 *vi.* 吹喇叭,吹号,吹嘘

【词组】blow one's own trumpet 自吹自擂

partner ['pɑːtnə] *n.* 伙伴,同伴,舞伴,搭档;合伙人;配偶(指夫或妻)

课文详解

1. Pollution is the price we pay for an overpopulated, overindustrialized planet.

【译文】污染是我们为这个人口过密、过度工业化的星球所付出的代价。

【用法】句中 we pay for 为定语从句。由于 price 在此从句中起宾语作用,关系代词 which/that 因此可以省略。

【词汇】**overpopulated** 人口过剩的;overindustralized 过度工业化的;overestimate 过高估计;oversleep 睡过头;overdo 做得过火,过多使用;overstaffed 人浮于事的;overcrowded 过于拥挤的;overjoyed 欣喜若狂的

2. We keep trying all four methods, but the sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us.

【译文】我们一直在试这4种方式,但是,我们在世界范围内仅产生的垃圾的量就有把我们覆盖的危险。

【用法】sheer,绝对的,纯粹的,多用来修饰贬义名词,偶尔也修饰其他名词。

【词汇】**rubbish** *n.* 垃圾,废物。愚蠢无用的话语和思想。

garbage *n.* 废物。尤指家庭垃圾,比如厨房丢弃的剩余物。

junk *n.* 废品。表示质量很差,价值不高或没有价值的东西,junk food 指"味道好而无多少营养价值的食物"

worldwide 在全世界,世界性的;nationwide 全国性的;citywide 全市性的;provincewide 全省性的;campuswide 全校性的

overwhelm *vt.* 征服;be overwhelmed by excitement/anger

overwhelming *adj.* 巨大的,无法抗拒的:The overwhelming majority of those present were in favor of the plan. 绝大多数与会者都赞同这个建议。They voted overwhelmingly against the proposal. 他们投票强烈反对这个提议。

volume *n.* 容量,卷

3. The use of pesticides and fertilizers produces cheap grain and vegetables.

【译文】使用杀虫剂和化肥生产出了廉价的谷物和蔬菜。

【用法】cid,cis=cut,kill 切,杀:suicide 自杀

【文化背景】grain product 谷类产品

cereal product 谷类产品

cereal 常用作复数,指谷类或加工过的谷类食物,如"麦片"等。"中国粮油食品进出口公司"中的"粮"字译成英文时用的就是 cereal 这个词(China National Cereals, Oils and Foodstuffs Import and Export Corporation)。

sandwich 三明治

hamburger 汉堡包

hamburger 是一种用碎牛肉煎成的圆饼,也译成"汉堡牛排",现多指"汉堡式夹牛肉饼的面包"。

本来 hamburger 是德国著名港市 Hamburg(汉堡)的形容词,指"汉堡牛排"时是 hamburger stead 的简化。以-burger 混生(拼缀)的新词接连不断地涌现,尤其是70年代以来,更是层出不穷。例如:baconburger(腊肉夹心面包),bearburger(熊肉夹心面包),turtleburger(甲鱼肉馅面包),nutburger(以坚果佐食的肉饼),cheeseburger(放有干酪的肉饼),oliveburger(以橄榄佐食的肉饼),pizzaburger(意大

www.TopSage.com

利肉饼),kirschburger(樱桃酒心面包),raisinburger(葡萄干夹心面包),superburger(超级夹肉面包),doubleburger(双层夹肉面包),basketburger(野餐夹肉面包),huskyburger(健壮夹肉面包),peachyburger(美好夹肉面包)等。

4. And if you think you'll abandon meat and become a vegetarian, you have the choice of very expensive organically-grown vegetables or a steady diet of pesticides every time you think you're eating fresh salads and vegetables or just having an innocent glass of water.

【译文】如果你想放弃肉类而变成一位素食者,那么你可以两者择一:或是选用价格昂贵、有机培植的蔬菜,或是在当你认为在享用新鲜色拉油和新鲜蔬菜或饮用一杯无害的水的时候,实际上每次都在吃进杀虫剂!

【用法】have the choice of A or B 在 A 与 B 中任选一样

You may have the choice of sweets and chocolates.

You may either choose sweets or chocolates.

你可以选择糖或巧克力。

5. However, there is an even more insidious kind of pollution that particularly affects urban areas and invades our daily lives, and that is noise.

【译文】但是,还有一种更加隐蔽有害的污染,它专门影响城镇地区,侵袭我们的日常生活,那就是噪音。

【辨析】aggression,invasion,assault,attack,offensive 这些名词均有"进攻、侵略"之意。

aggression:词义宽泛,既可指武装入侵别国领土,又可指文化、经济等方面的侵略。侧重敌意行动和征服的企图。

invasion:多指具体的侵入或侵犯别国领土,也可用于指抽象事件。

assault:主要指突然而猛烈的进攻。

attack:普通用词,含义广,指事先不发警告,主动地向对方发起武力进攻或对言论等进行抨击。

offensive:多指进攻的态势,常指大规模的协同军事行动。

6. Burglar alarms going off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually assist burglars to burgle.

【译文】防盗警报器在白天和黑夜的任何时候都会响起来,它的作用只是骚扰过路行人,而实际上却帮助窃贼入室行窃。

【用法】go off 猛地响起(bomb,alarm,horn)

7. Car alarms constantly scream at us in the street and are a source of profound irritation.

【译文】在街上,汽车的防盗警报不断对我们吼叫,这是人们极度烦躁的一个原因。

【词汇】profound *adj*. 极度的,深切的;深奥的,见解深刻的:

The incident made a profound impression on me. 这次事件给我留下了深刻的印象。

a profound thinker 一个思想深刻的思想家

8. A recent survey of the effects of noise revealed (surprisingly?) That dogs barking incessantly in the night rated the highest form of noise pollution on a scale ranging from 1 to 7.

【译文】最近一个有关噪音的作用的调查(令人吃惊地)指出,夜间连续不断的狗叫声,在一个从1级至7级的刻度表上应列为最严重的噪音污染。

【用法】sth. rate the highest on a scale

rate=rank 排名,名列:

Shanghai rates(as)the biggest trade center in China. 上海是中国最大的贸易中心。

9. Lawn mowers whining on a summer's day, late-night parties in apartment blocks, noisy neighbours, vehicles of all kinds, especially large container trucks thundering through quiet villages, planes and helicopters flying overhead, large radios carried round in public places and played at maximum volume.

【译文】夏天呜呜作响的割草机,公寓楼里深夜聚会的喧哗声,大声吵闹的邻居,各式各样的车辆,特别是穿越寂静村庄的集装箱卡车,从头顶飞过的飞机和直升机,被带到公共场所、音量开到最大的大功率收音机。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】从 lawn mowers 至 maximum volume 中包含 6 个短语，并非完整的句子。整个部分作前句中 a large number of sources of noise(大量噪音源)的同位语，对其进行具体说明。其中 especially large container trucks thundering through quiet villages 作 vehicles of all kinds 的同位语，对其进行追加说明。短语中分别使用 whining...、thundering...、flying...、carried...and played...等，这些现在分词和过去分词短语均作定语，分别修饰其前的 mowers，trucks，planes and helicopters 和 radios。

【词汇】**maximum** *adj.* 最大极限的；*n.* 最大量

He smokes a maximum of ten cigarettes a day. 他一天最多抽 10 支香烟。

maximize *vt.* 使……最大化

minimum *adj. n.* 最小量(的)

minimize *vt.* 使……最小化

10. New technology has also made its own contribution to noise.

【译文】新技术也为噪音作出了它的贡献。

【用法】make contribution to 对……做出贡献，对……发挥作用，如：They make greater contributions to the cause of socialism. 他们为社会主义事业作出更大的贡献。

【词汇】contribution *n.* 贡献

contribute *vt.* 贡献(＋to)

make a contribution to sth.；make a contribution towards doing sth.

He has made an important contribution to the success of the project.

他对项目的成功作出了重要的贡献。

These measures would make a valuable contribution towards reducing car accidents.

这些措施将会对减少交通事故起到重要作用。

contribute to sth.：to be one of the causes of sth. 是……的原因之一

A number of factors contribute to the alarming increase in violent crime in this city.

许多因素造成这个城市暴力犯罪急剧增加。

A contributing factor is the popularization of cars, whose number more than tripled in the past three years. 一个重要的因素是汽车的普及，数量在过去三年中增加了三倍以上。

11. Against these figures, it was found that only 5% of women snore regularly, while the rest are constantly woken or kept awake by their trumpeting partners.

【译文】与这些数字相比，只有 5%的女性经常打鼾，而其余的则经常被与她们同睡、像吹号似地打着呼噜的男人吵醒或弄得睡不着。

【用法】(1)against，介词，与……对比，与……对照，如：Red flags stand out brightly against the blue sky. 红旗在蓝天衬托下显得分外鲜艳。

(2)while 而。并列连词，除课文中用法外，while 还可作从属连词，引导条件状语从句或让步状语从句，如：While your opinions are worth considering, the committee finds it unwise to place too much importance on them. 尽管你的意见值得考虑，委员会认为对其过分重视是不明智的。

【词汇】**against** *prep.* 与……相比：

People are changing careers on average every 5 years now, against every 12 years in the 1970s.

人们现在平均 5 年换一个职业，而在 20 世纪 70 年代是每隔 12 年。

The age of teenager smokers is dropping considerably. It stands at 15 years old on average now, against 17.2 years old in 1998. 青少年吸烟者的年龄明显下降。目前的平均年龄是 15 岁，而 1998 年是 17.2 岁。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 48 The silent village

本节重点和难点

- 独立主格结构
- "主语十连系动词十表语"结构
- 动词的过去分词作定语
- 现在分词短语作状语

本课词汇

inaccessible [ˌinækˈsesəbl] *adj.* 达不到的
hospitable [ˈhɔspitəbl] *adj.* 好客的
hostile [ˈhɔstail] *adj.* 敌人的，怀有敌意的，表示敌意的，敌对的
vicinity [viˈsiniti] *n.* 邻近
【词组】in the vicinity of 在……附近
architectural [ˌɑːkiˈtektʃərəl] *adj.* 建筑学的
fresco [ˈfreskəu] *n.* 壁画
abruptly [əbˈrʌptli] *adv.* 突然地
tramp [træmp] *vt.* 步行
moor [muə] *vt.* 把(船)系住
ferry [ˈferi] *n.* 渡口，渡船 *v.* 用船渡，用飞机输送
straggle [ˈstrægl] *vt.* 蔓延，散乱分布
dilapidated [diˈlæpideitid] *adj.* 坍塌的，陈旧破烂的
sardine [sɑːˈdiːn] *n.* 沙丁鱼
rags [rægs] *n.* 破旧衣服
motionless [ˈməuʃənlis] *adj.* 不动的
procession [prəˈseʃən] *n.* 行列，队伍
【词组】in procession 排队
shawl [ʃɔːl] *n.* 围巾
peer [piə] *vt.* 凝视
quicken [ˈkwikən] *v.* 加快

课文详解

1. In this much-travelled world, there are still thousands of places which are inaccessible to tourists.

【译文】在这个旅游频繁的世界中，仍有成千上万个游人足迹未至的地方。

【用法】(1)much-travelled 是由程度副词 much 与过去分词构成的复合形容词，在此作定语。

(2)be inaccessible to... 是……难于达到的，是……难于接近的。

【词汇】**inaccessible** *adj.*

inaccessible 往往形容一个地方是人们难以接近的，它的固定结构一般是：some place is inaccessible to sb.。例如：That village is accessible to people on foot. 那个村庄开车子是进不去的。

His explanation is inaccessible to me. 我不明白他的解释。

2. We always assume that villagers in remote places are friendly and hospitable.

【译文】人们总是以为偏僻地方的村民们热情好客。

【用法】**hospitable** *adj.*

此词常与 to 和 towards 连用，构成 be hospitable to/towards sb. 的用法。例：She is always hospitable to her friends. 她总是殷勤招待她的朋友们。此词的名词形式为 hospitality，例：We are much obliged to your hospitality. 非常感谢你的盛情款待。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【文化背景】讲到"受某人款待"还有一个短语——eat sb.'s salt(作某人的客人,受某人的款待)。

相传在阿拉伯人中,吃了某人的盐,意味着在主人和客人之间产生了神圣的契约。一个人只要吃了别人的盐,就不应该再说他的坏话或恩将仇报。

One has no business to eat a man's salt and then say nasty things about him.

一个人没有权利一面享受人家的款待,一面又讲人家的坏话。

联想和"吃"有关的其他短语——

eat crow(被迫认错,忍辱含垢)

Whenever his boss reprimands him, he eats crow with no resistance. 无论老板何时责骂他,他都忍气吞声,毫不反抗。

eat, drink and be merry(吃喝玩乐,人生短暂,及时行乐)

Let's leave the rest of this work for another day. I'm in the mood to eat, drink and be merry and the rest of you had better be too. 剩下的工作改日再做吧。我现在想快乐享受一番,你们最好也和我一样。

eat humble pie(忍气吞声,低头谢罪)

He tolerated Mr. Morse, wondering the while how it felt to eat such humble pie. 他忍受了摩斯先生的态度,一边心想,不知道这低声下气究竟是什么味儿。

eat sb. out of house and home(吃穷某人,吃得倾家荡产)

John's family was likely to be eaten out of house and home. 约翰一家很可能要被吃得倾家荡产。

3. But people who are cut off not only from foreign tourists...

【译文】但是,那些不但与外国旅游者隔绝……

【用法】cut...off from,把……同……隔开/切断,如:

The snow cut us off from the rest of the world. 大雪切断了我们与外界的联系。

The army was cut off from its supplies. 军队的给养被切断了。

He cut himself off from all human contract. 他断绝了与所有人的联系。

4. We had spent several days in a small-town and visited a number of old churches in the vicinity.

【译文】我们在一座小镇上逗留了几天,参观了附近的许多古老的教堂。

【用法】in the vicinity of 在……附近

The store is somewhere in the vicinity of the street. 商店就在那条街附近的某个地方。

There isn't a good university in the vicinity of my house. 我家附近没有一所好大学。

5. These attracted many visitors for they were not only of great architectural interest, but contained a large number of beautifully preserved frescoes as well.

【译文】这些教堂吸引了大量游客,不仅是因为建筑风格奇特,而且还存有大量保存完好的壁画。

【用法】be of+抽象名词,在此结构中,介词 of 同其后的抽象名词实际相当于该抽象名词的形容词,即 interesting。

architectural *adj.*

这个词由其名词形式 architecture(建筑)变形过来,表示"建筑的"。例:architectural engineering(建筑工程学),an architectural triumph(建筑学的成就)。它的另一个名词形式是 architect,表示"建筑师,设计师"。大家可以把这三个词放在一起记忆。

fresco *n.*

fresco 意为"壁画",例:The frescos in the Sistine Chapel are world famous.(西斯廷教堂的壁画举世闻名。)值得注意的是,fresco 的复数形式可以是 frescos 或者 frescoes。在英文里以"o"结尾的单词通常其复数形式是在"o"后面直接加"s",如"photos",但是也有一些词是要加"es"的。这里有一个顺口溜可以帮助同学们记忆,即"黑人英雄爱吃土豆和西红柿"。在这句话里出现的四个名词都是以"o"结尾,而且复数是加"es",即"negroes"、"heroes"、"potatoes"以及"tomatoes"。

6. On the day before our departure, several bus loads of tourists descended on the town.

【译文】我们离开小镇的前一天,镇上来了几辆满载游客的公共汽车。

【用法】(1)descend on/upon(尤指大批的人)突然来访/临;结伙袭击

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

The whole family descended on us at Christmas. 圣诞节他们全家突然来我家做客。

Thousands of football fans descended on the city. 几千名足球迷来到这个城市。

Armed thieves descended on the helpless travellers. 一群武装强盗袭击了无助的旅客。

(2)bus load 为量词，表示“具有一辆公共汽车装载量的”。

7. We expected the path to end abruptly, but we found that it traced its way through the trees.

【译文】我们原以为小路会到此突然终止，没想到它在树林中继续向前延伸。

【用法】way 与许多本身表示运动的动词连用，以表达前进、向前推进或运动的意思。way 只能用单数形式：The stream wounds its way across the field. 小溪弯弯曲曲穿过了田野。

abruptly *adv.*

这个词的形容词形式是 abrupt，表示“突然的、意外的”，相当于 sudden 或者 unexpected，例：an abrupt change/departure(突然的转变/离开)。当形容人的时候，这个词可以表示“粗鲁的”，例：How can you have such an abrupt manner? 你的举止为何如此粗鲁？abruptly 是其副词形式，例：His attitude changed so abruptly that nobody knew what had happened to him. 他的态度转变得如此突然以至于没有人知道到底发生了什么事。

8. We tramped through the wood for over two hours until we arrived at a deep stream.

【译文】我们在树林中跋涉了两个多小时，到了一条深溪边。

【用法】**tramp** *vi. n.*

在英文里以“tra”开头的词语通常和“脚”有关，如：travel、trace、trail、trap 等等，这里的 tramp 也是一样，表示“徒步行走”的意思，例：We tramped for miles and miles without finding anywhere to stay. 我们走啊走啊，始终找不到个栖身之处。

9. Suddenly my wife spotted a boat moored to the bank.

【译文】突然，妻子发现岸边泊着一条小船。

【用法】**moor** *vt.*

此词常用于 moor sth. to sth. 的句式，表示“(用绳、锚、链)系(船)”，例：We moored our boat to the river bank. 我们将船系到河岸边。

10. We gently woke him up and asked him to ferry us to the other side.

【译文】我们轻轻地把他唤醒，请他把我们摆渡过溪。

【用法】**ferry** *n. vt.*

ferry 表示“渡船、渡口”的意思。例：travel by ferry(乘船)，We waited at the ferry for five hours. 我们在渡口等了五小时。ferry 也可作动词，表示“短程或定期运送”，例：He ferries his children to and from school everyday. 他每天接送孩子上下学。

11. The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses.

【译文】这儿有一条未经修筑的弯弯曲曲的道路，路两边排列着一些矮小的农舍。

【用法】**straggle** *v.*

straggle 表示“蔓延、散乱分布”。例：Small villages straggled in the valley. 小村落散乱地遍布在山谷里。值得注意的是，straggly 不是其副词形式，而是其形容词形式，表示“散乱的”，例：Straggly hair(乱蓬蓬的头发)。

12. Even under a clear blue sky, the village looked forbidding, as all the houses were built of grey mud bricks.

【译文】农舍全用灰色的土坯建成，因此，即使在晴朗的蓝天底下，村庄看上去也会令人感到难以亲近。

【写作】看了这句话后，你是不是感到十分的压抑？这句话别看用词平平，我们应该思考，为什么作者这么随便一句就会让我们仿佛真的体会到沉闷的气氛。因为作者巧妙地运用了感觉描写。在五觉之中，视觉的形象最鲜明，最敏感，最细致，最生动，所谓“百闻不如一见”就是这个道理。大脑储存的感觉信息，80%来自视觉，10%来自听觉，而色彩又是视觉所感受到最为鲜明的信息。作者这里用 blue、grey 两种色彩组成了一幅浑然天成的图画，渲染出一派静谧肃穆的气氛。不过我们这里要给大

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

家补充的是：如何才能描写好感觉，唤起读者的共鸣？方法固然有很多，我这里给大家简单介绍一种修辞手法：通感，就是将一种感官的感觉移到另一种感官上。如：当我们听到一个悦耳动听的声音时，会立刻产生一种如饮甘露的甜美之感，这时听觉感知的声音已经移植于味觉感知中去了，于是出现了 sweet voice(甜美的声音)。另外还有：soft light(柔和的灯光)，cold color(冷色)，noisy dress(艳丽的裙子)，loud perfume(刺鼻的香水)。

13. The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat tied to a tree on a short length of rope in a field nearby.

【译文】村里似乎无人居住，唯一的生命迹象是附近田里一只面目可憎的黑山羊，用一截短绳拴在一棵树上。

【用法】the only sigh of life being an ugly-looking goat，这是一个由名词和分词组成的独立主格结构。当句子作状语，且不是一个完整的句子的时候，可以用这种结构。例：The weather was fine so we went to have a picnic 可转化为 the weather being fine, we went to have a picnic。

14. Sitting down on a dilapidated wooden fence near the field, we opened a couple of tins of sardines and had a picnic lunch.

【译文】我们在田边一堵东倒西歪的篱笆墙上坐了下来，打开几听沙丁鱼罐头，吃了一顿野外午餐。

【用法】**dilapidated** *adj.*

dilapidated 表示"破烂的、倒塌的"。例：a dilapidated car/bed(破破烂烂的车/床)。

sardine *n.*

此词直接音译过来为"沙丁鱼"。中文里我们形容一个地方很挤通常用"挤得跟沙丁鱼罐头一样"，这句话其实也是英文中的一个习语，即(packed, squashed, etc) like sardines。例：We were squashed together like sardines in the dark room. 我们在阴暗的小房间里挤成一团。

15. All at once, I noticed that my wife seemed to be filled with alarm.

【译文】突然，我注意到妻子十分惊恐。

【用法】all at once，突然，猛然；同时，如：Don't talk all at once. Speak one by one. 不要大家同时发言，一个一个轮流讲。

be filled with 表示"充满"。例：the bottle is filled with water. 瓶子里装满了水。She is filled with anger. 她心里充满怒气。

16. Looking up I saw that we were surrounded by children in rags who were looking at us silently as we ate.

【译文】我抬头一看，发现我们被一群衣衫褴褛的小孩团团围住了，他们在默不作声地看着我们吃饭。

【用法】**rag** *n.*

rag 原意表示"破布"。习语 chew the rag，直译为"嚼破布"，其实表示"唠叨"的意思。而另一个习语 from rags to riches，从其字面就可以猜出它的意思是"从赤贫到巨富"。还有一个习语(like) a red rag to a bull，直译为"像公牛面前的红布一样"。从大家对斗牛的基本常识可知，红布是用来激怒公牛的，所以这个习语的实际意思是"可能激起强烈的憎恨、愤怒、暴力行动等"。

例：She was furious because his words were like a red rage to a bull. 他的话惹得她暴跳如雷。

17. We offered them food and spoke to them kindly, but they remained motionless.

【译文】我们给他们东西吃，客客气气地同他们交谈，但他们却一动也不动。

【用法】**motionless** *adj.* 静止的

motion 表示"运动、动态"，如 put sth. in motion(使某物开始运动或运转)。-less 在英文中是表示否定的词尾，如 careless, doutless, fearless 等等。所以 motionless 表示"不动的，静止的"。

18. When we later walked down the main street of the village, we were followed by a silent procession of children.

【译文】后来，我们在村里的主要街道上行走的时候，一队默不作声的孩子跟在我们后头。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】**procession** *n.*

procession 表示"行列，成队的人群"，例：a funeral procession(送葬队伍)。此词也可作量词，用作 procession of，表示"川流不息的人群"，例：A procession of visitors came to the church every year. 每年有大量游客来参观这座教堂。

19. Old women in black shawls peered at us from door-ways.

【译文】披黑纱巾的老妇人站在门口偷偷地瞅着我们。

【用法】**peer** *v.* 凝视，盯着看

peer 表示"凝视，盯着看(尤指因看不清)"，常与 at 连用，例：peer at sb. through the mist(透过薄雾看某人)。

gaze, gape, glance, glare, glimpse, peer, peep, stare 这一组动词都含有"看"的意思。

gaze *v.* 凝视，注视，指由于好奇、感叹、长时间目不转睛地看。

She gazed at her beautiful new diamond ring. 她凝视着她的这颗美丽崭新的钻戒。

gape *v.* (张着嘴、瞪大眼睛)呆看，强调一种吃惊的状态。

The children gaped at the big elephant in the zoo. 在动物园，孩子们张大了嘴巴呆呆地看着大象。

glance *v.* (粗略地、随便地)一瞥，看一眼。

He glanced over the letter he had just received. 他把刚收到的那封信粗略地看了一遍。

glare *v.* 怒目而视，强调怀有敌意或在气愤的情绪下看；眩目地照射。

The woman glared at the man after he shouted rudely at her.

那男人粗暴地冲她大声喊叫，她也怒目而视。

glimpse *v.* 与 glance 意思相近，短促地看一眼，一瞥。

peer *v.* 指眯起眼睛仔细看，尤指看不清楚的情况下；费力地看，凝视。

Being somewhat short-sighted, she has the habit of peering at people. 因为有点近视，她有眯着眼睛看人的习惯。

peep *v.* 窥视，偷看。

The mother peeped the bedroom to see if her child was asleep.

母亲偷偷向卧室看了一下，看她的孩子是否睡着了。

stare *v.* 凝视，盯着，指由于好奇、惊讶、赞叹等原因而瞪大眼睛长时间地、直接地注视，常常含有粗鲁无礼的意思。

I told my son to stop staring at that fat woman; it wasn't nice. 我告诉儿子不要盯着那个胖女人，那样不礼貌。

20. Turning back down the main street, we quickened our pace and made our way rapidly towards the stream where we hoped the boatman was waiting.

【译文】掉转身子，我们沿着那条主要的街道加快步伐，快速地朝溪边走去，希望船夫还在那儿等着我们。

【用法】(1)这里的 down 为介词，意即"沿着"。

(2)we hoped 在句中作插入语。

(3)make one's way to/towards... 向……走去，如：After classes we made our way towards the appointed meeting place. 下课后，我们就向约定会面的地方走去。

Will you be able to make your own way to the airport? 你能自己去机场吗？

The procession made its way down the hill. 队伍走下山了。

quicken *v.*

英文中常有形容词和-en 连接变为动词的用法，如：darken, harden, strenghen 等等。quick 表示"快速的"，所以 quicken 表示"加快"，例：Quicken your pace or you'll be left behind. 加快你的步伐，否则你就要落后了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 49 The ideal servant

本节重点和难点

- 与现在事实相反的虚拟语气
- in that 引导的原因状语从句
- 具有否定意义的副词或短语置于句首时，句子要倒装
- 过去完成时表示“过去的过去”

本课词汇

rambling ['ræmbliŋ] *adj.* 杂乱无章的
sentimentally [ˌsenti'mentli] *adv.* 多愁善感地
lavishly ['læviʃli] *adv.* 慷慨地，大方地
immaculate [i'mækjulit] *adj.* 洁净无瑕的
parquet floor 镶木地板
gleam [gliːm] *vt.* 闪烁

【辨析】gleam 亮光：指黑暗中出现的一点光线；ray 光线、射线：从发光体辐射出来的光波，特别是细小的光；beam 光束：从发光体发出的长而且有一定宽度的光柱。

president ['prezidənt] *n.* 总统；会长，校长
invisible [in'vizəbl] *adj.* 看不见的，无形的
scrub [skrʌb] *vt.* 擦洗
enlightened [in'laitənd] *adj.* 开明的
decry [di'krai] *vt.* 诋毁
fickleness ['fiklnis] *n.* 变化无常
unrelenting [ˌʌnri'lentiŋ] *adj.* 不屈不挠的
disillusion [ˌdisi'luːʒən] *vt.* 使幻想破灭
industriousness [ɪn'dʌstriəsnɪs] *n.* 勤奋
qualification [ˌkwɔlifi'keiʃən] *n.* 资格
mirth [məːθ] *n.* 欢笑
stack [stæk] *vt.* 堆积
wine-cellar 酒窖

课文详解

1. If she were alive today she would not be able to air her views on her favourite topic of conversation: domestic servants.

【译文】如果她活到今天，她将不能就她热衷的话题“佣人”发表意见了。

【用法】air one's view on sth＝announce/make... public

2. She had a huge, rambling country house called “The Gables”.

【译文】她在乡下有一幢巨大杂乱的房子，叫作“山墙庄园”。

【用法】**rambling** *adj.*

(1) 大而凌乱的

They lived in a rambling old house in the country. 他们住在乡间的一座凌乱的老房子里。

(2) 冗长而含糊的

a rambling speech/letter 不着边际的讲话/不知所云的长信

ramble *vi.* 漫游，漫步，闲逛；(of plants)蔓生，攀援生长

3. She was sentimentally attached to this house, for even though it was far too big for her needs, she persisted in living there long after her husband's death.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【译文】她对这幢房子在感情上难舍难分，房子实在太大了，但在丈夫去世多年后，她仍执意长年住在那儿。

【用法】(1)be sentimentally attached to sth. 感情上依依不舍

回顾 18 课 be attached to(依附)的意思，这里是引申意思，如：

The newlyweds are attached to each other. 这对新婚夫妻如胶似漆。

(2)persist in(doing)坚持/固执(做)，多用来表示不顾困难阻碍，也可用来表示遭到反对时仍继续做某事，后应使用介词"in＋名词或动名词"形式。

【联想】sensible，sensitive，sentimental，sensational 这是一组形近易混词。

sensible *adj.* 有知觉的，可感知的；明智的

The patient was speechless but still sensible. 病人虽然不能说话但仍然有知觉。

sensitive *adj.* 敏感的，灵敏的

This film is sensitive to light. 这种胶片对光很敏感。

sentimental *adj.* 多愁善感的，感伤的

The novel has scenes full of love and loss；it is so sentimental！

小说有多处场景充满爱情的悲欢离合，真是感伤啊！

sensational *adj.* 耸人听闻的，令人激动的

I read a sensational story about a ten-year-old mother.

我听到一则耸人听闻的故事：十岁女孩作妈妈。

【词汇】**persist** *v.* 坚持

insist，persist，persevere，adhere，cling 这些动词均有"坚持"之意。

insist：通常用于对意见、主张等的坚持。

persist：用于褒义，指坚持继续做某事，但更常用于贬义，指不听劝告，顽固坚持。

persevere：含褒义，强调坚持不懈的努力。

adhere 与 to 连用，指坚持意见、计划或承诺等，含坚持不懈之意。

cling 和 to 连用，指对信仰、意见、习惯等的坚持。

4. Before she grew old, aunt Harriet used to entertain lavishly.

【译文】哈丽特姑妈年轻时，喜欢大摆宴席，招待宾客。

【用法】**lavish** *adj.* 慷慨的，大方的 be lavish with/in sth. 在……方面慷慨大方，如：He was lavish in his praise for her paintings. 他大力地赞扬她的画。

a lavish lifestyle 挥霍无度的生活方式 lavish sth. on/upon 过分给与；慷慨给与

She lavishes most of her attention on her youngest son. 她对她的小儿子过于关爱。

5. The parquet floors shone like mirrors; highly polished silver was displayed in gleaming glass cabinets; even my uncle's huge collection of books was kept miraculously free from dust.

【译文】镶木地板洁如明镜，擦得发亮的银器陈列在明亮的玻璃柜里，连姑夫的大量藏书也保存得很好，奇迹般地一尘不染。

【用法】keep sth. free from dust 使……一尘不染

6. Aunt Harriet presided over an invisible army of servants that continuously scrubbed, cleaned, and polished.

【译文】哈丽特姑妈统率着一支看不见的佣人大军，他们不停地擦拭、清扫和刷洗。

【用法】(1)invisible 看不见的，无形的。见第 1 课词根 vid, vis。

(2)preside over 管理……，主持……。

preside 见第 5 课词根 sid。

【词汇】**scrub** *vt.* 擦拭，刷洗 scrub the floor 擦地板

scr-刮，擦 scrabble 抓，摸索 scramble 攀爬 scrape 刮，擦 sky-scraper 摩天大楼 scratch 挠，抓 scratchy 书写潦草的 scrawl 潦草地写 describe 描写 description 描写 scripture 手稿 scroll 供书写的长卷纸 script 录音稿，电影剧本

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. She always referred to them as "the shifting population", for they came and went with such frequency that I never even got a chance to learn their names.

【译文】她称这些佣人叫"流动人口",因为他们来去匆匆,所以我甚至都没有机会知道他们的姓名。

【用法】come and go with such frequency that

回忆 31 课 such...that 和 so...that 的转换

preside over sth.

切记 preside 是不及物动词。

preside over a meeting 主持会议

8. Though my aunt pursued what was, in those days, an enlightened policy, in that she never allowed domestic staff to work more than eight hours a day, she was extremely difficult to please.

【译文】虽然姑妈待佣人在当时算是开明的,从来不让他们每天工作超过八小时,但他们很难让她称心如意。

【用法】(1)what was an enlightened policy 算得上是一项开明政策。what 为代词,引导名词性从句,该从句作动词 pursued 的宾语。

(2)to please 作状语,修饰 difficult。she 与 to please 有逻辑上的动宾关系。

(3)in that(=because, since)表示"因为,原因在于"的意思;该连词较为正式,而且它引导的从句不能位于句首。

引导原因从句的短语连接词:

seeing that; now that; considering that; on the grounds that

9. While she always decried the fickleness of human nature, she carried on an unrelenting search for the ideal servant to the end of her days...

【译文】她一方面总批评人的本性朝三暮四,另一方面她又持之以恒地寻找一个理想的佣人,……一直到她死去。

【用法】while 虽然,尽管。这里作从属连词使用,引导让步状语从句。

While/Although the Hatfield is a modern aeroplane, its designer is finding it difficult to get it off the ground.

尽管 Hatfield 是一架新式飞机,他的设计师发现很难使它飞离地面。

While being flown by a champion amateur cyclist in 1963, the plane crashed on the airfield.

1963 年这架飞机在由一名业余空中驾驶冠军驾驶时,在机场坠毁。

10. When she came in with the last course—a huge pudding—she tripped on the carpet and the pudding went flying through the air, narrowly missed my aunt, and crashed on the dining table with considerable force.

【译文】当她端着最后一道菜——大盘布丁——走进屋来时,在地毯上绊了一跤。布丁飞到半空,从姑母身边擦过,然后狠狠地砸在餐桌上。

【用法】(1)trip over=stumble over/on: The fisherman tripped over a root and fell into the river. 渔夫绊在一个树根上,摔进了河里。He stumbled on a stone/over a branch. 他在石头上/树枝上绊了一下。

11. The guests had, of course, realized this from the moment Bessie opened the door for them and, long before the final catastrophe, had had a difficult time trying to conceal their amusement.

【译文】客人们自然从贝西为他们开门那一刻就看出来了,在好长一段时间内,即这个乱子发生前,他们努力克制才没有笑出来。

【用法】have a difficult/hard time (in)doing sth. ; have difficulty/trouble (in)doing sth. 做某事有困难

Susan have a difficult time trying to get the children to go to bed. 苏珊花了很大力气才使孩子们上床睡觉。He had a hard time catching a taxi. 他费了好大的劲才叫到一辆出租车。

I have trouble getting up. 我早起有困难。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 50 New Year resolutions

本节重点和难点

- 与 if 条件状语从句有关的虚拟语气
- 介词引导的独立主格结构
- 强调句型
- 动词的现在分词作状语

本课词汇

resolution [ˌrezəˈluːʃən] *n.* 正式决定，决议；决心，决意

【词组】make a resolution to do 下（做）……的决心，下决心（做）

【用法】1. resolution 后面可以接同位语或表语从句，其谓语动词用动词原形或 should 加动词原形表示虚拟语气，如：It is their resolution that extracurricular activities (should) be made an important part of their education.（他们决心使课外活动成为教育的一个重要组成部分。）2. resolution后可接不定式、从句或介词短语等作定语，如：The committee have passed a resolution to build a new library（或 for building a new library；或 that a new library be built）.（委员会通过了建立一个新图书馆的决议。）

mentally [ˈmentli] *adv.* 心理上，内心地

compile [kəmˈpail] *vt.* 编制

formidable [ˈfɔːmidəbl] *adj.* 难对付的，大得可怕的

recur [riˈkəː] *v.* 再发生

regularity [ˌreɡjuˈlæriti] *n.* 规律性

accomplishment [əˈkɔmpliʃmənt] *n.* 完成，成就

attainment [əˈteinmənt] *n.* 达到

inveterate [inˈvetərit] *adj.* 积习难改的

self-improvement *n.* 自我完善，自我改造

scheme [skiːm] *n.* 计划，方案

【词组】the scheme of things 格局

【用法】lay a scheme 定计划

ambitious [æmˈbiʃəs] *adj.* 雄心勃勃的，有野心的

pitfall [ˈpitfɔːl] *n.* 易犯的错误，意外的困难

modest [ˈmɔdist] *adj.* 要求不过分的

assiduously [əˈsidjuəsli] *adv.* 勤奋地

self-discipline *n.* 自我约束

human frame 身躯

betray [biˈtrei] *v.* 背叛，出卖；泄露（秘密）；暴露，显示

troop [truːp] *n.* 部队，军队；（一）群，（一）队

【辨析】troop 着重指士兵这个集体，而不是指个别士兵；army 着重指军队这个整体，和 navy（海军）、air force（空军）相对而言时，特指陆军。此外，army 还可指陆军编制中的军。

unsettle [ʌnˈsetl] *v.* 使不安

taunt [tɔːnt] *n.* 嘲弄，嘲笑，奚落

jibe＝gibe [dʒaib] *n.* 嘲弄

good-humouredly *adv.* 温厚地，和气地

wane [wein] *vt.* 衰减

diminish [diˈminiʃ] *vt.* 缩小，减少

【辨析】diminish 减少，减小：从中取走一部分，使数量受到损失；decrease 减少，下降：一般用语，用于事物数量的减少；reduce 降低，人为使事物的数量、体积、范围由高到低，由好到坏，减少，发生"质"的变化；lessen 减少，降低：一般用语。

hypnotize [ˈhipnətaiz] *vt.* 催眠

undoing [ʌnˈduːiŋ] *n.* 毁掉，祸根

screen [skriːn] *n.* 屏风，帘；屏幕 *vt.* 掩蔽，包庇；筛查

【词组】screen off 用幕隔开/screen out 筛去；选拔；遮挡

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. Mentally, at least, most of us could compile formidable lists of "dos" and "don'ts".

【译文】至少大多数人在心里会编排出一份"应做什么"和"不应做什么"的个人生长的单子。

【用法】(1)dos and don'ts 为名词 do 或 don't 的复数形式，意即"要做的事和不要做的事；注意事项"。

dos and don'ts of Chinese New Year 中国新年的禁忌

(2)at(the)least，至少，起码，无论如何，如：It requires at least two days. 这件事至少需要两天。

2. The same old favourites recur year in year out with monotonous regularity.

【译文】相同的决心以单调的规律年复一年地出现。

【用法】...in，...out，该结构表示"连续不断地"，如 day in，day out(日复一日)，week in，week out(一周接着一周)，year in，year out(年复一年)：Last spring it winded week in，week out. 去年春天一周接着一周地刮风。

He wears the same coat year in year out. 他一年到头穿同样的一件衣服。

3. We resolve to get up earlier each morning.

【译文】我们决心每天早晨起得早些。

【辨析】resolve，determine 和 decide 都有"达成结论"的意思。

resolve *vt.* 决心，决定 resolve to do sth；resolve that... ；resolve on doing sth. 决定做某事

He resolved not to tell her the truth. 他决定不告诉她真相。

He resolved that he would not tell her the truth.

He resolved on not telling her the truth.

4. Past experience has taught us that certain accomplishments are beyond attainment.

【译文】以往的经验告诉我们有些事是办不到的。

【用法】(1)beyond attainment 达不到的，做不到的。为介词短语，常作补语。

(2)accomplish 比 finish 境界更高

accomplish task/mission/goal/dream

attain 比 get 境界更高

attain task/mission/goal/dream/success(等于 achieve success)

achieve 强调达到一定目的时的表现及努力，例：

This is what he achieved after ten years hard work. 这就是他努力工作十年的成就。

accomplishment 主要指修养，才艺，本领方面的成就

attainment 强调获得，得到，例：

Such accomplishment is beyond your attainment. 这样的成就你是达不到的。

试比较：

achievement：Something which one succeed in doing especially after a lot of effort usually dangerous or difficult. 成就

The first space flight was a great achievement. 第一次太空飞行是一项伟大的成就。

accomplishment：

The skill that people have required. It is something that took knowledge and，usually，hard work. When you have solved a hard arithmetic problem or learned to figure out，you can be proud of your accomplishment. 技能成绩。通常指的是需要知识和艰苦的工作，当你解决了一个难的算术问题或者学术性的解决，你可以自豪于你的成绩。

Among his many accomplishments is the ability to play card tricks. 他众多技能之一是玩纸牌。

feat：It requires more courage and strength. It applies to mental acts as well physical acts. 功绩，伟业，技艺

Learning a new skill is a feat. 掌握一门新技术是一项功绩。

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

exploit: An accomplishment that requires even greater daring and heroism than a feat. 功绩功勋，辉煌成就

Old stories tell about the exploits of famous heroes. 古老的故事讲述的是英雄的辉煌成就。

5. If we remain inveterate smokers, it is only because we have so often experienced the frustration that results from failure.

【译文】如果我们烟瘾大，戒不掉，那是因为屡戒屡败，失去了信心。

【用法】that results from failure 由于失败而产生的。result from 由……产生。result 前的主语为结果，而介词 from 后的宾语为起因，如：Success results from hard work. 成功来自艰苦的工作。

inveterate *adj.* 积习难改的；有……瘾的：an inveterate gambler/smoker 一个赌博成性的人，一个烟鬼：She is an inveterate reader of silly love stories. 她长年不变地读愚蠢的爱情小说。

6. Most of us fail in our efforts at self-improvement because our schemes are too ambitious and we never have time to carry them out.

【译文】我们大多数人想自我完善却遭到失败，这是因为我们的规划过于宏大，而又根本没有时间去实施。

【用法】self-improvement, self-respecting, self-controlling

ambitious *adj.*

褒义：雄心壮志

贬义：野心勃勃

7. We also make the fundamental error of announcing our resolutions to everybody so that we look even more foolish when we slip back into our bad old ways.

【译文】我们还犯有一个根本性的错误，即把我们的决心向大家宣布，这样一旦退回那些坏的老习惯上去，我们在别人的眼里会显得更加难堪。

【用法】(1) slip back 滑回，退回，如：Your classes have been slipping back recently, so you must make more effort. 近来你的功课在倒退，你必须再努力一点。

be back/slip back/get back 后退，倒退

(2) slip into 陷入（困难或不愉快的处境），如：He began to slip into debt. 他开始欠债了。

The patient had slipped into a coma. 病人陷入昏迷状态。

(3) 这里的 so that 是引导结果状语从句。

比较 so that 结果状语从句和 so that 的目的状语从句：

He sent the telegram so that his mother might/should learn the good news earlier.

= So that his mother should learn the good news earlier, he sent the telegram.

他发了封电报，以便母亲可以早点得知这个好消息。（目的）

He sent the telegram, so that his mother learned about the good news very soon.

他发了封电报，这样母亲就很快获悉了这个好消息。（结果）

注意：目的状语从句常与 should、could 等情态动词连用，结果状语从句则没有；目的状语从句可位于主语之前或之后；而结果状语从句只能位于主语之后。如：

So that he passed the exam, he worked very hard.（错）

So that he would/could pass the exam, he worked very hard.（对）

他为了通过考试而努力学习。

【联想】补充一些比较复杂的目的状语从句：lest/in case/for fear that

The manager took a laptop computer with him, in case he (should) need/needed it on trip.

经理随身带一台手提电脑，以免旅途中需要。

He carried an umbrella around everywhere lest it (should) rain.

他走到哪都带着一把伞，生怕会下雨。

The actress often wears a pair of dark glasses in public places for fear that she (should) be/might be recognized.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

那女演员经常戴着一副墨镜出入公共场合，害怕被人认出。

注意：lest，for fear that，in case 引导目的状语从句，表示"以防；以免；害怕……"。lest 和 for fear that 的从句中，谓语动词常用"(should)＋动词原形"；in case 从句中的谓语动词可用陈述语气形式，也可用"(should)＋动词原形"虚拟式。

8. Aware of these pitfalls, this year I attempted to keep my resolutions to myself.

【译文】我深知这些问题，于是，今年我对自己的计划要严加保密。

【用法】(1) Aware of these pitfalls 由于知道这些易犯的错误。形容词短语，在句子中作原因状语，修饰 attempted。

(2) keep...to oneself 把……秘藏心底，不将……说出去，如：Keep your comments to yourself. 我不要听你的评论。

I'd be grateful if you kept this information to yourself. 你要是不把这消息说出去，我将非常感激。

9. The self-discipline required to drag myself out of bed eleven minutes earlier than usual was considerable.

【译文】这种自我约束是很艰苦的，它要求我比平时早 11 分钟把自己从床上拽起来。

【用法】required to...than usual 作定语，修饰 self-discipline。

drag：拖，拉

pull：拉扯，拔

draw：拔出，取出，抽出

drag：在地上拖拉，慢吞吞地走，磨蹭

The escaped prisoner was dragged out of his hiding place. 逃犯从藏身之地被拖了出来。

haul：拖拉

The fisherman is hauling a net. 渔民在拖网。

tug：使劲拉，猛拉，拖；拽

He tugged at my sleeve to ask directions. 他扯着我的袖子问情况。

jerk：猛拉

He jerked out the knife that was stuck in the wound. 他猛然拉出了插在伤口的刀。

tow：牵引

We towed the car to the nearest garage. 我们把汽车牵引到最近的修理站。

wrench：(猛地)扭，拧，扳

10. Nevertheless, I managed to creep down into the living-room for two days before anyone found me out.

【译文】不过开头两天我还是成功地蹑手蹑脚地来到楼下起居室，谁也没发现。

【用法】climb、creep、crawl 这一组词都含有"爬"的意思。

climb 指用手或足由低处向上爬，攀登，也指日月的上升，并可比喻社会地位上的升高。如：The boy climbed up the tree like a monkey. 这男孩猴子般地爬上树去。How did he climb to power? 他是怎样爬上台的？

creep 用于指四足(尤其哺乳)动物或人用四肢爬行，或指(植物)蔓延。如：The cat crept silently towards the mouse. 猫悄悄地向老鼠爬去。Ivy had crept over the ruined castle walls. 常春藤已经爬满旧城堡的断壁残垣。

这个词多引申为"悄悄作某事"。

crawl 用于无腿或有很多条腿的动物，如蛇、蜈蚣等的爬行，也指人的"匍匐前进"。如：The snake is crawling along the path. 蛇正沿着小路爬行。The soldiers crawled. 战士们匍匐前进。

11. It was this that betrayed me.

【译文】正是这副模样泄露了我的秘密。

【用法】(1) 这是强调句型，this 指前一句"sat down...in an exhausted condition"。

(2) betray，泄露(秘密等)，暴露，表现，如：His accent betrayed his nationality. 从他的口音可以知

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

道他的国籍。betray oneself 暴露本来面目，原形毕露。

He tried to seem angry, but his smile betrayed him. 他尽力显出发怒的样子，但他脸上的笑容露了马脚。

12. That was really unsettling, but I fended off the taunts and jibes of the family good-humouredly and soon everybody got used to the idea.

【译文】这真叫人不好意思，但我心平气和地顶住了全家人的嘲笑和奚落。不久，大家对我习以为常了。

【用法】(1) fend off... 挡开……，回避……，制止……，如：This bread will help him to fend off hunger for a time. 这面包可以暂时帮他解除饥饿。

(2) good-humouredly 心平气和地。作方式状语，修饰 fended off。

good-humoredly *adv.* 和气地，to reply good-humoredly 和气地回答；good-humored *adj.* 心情愉快的，态度友好的，a good-humored smile 友好的微笑；a good-humored atmosphere 令人愉快的气氛

good-tempered *adj.* 脾气好的，和蔼的；good-natured *adj.* 本性善良的，和蔼可亲的；good-hearted *adj.* 善良的，乐于助人的

13. However, my enthusiasm waned.

【译文】而这时我的热情却减退了。

【用法】wane:减退，减弱

power/interest/passion wane

wane and wax of the moon 月亮的阴晴圆缺

He exerts subtle influence on his children, but his children are growing up, so his influence is waning. 他尽力巧妙地影响他的孩子，但他的孩子逐渐成熟，因此他的影响在减少。

diminish:大小，数量等缩减，例：

The Second World War diminished the country's wealth. 二战减少了这个国家的财富。

Time will never cause our friendship to diminish. 我们的友谊决不会因时间流逝而淡薄。

reduce:指价格、数量、尺寸、等级上的减少，降低

lessen:指价值、数量可能性的降低，例：

I agree to your idea that you can climb the tree, but anyway, please lessen the risk of being hurt/injured. 我同意你的观点，你可以爬树，但无论如何请降低受伤的风险。

14. Little by little the eleven minutes fell to zero.

【译文】慢慢地从 11 分钟减到了零。

【用法】fell down to zero 降到零，降到最低

zero(*n.*)——"零"，普通用语，是指没有数量和大小等意义时人们喜欢用的词。

cipher(*n.*)——"零"，指 0-9 中的阿拉伯数码 0，表示"无"时，具有象征意义。

nil(*n.*)——"零"，多用于体育或新闻领域。

nought(*n.*)——"零"，美语为 naught，在字面意义上与 cipher 同义，例：

His chances of success sank to zero.

他成功的机会降到了最低点。

It was fifteen degrees below zero.

气温是零下十五度。

One followed by two ciphers is 100.

1 的后面跟两个 0 是 100。

I can't bear such a cipher any longer.

我再也不能忍受这样一个无用的人了。

The result of the game was three-nil.

比赛结果是三比零。

The new machine reduced labor costs to almost nil.

新机器把劳动力的成本几乎降到零。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

My effort came to naught.

我的努力终成泡影。

0.01 is usually read point nought one.

0.01 通常被读作 point nought one。

15. Resisting the hypnotizing effect of television, I sat in my room for a few evenings with my eyes glued to a book.

【译文】有几天晚上，我极力摆脱了电视的诱惑，坐在自己房间里，两眼盯在书上。

【用法】(1)Resisting...television 为现在分词短语，在句中作伴随状语。

(2)with my eyes glued to a book 为带有介词 with 的独立主格结构，my eyes 为分词短语 glued to a book 的逻辑主语。

【联想】独立主格结构前面可以加上介词 with 或 without，with 仅起连结作用，本身没有任何意义；without 既起到连结作用，又保留否定意义。

The day was bright with a fresh breeze blowing. 天气晴朗，吹来阵阵清风。

With her mother being sick, she had to do all the housework.

由于她妈妈病了，她得做所有的家务。

With her taking care of the child, we have nothing to worry about.

有她来照顾孩子，我们没有什么不放心的。

He slipped out of the hall without anyone noticing. 他溜出了大厅，没有人注意到他。

With everything well taken care of, I felt very relieved. 一切都被照料得好好的，我感到非常欣慰。

With the matter settled, we went home. 问题解决以后，我们回家了。

All afternoon he worked with door locked. 整个下午，他闭门工作。

Meanwhile, with the price of gold going up, South Africa's economy was good.

当时由于黄金价格上扬，南非的经济看好。

Ever since Dolly the sheep was cloned in 1997, Westhusin's phone has been ringing with people calling in hopes of duplicating their cats and dogs, cattle and horses. 自从绵羊多莉在 1997 年被克隆出来以后，Westhusin 的电话就响个不停，人们希望拷贝他们的猫、狗、牛和马。

With the weather so stuffy, ten to one it'll rain. 天气这么闷，十有八九要下雨。

The Bund looks more beautiful than ever with all the lights on.

灯都亮起来，外滩显得更加漂亮。

He was working there with only a shirt on. 他只穿一件衬衣在那里干活。

16. In fact, I have just bought a book entitled "How to Read a Thousand Words a Minute".

【译文】事实上，我刚买来一本叫《一分钟读一千字的诀窍》的书。

【用法】entitle *v.*

(1)(常与 to 连用)授权

Officers are entitled to travel first class. 官员有权坐头等舱。This preferential ticket entitles you to travel first class. 凭这张优惠票，你可以坐头等舱旅行。

(2)给……定题目 After reading an article entitled Cigarette Smoking and Your Health, I lit a cigarette to calm my nerves. 读完一篇题为《吸烟与您的健康》的文章后，我点燃了一支香烟，以便使我紧张的神经能平静下来。

额外收获

引申一个表达：

这个人反复失败的原因是什么？lack of perseverance。

也就是说"作者总是抱负远大，但他致命的弱点是缺乏恒心"。这句话怎样翻成英文？

He has great ambition while his Achilles' heel is lack of perseverance.

Achilles' heel means one's weak or vulnerable point, especially in one's character, which can lead to

www.TopSage.com

his downfall(个性中可能导致一败涂地的缺陷).

这个短语来源于古希腊神话。Achilles 通常翻译为“阿喀琉斯”,是古希腊传说中的一位杰出英雄。他在特洛伊战争中身经百战,屡建功勋。据说,Achilles 出生时也只是一个极其普通的孩子。他的母亲为了锻炼他坚强的意志,造就他一副刀枪不入的钢铁之躯,便倒提着他的身体放到环绕地狱的河——冥河中去浸泡。果然,经过浸泡他的身体变成了一副钢筋铁骨,任何凶恶的敌人也不是他的对手。但是,他的一双脚后跟却因握在母亲的手里,始终没有浸着水。这样,他的脚后跟与普通人的一样,这也就成了这位英雄唯一的致命弱点。后来,在一次战斗中,被他的仇敌射中了这只脚后跟。这位战功赫赫、所向无敌的英雄最终死于自身的这一致命弱点。因此后人常常用它来比喻一个人致命的弱点或要害。例:

Mr. Jones is an industrious and conscientious employee, but pride is his Achilles' heel. 在公司,琼斯先生勤奋尽职,但他的致命弱点就是骄傲自大。

A corrupt official is the Achilles' heel of a government. 贪婪的官员是一个政府的致命伤。

当时 SARS 病魔在世界各地横行数月,但是由于人类至今还没有掌握这种病毒的变异方式,因此还没能找到治疗这种病的药物。后来,德国的研究人员宣称他们找到了一种能抑制 SARS 病毒的药物。他们研究发现,蛋白酶是抑制 SARS 病毒变异的关键物质。主持这项研究的德国科学家说:“If you hit this target successfully you have hit the Achilles' heel of the virus”,这句话的意思是说“如果我们找到了这种蛋白酶,就等于是找到了治疗 SARS 的关键”。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 51 Predicting the Future

本节重点和难点

- 现在分词短语作定语
- 过去分词短语作定语
- 同位语从句
- 与现在事实相反的虚拟语气

本课词汇

accountant [ə'kauntənt] *n.* 会计员，会计师

alternative [ɔːl'təːnətiv] *adj.* 两者（或者两者以上）挑一的；选择的 *n.* 两者挑一，取舍，抉择；替换物，选择对象；可供选择的办法

【词组】have no alternative but 除……外别无选择

clerical ['klerikəl] *adj.* 牧师的；教士的；办事员的；书记员的；办公室工作的

computer [kəm'pjuːtə] *n.* 计算机；计算者，计算员

detailed ['diːteild] *adj.* 详细的，逐条的

DOS [dɔs] *n.* 磁盘操作系统(Disk Operation System)

IBM ['ai biː em] *n.*（美国）国际商用机器公司(International Business Machines)

multimedia [ˌmʌlti'miːdiə] *adj.* 多媒体的

network ['netwəːk] *n.* 网，网络品（物）；网状物，网状系统；电视网，广播网；广播（或电视的）联播公司

relieve [ri'liːv] *vt.* 减轻，缓解；解除，消除（苦痛，忧愁等）；使宽慰，使宽心；救济，援救，供应食品给

【词组】relieve nature / oneself 排泄；方便

software ['sɔftweə] *n.* 软件

technician [tek'niʃən] *n.* 技师

user-friendly 容易操作的

课文详解

1. Predicting the future is notoriously difficult.

【译文】众所周知，预测未来是非常困难的。

【用法】**notoriously** *adv.*

此词由其形容词形式 notorious 变形而来，notorious 表示“臭名昭著的，声名狼藉的”。常用于 be notorious for sth. /as sb. 的句式。例：

She is notorious for her rude behavior. 她因为行为粗俗而声名狼藉。

notoriously 是副词形式，例：

He is notoriously known in this tiny town. 他在这座小镇里臭名昭著。

2. These were the so-called mainframe machines.

【译文】它们被称为主机。

【用法】so-called 表示“所谓的”。例：

This so-called mercy means nothing. 这种所谓的怜悯一文不值。

3. Mainframe computers were very large indeed, often occupying whole air-conditioned rooms, employing full-time technicians and run on specially written software.

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【译文】计算机主机确实很大，常常占据了装有空调的多间房间，雇用专职的技师，而且得用专门编写的软件才能运行。

【用法】(1)句中现在分词短语 occupying…，employing…和过去分词短语 run…均作定语，修饰 computers。正常情况下，分词短语作定语应直接置于所修饰词之后，即 computer 之后，但这里由于3个分词短语一起构成的定语很长，而谓语部分相对较短，为使句子平衡，如句中那样将整个作定语的分词短语置于全句的最后。这里现在分词 occupying 和 employing 表示当时的经常性动作和状态。

(2)非限定性分词短语作定语

分词短语作定语，分为限定性和非限定性两种，非限定性用逗号与所修饰名词隔开，在意思上相当于一个非限定性定语从句。

The book，written in 1957，tells of the struggle of the miners.

这本书写于1957年，讲的是矿工们的奋斗。

The substance，discovered almost by accident，has revolutionized medicine.

这种偶然发现的物质，为医学界带来了一场革命。

Our farm machinery industry，starting from scratch，has made great strides，too.

我们的农业机械产业，从零开始，也有了了不起的进步。

(3)air-conditioned 是形容词“装有空气调节器的”。其名词为 air-conditioning 空气(温湿度)调节，air-condition 为其动词。

【词汇】**full-time** *adj.*

full-time 表示“全工作日制的，专职的”。它与 part-time(兼职的)意思相反。

technician *n.*

technician 表示“技师”，大家可以把这样几个形近和近义词放在一起记忆：technique(技术，方法)，technical(技术的)，technology(科技)。

software *n.* 软件，是 hardware(硬件)的反义词。

4. In the early 1980s，the computer giant，IBM produced the world's first Personal Computer.

【译文】80年代初，计算机行业的王牌公司美国国际商用机器公司(IBM)生产出了世界上第一台个人电脑。

【用法】IBM 是 International Business Machines(美国国际商用机器公司)的缩写。

5. This ran on an "operating system" called DOS，produced by a then small company named Microsoft.

【译文】这种电脑采用了一种被称为磁盘操作系统(DOS)的工作程序，而这种程序是由当时规模不大的微软公司生产的。

【用法】(1)句中 called…、produced…和 named…均为过去分词短语作定语，分别修饰 system、DOS 和 company，但 called…和 named…为限定性定语，而 produced…为非限定性定语。

(2)run(…)on…在……上跑，靠……运转(……)，在……上进行(……)。此短语为动词加介词型短语。

(3)DOS 是 Disk Operating System(磁盘操作系统)的缩写。在 windows 操作系统开发出来之前，DOS 曾处于统治地位。

6. From those humble beginnings，we have seen the development of the user-friendly home computers and multimedia machines which are in common use today.

【译文】从那些简陋的初级阶段，我们看到了现在都已普及的、使用简便的家用电脑和多媒体的微机的发展。

【用法】**user-friendly** *adj.*

user 表示“使用者”，friendly 表示“友好的”。合在一起表示“让使用者易接纳的”，即“易操作的，好用的”。例：a user-friendly keyboard(简便的键盘)。

multimedia *adj.*

multi 表示“多个的”，如 multinational(跨国的)，multilateral(多边的)，multicolored(多彩的)。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

media 表示"媒体",合在一起表示"多媒体"。例:

a multimedia approach of learning(使用多媒体的学习方法)

multicultural 多元文化的;multiracial 多种族的;mulitskilling 复合性技能;multi-storey 多层的;multi-purpose 多用途的;a multimillionaire 拥有几百万财富的富翁

7. Considering how recent these developments are, it is even more remarkable that as long ago as the 1960s, an Englishman, Leon Bagrit was able to predict some of the uses of computers which we know today.

【译文】考虑到这些发展时间之短,就更觉得英国人莱昂·巴格瑞特早在六十年代就能预测我们今天知道的计算机的一些用途是非常了不起的。

【用法】(1)how 在这里是副词,表示程序,修饰形容词 recent。

(2)as long ago as...早在……。

(3)Considering how recent these developments are,此句是一个原因状语从句,用现在分词开头表示原因。

8. Bagrit dismissed the idea that computers would learn to "think" for themselves and would "rule the world", which people liked to believe in those days.

【译文】巴格瑞特根本不接受计算机可以学会自己去"思考"和计算机可以"统治世界"这种想法,而这种想法是当时的人们都愿意相信的。

【用法】**dismiss** *vt.* 开除,解雇;认为不重要而不予考虑 dismiss sth. (as...)

I think we can safely dismiss their objections. 我认为我们完全可以不理会他们的反对。

He dismissed the opinion polls as worthless. 他认为民意测验毫无用处而不予考虑。

He dismissed the idea as impossible. 他认为这个想法不现实而不予考虑。

9. Bagrit foresaw a time when computers would be small enough to hold in the hand, when they would be capable of providing information about traffic jams and suggesting alternative routes, when they would be used in hospitals to help doctors to diagnose illnesses, when they would relieve office workers and accountants of dull, repetitive clerical work.

【译文】巴格瑞特预示有一天计算机可以小到拿在手上,计算器可以提供有关交通阻塞的信息,并建议可供选择的其它路线,计算机在医院里可以帮助病人诊断病情,计算机可使办公室人员和会计免除那些枯燥、重复的劳动。

【用法】并列关系的双重或多重定语从句

两个或两个以上并列的定语从句修饰同一个先行词,可以由连词 and, but, or 连接。通常要求重复使用关系词。若重复使用同一关系词作定语从句的宾语时,第一个关系代词可省略,第二个及后面的都不可以省略。

The English course is designed for the college students who have mastered basic English grammar, and who want to enlarge their vocabulary within a short period of time.

该英语课程是为已经掌握了基础英语语法,又想在短时间内扩大词汇量的大学生设置的。

The dictionary(which)I bought last month, and which I lost two days later, now turns up on the bookshelf of my best friend.

我上个月买的,两天后又丢失的字典现在出现在我最好朋友的书架上。

【词汇】**alternative.** *adj. n.*

alternative 表示"可用于代替其他事物的,可供选择的",例:Could you find any alternative means of transport? 可以找到其他的运输方法吗? alternative 作名词,表示"可能的选择",例:You have the alternative of staying here or get out immediately. 你可以选择留在这里或者立即出去。

diagnose *vt.*

diagnose 表示"诊断(疾病)",常用于 diagnose sth. as sth. 的句式。例:The doctor diagnosed his illness as measles. 医生诊断他的病为麻疹。

www.TopSage.com

relieve *v.*

relieve 表示“减轻，缓解”。例：The drug will relieve your sufferings. 这种药可以减轻你的痛苦。This bypass relieves traffic jams. 这条旁道缓解了交通堵塞。习语：relieve one's feelings，通过哭喊、粗暴行为等发泄感情。relieve sb. of sth. 表示“解除某人的（负担、责任）等”。例：relieve the general of his command. 解除将军的指挥权。

accountant *n.*

accountant 表示“会计”，可以和以下几个词一同记忆：account（帐目），accountancy（会计职业），accounting（会计学）。

repetitive *adj.*

此词和 repititious 是一样的意思，都表示“重复的、反复的”。例：a repetitive tune（反复的曲调）；Could you avoid asking the repetitive questions? 你可不可以不要总是问同样的问题？

clerical *adj.*

此词表示“办公室工作的，文书的”。例：clerical work（文书工作）。

10. Of course, Leon Bagrit could not possibly have foreseen the development of the Internet, the worldwide system that enables us to communicate instantly with anyone in any part of the world by using computers linked to telephone networks.

【译文】当然了，莱昂·巴格瑞特根本没有可能预测到因特网——就是把计算机连结到电话线路上，以便和世界上任何一个地方的人立即进行联系的一个世界范围的通讯系统——的发展。

【词汇】Internet *n.*

inter 在英文中表示“互相”，如：interview（面试），interaction（互动），interpenetrate（互渗）。net 表示“网络”，所以两词合在一起翻译为“互联网”。顺便说一句，大家在上网时常见的 WWW，是 world wide web 的缩写。

network *n.*

network 表示“网络”或“网状系统”，例：a network of railways（铁路网），a spy network（间谍网），a communication network（通讯网），the old-boy network（[男性]老同学关系网）。

11. Nor could he have foreseen how we could use the Internet to obtain information on every known subject, so we can read it on a screen in our homes and even print it as well if we want to.

【译文】他也无法预测到我们可以利用因特网获取有关任何已知专题的信息，以便在家里的屏幕上阅读，如果愿意的话甚至可以将其打印出来。

【用法】nor（也不）放在句首句子需倒装。nor 一般放在 neither 或否定句的后面，在文章中，该句与前一句“Leon Bagrit could not possible have foreseen…”相对应。

如：Never have I been to Beijing. 我从没去过北京。Hardly could I bear your behavior. 我几乎不能容忍你的行为。

12. If he, or someone like him, were alive today, he might be able to tell us what to expect in the next fifty years.

【译文】如果他或是像他一样的什么人今天还活着的话，他大概可以告诉我们下一个 50 年后会发生什么事情。

【用法】是虚拟语气，所以用了 if he were alive，对现在事情的虚拟用“过去式＋could/might/would”，对过去事情的虚拟用“过去完成时＋could/might/would have done”。例：If I were you，I would marry her. 如果我是你，我就会娶她。If I had attended that meeting，I would have seen you. 如果我参加了那次会议，我就会见到你了。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 52 Mud is mud

本节重点和难点

- 现在分词短语作状语
- 动词不定式作原因状语
- 主语从句
- 双宾语结构

本课词汇

permanent ['pəːmənənt] *adj.* 永久的，固定的

tint [tint] *vt.* 给……着色

delicate ['delikət] *adj.* 淡色的

shade [ʃeid] *n.* 阴，阴影；遮光物，罩 *vt.* 遮蔽，遮光

observant [əb'zəːvənt] *adj.* 观察力敏锐的

greyish ['greiiʃ] *adj.* 淡灰色的

dispel [dis'pel] *vt.* 消除，驱散

【辨析】dispel 驱散，消除：某物使其他物在某处彻底消除，语气较强，特别指驱散不可捉摸的东西，如云、情绪等；scatter 分散、驱散：聚集在一起的人或物由于外力而杂乱地向不同方向散开；disperse 散开，驱散：正式用语，指自动离开，散开范围更广阔。

outlandish [aut'lændiʃ] *adj.* 稀奇古怪的

acquisition [ækwi'ziʃən] *n.* 获得

fanciful ['fænsiful] *adj.* 想象的，爱空想的

insoluble [in'sɔljubl] *adj.* 难以溶解的

prompt [prɔmt] *adj.* 迅速的，即时的 *v.* 推动，提示，鼓动

exclusive [iks'kluːsiv] *adj.* 独占的，占有的；除外的，排他的

syllable ['siləbəl] *n.* 音节

bewilderment [bi'wildəmənt] *n.* 迷惑，糊涂

freckle ['frekl] *n.* 雀斑

convey [kən'vei] *vt.* 传达

evidently ['evidəntli] *adv.* 显然地，明显地

weird [wiəd] *adj.* 稀奇古怪的

concoction [kən'kɔkʃən] *n.* 混合剂，调制品

meet with one's requirements 合……的心意

intoxicate [in'tɔksikeit] *vt.* 使陶醉，醉人

blank [blæŋk] *adj.* 空白的，空着的；茫然的 *n.* 空白，空白表格

【词组】fill in the blank 填表格

discreetly [dis'kriːtli] *adv.* 谨慎地

clutch [clʌtʃ] *vt.* 抓紧，紧握；急抓，突然抢走 *vi.* 企图抓住，设法抓住 *n.* 掌握，控制；手，爪子；离合器

【词组】be in sb.'s clutches 在某人掌握之下

【辨析】clutch 和 grab，grasp，seize，snatch，take 都含"抓、握、取"的意思。clutch 指"突然抓住"，常伴有"急切或害怕的心情"。grab 指"抢夺、攫取"。grasp 指"紧紧地抓住"，用于比喻意义时指"掌握，领会"。seize 指"突然用力地抓住、握住"。snatch 指"突然快速地拿、取、夺、抢走"。take 是常用词，指"拿、握、取"。

adorn [ə'dɔːn] *vt.* 装饰

【辨析】adorn 指某人打扮自己，使容貌衣着更好看，有时用于物；decorate 指用装饰物来装点某物，使其更美观，一般少用于人；embellish 指用语句或插图来装饰书籍，用其他饰物来美化物体，一般少用于人；ornament 指用精美的饰物来装饰建筑物；furnish 一般指房子等家具的陈设。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. Despite the fact that the bottle is tinted a delicate shade of green, an observant visitor would soon notice that it is filled with what looks like a thick, greyish substance.

【译文】尽管那只瓶子呈淡绿色，但细心的客人很快就会发现瓶里装的是一种看上去黏稠、颜色发灰的东西。

【用法】(1)本句属于多重复合句，精读过程中要仔细分析其结构。that 引导的同位语从句作 the fact 的同位语，it 指代 bottle，第二个 that 引导一个宾语从句，在这个宾语从句中又套了一个 what 引导的宾语从句，结构比较复杂，希望大家用心体会。

(2)a delicate shade of green 浅绿色。在句中作 that 从句主语 bottle 的补足语。

(3)despite/in spite of the fact that 可与 although 换用，但前者比较正式，仅在书面语中使用：Despite the fact that/Though the task was difficult, they managed to accomplish it in time. 虽然任务艰巨，他们还是设法及时完成。

(4)体会 tint 与 dye 的区别，前者效果不明显，后者有明显效果。

2. If you were to ask Harry what was in the bottle, he would tell you that it contained perfumed mud.

【译文】如果你问哈里瓶里装着什么，他会告诉你是香水泥。

【用法】(1)本句表示与将来事实相反的假设，从句用"were to do"，主句用"would to do"。在 if 条件从句中，what 引导宾语从句作动词 ask 的宾语，what 在从句中作主语。在主句中，that 引导宾语从句作 tell 的宾语，that 在句中不作任何成分，只起连接词的作用。

(2)were to 用于条件句中表达将来不太可能发生的或者不希望发生的事情；were to 不受人称、性、数的限制。这种结构常用倒装，省略 If。

If you were to run into Peter, tell him he owes me a letter. → Were you to...

万一你碰见彼得，请告诉他该给我写信了。

If I were to be sent to prison, would you visit me? → Were I to...

要是我被关进监狱，你会来看望我吗？

If it were to rain tomorrow, we would have to call off the excursion. →Were it to...

要是明天下雨，我们就不得不取消这次郊游。

(3)mud 的意思是"泥浆"，文章题目直接翻译为"泥浆就是泥浆"，其真正含义为"实事求是"，也就如同我们经常在作文中所引用的一句谚语"call a spade a spade"(spade 铁锹)。

(4)**shade** *n.* 色度，树荫

put sb. in the shade 使某人相形见绌

3. This brief experiment would dispel any further doubts you might have.

【译文】这一简单的试验会消除你可能存有的一切疑虑。

【用法】**dispel** *vt.*

词根 pel 的意思是"驱赶"。

repel 排斥　compel 迫使　expel 开除

4. How Harry came into the possession of this outlandish stuff makes an interesting story which he is fond of relating.

【译文】哈里如何得到这个稀奇古怪的东西是个有趣的故事，他对此津津乐道。

【用法】(1)How 在此引导一个主语从句，how 在从句中作方式状语。

(2)come into the possession of...(被……)占有/获得(……)。

【联想】名词性从句

(1)定义：在句子中起名词作用的句子叫名词从句(Noun Clauses)。名词从句的功能相当于名词词组，它在复合句中能担任主语、宾语、表语、同位语、介词宾语等，因此根据它在句中不同的语法功能，名词从句又可分别称为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

(2)引导名词性从句的连接词可分为三类：

连接词：that, whether, if 不充当从句的任何成分

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

连接代词：what，whatever，who，whoever，whom，whose，which.

连接副词：when，where，how，why

(3)名词性 that-从句

①由从属连词 that 引导的从句叫作名词性 that-从句。That 只起连接主句和从句的作用，在从句中不担任任何成分，本身也没有词义。名词性 that-从句在句中能充当主语、宾语、表语、同位语和形容词宾语，例如：

主语：That he is still alive is sheer luck.

他还活着全靠运气。

宾语：John said that he was leaving for London on Wednesday.

约翰说他星期三要到伦敦去。

表语：The fact is that he has not been seen recently.

事实是近来谁也没有见过他。

同位语：The fact that he has not been seen recently disturbs everyone in his office.

近来谁也没有见过他，这一事实令办公室所有的人不安。

形容词宾语：I am glad that you are satisfied with your job.

你对工作满意我感到很高兴。

②That-从句作主语通常用 it 作先行词，而将 that-从句置于句末，例如：

It is quite clear that the whole project is doomed to failure.

很清楚，整个计划注定要失败。

It's a pity that you should have to leave.

你非走不可真是件憾事。

it 作形式主语的 that-从句有以下四种不同的搭配关系：

a. It ＋ be＋形容词＋that-从句

It is necessary that...	有必要……
It is important that...	重要的是……
It is obvious that...	很明显……

b. It ＋be＋-ed 分词＋that-从句

It is believed that...	人们相信……
It is known to all that...	众所周知……
It has been decided that...	已决定……

c. It ＋be ＋名词＋that-从句

It is common knowledge that...	……是常识
It is a surprise that...	令人惊奇的是……
It is a fact that...	事实是……

d. It＋不及物动词＋that-分句

It appears that...	似乎……
It happens that...	碰巧……
It occurred to me that...	我突然想起……

(4)由 wh-词引导名词性从句：

由 wh-词引导的名词从句叫作名词性 wh-从句。wh-词包括 who，whom，whose，whoever，what，whatever，which，whichever 等连接代词和 where，when，how，why 等连接副词。wh-从句的语法功能除了和 that-从句一样外，还可充当介词宾语、宾语补语和间接宾语等，例如：

主语：How the book will sell depends on its author.

书销售如何取决于作者。

直接宾语：In one's own home one can do what one likes.

在自己家里可以随心所欲。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

间接宾语：The club will give whoever wins a prize.

俱乐部将给得胜者设奖。

表语：My question is who will take over president of the Foundation.

我的问题是谁将接任该基金会主席职位。

宾语补足语：She will name him whatever she wants to.

她高兴给他起什么名字就取什么名字。

同位语：I have no idea when he will return.

我不知道他什么时候回来。

形容词宾语：I'm not sure why she refused their invitation.

我尚不能肯定她为什么拒绝他们的邀请。

介词宾语：That depends on where we shall go.

(5)if, whether 引导的名词从句

①yes-no 型疑问从句

从属连词 if, whether 引导的名词从句是由一般疑问句或选择疑问转化而来的，因此也分别被称为 yes-no 型疑问从句和选择型疑问从句，其功能和 wh-从句的功能相同，例如：

主语：Whether the plan is feasible remains to be proved.

这一计划是否可行还有待证实。

宾语：Let us know whether/if you can finish the article before Friday.

请让我们知道你是否能在星期五以前把文章写完。

表语：The point is whether we should lend him the money.

问题在于我们是否应该借钱给他。

同位语：They are investigating the question whether the man is trustworthy.

他们正在调查那个人是否值得信赖。

形容词宾语：She's doubtful whether we shall be able to come.

她怀疑我们是否能够前来。

介词宾语：I worry about whether he can pass through the crisis of his illness.

我担心他是否能度过疾病的危险期。

②选择性疑问从句

选择性疑问从句由关联词 if/whether...or 或 whether...or not 构成，例如：

Please tell me whether/if they are Swedish or Danish.

请告诉我他们是瑞典人还是丹麦人。

I don't care whether you like the plan or not.

我不在乎你是否喜欢这个计划。

5. Furthermore, the acquisition of this bottle cured him of a bad habit he had been developing for years.

【译文】此外，得到这瓶香水泥还治好了他多年的一个坏习惯。

【用法】(1)furthermore(此外，而且)等于 also 或 in addition，表示递进关系。

(2)cure sb. of...治愈某人的……，纠正某人的……，矫正某人的……，消除(弊病等)。

This medicine will cure you of your cough. 这种药会治好你的咳嗽。

Joining the Labor Party began to cure me of such ideas. 加入工党使我开始放弃这种想法。

The shock of losing my purse cured me of all of former absent-mindedness.

丢掉钱包的震惊使我改正了原先心不在焉的坏毛病。

A spell in the army will cure him of his laziness. 在军队中待一段时间会矫正他的懒惰。

(3)develop a(bad)habit 养成(不良)习惯。

【词汇】**acquisition** *n.* 得到，获得

quire-, quisit-追求；acquire *vt.* 获得；acquisitive *adj.* 贪婪的；require *vt.* 需要，要求；requisition *n.* 请求，要求；inquire *vt.* 询问；inquisition；*n.* 询问，调查；inquisitive 过分打听他人私事的

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

6. On entering a shop, he would ask for a new perfume called "Scented Shadow" or for "insoluble bath cubes".

【译文】他走进商店后，会提出要一种名叫"香影"的新型香水或什么"不溶浴皂"。

【用法】shadow 和 shade 都有"阴影"的意思。

(1) shadow 是由 shade 形成的暗黑的形状，主要是指投在地面上的一块"影子，阴影"，但不是用于乘凉的地方。

(2) shade 是指任何遮住阳光的地方，一般指用于躲避阳光照射或曝晒的"阴凉处，树荫"。

scent, fragrance, odour, flaour, smell, perfume, scent, incense 这些词都有"气味"之意。

fragrance：较正式的典雅用词，常指化妆品、花朵和香料等发出的令人感到新鲜、愉快的香味。

odour：书面中性词，侧重气味本身的本质，既可指令人愉快的气味，也可指令人作呕难闻的气味。

flaour：指影响嗅觉、味觉的香气或香味，多用于指食物等独特的味。

smell：普通用词，与 odour 很相近，中性词。可指好闻或不好闻或中性的气味。

perfume：书面用词，指强烈、浓厚的天然或人工制造的香气。

scent 与 smell 很接近，但着重某物质或物体所特有的气味，多指好闻的气味。

incense：指香燃烧时发出的芳香的烟味。

7. If a shop assistant told him she had not heard of it, he would pretend to be considerably put out.

【译文】要是女售货员告诉他从未听说过这些东西，他会装出十分遗憾和不安的样子。

【用法】put out，(=upset, annoy)，使恼火，使失望。在这种意义下，该短语常用被动式。还可表示"困扰"、"使不安"，"使不便"的意思，如：

He is never put out by unexpected questions. 他从不被意外的问题所窘住。

The manager was much put out by the loss of the important document.

由于丢失了重要的文件，经理极为烦恼。

8. One day, he went to an exclusive shop in London and asked for "Myrolite".

【译文】一天，他去伦敦一家高级商店要买一种叫"密诺莱特"的东西。

【用法】**exclusive** *adj*. 高级的，奢华的，只适合富裕顾客的：exclusive shops 经营高档商品的商店

9. She produced all sorts of weird concoctions, but none of them met with Harry's requirements.

【译文】她一个货架接着一个货架地寻找，拿出各种各样稀奇古怪的化妆品，但没有一样能够符合哈里的要求。

【词汇】**weird** *adj*. 奇怪的，有非常奇异性质的：weird clothes 奇装异服；weird ideas 怪诞的念头

concoction *n*. 调制品 They gave me a strange concoction to drink. 他们给了我一杯味道很怪的调制饮料。concoct *vt*. 调制(食物或饮料)；编造(借口等)Jean concocted a spendid meal from the leftovers. 琼用剩菜做了一顿可口的饭。John concocted an elaborate excuse for being late. 约翰为迟到编造了一个巧妙的借口。

10. When Harry put on his act of being mildly annoyed, the girl promised to order some for him.

【译文】哈里装出不高兴的样子时，女售货员答应为他订货。

【用法】put on：装出，假装有……

His modesty is all put on. 他的谦虚都是装出来的。

put on an air of innocence 装出天真的样子

He put on an American accent. 他装出美国的口音。

She's not really ill; she puts it on to get people's sympathy.

她并不是真的生病；她只是为了博得大家的同情而装出来的。

He says he is unwell, but I think he is putting it on. 他说他不舒服，但我觉得他只是在装腔作势。

11. Intoxicated by his success, Harry then asked for perfumed mud.

【译文】哈里为他的恶作剧成功而感到洋洋得意，又提出要买香水泥。

【用法】**intoxicate** *v*. 使陶醉、刺激或使激动不已

Success intoxicated him. 成功使他冲昏头脑，得意忘形。

www.TopSage.com

12. He picked up what seemed to be the smallest bottle and discreetly asked the price.

【译文】他挑出一个看上去最小的瓶子，谨慎地问了价。

【用法】discreet[同]careful，cautious，considerate，prudent，thoughtful *adj.* 言行谨慎的；小心的；有智谋的

例：My secretary is very discreet. She never tells anyone unconcerned anything about the company's business. 我的秘书很谨慎，她对公司的业务从不对任何无关的人谈起。

13. He was glad to get away with a mere twenty pounds and he beat a hasty retreat, clutching the precious bottle under his arm.

【译文】他庆幸只破费了 20 英镑便得以脱身。他把那只宝贵的瓶子夹在腋下，溜之大吉。

【用法】(1)clutching the precious bottle under his arm 为现在分词短语作伴随状语，修饰 beat a hasty retreat。

(2)get away，逃脱，离开。

(3)beat a retreat，(匆匆)撤退，比喻放弃(事业等)，打退堂鼓。

14. The curious bottle which now adorns the bookcase in his study was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.

【译文】在他书房的书柜里摆着的那瓶形状古怪的香水泥就是他第一次也是最后一次购买的稀有化妆品。

【用法】adorn 和 decorate 区别：前者可用于人或物，后者一般只用于物体

She likes to adorn herself with jewels. 她喜欢佩戴珠宝来装饰自己。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 53 In the public interest

本节重点和难点

- 现在分词短语作目的状语
- 宾语从句中的虚拟语气
- 动词的分词短语作后置定语
- 同位语从句

本课词汇

evolve [i'vɔlv] *vt.* 使逐渐形成,发展

【词组】evolve from the ape 从猿进化而来;evolve into 进化成;渐渐发展成(演变成);evolve into a theory 发展成理论

high-handed 专横的

incompetent [in'kɔmpitənt] *adj.* 无能的,不合格的,不胜任的

over-zealously 过分热忱地(too keenly)

safeguard ['seifgɑːd] *vt.* 维护,捍卫 *n.* 安全措施,安全装置

parliament ['pɑːləmənt] *n.* 议会,国会

qualified ['kwɔlifaid] *adj.* 有资格的,合格的

grievance ['griːvəns] *n.* 不满,不平

Justiteombudsman ['dʒʌstait'ɔmbudzmæn] *n.* 司法特派员,专门调查官员舞弊情况的政府官员(简称 J. O.)

ombudsman ['ɔmbudzmæn] *n.* 立法机关所任命的专员

secretive ['siːkritiv] *adj.* 保密的

correspondence [ˌkɔris'pɔndəns] *n.* 对应,相当于;符合,一致;通信,信件

【词组】by/through correspondence 用写信的办法/in correspondence with 和……一致;与……有通信联系

alter ['ɔːltə] *vt.* 改变,更改 *vi.* 改变,变样

accusation [ækju'zeiʃən] *n.* 控告

prejudiced ['predʒudist] *adj.* 有偏见的

prompt [prɔmpt] *adj.* 即时的

课文详解

1. Sweden has evolved an excellent system for protecting the individual citizen from high-handed or incompetent public officers.

【译文】在瑞典,已逐渐形成了一种完善的制度以保护每个公民不受专横的和不称职的政府官员的欺压。

【用法】(1)evolve(=to develop gradually by a long continuous process)表示"(使)发展,(使)进化",还有"引伸出,推论,推定(事实等)",通常与 from 连用:如:Man has evolved from the ape. 人是从类人猿进化而来的。

(2)protect...from...,"使……不受……",如:He protected his mother from the rain. 他保护母亲不受雨淋。

【词根】-volve

revolve *vt.* 旋转,转动

www.TopSage.com

The room began to revolve, then he fainted. 屋子开始旋转，然后他就昏倒了。

evolve *vt.* 发展，演变

Agriculture evolved slowly over thousands of years. 几千年来，农业发展得很缓慢。

evolve a style of one's own 逐渐形成了自己的风格

involve *vt.* 需要，包含；使卷人，牵涉

Getting a driver's licence involves learning how to drive, studying the rules of the road, and taking a test. 要得到驾驶执照需要学习开车，学习交通规则，还要经过考试。

2. As long ago as 1809, the Swedish Parliament introduced a scheme to safeguard the interest of the individual.

【译文】早在1809年，瑞典议会就建立了一个保护公民利益的制度。

【用法】to safeguard...individual 为动词不定式短语，作 scheme 的定语，即"一个保护公民利益的制度"。

safeguard *vt.* 保护，捍卫 to safeguard sth. from/against；保护……免受……

The agreement will safeguard the newspapers from government interference. 这项协议保护报纸不受政府干预。bodyguard 保镖 blackguard 歹徒

3. A parliamentary committee representing all political parties appoints a person who is suitably qualified to investigate private grievances against the State.

【译文】议会内有一个代表各政党利益的委员会，由它委派一位称职的人选专门调查个人对国家的意见。

【用法】(1) representing... parties 为现在分词短语，作 committee 的定语，意即"代表各政党的……"。

(2)句中 against the State 为介词短语，作定语，修饰 grievances。句中的 State 指 Sweden，因此需用大写。

【词汇】**qualified** *adj.* 有资格的，胜任的，具备必要条件的

He's not qualified to teach young children. 他不适合幼儿教育工作。

在表达"使……有资格作/当……"时，通常使用 qualify sb. as...这一结构，有时这一结构被引申为"认为……是……"的含义，如：They all qualified him as a doctor. 他们都认为他有资格作医生。

grievance *n.* 委屈，不平的事，牢骚(+against)

He had been nursing a grievance against his boss for months. 几个月来他对老板一直心怀不满。

注意：grieve *vi.* 悲伤，悲痛

4. There is nothing secretive about the Ombudsman's work, for his correspondence is open to public inspection.

【译文】司法特派员的工作没有什么秘密可言，他的信件是公开的，供公众监督。

【用法】be open to 该短语一般用作表语，to 后面跟名词或动名词：

(1) 乐于接受，愿意考虑：be open to discussion/suggestion

(2) 容易遭受：be open to cold/attack

【词汇】**correspondence** *n.* [U]来往信件，来往书信

the correspondence column 读者来信专栏 The library bought all the correspondence between Napoleon and his mistress. 这个图书馆买下了拿破仑和情人的所有信件。

respond *v.* 反应 correspondent *n.* 记者 correspond *vi.* (with)与……相一致

What he says doesn't correspond with what he does. 他言行不一。

5. If a citizen's complaint is justified, the Ombudsman will act on his behalf.

【译文】如果公民的意见正确，司法特派员便为他伸张正义。

【用法】justify sth. (to sb.)：对……做出解释；为……辩解；证明……正确

The Prime Minister has been asked to justify the decision to the Parliament.

要求首相对这一决定对议会做出解释。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

You don't need to justify yourself to me. 你不必向我解释你的理由。

justified *adj*. 合理的，有正当理由的

Is he justified in his criticisms? 他的批评有道理吗？

I think I'm completely justified in asking for her resignation. 我认为我要求她辞职是完全合理的。

6. The fact that the policeman was prejudiced against foreigners could not be recorded in the official files.

【译文】警察歧视外国人的事在官方档案中不可能加以记载。

【用法】prejudiced：*adj*. 有偏见的 a prejudiced opinion 偏见

prejudice：*n*. 偏见

"Pride and Prejudice"

（世界经典名著《傲慢与偏见》，英国女作家简·奥斯汀的代表作）

7. The policeman in question was severely reprimanded and was informed that if any further complaints were lodged against him, he would be prosecuted.

【译文】当事的警察受到严厉斥责，并被告知，如再有人投诉，他将受到起诉。

【用法】(1)并列连词 and 连接两个被动语态 was severely reprimanded 和 was informed；而 was informed 后面又接了一个 that 引导的宾语从句；该宾语从句是由含有 if 条件状语从句的主句构成。

(2)in question 在此作"有关的"(concerned)，in question 还可指"在考虑中的，在讨论中的"，如：This problem is not in question. 这个问题不在考虑中。

(3)lodge a complaint against...对……提出控诉/诉状，如：She lodged a complaint against her boss with the authorities. 她向当局控告她的邻居。

额外收获

文章主要讲述了瑞典有专门的司法特派员来调查民众受到政府工作人员不公正对待的案件。这篇文章采用的写作手法是先总体概述再具体举例说明，先介绍瑞典有完善且行之有效的制度保证公民不被政府官员欺压，再进一步介绍这项制度的建立和执行方式，最后用一个具体的例子来说明这项制度的整个执行过程。第 35 课"Justice was done"与此篇文章在结构和题材上有异曲同工之妙，如将这两篇和法律有关的文章一起阅读，相信会对大家阅读四、六级考试中出现的类似题材的文章打下坚实的基础。

文章讲到斯堪的纳维亚半岛各国的开明社会政策受到了全世界的推崇"The Scandinavian countries are much admired all over the world for their enlightened social policies."运用了 sth. /sb. be admired for sth.(某人或某物因为某个优点而受到赞扬)这个经典句型。我们可以直接进行模仿，例如：The soldier was admired for his bravery. 这个士兵因为勇敢而受到崇敬。在接下来的文章中作者尤其举出了瑞典这个国家作为例子向读者展示北欧国家的开明社会政策。

第二段主要讲述为了保证公民不被政府官员欺压，瑞典制定了一套完备的制度。制度主要内容是议会确定一个称职的人选即司法特派员专门调查个人对国家的意见。"A parliamentary committee representing all political parties appoints a person who is suitably qualified to investigate private grievances against the State.""representing all political parties"现在分词短语作后置定语修饰 committee。句中出现了又一经典句型"be qualified to do sth."如：Leonardo Dicaprio was well qualified to play the role of Jack in the movie "Titanic".(里奥纳多·迪卡普里奥完全能胜任电影《泰坦尼克号》中杰克这个角色。)

在接下来的文章中作者讲述到司法特派员的工作不受政治压力的制约"The Ombudsman is not subject to political pressure."句中出现了一个非常精炼而且有效的表达值得我们借鉴，"be subject to"受到……的控制/制约。如：All citizens in this country are subject to the law.(这个国家的全体公民都必须服从法律。)虽然司法特派员的工作不受政治压力的制约，但是他的工作要受到公众的监督，所以不论案件大小他都会认真处理，并且针对不同性质的案件采取不同的解决方法。

文章的第三段通过讲述司法特派员处理一个外国人投诉受到一个当地警察虐待的案件的全过程，向读者展示这套完备的司法制度是如何具体实施和运作的。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 54 Instinct or cleverness?

本节重点和难点

- 动词的现在分词的各种用法
- 形容词作状语的用法
- 动词的非谓语形式
- 过去分词短语作状语

本课词汇

insect ['insekt] *n.* 昆虫，虫；可鄙的人

wage [weidʒ] *n.* 工资，报酬 *vt.* 进行

【用法】wage(s) 一般用复数形式，意为"工钱"、"工资"。如：a weekly wages of $200 周薪 200 美元。

作定语修饰名词时，一般用单数形式，如：wage earner 挣工资的人，wage packet 工资袋。

contaminate [kən'tæmineit] *vt.* 污染

【辨析】contaminate 污染，弄脏：某物接触了不干净的东西或进入了异物而造成暂时不能使用，有时用于比喻；pollute 弄脏，污染：有害物质的扩散使空气、饮水等有毒、危害人的健康，比喻下流淫秽的东西毒害人的思想；taint 沾污，腐败：某物由于不干净东西的感染而腐烂变质。用于比喻某人思想堕落。

provocation [ˌprɔvə'keiʃən] *n.* 挑衅，激怒

spider ['spaidə] *n.* 蜘蛛

wasp [wɔsp] *n.* 黄蜂

moth [mɔθ] *n.* 蛾

ant [ænt] *n.* 蚂蚁

revulsion [ri'vʌlʃən] *n.* 厌恶

horde [hɔːd] *n.* 大群

erase [i'reiz] *v.* 擦掉；删去

【辨析】erase 擦掉，抹掉：去掉某种痕迹，比如从记忆中拭去某事或某人；expunge 删去，除去：所写的东西删除部分或全部，用于书籍、电影、剧本等；efface 擦掉，消除；逐步擦去某物表面上的字迹。

pray [prei] *v.* 祈祷，请求

【词组】pray to sb. for... 祈求……

mantis ['mæntis]=(praying mantis) *n.* 螳螂

entranced [in'trɑːnst] *adj.* 出神的

beetle ['biːtl] *n.* 甲虫

sheltered ['ʃeltəd] *adj.* 伤不着的，无危险的

luscious ['lʌʃəs] *adj.* 甘美的

cluster ['klʌstə] *n.* 一簇簇

aphid ['eifid] *n.* 蚜虫

underside ['ʌndəsaid] *n.* 下侧，底面

colony ['kɔləni] *n.* 殖民地；聚居区

sticky ['stiki] *adj.* 黏性的

scurry ['skʌri] *vt.* 急匆匆地走

swarm [swɔːm] *vt.* 密集

【词组】a swarm of 一群……/swarm with 挤满

【用法】a swarm of 表示一群动物，而这群动物被看作是一个整体时，谓语动词一般用单数，但考虑群体中的每一个成员时，也可以用复数形式的谓语动词。

ingenuity [ˌindʒi'njuːiti] *n.* 机灵

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

课文详解

1. We have been brought up to fear insects.

【译文】我们自幼就在对昆虫的惧怕中长大。

【用法】因为句子使用被动语态形式，因此句中的动词不定式 to fear insects 作主语 we 的补足语。(在主动语态中为宾语补足语。)We have been brought up to...参考 23 课。

We have been brought up to eat certain foods. 我们自幼就习惯吃某些食物。

2. We regard them as unnecessary creatures that do more harm than good.

【译文】我们把昆虫当作害多益少的无用东西。

【用法】(1)regard，看待，认为，常指对外表的评判或依据眼睛所见而做的判断，常用"regard...as..."结构，如：He regarded his wife as a beauty though others found her plain. 他认为他的太太漂亮，但别人觉得她长相平平。

(2)do more harm than good 害多利少，这里面包含两个短语：do harm/good to 对……有害/有益，如：A long rest would do good to you. 休息长一点对你有好处。

Our plan does more good than harm. 我们的计划利大于弊。

3. We continually wage war on them, for they contaminate our food, carry diseases, or devour our crops.

【译文】人类不断同昆虫斗争，因为它们污染食品、传播疾病、吞噬庄稼。

【用法】(1)wage 作"开展；从事(如战争或战斗)"，wage war on/against 与……作战；wage 作名词为"工资"，wage earner 挣工资的人。如：

They don't want to wage war on their friends. 他们不想同他们的朋友作战。

The police are waging war on drug pushers in the city. 警方正在全市发动一场打击毒贩的斗争。

The government has waged (a) war on poverty and disease. 政府发动了一场与贫穷和疾病的斗争。

(2)carry 在此意为"传播，携带(病毒)"，如：

Animals often carry many diseases. 动物经常传播多种疾病。

4. They sting or bite without provocation; they fly uninvited into our rooms on summer nights, or beat against our lighted windows.

【译文】它们无缘无故地叮人咬人；夏天的晚上，它们未经邀请便飞到我们房间里，或者对着露出亮光的窗户乱扑乱撞。

【用法】(1)sting 指蚊子、蜜蜂等昆虫用刺或叮或螫，如：

I was stung by a mosquito. 我被蚊子咬了一口。

而 bite 指人或动物上下齿开合弄断、咬碎东西的动作。

(2)fly uninvited into our rooms 形容词作伴随，参考 45 课 may have gone unnoticed，以及 53 课的类似结构。

【词汇】**provocation** *n.* 挑衅，惹怒；without provocation 无缘无故地：

The terrorists can strike at any time without provocation. 恐怖分子能无缘无故地发起攻击。

at the slightest provocation 动不动就：

She burst into tears at the slightest provocation. 她动不动就大哭起来。

【词根】voc-，voke-喊叫，声音；vocabulary 词汇；vocation 职业，天职；advocate 提倡(者)；convoke 召集(会议)；convocation 会议；revoke 取消，吊销；revocation 取消，吊销；provocative 挑衅的，煽动性的；provoke 挑衅，激怒，引发

【联想】provoke，irritate，aggravate 这些动词均含"激怒"之意。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

provoke：指激起某人强烈的愤怒，以致令人作出反应。

irritate：通常指使某人因受到不愉快的刺激而失去耐性，变得烦躁或恼怒。

aggravate：口语用词。指因长时间的反复言行而引起不快、烦躁或恼怒。

5. We live in dread not only of unpleasant insects like spiders or wasps, but of quite harmless ones like moths.

【译文】我们在日常生活中不但憎恶如蜘蛛、黄蜂这类令人讨厌的昆虫，而且对于无害的飞蛾等也同样反感。

【用法】(1)在这里 not only...but(also)(不但……而且……)实际上连接了两个并列分句：We live in dread of unpleasant insects like spiders or wasps. We live in dread of quite harmless ones like moths. 两个分句的谓语动词一样，因而 but 引导的分句省略了 live in dread，介词 of 不能省略。

(2)in dread of...在对……的恐惧之中，如：

The thief always lives in dread of being arrest. 这个小偷总是生活在被捕的担心中。

【联想】表示"害怕"的词：

fear：害怕，恐惧

It suggests fear of facing whatever is coming. 据说怕什么来什么。

dread：令人恐惧的事物，害怕

Illness is the great dread of his life. 他生活中最大的担心是生病。

Usually dread also means loss of courage. 通常恐惧意味着失去勇气。

fright：惊恐，惊吓

I nearly died of fright at the sight of escaped lion. 在看到那只逃出来的狮子时，我几乎吓死了。

alarm：恐慌

The news caused great alarm. 这条新闻引起了极大的恐慌。

terror：恐惧

The people ran from the enemy in terror. 人们恐惧地逃离敌人。

horror：恐怖战栗

I cried out in horror as I saw the man killed. 当我看到那个男人被杀时我恐怖地叫起来。

panic：惊恐万状

When I realized the situation I got into a panic. 当我意识到状况时，我惊恐万状。

awe：敬畏

He always stands in awe of his father. 他对父亲总是抱着一种敬畏心理。

6. Knowing that the industrious ant lives in a highly organized society does nothing to prevent us from being filled with revulsion....

【译文】即使知道勤奋的蚂蚁生活在具有高度组织性的社会里……我们也无法抑制对它们的反感。

【用法】(1)knowing that...society 为动名词短语，作主语，that 从句中的 ant 前使用了定冠词，指蚂蚁这一类，而非指一只蚂蚁。定冠词用于可数名词单数前表示一类的概念，如：The desk is made of woods. 桌子是用木头制成的。

(2)industrious(＝hard-working，diligent)表示"勤奋的，勤劳的"，名词形式是 industry：The fact has been discovered by an industrious police. 事情的真相已经被一名勤奋的警察发现了。

而 industrial(＝of industry and the people who work in it)表示"工业的，实业的，产业的"；名词形式也是 industry：

China isn't still an industrial country but an agricultural country.

中国还不是一个工业国家，而是一个农业国家。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

7. Most of our fears are unreasonable, but they are impossible to erase.

【译文】我们的恐惧大部分是没有道理的，但却无法消除。

【用法】erase *vt.* 擦，抹去；消除；eraser 橡皮擦，黑板擦

All doubts were suddenly erased from his mind. 他心中所有的疑虑突然烟消云散了。

erase injustice from the world 消除这个世界上的不公正

ras-，raz-擦，刮；erasure 擦掉，消除；raze 刮去，铲去；razor 剃须刀

8. We enjoy staring at them, entranced as they go about their business, unaware(we hope) of our presence.

【译文】我们喜欢入迷地看它们做事，它们不知道(但愿如此)我们就在它们身边。

【用法】(1)staring at them 为动名词短语，作宾语，由动词 enjoy 的用法所决定。

(2)entranced as they...business 为过去分词短语，作伴随状语，可视为 entranced 前省略了 being，用来修饰 staring。

(3)unaware of our presence 为形容词短语，也可视为其前省略了 being，作伴随状语，修饰 go about。

(4)go about 从事，干，为动介短语，如：He began to go about his job five years ago. 他五年前开始做他这份工作。

(5)entranced 出神的＝fascinated

I am entranced to the music. ＝I am fascinated by the music. 我听音乐听得入神了。

9. I am especially proud of it, not only because it has survived several severe winters, but because it occasionally produces luscious peaches.

【译文】我为这棵树感到特别自豪，不仅因为它度过了几个寒冬终于活了下来，而且还因为它有时结出些甘甜的桃子来。

【词汇】**luscious** *adj.* 甘美的；性感的；绚丽的：a luscious peach 甘美的桃子；a luscious young girl 性感的年轻女郎

lus-，lux-光辉；luxury 奢侈，奢华；luxuriant 华丽的，丰富的；lush 甘美的，芬芳的

10. During the summer, I noticed that the leaves of the tree were beginning to wither.

【译文】到了夏天，我发现树叶开始枯萎。

【辨析】wither，fade

wither *vi.*："枯萎，凋谢"。指因无活力而失去生气。

fade *vi.*："凋谢，褪色"。多指颜色的逐渐消失，有时也作"暗淡"讲。

The flowers have withered away. 花凋谢了。

Her hopes withered. 她的希望渐渐幻灭了。

Will this color fade? 这颜色会褪吗？

The blue rug has faded over the year. 那块小蓝地毯经过多年已褪色了。

withered neck 干瘪的脖子

withered muscle 萎缩的肌肉

withered flowers 干枯的花朵

withered face 憔悴的脸

11. I immediately embarked on an experiment which, even though it failed to get rid of the ants, kept me fascinated for twenty four hours.

【译文】我当即动手作了一项试验，这项试验尽管没有使我摆脱这些蚂蚁，却使我着迷了 24 小时。

【用法】(1)embark on sth. 见 46 课。

www.TopSage.com

(2)kept me fascinated 中 fascinated 作宾语 me 的补足语。which 为关系代词,引导定语从句,指代先行词 experiment。

12. I even went out at midnight with a torch and noted with satisfaction (and surprise) that the ants were still swarming around the sticky tape without being able to do anything about it.

【译文】半夜,我还拿着电筒来到花园里,满意地(同时惊奇地)发现那些蚂蚁还在围着胶带团团转,无能为力。

【用法】do sth. without doing 做某事却没……

I often fish for hours without catching anything. 我经常钓鱼却一无所获。

He studies medicine without being a doctor. 他学的是医学,却没有做医生。

13. I realized sadly that I had been completely defeated by their ingenuity. The ants had been quick to find an answer to my thoroughly unscientific methods!

【译文】我懊丧地感到败在了足智多谋的蚂蚁手下。蚂蚁已很快找到了相应的对策,来对付我那套完全不科学的办法。

【词汇】**ingenuity** *n.* 创造力,聪明才智

ingenious *adj.* 善于创造发明的:an ingenious cook 一个手巧的厨师

ingenuous *adj.* 天真的,单纯的:an ingenuous smile 天真的微笑

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 55 From the earth: Greetings

本节重点和难点

- 对现在事实的虚拟
- 动词不定式作目的状语
- "it is+形容词+to do sth."固定结构
- "make it+形容词+to do sth."固定结构

本课词汇

radio astronomy 射电天文学
relative ['relətiv] *adj.* 相对的
infinitely ['infinitli] *adv.* 无限地,无穷地
solar ['səulə] *adj.* 太阳系的
Venus ['vi:nəs] *n.* 金星
Mars [ma:z] *n.* 火星
orbit ['ɔ:bit] *n.* 运行轨道
astronomical [ˌæstrə'nɔmikəl] *adj.* 天文学的
generate ['dʒenəreit] *v.* 产生
particle ['pa:tikəl] *n.* 微粒,粒子
Jupiter ['dʒu:pitə] *n.* 木星
blot [blɔt] *v.* 遮暗
analyse ['ænəlaiz] *v.* 分析
bacteria [bæk'tiəriə] *n.* 细菌
oxygen ['ɔksidʒən] *n.* 氧气
realm [relm] *n.* 范畴,领域
endeavour [in'devə] *n.* 努力

课文详解

1. Finding planets is proving hard enough, but finding life on them will prove infinitely more difficult.

【译文】寻找行星已经证明相当困难,但是要在行星上发现生命则是难上加难。

【用法】句中的 finding planets 和 finding life on them 均为动名词短语,在句中作主语。

Finding planets is proving hard...

主动形式表示被动意义:

1)wash, clean, cook, iron, look, cut, sell, read, wear, feel, draw, write, sell, drive...

The book sells well。这本书卖得很好。

This knife cuts easily. 这刀子很好用。

2)blame, let(出租), remain, keep, rent, build

I was to blame for the accident? 这事故应该赖我?

3)在 need, require, want, worth(形容词), deserve 后的动名词必须用主动形式。

The door needs repairing. =The door needs to be repaired. 这门需要修一下。

This room needs cleaning. 这房间应该打扫一下。

This book is worth reading. 这本书值得一读。

2. Only the Earth provides ideal conditions, and even here it has taken more than four billion years for plant and animal life to evolve.

www.TopSage.com

【译文】只有地球提供了理想的条件,而即使在这里,植物和动物的进化也用了40多亿年的时间。

【用法】billion 10亿

1亿——100 million

3. Imagine a star up to twenty times larger, brighter and hotter than our own sun.

【译文】设想一下,有这么一颗恒星,它的大小、亮度和热度都是太阳的20倍。

【用法】up to

多达:The river is up to 2000 meters. 这条河长达2千米。

最多可达:Your bonus will be up to 2000 yuan. 你的奖金最多可达2000元。

4. Our own warm atmosphere and the heat generated by the telescope would make it impossible to detect objects as small as planets.

【译文】地球周围温暖的大气层和望远镜散出的热量使得我们根本不可能找到比行星更小的物体。

【词汇】**generate** *vt.* 产生:

gen-生;generation 一代人;genius 天才;ingenious 巧妙的,善于发明创造的;genetics 遗传学;eugenics 优生学

5. Even a telescope in orbit round the earth, like the very successful Hubble telescope, would not be suitable because of the dust particles in our solar system.

【译文】即使是一台放置在围绕地球的轨道上的望远镜——如非常成功的哈勃空间望远镜——也因为太阳系中的尘埃微粒而无法胜任。

【文化背景】Hubble telescope

哈勃空间望远镜(Hubble Space Telescope, HST),是人类第一座太空望远镜,运行在地球大气层外缘离地面约600公里的轨道上。它大约每100分钟环绕地球一周。哈勃空间望远镜是由美国国家航空航天局和欧洲航天局合作,于1990年发射入轨的。哈勃空间望远镜是以天文学家爱德文·哈勃的名字命名的。哈勃空间望远镜的角分辨率达到小于0.1秒,每天可以获取3到5G字节的数据。

由于运行在外层空间,哈勃空间望远镜获得的图像不受大气层扰动折射的影响,并且可以获得通常被大气层吸收的红外光谱的图像。

6. Once we detected a planet, we would have to find a way of blotting out the light from its star, so that we would be able to "see" the planet properly and analyse its atmosphere.

【译文】一旦我们找到这样一颗行星,我们就要想办法将它的恒星射过来的光线遮暗,这样我们就能彻底"看见"这颗行星,并分析它的大气层。

【用法】(1)句中 detected, would have to 和 would be able to 均为虚拟语气表达形式,更强调一种假设情况。

(2)blot out... 把……遮住,抹掉,如:The light is blotted out by the clothes. 衣服遮住了灯光。Clouds blotted out the sun. 云遮住了太阳。

【词汇】**blot** *v.* 遮暗

bl-遮蔽,模糊;blur 使模糊;block 阻塞;blockade 封锁;blunder 跌跌撞撞,犯错

7. In the first instance, we would be looking for plant life, rather than "little green men".

【译文】首先,我们要寻找植物,而不是那种"小绿人"。

【用法】(1)in the first instance 起初,首先。介词短语,其反义表示为 in the last instance(最后),如:I did so too in the first instance. 我起初也这样做。

(2)rather than: instead of 而不是,连接平行的句子成分 would rather do sth. than do sth.

These shoes are comfortable rather than pretty. 这双鞋与其说漂亮,不如说舒适。

I'd prefer to go in August rather than in July. 我宁愿八月份而不是七月份去。

I prefer starting early rather than leaving everything to the last minute.

我更喜欢早点开始而不是把任何事情留到最后一分钟。

Rather than allow the vegetables to go bad, he sold them at half price.

为了不让这些蔬菜变坏,他都半价出售了。

www.TopSage.com

8. The life forms most likely to develop on a planet would be bacteria.

【译文】在行星上最容易生存下来的是细菌。

【用法】to develop on a planet 为动词不定式短语，作定语，修饰 forms。likely 这里作为程度副词修饰其后的动词不定式。当 likely 作副词使用时，通常使用 very 或 most 对其进行修饰，如：He will most(very) likely come right away. 他大概马上就会来的。

【辨析】germ，bacteria，virus，microbe，bug 这些名词都含“致病的微生物”之意。

germ：微生物的俗称，专指引起人体生病的病菌。

bacteria(bacterium 的复数形式)，泛指任何在动植物体中广泛传播的微生物细菌，其中有的对生命体无害，有的能导致传染病或严重疾病，如天花、霍乱等。

virus：技术用语，特指病毒或过滤性病原体。

microbe：本义指在显微镜下才能见到的微生物，现在多指引起疾病的细菌。

bug：非正式用词，指细菌或由病毒所引起的传染病。

9. No human endeavour or thought would be unchanged by it.

【译文】任何人类的努力和想法都会发生变化。

【词汇】**endeavor** *n.* *vt.* 努力：

Please make every endeavor to arrive on time. 请尽量按时到达。

I will endeavor to do my best for my country. 我将竭尽全力报效国家。

【辨析】attempt，try，endeavour，strive 这些动词均含有“试图，努力，力图”之意。

attempt：较正式用词，侧重已经开始，且希望完成，但常隐含着不一定达到预期的结果。

try：普通用词，可与 attempt 换用，但强调努力或尝试，后跟不定式表示努力或争取；后跟动名词表示尝试。

endeavour：正式用词，指尽最大努力、认真地克服困难去做某事。

strive 和 endeavour 一样，表示付出巨大努力，但 strive 侧重劳累与紧张，而不强调努力的结果。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 56 Our neighbour, the river

本节重点和难点

- 与现在事实相反的虚拟语气
- 与过去事实相反的虚拟语气
- whose 引导的定语从句
- 分词短语作状语

本课词汇

boundary ['baundəri] *n.* 分界线，疆界，范围

pump [pʌmp] *n.* 泵 *vt.* 用泵输送

【词组】 pump up 打气；充气

overtake [ˌəuvə'teik] *vt.* 突然袭击

predecessor ['pri:disesə] *n.* 前辈

meadow ['medəu] *n.* 草地，牧地

crown [kraun] *n.* 王冠，冕 *vt.* 为……加冕

【词组】 take the crown 加冕为王；登基为王；获冠军称号/the crown of the year 秋季；收获季节/to crown all 更糟糕的是；更使人高兴的是/wear the crown 作皇帝；作殉道者

holly ['hɔli] *n.* 冬青属植物

wreath [ri:θ] *n.* 花环，花圈

occurrence [ə'kʌrəns] *n.* 事情，发生

【辨析】 occurence 偶然发生的事件(如疾病、地震等)，也指家庭生活中的琐事；event 事件，大事：国家重大事件，有时指个人重大事件(结婚、入党等)；incident 突然发生的重大事件，特别是政治上；accident 事故，意外事故。

proportion [prə'pɔ:ʃən] *n.* 均衡，比例，部分

【词组】 in proportion 相应地；恰如其分地；协调地/in proportion to (with) 与……成比例；和……相称；按照；与……相比、/in the proportion of 按……的比例/out of proportion to 和……不成比例；和……不相称；(对……来说)过分

site [sait] *v.* 使位于

spell [spel] *vt.* 招致

stall [stɔ:l] *n.* 牛棚

attic ['ætik] *n.* 顶楼

sweeping ['swi:piŋ] *adj.* 范围广大的

get a sweeping view of 一览无遗

critical ['kritikəl] *adj.* 危急的，紧要的；批评的，评论的；临界的

juncture ['dʒʌŋktʃə] *adj.* 关头，时机

raft [rɑ:ft] *n.* 木筏

unduly [ʌn'dju:li] *adv.* 过度地

foundations [faun'deiʃənz] *n.* 地基

stoutly ['stautli] *adv.* 牢固地

submerge [səb'mə:dʒ] *vt.* 浸没，淹没

grapple ['græpl] *vt.* 抓住

课文详解

1. The river which forms the eastern boundary of our farm always played an important part in our lives.

【译文】 形成我们农场东部边界的一条河流一直在我们生活中发挥着重要作用。

【用法】 play a part in，表示"在……中起作用；在……中扮演角色"。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

2. Without it we could not make a living.

【译文】要是没有这条河，我们就无法生存下去。

【用法】(1)without it 如果没有它。介词短语，起到非真实条件状语从句的作用。因此句中的 could not make 需使用虚拟语气结构形式。虚拟语气句并非必须由 if 引导出真实性条件状语从句部分，主要依其真实性或非真实性的语义概念为标准。当某些介词短语起到非真实性状语从句作用时，句子就应以虚拟语气结构来表达。

(2)make a living 谋生。

【辨析】border，bounds，boundary，frontier，limit 这些名词均含有"边界，边境"之意。

border：多指国与国之间或两地区的分界处，即分界线附近的边缘部分。

bounds：常与 boundary 换用，指土地边界，但意思不如 boundary 明确，主要用于抽象事物和文学作品中。

boundary：侧重地图上正式标定的、双方遵守的边界，也可指较小行政单位间的界线。

frontier：指两国接壤的前沿地区，属于各国的国境和边疆，多指设防的边界。

limit：含义广泛，常用作复数。指任何界限、范围、分界线外面的部分，可指有形或无形的东西。

3. We know instinctively, just as beekeepers with their bees, that misfortune might overtake us if important events of our lives were not related to it.

【译文】我们本能地懂得，就像养蜂人和他们的蜜蜂一样，要是我们不把生活中的重大事件告诉那条河，就可能大祸临头。

【用法】(1)在宾语从句中，使用了由从属连词 if 引导的非真实性条件状语从句，因此使用了 might overtake 和 were not related 这样的虚拟语气结构的动词形式。

(2)just as beekeepers with their bees"正像养蜂人同蜜蜂的关系那样"，作方式状语，修饰 know。

【词汇】**overtake** *vt.* 突然降临，突然发生：

Sudden panic overtaken her. 她突然感到一阵恐慌。

The climbers were overtaken by bad weather. 登山者突然遭遇恶劣天气。

She was overtaken by misfortune. 她突然遭到不幸。

【联想】know instinctively

instinct

n. (1)本能

Suckling is an instinct in mammals. 哺乳是哺乳动物的本能。

(2)直觉

Trust your instincts and do what you think is right. 相信你的直觉，按你自已认为对的去做。

act on instinct 凭直觉行动

We sometimes act on instinct. 我们有时凭直觉而行动。

by instinct 出于本能

Birds learn to fly by instinct. 鸟学飞出自本能。

have an instinct for 生来就有……的本能，生性爱好，天性就会

She has an instinct for tact and diplomacy. 她有机智和外交方面的天份。

4. Sometimes we go upstream to a favourite backwater, sometimes we have our party at the boathouse, which a predecessor of ours at the farm built in the meadow hard by the deepest pool for swimming and diving.

【译文】有时，我们溯流而上来到我们喜爱的回水河汊举办生日宴会；有时在船坞举办。那船坞是农场的一位前辈在一块草地上盖的，草地紧挨一个专供游泳、跳水的深水池。

【用法】**predecessor** *n.* 前任，前辈

-ceed，-cess 走：access 接近；exceed 优于，胜过；excess 超过，超额；excessive 过度的；process 加工；过程；procession 游行队伍；succeed 成功；success 成功；successor 继任者

Jim is the successor to Andy. Jim 是 Andy 的继任者。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Andy is the predecessor to Jim. Andy 是 Jim 的前任。

5. This is a rare occurrence as our climate seldom goes to extremes.

【译文】由于我们这儿的气候很少异常，因而河水极少泛滥。

【用法】(1)a rare occurrence 罕见的情况。这里指 the river may overflow its bank。

(2)as 因为，由于。从属连词，引导原因状语从句。

(3)go to extremes 走极端，采取极端手段。

【词汇】**occurrence** *n.* 1.［C］发生，存在的事情：a common/everyday/rare occurrence 司空见惯/每天/难得发生的事情 2.［U］发生

occur *vi.* 发生；存在：

it occurs to sb. that...某人想起……；it occurs to sb. to do sth. 某人想起做某事

It didn't occur to him that his wife was having an affair. 他没有想到妻子会有外遇。

It didn't occur to him to ask for help. 他没有想到请别人帮忙。

6. We are lucky in that only the lower fields, which make up a very small proportion of our farm, are affected by flooding, but other farms are less favourably sited, and flooding can sometimes spell disaster for their owners.

【译文】值得庆幸的是，只有低洼地受到洪水影响，而低洼地在我们农场比例很小。其他农场地势欠佳，洪水有时会给农场主带来灾难。

【用法】**proportion** *n.* 部分；比例：

Water covers a large proportion of the earth's surface. 水覆盖了地球的大部分。

A higher proportion of Americans go on to higher education than is the case in Britain.

美国人上大学的比例大于英国。

The proportion of men to women in this college has changed drammatically over the years.

近年来这个学院的男女学生比例发生了巨变。

【词汇】**spell** 1. *v.* 招致，意味着(坏事)：

The crop failure spelt disaster for many farmers. 对许多农民来说，庄稼歉收就意味着灾难。

Such a scandal could spell disaster for the government. 这样的丑闻可能给政府带来灾难。

2. *n.* 魔法，魅力

He fell under the spell of the landscape. 他被这里的风景陶醉了。

The witch casts spell over the girl. 巫师对这个女孩施了魔法。

7. One bad winter we watched the river creep up the lower meadows.

【译文】有一年冬天，天气不好，我们眼看着河水漫没了地势较低的草场。

【用法】watch sb. do sth. 眼睁睁看着一件事情发生而无能为力

I cannot watch him go astray. 我不能眼看着他步入歧途。

8. All the cattle had been moved into stalls and we stood to lost little.

【译文】所有的牲口已提前转移到畜圈里，没有造成什么损失。

【用法】stand to do sth.：be in a situation where you are likely to do sth. 很可能做某事

If this law is passed, we stand to lose our tax advantage.

如果这项新法律通过的话，我们就会失去免税优惠。

The growing population stands to slow the rate of the development of society.

不断增长的人口很可能会减慢社会发展的速度。

9. From an attic window we could get a sweeping view of the river where their land joined ours, and at the most critical juncture we took turns in watching that point.

【译文】从顶楼窗口看去，我们农场与他们农场接壤处的那段河流一览无余，在最紧急的时刻，我们轮流监视那段河流的险情。

【用法】(1)get a sweeping view of 一览无余地看到，get a view of 看到，如：If you stand at this window, you'll get a better view of the scene. 如果站在这个窗口，你就能把风景一览无余。

www.TopSage.com

(2)at the most critical juncture(=at the most critical moment),在最紧急的时刻,at a...juncture 在……关头,在……时刻,如:It was at this juncture that she helped us. 她正好在这个关头帮了我们。

(3)take turns 轮流,依次。其后既可使用动词不定式,也可同文中那样,使用"介词 in/at+动名词短语"的形式,表示"轮流/依次做……"的含义,如:

We take turns to clean our room. 我们轮流打扫我们的房间。

You'll have to take turns being captain of the team. 你们得轮流当球队队长。

They take turns to look after the baby. 他们轮流照顾这个小婴儿。

【词汇】**critical** *adj*. 危急的,紧要关头的;极为重要的,关键性的:

David is at a critical stage of his illness. 戴维的病情正处在关键时期。

a critical factor in...关键因素;be of critical importance 至关重要

a critical moment in our country's history 我国历史上的紧急关头

10. We realized that they must have become unduly frightened by the rising flood, for their house, which had sound foundations, would have stood stoutly even if it had been almost submerged.

【译文】我们意识到他们一定是被不断上涨的洪水吓坏了,因为他们的房子地基牢固,即使洪水几乎没顶也不会倒塌。

【用法】even if 为复合连词,引导让步状语从句,使用 even if 后,句子通常用虚拟语气结构。文中 would have stood 和 had been submerged 即为虚拟语气的动词结构形式。

【词汇】**unduly** *adv*. 过度地 undue *adj*. 过度的,不适当的

do sth. in undue haste 操之过急

submerge *vt*. 淹没

merge-,mers-沉;emerge 出现;emergent 紧急的;emergency 紧急情况;merge 合并;merger 合并

11. The men of our family waded down through our flooded meadows with boathooks, in the hope of being able to grapple a corner of the raft and pull it out of the current towards our bank.

【译文】我家的男人们手拿船篙蹚过被水淹没的草场,希望能够钩住筏子一角将它拽出激流,拖回岸边。

【用法】in the hope of 希望能。介词短语,作目的状语,修饰 waded down。其后可用动名词(如文中那样)或名词,如:I am in the hope(in hopes)of passing the exam this time. 我希望这次能通过考试。

He went abroad in the hope of earning more money. 他去了国外,希望能挣到更多的钱。

The search party went into the cave in the hope of finding buried treasure.

搜索队进入这个洞穴,希望能够找到埋藏的宝藏。

We've postponed the game until Monday in the hope that the weather will improve.

我们已经把比赛推迟到星期一,希望天气会好转。

【词汇】**grapple** *vt*. 抓住 *vi*. 与……扭打;努力设法解决

The government has to grapple with the problem of air pollution. 政府需尽力解决空气污染问题。

gr-抓,夺;grab 抓取;grasp 抓住,抓紧;grasping 贪婪的;grip 紧握;greedy 贪婪的;graft 贪污,不义之财;grope 摸索

额外收获

1. 含蓄虚拟句

很多情况下,在表示假设的虚拟语气中,有时假设的条件并不以条件从句的形式表达,而是通过上下文或句中内在的逻辑关系,或用其他形式表达出来,我们称之为"含蓄条件句"。

含蓄条件句主要通过名词、连接词、不定式、分词、动名词短语、介词短语及分句来暗示。这些表达形式在句中实际起着虚拟条件从句的作用。现分述如下:

(1)介词短语

常用来表示虚拟条件的介词有 with,without,in,under,but for 等等,它们表示的虚拟条件都可以被 if 从句替换。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

①without,with

without 表示否定的条件,意为 if...not;with 与 without 意义相反,表示肯定的条件。如:

Without air,there would be no living things. (without air=if there were no air)

如果没有空气,便没有生物。

With her help(=If I had her help),I would do the experiment well.

假如有她帮助,我就可以把这个实验做好。

Without gravity/In the absence of gravity/If there were no gravity,there would be no air around the earth. 如果没有重力,地球周围就没有空气。

② under

Under the leadership of a less experienced person,the experiment would have failed.

(under...=If there had been the leadership of a less experienced person)

假设在一个缺少经验的人领导下进行实验,实验准会失败。

③ in

I would have lost my head in that position. (in that position = if I had been in that position)

我处在那种情况下,是会丧失理智的。

④ but for

But for their help (=If it were not for their help),we could not get over the difficulties.

要不是他们的帮助,我们是克服不了这些困难的。

(2)连接词 or,otherwise,but,but that 等等

I'm really busy,otherwise(=if I weren't so busy),I would certainly go with you.

我确实太忙了。不然的话,我一定和你一块去。

But that I saw it(=If I had not seen it),I could not have believed it.

要不是亲眼看见的话,我是不会相信的。

I would have traveled to Shanghai by ship, but I did not have enough time at the time.

=I would have traveled to Shanghai by ship. if I had had enough time at the time.

我本要坐船去上海的,但我当时没有时间。

(3)分词短语

United(=If they had been united),they wouldn't have been defeated.

他们要是团结起来,就不会被打败。

Seen from a high mountain(=If it were seen from a high mountain),the field in which wheat is growing would look like a great green sea.

倘若从高山上看,麦田就像一片碧绿的大海。

(4)动词不定式短语

It would be only partly right to answer in this way. (=if we answered in this way)

如果这样回答,只对一部分。

To hear him speak English(=If one were to hear him speak English),one would think him an Englishman. 要是听他讲起英语来,人们会认为他是一个英国人。

(5)形容词或其比较级的形式

A less difficult problem would have already been solved. (=If the problem had been less difficult,it would have already been solved.)

要是问题不那么难的话,它早就被解决了。

An honest man would not do such a thing. (=He were an honest man,he would not do such a thing.)诚实的人是不会做这种事的。

(6)名词

Who but a fool(=If one were a fool,one)would believe his words.

除了傻瓜,谁会相信他的话!

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

(7)"名词+and"的结构

One step further and you would be dead. (=If you took one step further, you would be dead.)

再往前走一步,你就会死。

(8)独立主格结构或由 with 引导的复合结构

All things considered(=If all things were considered), the price would be reasonable.

如果全面考虑起来,价格可能是合理的。

(9)定语从句

A nation which stopped working would be dead in a fortnight. (=If a nation stopped working, it would be dead in a fortnight.)如果一个国家停止工作,不出半个月就会灭亡。

(10)其他形式:

Anyone in my place would not have accepted/would not accept this proposal.

任何处于我这样地位的人都不会接受这个建议的。

A computer with as many tubes as the brain has neurons would require the Empire State Building to contain it and Jiagara Falls to power it.

(=If a computer had as many tubes as the brain has neurons, it would require...)

若一台电脑的电子管数目与人脑神经元数量相同,这台电脑则需要帝国大厦的体积来容纳它,需要尼亚加拉瀑布的能量驱动其运行。

You know as well as I do that to see your own future would make it unworthy of living.

=If you were to see your own future, you would find it unworthy of living.

你像我一样清楚地知道:如果事先预见到了自己的未来,那会使你将来的生活不值得一过了。

This same thing happening in wartime, would amount to a disaster.

=If the same thing happened in wartime, it would amount to a disaster.

同样的事,若发生在战争年代,就等于一场灾难。

We finished the job in three hours which would have taken us six hours.

我们在三小时内完成了本需六小时才可搞定的工作。

2. 并列定语从句中,第一分句的关联词可以省略,第二分句的关联词不可以省略。

The best play(which) Shakespeare wrote, and which I have read, is probably "Hamlet".

莎士比亚写的最好的剧本,并且我又看过的,可能是"哈姆雷特"。

He is the only friend of mine(whom) you've met and whom you really like.

在我的朋友中,他是唯一的一个你遇见的并真正喜欢的。

备注:一定要注意这种定语从句的并列是否属于同一层次的并列。

She is about the only friend of yours (whom) I've met (whom) I really like.

在你的朋友中,她大约是我所遇见的并真正喜欢的唯一的一个。

(这两个定语从句属于不同层次,两个 whom 都可省略)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 57 Back in the old country

本节重点和难点

- 介词 with 复合结构作状语
- so that 与 so... that 的区别
- 现在分词作定语
- not... but... 结构的用法

本课词汇

alien ['eiliən] *adj.* 外国的 *n.* 外侨

【辨析】alien 外侨、外国人：未取得居住国国籍的外国人；foreigner 在异国作短期或长期居住的外国人；immigrant 侨民、移民：在别国定居取得居住国国籍的外国人。

emigrate ['emigreit] *v.* 移民，移居国外

absorb [əb'sɔːb] *vt.* 吸引；吸收

【词组】be absorbed in 专注于

【用法】1. 作"吸收"解时，宾语常用液体、光线、知识、思想、意见等名词。2. 作"聚精会神、专心"解时，宾语是人，常用 be(get)absorbed in（全神贯注，专心致志于）。3. 作"合并、并人"解时，常用 be absorbed into。

【辨析】absorb、soak(up)、suck 均有"吸"的意思。absorb 和 soak up 只表示用物体去"吸"，而 suck 除物体吸外，还表示人用嘴去"吸，吮，饮"，还表示"舔食"。soak 表示"浸泡"，而 absorb 没有这类词义。

embed [im'bed] *vt.* 深埋

mortally ['mɔːtli] *adv.* 致命地

hire ['haiə] *n.* 租用，雇用；租金；工资 *v.* 雇用；租

【词组】hire out 出租/on hire 供租用

comprehensive [ˌkɔmpri'hensiv] *adj.* 内容广泛的，综合的

milestone ['mailstəun] *n.* 里程碑

territory ['teritəri] *n.* 领土，领地；地盘，领域；范围

milometer [mai'lɔmitə] *n.* 里程表

spire ['spaiə] *n.* 塔尖，尖顶

retrace [ri'treis] *vt.* 折回，返回

stumble ['stʌmbl] *vi.* 踉跄地走，蹒跚

【词组】stumble across (on) 偶然遇到；碰巧找到

horizon [hə'raizn] *n.* 地平线，[比喻]眼界，见识

【词组】on the horizon 在地平线上；刚刚冒出地平线；即将出现的(事件)；在遥远的将来

reservior ['rezəvwaː] *n.* 水库

课文详解

1. I had expected to be near my objective by now, but everything still seemed alien to me.

【译文】我原以为此时我已接近目的地，但我似乎觉得一切仍然很陌生。

【用法】(1) expect to do... 期望想做……，在动词 expect 后可使用动词不定式作宾语；当构成 expect 的过去完成时(had expected)+一般动词不定式(to do)时，表示"过去想做而未做或本以为要做的事情"。

(2) be alien to... 对……陌生，与……不容，如：Cruelty was quite alien to his nature. 残忍的行为与

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

他的本性格格不入。

(3)过去完成时的一个特殊用法：

动词 intend(=mean), hope, plan, want, think, hope, expect, suppose 等用于过去完成时，表示一个本来打算做而没有做到的事。后面跟动词不定式或从句作宾语。

We had hoped to catch the 9:30 train, but found it was gone.

我们本来希望赶上 9 点 30 分的火车，却发现它已经开走了。

I had expected that she would become a doctor, but she wasn't good enough at science.

我本希望她能成为一名医生，但是她的理科不行。

I had thought the room to be empty, but found it full of people.

我还以为这个房子空着，却发现满屋子都是人。

I had intended to come over to see you last night, but someone called, so I couldn't get away.

昨晚我本想来看你的，但是有人来找，抽不开身。

【词汇】**alien** *adj*. 外国的，陌生的，不熟悉的；相抵触，格格不入：

Orange trees are alien to Canada. 加拿大不生长橘子树。

His way of life is totally alien to us. 我们对他的生活方式完全陌生。

Their ideas are quite alien to our way of thinking. 他们的观点与我们看问题的方法格格不入。

n. 外国人，外星人：a film about aliens from Mars 一部关于火星人的电影

alienate *vt*. 使疏远，使格格不入：Very talented children may feel alienated from others in their class. 非常有天赋的孩子可能会与班上其他人格格不入。

2. I was only five when my father had taken me abroad, and that was eighteen years ago.

【译文】我 5 岁那年，父亲就带我出了国，那是 18 年前的事了。

【写作】浅谈 when 的意思，重点指出学生容易忽略的意思：

英语中，连词 when 表示"当……时候"，引导的时间状语从句表示与主句动作同时或不同时，从句动词用延续或非延续性都可以。如：

I'll telephone you when I get there tomorrow. 明天我到那里的时候就给你打电话。

在下面这几句话里 when 用作并列连词，表示"就在这时"(=and this time/just at that time)的用法。如：

Tom was sitting near the fire when he heard a knock at the door.

汤姆正坐在火炉边，这时他听到一声敲门声。

I was just going to speak when the doorbell rang. 我正准备讲话，这时门铃响了。

当并列连词 when 用于"就在这时，正在这时"的用法时，它所引导的并列句表示动作发生于另一个并列句所表示的动作之后，一般不可以用其他词代替，常用于以下结构：

(1) was/were doing + when 意思为"就在这时，正在这时"。如：

I was walking in the street when someone called me from behind.

我正在街上走，就在这时有人从后面叫我。

They were discussing the problem when the teacher came in.

他们正在讨论问题，就在这时老师进来了。

(2) was/were about to do...when 意思为"正要/正准备做某事，就在这时……"。如：

She was about to go out when an unexpected visitor came. 她正准备出去，这时来了一位不速之客。

We were about to set out when it began to rain. 我们正要动身，就在这时开始下雨了。

(3) be+表示状态的介词短语+when 意思为"正在做某事，就在这时……"。如：

They were at work in the office that afternoon when a big fire broke out.

那天下午他们正在办公室工作，就在这时一场大火发生了。

We were on duty in the classroom when a boy rushed in.

我们正在教室里值日，就在这时一名男孩冲了进来。

Li Ping was on his way home when two boys stopped him. 李平正往家走，突然两个男孩拦住了他。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

注意：在上述三种用法的结构中，when 引导的句子不能放在句首。

3. Everything around him was full of her presence, continually reopening the wound.

【译文】他身边的一切都有母亲的影子，不断地勾起他的伤感。

【辨析】emigrate，immigrate，migrate 这些动词均有"移居，迁移"之意。

emigrate：指自本国移出，长期定居在外。

immigrate：指自他国移入，长期定居。

migrate：通常指大批人短期或定期的移居。指动物时，则指定期迁徙、回游。

4. In the new country he became absorbed in making a new life for the two of us, so that he gradually ceased to grieve.

【译文】在这个新的国家里，他专心致志地为我们父子俩开创新生活，慢慢地不伤心了。

【用法】be absorbed in(doing)... 全神贯注，专心致志（做）……，如：After the class, he often is absorbed in reading the newspaper. 下课后，他经常专心致志地读报纸。

absorb nutrition/knowledge/heat/small business 吸收营养/知识/热量/小业务

be absorbed in doing/be concentrated on doing/be engrossed in doing 全神贯注于……

5. He did not marry again and I was brought up without a woman's care; but I lacked for nothing, for he was both father and mother to me.

【译文】父亲没有再娶，因此，我在没有母亲的环境里长大成人。但我却什么都不缺，他既当父亲又当母亲。

【用法】lack for nothing＝want for nothing 样样都有，什么都不缺

6. His roots and mine had become too firmly embedded in the new land.

【译文】他与我一样已经把根深深地扎在这个新的国度。

【词汇】**embed** *vt.* 深理

a crown embedded with jewels 嵌有宝石的王冠

That terrible day will be embeded in the children's memory.（比喻）那可怕的一天将深深印在孩子们的记忆中。

7. He became mortally ill a few months before we had planned to go and, when he knew that he was dying, he made me promise to go on my own.

【译文】就在我们计划回国的前几个月，他突然身患绝症。他知道自己已奄奄一息，于是要我答应一定单独回故乡一趟。

【词汇】**mortally** *adv.* 致命地；be mortally wounded/ill 受致命伤/得了绝症

mortal *adj.* 致命的；不能永生的；a mortal wound 致命伤

Her reputation suffered a mortal blow as a result of the scandal. 这一丑闻毁了她的名声。

8. I hired a car the day after landing and bought a comprehensive book of maps, which I found most helpful on the cross country journey, but which I did not think I should need on the last stage.

【译文】我下飞机后租了一辆车，并买了一本详尽的地图册。在乡间行车途中，我觉得它非常有用，但快到家了，我倒觉得它没什么用了。

【词汇】**comprehensive** *adj.* 丰富的，广泛的；a comprehensive report/study/survey 全面的报道/研究/调查

prehens-，prehend-抓住；comprehend 理解，领悟；comprehension 理解力，领悟能力；comprehensible 可理解的，能懂的；incomprehensible 无法理解的，难懂的；apprehend 逮捕

9. I had come ten miles since leaving the town, and at this point, according to my father, I should be looking at farms and cottages in a valley, with the spire of the church of our village showing in the far distance.

【译文】从小镇出来，我走了 10 英里。照父亲的说法，我面前应是一个山谷，有农场与村舍，还可远远望见老家村子的教堂的尖顶。

【用法】show＝be visible 可以看得见，是不及物动词

Do my dark circles show? 我的黑眼圈明显吗？

www.TopSage.com

10. I felt as if I had stumbled into a nightmare country, as you sometimes do in dreams.

【译文】我感到似乎已坠入噩梦之中，正如人们有时在梦中所经历的那样。

【用法】(1)as if，复合连词，引导方式状语从句，如文中 had stumbled 那样，常使用虚拟语气结构。这里的代词 you 为泛指用法，其意义相当于 people，而非特指的第 2 人称单数。do 这里用于代替 stumble into a nightmare country，以避免重复。

(2)stumble over sth. /trip over sth. 被绊了一跤

11. Fortunately for me, as I was wondering what to do next, there appeared on the horizon a man on horseback, riding in my direction.

【译文】不过，我是幸运的，正当我走投无路之时，一位骑马人出现在地平线上，迎面走来。

【用法】there appeared on the horizon a man on horseback 为倒装语序。正常语序为：a man on horseback...appeared there on the horizon。文中的句子构成"副词＋谓语动词＋主语"这样的倒装句形式。riding in my direction 向我骑来。现在分词短语，作定语修饰 a man。

【词汇】**horizon** *n.* 地平线：

enlarge one's horizon 拓展视野，增长知识

额外收获

由 be alien to 结构可以总结"to"的用法：

1. 表示相对，针对

be strange (common, new, familiar, peculiar, distinct, sensitive, immune, vulnerable, indispensable) to

2. 表示对比，比较

(1)以-ior 结尾的形容词，后接介词 to 表示比较，如：superior, inferior, prior, senior, junior

The quarrel happened prior to my arrival. 在我到达之前争论就开始了。

(2)一些本身就含有比较或比拟意思的形容词，如 equal, similar, equivalent, analogous

A is similar to B in many ways. A 在很多方面和 B 相似。

(3)表示一些先后顺序的形容词，如：second, subsequent, next, preliminary, preparatory

Subsequent to the war, they returned to their hometown. 战争之后，他们回到了家乡。

3. 表示修饰关系

(1)表示回复，反应意思的词，如：answer to question, solution to problem, response to inquiry, reaction to proposal, reply to letter

(2)表示建筑构件的词汇，如：entry, entrance, approach, access, passage, exit, vent, path

the access to education 接受教育的机会

the access to medical care 享受公费医疗的权利

(3)表示人物职位和官衔的词，如：assistant to manager, ambassador to Spain, successor to tradition, heir to throne, deputy to the National People's Congress, advisor to the Prime Minister.

(4)表示权利和许可的词汇，如：right, admission

The employee finally got the admission to the boardroom. 雇员最终获得了进入董事室的许可。

Everyone has an equal right to... 每个人都有平等的权利……

(5)表示栅栏或障碍的词汇，如：bars to development, the barrier to progress

(6)表示与书籍、文本相关的词，如：introduction to passage

(7)表示恭喜或是祝贺，如：

The director proposed a toast to the health of the guests. 主任建议举杯祝客人们身体健康。

Let's drink to Dick's success in business. 让我们为迪克业务成功干杯。

(8)另外还有一些名词符合这种用法，有的具有两者息息相关，缺一不可的含义。

例：key to door, invitation to party, guide to action, limitation to life, accessory to school

4. to 还具有依据、伴随、和着节奏的含义，如：sing to piano, chant to the tune, stamp to the rhythm of the song, add salt to taste

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 58 A spot of bother

本节重点和难点

- 动词不定式作主语和表语
- it 作形式主语
- 宾语从句
- 虚拟语气

本课词汇

lift [lift] *n.* 电梯

monstrous ['mɔnstrəs] *adj.* 极大的

negligence ['neglidʒəns] *n.* 粗心大意

prudent ['pru:dənt] *adj.* 谨慎的，小心的

composure [kəm'pəuʒə] *n.* 镇静

intruder [in'tru:də] *n.* 入侵者

lurk [lə:k] *vi.* 潜伏

hinder ['hində] *vt.* 阻止，妨碍

【辨析】hinder 阻止，妨碍：由于一时干扰或事故而暂时推迟某人的行动或某事的进行；prevent 阻止：事先安排障碍去阻止某人某物；impede 阻碍：某人或某物进行中由于遇到困难而被迫速度大减，甚至停止；obstruct 阻挡：有意设置障碍而妨碍某人完成某事。

fingerprint ['fiŋgəprint] *n.* 指纹

chaos ['keiɔs] *n.* 混乱，无秩序

【词组】a chaos of sth. 一堆乱七八糟的(东西)/leave... in chaos 使……陷入混乱

inconceivable [ˌinkən'si:vəbl] *adj.* 不可思议的

veritable ['veritəbl] *adj.* 真正的，名符其实的

magpie ['mægpai] *n.* 喜鹊；爱收藏东西的人

toss [tɔs] *vt.* 抛，掷；使摇摆，使动荡 *vi.* 摇摆，颠簸，翻来覆去

【词组】argue the toss 作无谓的争执；争论已经决定的事情/lose the toss 在掷钱币中失败/toss for sth. 掷钱币以决定某事/toss off 一口喝干(酒)；毫不费力地做出；一口气做完/toss out 丢弃；扔掉；拒绝接受；淘汰；驱除；开除 /toss up 一下子做好(菜等)；掷钱(以决定某事)/win the toss 在掷钱币中获胜

【辨析】船、飞机等前后、上下摇摆用 toss；上下摇摆用 pitch；左右摇摆用 roll。

discard [dis'kɑ:d] *vt.* 弃掉，丢弃，抛弃

constable ['kʌnstəbl] *n.* 巡警，警察

ransack ['rænsæk] *vt.* 洗劫

balcony ['bælkəni] *n.* 阳台

fussy ['fʌsi] *adj.* 大惊小怪的

课文详解

1. Her shopping had tired her and her basket had grown heavier with every step of the way home.

【译文】购物使她筋疲力尽，在回家的路上，她每走一步就感到手里的篮子又重了一点。

【用法】(1) with every step of the way home 为介词短语，作状语，表示伴随情况。with 在这里表示“随着”，意即“篮子随着回家的每一步越变越重”。是非常生动的表达方式。

例：He feels more pain in the waist with every step of the way home. 他每往家走一步腰就感到又疼了一点。

www.TopSage.com

大家网

(2)tire 使疲惫：Long hours of arduous hiking tired the scouts. 长时间的艰苦跋涉把这些童子军给累坏了。

此句中出现了 tire 的动词用法，不同于我们通常情况下使用的它的形容词形式 tired.

2. It was as clear as daylight then that burglars had forced an entry during her absence.

【译文】显而易见：趁她不在时，窃贼曾破门而入。

【用法】(1)**absence**

n. 缺席，不在场；缺乏，不存在：

His son moved back after an absence of eight months.

他的儿子离开八个月后又搬回家住。

The meeting is cancelled by absence of a meeting room. 由于没有会议室，会议被取消了。

[常用搭配] in the absence of sth. 缺乏某物

absence without leave 开小差，擅离职守

absent *adj.* 缺席的，不存在的；心不在焉的：

He is absent from the meeting because he is ill. 他病了，所以没来开会。

(2)全句是一强调句"It was...that"，强调的是"as...as"引导的状语从句。as＋adj. ＋as 这种结构称为"明喻成语"，用得很普遍：

as cold as ice 冷若冰霜　　as dark as pitch 漆黑一团

as firm as a rock 坚如磐石　　as greedy as a wolf 贪婪如狼

as heavy as lead 沉重如铅　　as light as a feather 轻若鸿毛

as strong as a horse 健壮如马　　as swift as lightning 快如闪电

as clear as daylight/day 非常清楚，显而易见

I told you as clear as daylight that I'm leaving tomorrow, not the day after.

我已经非常清楚地告诉你了，我明天离开，不是后天。

在英语中还有其他类似的表达方式，如：

From the back of the cinema came a child's voice as clear as a bell. "I want to go home."

从戏院后面传来一个孩子铃铛一样清晰的声音："我想回家。"

His instructions about how to get to his place were as clear as mud.

他关于怎样到他那儿的说明根本不清楚。

注意：我们都知道"mud"是泥浆，根本不清楚，所以如果说某事"as clear as mud"，就是说一点也不清楚。

(3)"forced an entry" 意思为"硬闯人"。

3. Her first impulse was to go round all the rooms looking for the thieves, but then she decided that at her age it might be more prudent to have someone with her, so she went to fetch the porter from his basement.

【译文】她最初的反应是到各个房间去搜寻窃贼，但转念一想，像她这个年纪，有个人陪同进去更为谨慎，于是她到地下室去找看门的人。

【用法】(1)sb.'s first impulse is to do 某人的第一反应是去做某事

这里的 impulse 等于 reaction

注意和词组 act on a sudden impulse 区分

(2)looking for the thieves 为现在分词短语，作目的状语，修饰 go round。

(3)it 为先行代词，作形式主语，其逻辑主语为后面的动词不定式短语 to have someone with her。

【词汇】**prudent** *adj.* 谨慎的，慎重的，精明的

a prudent businessman/decision/investment 精明的商人/审慎的决定/投资

prudence *n.* 谨慎，慎重，精明；imprudent *adj.* 鲁莽的，轻率的；imprudence *n.* 鲁莽，轻率

【辨析】careful, cautious, attentive, prudent 这些形容词均含有"小心的，谨慎的"之意。

careful：侧重做事谨慎、留心，特别注意一些细节地方。

cautious：着重考虑事情的后果，谨慎留意，防止出差错。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

attentive：指认真地注意倾听别人的意见，留心别人的需要等。

prudent：指遇事审慎，思考计划周密，不贸然行事。

4. Then, her composure regain, she was ready to set off with the porter's assistance to search for any intruders who might still be lurking in her flat.

【译文】这时她恢复了镇静，她准备在看门人的协助下搜寻可能仍躲藏在她房里的窃贼。

【用法】(1)with the porter's assistance 在看门人的协助下。介词短语，作方式状语，修饰 set off。注意"在……帮助下"应使用介词 with，如 with the help/assistance of...。

(2)her composure regained 老妇人重新镇定了下来，regain one's composure 恢复镇定，也可说 regain one's nerve。

【词汇】**composure** *n.* 镇定，冷静

gain/lose/recover one's composure

intrude *v.*（与 on，upon，into 连用）(1)强迫接受；强使

例：intrude one's views upon others 强迫他人采纳自己的意见

(2)闯入，强行进入

例：An unidentified military plane intruded into the airspace of our country.

一架国籍不明的军用飞机侵入我国领空。

[同义词]encroach，infringe，interfere

lurk *vi.*（尤指为做不正当的事情而）潜伏，埋伏 lurk in /around/beneath/below

Why are you lurking around outside my house? 你在我房子外面鬼鬼祟祟想干什么？

A crocodile was lurking just below the surface. 一条鳄鱼潜伏在水面下。

lurking doubts/suspicion 隐藏在心里的怀疑/猜忌

5. They went through the rooms, being careful to touch nothing, as they did not want to hinder the police in their search for fingerprints.

【译文】他们走遍各个房间，小心翼翼地避免接触任何物品，因为他们不想妨碍警察寻找指纹。

【用法】(1)being careful to touch nothing 小心翼翼地不碰任何东西。现在分词短语，作方式状语，修饰 went through。

(2)hinder *v.* 妨碍；阻碍；阻止：Heavy snow hindered the construction work. 大雪妨碍了建筑工程的进行。Don't hinder. 不要碍事。hinder sb. from doing sth. 阻碍某人做某事。

Don't hinder him in his work. 不要妨碍他工作。

An former injury was hindering him from playing his best. 旧伤使他无法发挥出最高水平。

hindrance *n.* 妨碍，障碍物：be a hindrance to sth. /sb. 帮倒忙 Lack of funding was a major hindrance to the environmental protection. 缺乏资金是妨碍环保的主要因素。

6. She had lived in the flat for thirty years and was a veritable magpie at hoarding; and it seemed as though everything she possessed had been tossed out and turned over and over.

【译文】她在这套公寓里住了 30 年，她又是个名副其实的收藏家。看来她的每一件东西都被翻了出来，并且被里里外外看了个遍。

【词汇】**toss** *vt.* 扔，抛：

He tossed the ball aside. 他把球扔到一边。He tossed the ball to Mary. 他把球扔给玛丽。

toss and turn 辗转反侧：I have been tossing and turning all night. 我整个晚上都翻来覆去睡不着。

discard *vt.* 丢掉，弃置

The room was littered with discarded newspapers. 房间里到处都是乱扔的报纸。

7. Then a police inspector arrived with a constable and she told them of her discovery of the ransacked flat.

【译文】过了一会儿，一位巡官带着一名警察来了。她向他们讲述了发现公寓遭劫的经过。

【词汇】**ransack** *vt.* 洗劫：The house had been ransacked by burglars. 这房子遭过盗贼的洗劫。

彻底搜索：She ransacked the desk drawers for old family photos. 她把抽屉翻个底朝天，寻找家人的老照片。

www.TopSage.com

8. The inspector began to look for fingerprints, while the constable checked that the front door locks had not been forced, thereby proving that the burglars had either used skeleton keys or entered over the balcony.

【译文】巡官开始搜寻指纹，警察经检查发现大门锁头并无撬过的迹象，由此可证明，窃贼或者是用了万能钥匙，或者是翻越阳台进来的。

【用法】(1)proving that...the balcony，现在分词短语，作非限定性定语，修饰 that the front door locks had not been forced 这一事实。

(2)We push forward the development of our society，thereby raising the living standard of people.

我们推动社会发展，从而提高人民的生活水平。

Scientists need to respond forcefully to animal rights advocates，whose arguments are confusing the public and thereby threatening advances in health knowledge.

科学家需要对动物权利倡导者做出强有力的反击，因为这些人的言论蛊惑人心，因而也威胁到了健康医疗知识方面的进步。

thereby 并没有连接句子，它是副词，表示“借以，由此，在那一点上，在那一方面”，相当于 by that means，in that connection。

Snow aids farmers by keeping heat in the lower ground levels，thereby saving the seeds from freezing. 雪对农民是一种帮助，因为它保持地层土壤的温度，使种子不致冻死。

9. The old lady thought he was a fussy creature, but since the porter agreed with him, she rang up her daughter and asked for her help in what she described as a little spot of bother.

【译文】老妇人觉得巡官大惊小怪，但既然看门人也同意他的意见，她只得打电话向女儿求援，说她碰到了一点儿小麻烦。

【词汇】**fussy** *adj.* 大惊小怪的，小题大做的；fussy parents 瞎操心的父母；a fussy eater 一个吃饭挑食的人

Our teacher is very fussy about punctuation. 我们老师对标点符号非常挑剔。

fuss *n.* 大惊小怪，小题大做；Don't make so much fuss over over losing a pen. 不要为丢了一支钢笔就大惊小怪。

【联想】口语中经常会用到“creature”这个词，如文中“a fussy creature”，常见的还有：

living creature 生物

creatures from outer space 外星生物

She is such a strange(weak，cute，charming) creature. 她是那样一个奇怪(虚弱、可爱、迷人)的人。

额外收获

分隔定语从句

先行词与定语从句之间有时也会插入别的成分，构成先行词与定语从句的隔离，这种从句叫分隔定语从句。例如：

This is the article written by him that I spoke to you about.

这就是他写的那篇文章，我跟你谈起过。

He was the only person in this country that was invited. 他是那个国家里唯一被邀请的人。

1. 因定语从句过长，为使句子保持平衡，常将定语从句和其所修饰的名词或代词分开。

The film brought the hours back to me when I was taken good care of in that faraway village.

这部影片把我带回了从前在那个偏远的山村被很好地照顾着的岁月。

2. 在定语从句中使用“插入语”以增加语言的灵活性。在定语从句中插入一个简短的主谓结构，用于这种主位结构的动词一般为 think，hope，guess，believe，suppose，wonder，see，say，know，find 等。

The pen I thought I had lost is on my desk，right under my nose.

我认为已经丢了的钢笔，却在我的桌子上，此刻就在我的面前。

She has an adopted child who she says was an orphan.

她领养了一个孩子，她说这孩子是个孤儿。

He ran all the way from the station，which I thought was incredible.

他大老远从车站跑过来，我觉得这真让人难以置信。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

LESSON 59 Collecting

本节重点和难点

- "代词+of which"所引导的非限制性定语从句
- 过去分词短语作名词的后置宾语
- 同位语从句
- fairly, quite, rather, pretty 的区别

本课词汇

amass [ə'mæs] *vt.* 积累

indiscriminate [indis'kriminit] *adj.* 不加区别的

clutter ['klʌtə] *n.* 杂乱

string [striŋ] *n.* 线,细绳

requisite ['rekwizit] *n.* 必需品

mania ['meiniə] *n.* 癖好

sketch [sketʃ] *n.* 素描,速写,略图 *v.* 速写,写生

【词组】sketch in 粗略地添加;简略地补充/sketch out 画出……的轮廓;简略地描述……

strong-minded *adj.* 意志坚强的

relaxation [ˌriːlæk'seiʃən] *n.* 消遣,娱乐

verify ['verifai] *vt.* 证实

【辨析】verify 和 check 都可作"核实,证实"讲,但其含义及用法有所不同:前者侧重表示通过比较来"核实"事实、声明、细节等的真实性或一致性,而有疑问的部分常常只能用最终结果来证实。后者侧重表示通过询问、调查等来"检查,检验,核对,核实"等。比较:These details are impossible to verify. 这些细节是无法核实的。Before you send the letter, check with him to see if the address is right. 发信前找他核对一下,看地址对不对。

bearing ['bɛəriŋ] *n.* 关系,联系

like-minded 志趣相投的

specimen ['spesimən] *n.* 标本,样品

constructively [kən'strʌktivli] *adv.* 积极地

contented [kən'tentid] *adj.* 心满意足的

boredom ['bɔːdəm] *n.* 无趣,厌倦

课文详解

1. People tend to amass possessions, sometimes without being aware of doing so.

【译文】人们喜欢收藏东西,有时并没有意识到自己在这样做。

【用法】(1) tend to do sth.: be likely to do sth. or to happen in a particular way because this is what often happens 往往会,常常就:

Women tend to live longer than men. 女人往往比男人长寿。

When I'm tired, I tend to make mistakes. 我累了就容易出错。

It tends to get very cold here in winter. 这里的冬天往往会很冷。

People tend to think that the problem will never affect them.

人们往往认为这个问题绝不会影响到他们。

(2) without...so,介词短语,作方式状语,修饰 amass。be aware of...意识到……。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【辨析】accumulate, amass, collect, gather, heap, pile 这些动词均含"积聚,聚集,积累"之意。

accumulate:几乎可用于指任何事物量的增加,侧重连续不断地,一点一滴地聚积。

amass:着重大量地积聚,尤指对如金钱、珠宝等有价值东西的大量积聚。

collect:普通用词,多用于指物,侧重指有区别地作选择或有安排有计划地把零散物集中起来。

gather:普通用词,指人、物或抽象事物都可用。侧重于围绕一个中心的集合、聚集。

heap:主要指把沙、石、煤、草等堆高,不强调整齐。

pile:着重指比较整齐地把东西堆积在一起。

2. Those who never have to change house become indiscriminate collectors of what can only be described as clutter.

【译文】那些从来不必搬家的人们成了一种无所不收的收藏家。他们专门收藏那些只能被称作杂货的东西。

【用法】indiscriminate *adj.* 不加选择的

例:She is completely indiscriminate(lacking plans)in spending money.

她对花钱完全没有计划。

Indiscriminate attacks by terrorists on civilians are still occurring.

恐怖分子对平民进行的盲目攻击仍在继续。

【词汇】**house** *vt.* 收藏,存放:

The art gallery houses 2,000 works of modern art. 这家美术馆收藏了2,000件现代艺术作品。

The library is currently housed in the British Museum. 该图书馆现在设在大英博物馆中。

3. They leave unwanted objects in drawers, cupboards and attics for years, in the belief that they may one day need just those very things.

【译文】他们在抽屉里、碗柜中、阁楼上堆放着一些不用的东西,一放就是好几年,相信总有一天需要的正好是那些东西。

【用法】(1)in the belief that...things 作伴随状况状语,修饰 leave。在 in the belief that...中,that 引导的从句作 belief 的同位语。

(2)very 这里用来加强语气,意即"正是那个(些)"、"正是所要的",如:This is the very book I need. 这正是我需要的那本书:

4. As they grow old, people also accumulate belongings for two other reasons, lack of physical and mental energy, both of which are essential in turning out and throwing away, and sentiment.

【译文】人们年老之后也喜欢收藏东西,不过是出于两个不同的原因:一是体力、精力均告不佳,这二者是清除无用的东西必不可少的因素;另一个原因是感情因素。

【用法】(1)turn out 关掉,熄灭;腾空,彻底清理

to turn the attic (a drawer) out 把阁楼(抽屉)腾空清扫

(2)throw away ①扔掉:That old chair should be thrown away. 那把旧椅子可以扔掉了。②浪费,错过,失去:to throw away an opportunity 失去机会

5. Some things are collected deliberately in the home in an attempt to avoid waste.

【译文】居家度日,有目的地收藏某些物品是为了避免浪费。

【用法】in an attempt to do...为了做……,试图/企图做……,介词短语,作目的状语,其中动词不定式作 attempt 的定语,如:

They failed in all their attempts to climb the mountain. 他们攀登那座山的一切尝试都失败了。

Two factories were closed in an attempt to reduce pollution. 为了减少污染,关闭了两家工厂。

Her father sent her to the warm south in an attempt to restore her health.

她父亲把她送到温暖的南方,希望她恢复健康。

He was in a vain attempt to rob the bank. 他想抢劫这家银行没有成功。

6. Collecting small items can easily become a mania.

【译文】收集小玩艺儿很容易着迷。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【词汇】**mania** *n.* 癖好：

Beatle-mania swept Britain in the 60s. 对披头士的狂热喜爱在60年代遍布英国。

Van Gogh suffered from acute persecution mania. 梵高患有迫害狂想症。

maniac *n.* 躁狂者，狂热分子，疯子：

He is a football maniac. 他是个足球迷。

maniacal *adj.* 发狂的：

The disease causes maniacal(crazy)behavior. 这种病会导致疯狂的行为。

【联想】介绍一组"疯"的词：

mad:*adj.* 疯了的，发疯的；神经错乱的

crazy:*adj.* 疯狂的，荒唐的 *n.* 疯子，怪人

psychotic:*adj.* 精神病的；患精神病的

lunatic:*n.* 极其愚蠢的人，疯子

demented: *adj.* 疯狂的，精神错乱的

maniac:*n.* 躁狂者，疯子，危险的人

7. I know someone who always cuts sketches out from newspapers of model clothes that she would like to buy if she had the money.

【译文】我认识一个人，她总是将报纸上流行时装样式全部剪下，等以后有钱时去购买。

【用法】介词短语 of model clothes 作定语，修饰 sketches，作 cuts out 的宾语，即按正常语序应为 cuts sketches of model clothes out from newspapers。由于关系代词 that 引导的定语从句较长，且同 sketches of model clothes 关系较为密切，需直接置于其后对它进行修饰，这样就会使 from newspapers 置于全句末尾，从而使全句头重尾轻，失去平衡。为使句子保持较好的平衡，把表示地点状语的介词短语 from newspapers 放在了 sketches 和 of model clothes 之间。

【词汇】**sketch** *n.* 速写

sketch，即"速写"，是绘画的一种方法，即一边观察对象，一边用简单线条把其主要特点画出来。Sketch 也可指扼要描写事情的情况、及时向读者报道的小品文，如见闻录、随笔、特写等。

8. As she is not rich, the chances that she will ever be able to afford such purchases are remote; but she is never sufficiently strongminded to be able to stop the practice.

【译文】由于她并不富裕，购置这些时装的机会遥遥无期，但她又缺乏足够坚强的意志把这一收集活动停下来。

【用法】(1)that...purchases 作 chances 的同位语，对其作具体说明。动词不定式 to be able...the practice 作结果状语，修饰 sufficiently strong-minded；the practice 在这里指 cut out sketches of model clothes 这一做法，意即"她从来就没有足够的坚强意志停止这种做法"。此为夸张说法，以强调其着迷的程度。

(2)the chances...are remote 机会渺茫，还可说 The chances...are rare，等于 It's unlikely...。

【词汇】**remote** *adj.* 偏僻的；(机会、可能性等)少的，小的＝slim/slender：

There is a remote chance that you will persuade him to join us.

你说服他加入我们几乎是不可能的。

I don't have the remotest idea what you're talking about. 你说什么我一点听不懂。

strong-minded *adj.* 有主见的，坚持己见的，意志坚定的

broad-minded 愿意听取他人意见的，心胸宽阔的；narrow-minded 小心眼的，狭隘的；like-minded 志趣相投的

【联想】adequate，enough，sufficient 这些形容词均含"足够的，充足的"之意。

adequate：指数量上足够，质量上适当。

enough：最普通用词，口语、书面语可用，较侧重分量或数量的足够，多指希望的满足。

sufficient：正式用词，侧重数目或数量或程度达到某一特定要求或需要。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

9. It is a harmless habit, but it litters up her desk to such an extent that every time she opens it, loose bits of paper fall out in every direction.

【译文】这种习惯无害,只是把写字台里堆得满满当当,以致每次打开抽屉总能带出许多纸片四处飞扬。

【用法】(1)此介词短语在句子中作结果状语,其中 that 引导的从句作 extent 的同位语,如:The news that we are having a holiday tomorrow is not true. 我们明天放假这个消息不是真的。

(2)to such an extent 达到这样一种程度,to...extent 表示"达到……程度"。

The car was damaged to such an extent that it could not be repaired.

这辆车毁得太厉害,根本无法修复了。

She had changed to such an extent that I no longer recognized her.

她变化太大我简直认不出她了。

The political situation is worsening to such an extent that I doubt if war can be avoided.

政治形势恶化到如此的地步,我怀疑战争是否可以避免。

10. This hobby educates one not only in the chosen subject, but also in general matters which have some bearing on it.

【译文】这种爱好不仅能使人从选择的专题中受到教育,而且也能从与之有关的一般事物中获得长进。

【用法】have bearing on...与……有关,如:These matters have direct bearing on the welfare of the community. 这些事情直接与社区福利相关。

Regular exercise has a direct bearing on health.

经常进行锻炼与身体健康有直接的联系。

Recent market fluctuations have had a direct bearing on company policy.

近期市场的波动对公司政策有直接的影响。

11. One wants to meet like-minded collectors, to get advice, to exchange articles, to show off the latest find.

【译文】人们总想结识情趣相投的收藏者,以获取教益、交流经验、交换收藏品、炫耀自己的最新发现。

【用法】(1)句中 wants 后连续使用的 5 个动词不定式短语并列作动词 wants 的宾语。这样使用时,应如文中那样,将其一一用逗号分开。

(2)show off 炫耀,显示如:The child danced around the room, showing off to everybody. 那个孩子满屋子跳舞,向大家炫耀一番。

She wanted to show off her new husband at the party. 她想在聚会上炫耀她的新婚丈夫。

He likes to show off how well he speaks French. 他喜欢向人炫耀他的法语讲得有多好。

He's just showing off because that girl he likes is here. 他不过是在表现自己,因为他喜欢的那个姑娘在场。

12. Soon the hobby leads to travel, perhaps to a meeting in another town, ... for collectors are not confined to any one country.

【译文】用不了多久,有这种爱好的人便开始旅行,也许是去另一个城市参加会议,……因为收藏家的活动并非局限于某一国之内。

【用法】(1)lead to 导致。短语中 to 为介词,因此所用 travel 为名词。

(2)confine...to 把……限制在,把……关闭在,如:I wish the speaker would confine himself to the subject. 我希望演讲者不要离题。

This disease is not just confined to children. 这种病不只发生在儿童身上。

She was confined to bed with the flu. 她因患流感而卧病在床。

He was confined to a wheelchair after the accident. 那场事故后他就离不开轮椅了。

13. Over the years one may well become an authority on one's hobby and will very probably be asked to give informal talk to little gatherings and then, if successful, to larger audiences.

【译文】一人积了多年经验会成为自己这种爱好的权威,很可能应邀在小型集会上作非正式的讲

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

话。如果讲得好，便可能向更多的人发表演说。

【写作】在英语句子中间或句尾，插人一个与该句句意无直接关系的成分（单词，词组或句子），作补充说明或修饰，该插入成分就是插入语。

1)短语作插入语

I seldom, if ever, meet such a smart boy. 就是有的话，我也很少见到如此聪明的孩子。

It is difficult, if not impossible, to separate language from culture.

即使不是不可能，也很难将语言和文化区分开来。

It you've finished, we can have a coffee. If not, you'd better keep working.

如果你干完了我们可以喝咖啡。不然的话，你最好还是接着干。

He is not thin, if anything, he is rather on the plump side.

他一点也不瘦，按说还有点胖呢。(if anything 用于否定的话语之后，表示相反的观点)

We assume that everyone is either a success or a failure when, in fact, infinite degrees of both are possible. 我们以为一个人不是成功就是失败。而事实上，失败与成功有着许多的不同。

A friend of mine, after twelve years of studying ballet, didn't succeed in becoming a dancer.

我的一个朋友，尽管学了 12 年的芭蕾，却未能成为舞蹈家。

A child who is not invited to a party will, of course, feel terrible.

一个孩子若未能被邀请参加晚会，感觉自然会很糟糕。

2)陈述词作插入语

Her sister, it seems,/I think,/as far as I know,/ it is said, is twenty years older than her.

她姐姐，好像/我想/据我所知/据说，比她大 20 岁。

You may, if you like, sleep until noon. 如果你愿意的话，可以睡到中午。

The boy is quick to learn, and what is more, he remembers clearly what he has learned.

这男孩学东西很快，而且学过的都记得很清楚。

After what she believed was careful consideration, she made the risky decision.

经过一番自以为还是仔细的考虑，她作出了冒险的决定。

One crucial mental habit of average achievers is what psychologists call "the capacity to postpone gratification."才智一般的成功者具备一个关键思维习惯，这就是心理学家所谓的"推迟享乐的能力"。

3)一般疑问词作插入语

Who did you suppose would be voted our monitor? 你认为谁会被选为我们的班长？

How many students did he say he had taught over the past decade?

他说他在过去的十年里一共教了多少学生？

14. Collecting, by occupying spare time so constructively, makes a person contented, with no time for boredom.

【译文】收藏活动通过富有建设性地利用业余时间使人感到心满意足，不再有无聊之日。

【用法】by occupying spare time so constructively 为介词短语，作方式状语，说明 makes a person contented 的方式。正常语序为：Collecting makes a person contented with no time for boredom by occuping spare time so constructively. 句中将 by...这一方式状语提前，主要是为了强调和使句子显得更为紧凑。with no time for boredom 也为方式状语，修饰 makes a person contented。

【词汇】**contented** *adj.* 满意的，满足的，惬意的：a contented smile 惬意的微笑；He is a contented man. 他是一个满足的人。He smiled contentedly. 他满意地笑了。

discontented *adj.* 不满足的，不满意的

content *adj.* 心满意足的 be content with sth. /to do sth.

He had to be content with third place. 他只好屈居第三名。

I was content to wait. 我愿意等候。

contents *n.* 内容；所容纳之物

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

额外收获

1. 文中使用了不同的列举方式，如下列出：

A. Whatever it consists of, stamps, records, first editions of books, china, glass, antique furniture, pictures, model cars, stuffed birds, toy animals, there is always something to do in connection with it, from finding the right place for the latest addition to verifying facts in reference books.

B. One wants to meet like-minded collectors, to get advice, to compare notes, to exchange articles, to show off the latest find.

C. In this way self-confidence grows, first from mastering a subject, then from being able to talk about it.

first from... 和 then from... 这两个介词短语并列作动词 grows 的状语。

2. 英语中常常为了使长句子结构更为匀称，会调整句中一些成分的位置，如文中：

A. I know someone who always cuts out from newspapers sketches of model clothes that she would like to buy, if she had the money.

介词短语 of model clothes 作定语修饰 sketches，作 cuts out 的宾语，即按正常语序为 cuts sketches of model clothes out from newspapers。由于关系代词 that 引导的定语从句较长，且同 sketches of model clothes 关系较为密切，需直接置于其后对它进行修饰，这样就会使 from newspapers 置于全句末尾，从而使全句头重脚轻，失去平衡。为使句子保持较好的平衡，就把充当地点状语的 from newspapers 放在了 sketches 和 of model clothes 之间。

B. Collecting, by occupying spare time so constructively, makes a person contented, with no time for boredom.

by occupying spare time so constructively 为介词短语作方式状语，说明 makes a person contented 的方式。正常语序为：Collecting makes a person contented with no time for boredom by occupying spare time so constructively. 句中将 by... 这一方式状语提前主要是为了强调和使句子显得更为紧凑。with no time for boredom 也是方式状语，修饰 makes a person contented。

3. 注意本课几个相似结构

In an attempt to do sth.

In the belief that

可联想：

He keeps on reading in an hope that he will be a writer someday.

他坚持阅读，希望有一天能成为作家。

He enters for the race in the hope to win a prize. 他抱着获奖的希望参加了比赛。

并和 58 课、53 课相似结构结合复习。

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

LESSON 60 Too early and too late

本节重点和难点

- those who 的用法
- 能够引入虚拟语气的介词短语
- "the+形容词"表示具有共同特征的某一类人
- "介词+which"引导的定语从句

本课词汇

punctuality [ˌpʌŋktʃuˈæliti] *n.* 准时
rural [ˈruərəl] *adj.* 乡村的
【词组】rural scenery 乡村风光
disregard [ˌdisriˈgɑːd] *v.* 不顾，无视
intellectual [ˌintiˈlektʃuəl] *n.* 知识分子
abstruse [əbˈstruːs] *adj.* 深奥的
coordinate [kəuˈɔːdinət] *n.* 坐标 [kəuˈɔːdineit] *vt.* 协调，调节
reproach [riˈprəutʃ] *vt.* 责备
punctured [ˈpʌŋktʃəd] *adj.* 被刺穿的
diversion [daiˈvəːʃən] *n.* 转向，改道
trial [ˈtraiəl] *n.* 审判，审讯；试用，试验；讨厌（或麻烦）的事
【词组】bring sb. to trial 审判某人/give a trial 试用（某人）；试一试/on trial （指人）在试用期间；（指物）在试验中/stand trial (for) （因……）受审判
fraction [ˈfrækʃən] *n.* 小部分，片断
flourish [ˈflʌriʃ] *vi.* 繁荣，兴旺 *n.* 戏剧动作，挥舞
microscopic [ˌmaikrəˈskɔpik] *adj.* 微小的
adamant [ˈædəmənt] *adj.* 不动摇的

课文详解

1. Punctuality is a necessary habit in all public affairs of a civilized society.

【译文】在文明社会的一切社交活动中，准时乃是一必不可少的好习惯。

【用法】community 和 society

(1) community 是指生活在一个特定村庄、镇、城市或区域内的全体成员，即"社会"、"公众"；或指一群生活在同一区域内的信奉同一宗教的人或同族人，即"社团"、"社区"；另外，community 为可数名词，经常与定冠词连用：

He works for the good of the community. 他为社区的利益服务。

(2) society 不仅指所有的人，而且包括保障人们生活在一起的法律、经济、政治以及组织结构等；它所涵盖的面比 community 更广泛，也许指一个国家，甚至指好几个国家；society 一般用作不可数名词和零冠词名词，但当它前面有修饰词时可加冠词：

Society has a right to see law-breakers punished. 社会有权要求违法者受到惩罚。

【词汇】**punctuality** *n.* 准时，守时；unpunctuality *n.* 不守时；unpunctual *adj.* 不守时的；over-punctual 过分准（守）时的：

She's always very punctual for appointments. 她总是准时赴约。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

punct-刺，小点；puncture 刺穿，穿孔；acupuncture 针灸；punctuate 加标点于；compunction 追悔，良心不安；compunctious 懊悔的，良心不安的；pungent 刺激性的，辛辣的；pungency 辛辣，剧烈，敏锐；punch 拳打，重击；poignant 尖刻的；point 点，地点；appoint 任命，指定，约定；appointment 约会；disappoint 使失望；disappointment 失望

【用法】public affairs 公共事务

state affairs 国家大事

domestic affairs 家务事

foreign affairs 外交事务

2. Only in a sparsely-populated rural community is it possible to disregard it.

【译文】只有在人口稀少的农村，才可忽视准时的习惯。

【用法】only 用于句首或用于 only＋状语＋句子其他成分的句子中时，其后的主语和谓语动词通常构成倒装形式。

【词汇】**disregard** *vt.* 忽视，不理会，不顾

The board completely disregarded my recommendations. 董事会完全不理会我的建议。

Safety rules were woefully disregarded. 安全规定令人遗憾地被忽视了。

He shows a total disregard for other people's feelings. 他丝毫不顾及别人的感受。

3. The intellectual, who is working on some abstruse problem, has everything coordinated and organized for the matter in hand.

【译文】从事深奥课题研究的知识分子，为了搞好手头研究，要把一切协调一致，组织周密。

【用法】(1) work on...从事于……，致力于……，为动介短语，其后需使用名词、代词或动名词作宾语，多用于进行时态或完成进行时态，如：

He is working on a new novel. 他正在写一部新小说。

work on sb. /sth. 对某人(某事物)产生预期的结果或作用：

His charm doesn't work on me. 他的魅力对我不起作用。

(2) for the matter in hand 为手中的事。作目的状语，其中介词短语 in hand 为定语，修饰 matter。

【词汇】**intellectual** *n.* 知识分子 *adj.* 智力的，有才智的；intellectual property right 知识产权；She is very intellectual. 她很聪明。

intellect *n.* 智力

【辨析】mind，intellect，intelligence，brains，wit，wisdom 这些名词均有“智力，智慧”之意。

mind：使用广泛，无褒贬之意。强调诸如认识、记忆、思考、决定等的智慧功能。

intellect：侧重不受感情或意志左右的冷静思考或领悟能力。

intelligence：指处理或对付问题或情况的特殊才智；也指运用、展开智慧的能力。

brain(多用复数 brains)：强调理解能力和独立的或者首创性的思维能力。

wit：指先天的才能、智力、意识等，隐含小聪明意味。

wisdom：较文雅，也可指明智的言行。

【词根】**coordinate** *vt.* 使协调

order-，ordin-顺序；coordination 协调；coordinator 协调人；surbordinate 使服从；下级的，次要的；surbordination 下属，次要，隶属，服从；disorder 无秩序；疾病；orderly 有条不紊的

4. But people are often reproached for unpunctuality when their only fault is cutting things fine.

【译文】但有些人不准时常常是因为掐钟点所致，他们常常会受到责备。

【用法】cut things fine，cut it fine 做出精确的计算；在金钱时间方面算得几乎不留余地

Don't cut it too fine or you'll miss the train. 不要把时间抠得太紧，否则你会赶不上火车。

【辨析】blame，accuse，condemn，scold，denounce，reproach，rebuke 这些动词均含有“责备，非难”之意。

blame：普通用词，语气较弱，仅是一般的责难、归咎于，不含用语言责骂之意。

accuse：语气比 blame 强，本义为归罪，可用作指非难或谴责之义。

www.TopSage.com

condemn：正式用词，表示谴责，有较强的司法意味，侧重从道义或原则上的谴责。
scold：普通用词，多指上级对下级、长辈对后辈或雇主对雇员的态度粗暴、言词激烈的数落。
denounce：与 condemn 同义，但着重公开性。
reproach：侧重指因他人粗心、自私等引起不满而去指责、找茬。
rebuke：多指上级对下级进行的公开、强烈、严正而不宽容的责备，隐含一定权威的意味。

【联想】beyond reproach 无可指责
beyond doubt 毫无疑问
beyond understanding 无法理解
beyond description 无法描述

5. It is hard for energetic, quick-minded people to waste time, so they are often tempted to finish a job before setting out to keep an appointment.

【译文】精力充沛、头脑敏捷的人极不愿意浪费时间，因此他们常想做完一件事后再去赴约。

【用法】be tempted to do sth. 忍不住做某事；temptation 诱惑
She was tempted to ring him up, but her pride would not let her do it.
她忍不住想给他打电话，但她的自尊心阻止了她。
I'm tempted to buy that dress though it's expensive.
尽管那件套裙很贵，我还是动了心想买。

6. If no accidents occur on the way, like punctured tyres, diversions of traffic, sudden descent of fog, they will be on time.

【译文】要是途中没有发生爆胎、改道、突然起雾等意外事故，他们是决不会迟到的。

【用法】like 为介词，它所构成的介词短语，即 like punctured tyres...fog 作定语，修饰 accidents，意即"如果没有像爆胎……之类的事情发生的话"。

【词汇】**diversion** *n.* [U,C]改道，绕道；[C]娱乐：
We made a short diversion to go and visit the castle. 我们绕了一小段路去参观那座城堡。
The city is full of diversions. 城里有很多娱乐活动。

7. The over-punctual can be as much a trial to others as the unpunctual.

【译文】早到的人同迟到的一样令人生厌。

【用法】over-punctual 和 unpunctual 为形容词，其前使用定冠词后，如 the rich、the poor 搭配那样，表示"……类的人"之意。

【词汇】**trial** *n.* 审判，审讯；讨厌的事、人；试用(期)：
He was a real trial(trouble maker, headache, problem) to his parents when he was young.
他小时候真的是个"捣蛋鬼"。
Trail by jury is a fundamental right. 陪审团的审讯是最基本的权利。
She is having a three-month trial and if she is good enough, she will be given a permanent job.
她正在三个月的试用期内，如果她表现好的话就会转正。

8. The only thing to do was ask them to come half an hour later than the other guests.

【译文】唯一的办法就是请他们比别的客人晚来半小时。

【用法】to do 为动词不定式，作 thing 的定语，意即"唯一能做的事情"。ask them to come...guests 为动词不定式短语，作主语的补足语。通常作主语补足语的动词不定式前需使用 to，但如果主语全部或部分含有作主语补足语的动词不定式的意义时，即为主语中所含"do"的意义的引申或为其内容时，该动词不定式的 to 可以省略，如：
All I did was turn off the tap. 我只不过把水龙头关上罢了。
The only thing you can do is wait and see. 你别无它法，只能观望。

9. If you are catching a train, it is always better to be comfortably early than even a fraction of a minute too late.

【译文】如果赶火车，尽量提前到站比仅仅晚几秒要好得多。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

【用法】a fraction of a minute 一分钟里的几秒，几秒钟。意即“……也比晚到哪怕几秒钟要好”。a fraction of minute 表示“一点点，微量”：

The car stopped within a fraction of an inch of the wall. 汽车在离墙不到一英寸的地方停住了。

【词汇】**fraction** *n.* 少量，一点：a fraction of...一点点，微量

The car missed me by a fraction of an inch. 汽车差一点就撞到了我。

For a fraction of a second I hesitated. 我稍稍迟疑了一下。

She has only a fraction of her brother's intelligence. 她的智力只相当于他弟弟的一点点。

10. She entered the station twenty minutes before the train was due, since her parents had impressed upon her that it would be unforgivable to miss it and cause the friends with whom she was going to stay to make two journeys to meet her.

【译文】在火车进站 20 分钟前她就进了车站。因为她的父母再三跟她说，如果误了这趟车，她的东道主朋友们就得接她两趟，这是不应该的。

【用法】(1) impress... upon/on... 把……铭刻在……，即“使……牢记……”，如：His words impressed themselves on my memory. 他的话铭刻在我的记忆里。

Father impressed on me the value of hard work. 父亲向我强调努力工作的重要意义。

He impressed on us the need for immediate action. 他让我们认识到必须立刻采取行动。

(2)cause the friends...to make two journeys to meet her 为 cause sb. to do...(迫使某人做……)用法。在此结构中，sb. 后的动词不定式 to do，即文中 to make two journeys to meet her，作宾语补足语。意即“赶不上火车，使得与她相聚的朋友来接她两次是不可原谅的”。

11. The girl asked to see a timetable, feeling sure that her father could not have made such a mistake.

【译文】姑娘要求看看火车时刻表，因为她深信父亲不会有此类差错。

【用法】feeling sure that...mistake，现在分词短语，作原因状语，修饰 asked。

feel(in...)for sth. ; to search for sth. with fingers 用手指摸索寻找某物

He felt in his pockets for some money. 他在口袋里摸索着想找一些钱。

I had to feel about in the dark for the light switch. 我得在黑暗中摸索寻找电灯开关。

12. The porter went to fetch one and arrived back with the stationmaster, who produced it with a flourish and pointed out a microscopic “o” beside the time of the arrival of the train at his station; this little “o” indicated that the train only stopped for mail.

【译文】搬运工跑回去取时刻表，同时请来了站长。站长拿着时刻表一挥手，指着那趟列车到站时刻旁边的一个很小的圆圈标记。这个标记表示列车是为装邮件而停车。

【词汇】**flourish** *vi.* 繁荣，兴旺，挥手：Few businesses are flourishing within the present economic climate. 在目前的经济气候下，很少有企业能够兴旺。

额外收获

1. 两种常见的倒装：

(1)某些表示否定的副词如 barely, hardly, scarcely, seldom, little, never, nowhere, at no time, by no means, in no case, on no account, under no circumstance, in vain 等放在句首，主谓要倒装。

Never have I seen him so angry! 我从来未见过他如此生气。

At no time will China be a superpower. 中国任何时候都不做超级大国。

Under no circumstances would I agree to such a proposal.

在任何情况下我也不会同意这样的建议。

Hardly had he begun his speech when he was interrupted. 他刚开始讲话就被人打断了。

(2)only＋状语，放在句首，主谓要倒装。

Only later did they realize what a terrible thing had happened.

只是到后来他们才意识到发生了多么可怕的事情。

Only recently did linguists begin the serious study of languages that were very different from their

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

own. 只是最近语言学家开始认真研究与他们不同的语言。

2. 文中出现了很多的时间表达方式,比较典型的有如下几句:

A. The over-punctual(too early)can be as much a trial to others as the unpunctual(late).

B. The guest who arrives half an hour too soon(too early)is the greatest nuisance.

C. An even harder situation is to be on the platform in good time(being early)for a train and still to see it go off without you.

D. If you are catching a train, it is always better to be comfortably early(not too early but early enough)than even a fraction of a minute too late (however a little bit late, in some situations it's equal to "too late").

3. 不定式作表语表示具体动作或将来动作;动名词作表语表示抽象的一般行为:

To be kind to the enemy is to be cruel to the people. 对敌人的仁慈就是对自己的残忍。

My chief purpose is to point out the difficulties of the matter.

我的首要目的是把注意力引向当前的困难。

What I would suggest is to put off the meeting. 我的建议是推迟会议。

Our work is serving the people. 我们的工作是为人民服务。

What he likes is taking a walk after supper. 他喜欢饭后散步。

The story told by Mr. Wang is interesting. 王先生讲的故事很有趣。

4. 独立主格:

The test finished, we began our holiday. = When the test was finished, we began our holiday.

考试结束了,我们开始放假。

The president assassinated, the whole country was in deep sorrow. = After the president was assassinated, the whole country was in deep sorrow. 总统被谋杀了,举国上下沉浸在悲哀之中。

Weather permitting, we are going to visit you tomorrow. 天气允许,我们明天去看你。

This done, we went home. 工作完成后,我们才回家。

The meeting gone over, everyone was eager to go home earlier. 会议结束后,每个人都想早点回家。

He came into the room, his ears red with cold. 他回到了房间里,耳朵冻得红通通的。

He came out of the library, a large book under his arm. 他夹着本厚书,走出了图书馆。

with 的复合结构作独立主格:

表示伴随情况时,既可用分词的独立结构,也可用 with 的复合结构:with+名词(代词)+现在分词/过去分词 / 形容词/副词/不定式/介词短语。例如:

He stood there, his hand raised. = He stood there, with his hand raised. 他举着手站在那儿。

独立主格结构使用介词的问题:当介词是 in 时,其前后的两个名词均不加任何成分(如物主代词或冠词),也不用复数。但 with 的复合结构不受此限制。例如:

A robber burst into the room, knife in hand. (hand 前不能加 his)

劫匪冲进房间,手里拿着刀。

当表示人体部位的词作逻辑主语时,及物动词用现在分词,不及物动词用过去分词。例如:

He lay there, his teeth set, his hand clenched, his eyes looking straight up.

他躺在那儿,牙紧咬,双手握拳,两眼直勾勾看着上面。

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

《新概念英语(第三册)》课后习题答案

Lesson 1 A puma at large

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Reports—London Zoo—puma spotted—45 miles south of London
2 Similar in nature
3 Woman picking blackberries saw it first
4 Puma moved from place to place
5 Left trail of dead deer—small animals
6 Paw prints—puma fur found as well
7 "Cat-like noises"—heard at night
8 Animal seen up a tree
9 Now experts convinced—really was a puma

Summary

The reports received by London Zoo that a puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London were similar in nature. A woman picking blackberries saw it first, *but* the puma moved from place to place, *leaving* a trail of dead deer and small animals. Paw prints and puma fur were found as well. "Cat-like noises" were heard at night *and* the animal was seen up a tree. Now experts were convinced that the animal really was a puma. (79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

spotted (l. 2)	seen
accumulate (l. 4)	pile up
obliged to (l. 5)	bound to
claimed (l. 6)	stated
extraordinarily similar (l. 6)	surprisingly alike
immediately (l. 8)	at once
convinced (l. 14)	sure

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Mrs. Stone had spent the whole morning *picking blackberries in the countryside near her home*. It was nearly lunch time, so she decided *to return home for lunch*. She was just *picking up her basket* when she heard a noise in *the bushes*. Then she saw an animal which *looked like a cat*. She knew it was not a cat because *it was so large*. The animal suddenly *turned round to look at her* and she thought it was going to *come towards her and perhaps attack her*. She dropped her basket and *screamed loudly*. Hearing the sound, the animal *disappeared into the bushes*, after which Mrs. Stone *picked up her basket* and ran all the way home. She told her neighbours that *she had seen a puma in the countryside*, but they did not believe her. She also telephoned the police but they *didn't believe her either*. (148 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

address: ________,
________,
________,
________.

date:

beginning of letter (Dear...,)

Introduction
Purpose
Conclusion

ending(Yours...,)
signature

postscript(PS...)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 d 6 b 7 d 8 d 9 c 10 b
11 b 12 a

Lesson 2 Thirteen equals one

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Church clock—striking hours woke vicar up
2 One o'clock
3 Clock struck thirteen times
4 Vicar—clock tower
5 Took torch with him
6 Saw Bill Wilkins—local grocer
7 Bill—trying to repair the bell
8 Had succeeded—repairing it—but one o'clock—thirteen times
9 Vicar—pleased
10 Offered grocer cup of tea

Summary

At one o'clock in the morning, the church clock striking the hours woke the vicar up *as* it struck thirteen times. The vicar went into the clock tower, *taking* a

www.TopSage.com

torch with him. He saw Bill Wilkins, the local grocer there *and* Bill explained he was trying to repair the clock *but* hadn't succeeded because at one o'clock it struck thirteen times. However, the vicar was pleased the bell was working *and* offered the grocer a cup of tea. (79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

vicar (l. 1)	priest, pastor
repaired (l. 3)	fixed
damaged (l. 4)	broken
silent (l. 4)	quiet
with a start (l. 5)	in surprise
caught sight of (ll. 8-9)	saw

Key to Composition

A possible answer

A sticky business

We were used to hearing our church bell striking the hours in our small village. For as long as anyone could remember, the bell had struck the hours day and night. However, one night the church bell remained silent and the next morning we saw that the clock had stopped at exactly one a. m. Our clock was clearly damaged, but no one could explain how this had happened.

Armed with a torch, our vicar climbed into the church tower to see what was going on. He heard a loud buzz as he went towards the clock and in the torchlight he found it had been invaded by bees. He was lucky they didn't sting him! He shone his torch into the great bell and saw that it was full of wax and honey. No wonder it wasn't working!

A bee keeper was called in to deal with the situation. He immediately removed the queen bee to one of his bee hives and the other bees followed. The clock was cleaned and was soon working again. We not only enjoyed hearing it strike the hours day and night, but we enjoyed eating the honey as well. (195 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer

1 It was very nice to hear from you.
2 It's been a long time since I heard from you.
3 Forgive me for not answering your letter before now.
4 I am sorry you've been ill and hope you're feeling better now.
5 I have not written before as I had lost your address.
6 I hope you received my last letter.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 d 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 b 7 c 8 a 9 b 10 a
11 a 12 c

Lesson 3 An unknown goddess

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Archaeologists found clay fragments—most sacred room—ancient temple
2 Represented fifteen statues—goddesses
3 Had once been painted
4 Body of one statue found—remains—15th c. B. C.
5 Head found—remains—5th c. B. C.
6 Fragments reconstructed
7 Turned out to be statue—goddess—three feet high
8 Hands on hips
9 Full-length skirt
10 Identity not known

Summary

Archaeologists found clay fragments in an ancient temple. These represented the fifteen statues of goddesses which had once been painted. The body of one statue was found among remains from the fifteenth century B. C. while its head was found among remains from the fifth century B. C. When the fragments were reconstructed, they turned out to be a goddess which stood three feet high. Her hands rested on her hips and she was wearing a full-length skirt. Her identity is unknown. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

explored (l. 2)	examined
ancient (l. 3)	very old
prosperous (l. 5)	wealthy
storeys (l. 5)	floors
beneath (l. 7)	under
fragments (l. 10)	pieces
remains (l. 2)	surviving pieces

Key to Composition

A possible answer

After walking round the ancient city, the archaeologists *discovered an ancient temple*. This temple *had obviously been a place of worship because it contained a sacred room*. On entering the sacred room, the archaeologists *found the clay fragments of fifteen statues, each of which was a goddess which had once been painted*. After this, workmen began digging and soon discovered *the head of a statue among remains dating from the fifth century B. C.* They also found *the body of this statue among remains from the fifteenth century B. C.* The archaeologists carefully *put the fragments together*. They were astonished to find that *the figure was a goddess*. The goddess was *a modern-looking woman*. She *had her hands on her hips*

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

and she was wearing a full-length skirt. Although the archaeologists *tried very hard to identify her*, they were unable to find out her name. (143 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer

1 I shall be looking forward to seeing you next week.
2 I am very sorry for any inconvenience I have caused you.
3 I hope you will accept my apologies.
4 I wish you every success in your new job.
5 Please give my regards to your parents.
6 I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 d 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 c 7 b 8 b 9 a 10 d
11 b 12 b

Lesson 4 The double life of Alfred Bloggs

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Married—Alfred Bloggs—told wife—Corporation
2 Dressed—smart black suit
3 Changed—overalls
4 Spent day—dustman
5 Shower—changed back into suit at night
6 Lasted two years
7 Fellow dustmen—secret
8 Wife—never learn truth
9 Husband—office—future

Summary

When he got married, Alfred Bloggs told his wife he worked for the Corporation. *Though* he dressed in a smart black suit every morning, he changed into overalls at work *and* spent the day working as a dustman. Then he took a shower and changed back into his suit at night. This lasted for two years *and* his fellow dustmen kept his secret. His wife will never learn the truth *because* her husband will be an office worker in future. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

receive (1. 1)	get
sacrifice (1. 5)	give up
privilege (1. 6)	special advantage, honour
curious (1. 7)	strange
embarrassed (1. 9)	shy
discovered (1. 13)	found out
status (1. 15)	social position

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Nearly caught

One morning Alf and three other dustmen were collecting rubbish in Merton Street and they stopped outside Mrs. Frost's house.

Though Alf didn't know it, his wife was visiting Mrs. Frost at the time. She and Mrs. Frost were old friends, though Mrs. Frost had never met Alf. Alf was just getting out of the dustcart to go into Mrs. Frost's backyard when he saw his wife leaving Mrs. Frost's house. He quickly returned to the dustcart and hid in the driving cabin. While he was hiding, his fellow dustmen helped him by collecting Mrs. Frost's rubbish. Meanwhile, Alf's wife and Mrs. Frost talked on the doorstep. It looked as though their conversation would never end!

At last Mrs. Bloggs said goodbye to Mrs. Frost. She waved to one of the dustmen whom she recognized and she went towards the dustcart to greet him. The dustman waved back and gave her a big smile as the dustcart drove off. Mrs. Bloggs stood on the pavement and watched the dustcart disappear down the street. Then she began to walk home. "It's all right, Alf," his friend said. "She can't see you now."

"Thanks, Jim," Alf said. "That was a lucky escape!" (200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer

address
date

Dear Mrs. Frost,

It was nice to meet you at Selena's party last week.

You mentioned you had a copy of "Who's Who". I am writing to ask if I could borrow it for a couple of days. I'm doing some research on politicians and this book contains a lot of information. I promise I will take good care of it and return it to you as quickly as possible.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,
signature

(80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 c 9 d 10 b
11 c 12 a

Lesson 5 The facts

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Journalist immediately set out to get facts—instructions, editor
2 Did not send them at once
3 Editor getting impatient
4 Sent three faxes
5 Threatened to fire journalist

www.TopSage.com

6 Last fax not answered
7 Article published—original form
8 Journalist—fax—week later
9 Imprisoned—counting steps—measuring height of wall

Summary

Though the journalist immediately set out to get the facts after receiving instructions from his editor, he did not send them at once. *Meanwhile*, the editor was getting impatient, so he sent three faxes, finally *threatening* to fire the journalist. *When* the last fax was unanswered, the article was published in its original form. The journalist sent the editor a fax a week later *explaining* he had been imprisoned *after counting* the steps *and measuring* the height of the wall.

(80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

journalist (l. 3)	reporter
instructed (l. 3)	ordered, commissioned
well-known (l. 3)	famous
publish (l. 6)	print, issue
surrounds (l. 7)	encircles
fired (l. 12)	sacked, dismissed
reluctantly (l. 12)	unwillingly

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The journalist counted the number of steps as he *wearily climbed up to the high wall surrounding the president's palace*. On arriving at the main gate, he *sat down to get his breath back*. He then *produced a tape measure* in order to measure the wall. While he was busy measuring the wall, a policeman *approached him and asked him what he was doing*. Though the journalist *explained he was a reporter and his editor had asked him to find out the exact height of the wall*, the policeman refused to believe him. He was arrested and sent to prison because the police thought that *he might be a spy or might even want to assassinate the president*. When the journalist *insisted he was innocent*, he made things worse for himself. This proved to the police that *the man certainly was guilty and deserved to stay in prison indefinitely*.

(149 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer

address
date

Dear Jack,

Many congratulations on your recent marriage! Quite by chance I happened to read about your wedding in our local newspaper and I was thrilled with the news. Your wife sounds really charming. I gather that you will both be moving to our area, so we'll soon be neighbours. I hope you'll be very happy and I'll be able to see you soon.

I look forward to seeing you again and meeting your wife. My kindest regards to you both.

Yours sincerely,
signature

(79 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 b 8 c 9 c 10 b
11 d 12 d

Lesson 6 Smash-and-grab

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Large car—entered—arcade—Piccadilly
2 Stopped outside jeweller's
3 Two thieves—out of car
4 Smashed windows—iron bars
5 Owner of shop—upstairs
6 Threw furniture—thieves
7 Hit one of thieves—heavy statue
8 Raid—three minutes
9 Thieves drove away
10 Owner ran after car
11 Threw ashtrays, vases
12 Thieves got away
13 Thousands of pounds—diamonds

Summary

A large car entered an arcade near Piccadilly *and* stopped outside a jeweller's. Two thieves got out *and* smashed the shop window. The owner of the shop was upstairs at the time, *so* he threw furniture at the thieves *hitting* one of them with a heavy statue. The raid lasted only three minutes *and* the thieves drove away. *Running* after them, the owner threw ashtrays and vases, *but* the thieves got away, *stealing* thousands of pounds worth of diamonds.

(79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

expensive (l. 1)	dear
almost(l. 2)	nearly
assistants(l. 4)	helpers(in a shop)
gazing(l. 7)	looking
several(l. 7)	a few, a number of
stayed(l. 10)	remained
smashed(l. 11)	broke to pieces

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Composition

A possible answer

They got away

Seeing the thieves' car join the traffic on Piccadilly, Mr. Taylor took a taxi and followed them. The taxi driver drove at full speed when Mr. Taylor told him what had happened.

There wasn't too much traffic at this time of the morning so there was a mad chase through the streets of London. For a short time, the thieves' car was on the wrong side of the road and hit another car, but it did not stop. Two policemen in a police car watched in amazement as the two vehicles went past, both breaking the speed limit. Lights on and horn blaring, the police car chased both the speeding cars. Mr. Taylor's taxi stopped when the traffic lights turned red. The thieves ignored the traffic lights and got away. Meanwhile, the police caught up with the taxi at the traffic lights and the taxi driver was charged with speeding. They refused to let the driver off, even though Mr. Taylor carefully explained the situation.

However, the police informed another police car of the chase and ten minutes later the thieves' car was found abandoned in a side street. The thieves had escaped on foot and disappeared among the crowd.

(200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

You won't believe what happened to me on Tuesday morning!

I was walking down a busy street near Piccadilly when I saw a man smash the window of an antique shop and run off with an expensive vase. Other passers-by saw him, too, and we all chased the man down the street, shouting "Stop! Thief! Stop! Thief!" We managed to catch the man, but unfortunately the vase got broken.

I'll tell you the full story when we meet next week.

(80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a 8 d 9 a 10 a 11 b 12 c

Lesson 7 Mutilated ladies

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 John Butlin—successful furniture business
2 After very good day—put wallet—£3,000 into microwave oven
3 He and fiancée Jane—horse-riding
4 Got home—Jane cooked dinner—microwave oven
5 Dismayed—find—money destroyed
6 John—bank manager
7 Bank manager—remains to—Mutilated Ladies
8 Identified remains—returned the money

Summary

John Butlin runs a successful furniture business *and* after a very good day, he put his wallet containing £3,000 into the microwave oven for safekeeping. *Then* he and his fiancée, Jane, went horse-riding, *after which* Jane cooked their dinner in the microwave oven *only to* find to their dismay that the money had been destroyed. John went to see his bank manager *who* sent the remains to the Mutilated Ladies department *who* identified the remains and returned the money.

(79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

happened(l. 1)	occurred
remembered(l. 2)	recalled
fortunately(l. 6)	luckily
concerns(l. 9)	is about
dismay(l. 12)	sadness
the remains(l. 13)	what was left
department(l. 14)	section

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Jane opened the oven door and saw that her meal was *ready to serve*. She took the food out of the oven and *in doing so, noticed something strange inside the oven which she couldn't recognize. So she went to find John and told him about it. In dismay, John quickly explained that he had put his wallet containing the day's takings into the oven for safekeeping*. They both rushed to the oven and *saw that the money had been destroyed*. At first, they didn't know what *to do*. John wanted to *throw the money away*, but Jane wouldn't *let him*. "It's best not to *disturb the wallet*" Jane said. "You can see all the money *is there, even if it has been destroyed.*" Jane told John to *go and see his bank manager for advice*, so the next day *John took the wallet and the ashes to the bank*. (150 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

Thank you again for your wonderful hospitality!

It was a real pleasure to see you again after such a long time. I'll never forget your kindness during my stay. I particularly enjoyed our visit to the local market and our long walks in the countryside. I also enjoyed your company and the excellent food and wine. You're a perfect host!

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

I hope you will be able to visit me before long and look forward to seeing you soon. (78 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 c 8 a 9 a 10 d 11 b 12 b

Lesson 8 A famous monastery

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 St. Bernard's Pass—visited—thousands of people—summer
2 People cross Pass in cars
3 Dogs—special enclosure—so many people about
4 Temperature in winter —-30°
5 Few visitors
6 Monks prefer winter season
7 Dogs free to wander—outside enclosure
8 Young skiers regularly visit monastery in winter
9 Christmas and Easter
10 Warmly welcomed

Summary

The St. Bernard's Pass is visited by thousands of people in summer, *who* cross the Pass in cars. *Because* there are so many people about, the dogs are kept in a special enclosure. *As* the temperature in winter falls to -30°, there are few visitors, *so* the monks prefer this season. The dogs are *also* free to wander outside their enclosure. Parties of young skiers regularly visit the monastery in winter, *during* Christmas and Easter *when* they are warmly welcomed.

(80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

famous (l. 2)	well-known
founded (l. 3)	established
lies(l. 4)	is
now that(l. 7)	since, because
rashly attempt(ll. 9-10)	unthinkingly try
quite(l. 13)	entirely
drops(l. 13)	falls

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Rescue

One very cold morning, a monk took two St. Bernard's dogs out for exercise. He immediately noticed that the dogs were very restless. Suspecting a traveller might be in difficulty, the monk returned to the monastery to organize a search party.

The two dogs led four monks through the snow. Two of the monks pulled a sledge behind them, in case they needed it. There had been very high winds the previous night, but now everything was still and visibility was bad because there was a heavy fog. Moreover, the temperature had fallen to -20°. The dogs led the monks towards the Pass and as the monks got near, they heard cries in the distance. The dogs soon found a man who was trapped under the snow and immediately dragged him out. The man was alive, but frozen stiff. The monks strapped him to the sledge and took him back to the monastery.

The man was unconscious, but he soon recovered in the warm atmosphere of the monastery where he was given plenty of hot drinks and food. When the traveller was able to speak, the monks listened with interest as he told them what had happened the previous night.

(200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I hear you'll be taking a holiday in the Alps, which I'm sure you'll enjoy!

I went there last year and stayed in the Berg Hotel high in the mountains not far from Zermatt. The hotel has fine views across the valley and I warmly recommend it. You'll love the healthy mountain air and enjoy every comfort at moderate prices. I'm going there again this year.

I look forward to hearing all about your holiday when you get back. (79 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 d 4 d 5 a 6 a 7 c 8 c 9 b 10 a 11 d 12 c

Lesson 9 Flying cats

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 New York Animal Medical Centre—132 cats
2 All fallen off high buildings
3 Eight died—shock or injuries
4 Sabrina—32 storeys—broken tooth
5 When falling at speeds—60 miles—stretch—legs
6 Increases—air-resistance—reduces shock of impact—ground

Summary

The New York Animal Medical Centre recently made a study of 132 cats. All these cats had one thing in common: they had fallen off high buildings, *yet* only eight had died from shock or injuries. One cat, Sabrina, had fallen 32 storeys *but* only suffered from a broken tooth. *When* falling at speeds up to 60 miles per hour, cats stretch out their legs *which* increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact on hitting the ground. (79 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

affectionate(1. 2)	loving
as a result(1. 4)	consequently
remain(1. 5)	continue to be
there is not shortage of(11. 11-12)	there are plenty of
behave(1. 13)	act
injure(1. 14)	harm
increases(1. 16)	raises
reduces(1. 16)	cuts down

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Human beings like to keep dogs and *cats*. Dogs are *submissive and faithful to their masters*, but cats like to *be independent*. Cats are especially lovable when they are still kittens. As kittens they *like to play by chasing anything that moves*. That's how they learn to *hunt mice, birds, insects and other small creatures*. A lot of people keep cats so they *can have a pet*. As kittens grow into cats, they like to *stay indoors*. They like regular meals and enjoy *sleeping in front of a nice fire*. However, they also *like going out*. During the day time and at night they like to *go hunting*. Sometimes during the night *they have fights with other cats*. Cats are very clean animals. You often see them *washing themselves*. Human beings *are fascinated by their behaviour because cats are domestic animals, while at the same time they enjoy their independence*.

(150 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer(body of letter only)

I'm afraid I have to report a little accident: my baby tore some of the pages from the book you kindly lent me.

I am very sorry that this happened. I had left the book on a low table, but the baby got hold of it and tore several pages. However, I was able to buy another copy and I'm sending it to you by separate post. Please let me know when it arrives.

My kindest regards to you all. (80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d 7 b 8 a 9 b 10 c 11 c 12 a

Lesson 10 The loss of the *Titanic*

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 *Titanic*—sailing icy waters, N. Atlantic
2 Iceberg—lookout
3 Alarm given—ship turned sharply
4 Sailed alongside iceberg
5 Faint noise—heard from below
6 Captain—down to investigate
7 Found five of sixteen compartments flooded
8 Order—abandon ship—people overboard
9 1,500 people drowned—not enough lifeboats

Summary

The *Titanic* was sailing across the icy waters of the North Atlantic *when* an iceberg was spotted by a lookout. *After* the alarm was given, the ship turned sharply *and* sailed alongside it. Suddenly, a faint noise was heard from below, *so* the captain went down to investigate, *only to* find that five of the sixteen compartments had been flooded. *On hearing* the order to abandon ship, people jumped overboard, *but* 1,500 drowned because there were not enough lifeboats.

(79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

colossal (1. 4)	immense, huge
regarded (1. 5)	considered, thought to be
compartments (1. 6)	sections, divisions
flooded (1. 7)	filled with water
float (1. 7)	stay on the surface of the water
avoid (1. 11)	escape, miss
narrowly (1. 11)	only just

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Abandon ship

The *Titanic* began to sink, slowly at first. The order to abandon ship was unexpected, so passengers and crew were completely unprepared. It was the middle of the night. Some people were asleep in their cabins. Others were on deck admiring the brilliant night sky and the giant icebergs rising above them. Others were eating and dancing in the wonderful ballrooms on the ship.

The immediate effect was panic and confusion. People began rushing in all directions, wondering what to do next. The cold was indescribable and many passengers were still in their night clothes. Members of the crew came up from below and began to lower the lifeboats. It was a case of women and children first, but it soon became obvious that there weren't enough lifeboats for everyone, so people jumped overboard into the freezing water in order to save their lives. Some of those swimming in the water struggled to get into the lifeboats, but most of them were already full.

The *Titanic* sank rapidly, carrying many people down with it. There were cries of despair from people in the water as they watched the lifeboats moving away and were left to drown in the icy ocean. (200 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

Key to Letter writing

The middle address is correct.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 d 7 b 8 d 9 a 10 c
11 b 12 a

Lesson 11 Not guilty

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Writer—nothing to declare
2 Customs Officer made him—unlock his case
3 Searched the case carefully
4 Found a small bottle
5 Thought it was perfume
6 Writer told him—hair gel
7 Writer had made it
8 Customs Officer did not believe him
9 Writer encouraged—try it
10 Unpleasant smell—convinced Officer—truth
11 Let writer pass through Customs

Summary

Though the writer had nothing to declare, the Customs Officer made him unlock his case. *Searching* the case carefully, the Officer found a small bottle, *which* he thought was perfume. The writer told the Customs Officer that it was hair gel, *which* he had made himself. *As* the Officer did not believe this, the writer encouraged him to try it. The unpleasant smell convinced him the writer was telling the truth, *so* he let him pass through Customs. (78 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

troubled(l. 5)	upset, concerned
clearly(l. 7)	obviously
packed(l. 13)	put in
dreadful(l. 14)	terrible
cap(l. 22)	top
nostrils(l. 22)	nose
convinced(l. 23)	persuaded

Key to Composition

A possible answer

When the Customs Officer *asked the traveller if he was carrying anything valuable*, the man said that he had nothing to declare. The Officer asked the man to *open his suitcase*. Although the case contained only *a suit* and *some dirty clothes*, it was very heavy. This made the Customs Officer suspicious, so he *removed all the clothes from the case*. The case was soon empty and when the Officer *lifted it*, he found that *it was still very heavy*. The Officer examined the case carefully and saw that *the bottom was very shallow*. He *pressed the base hard* and removed the bottom part of the case which contained *a quantity of emeralds and other precious stones*. While the Officer was looking at *an emerald*, the man tried *to escape*. For a moment the man disappeared among *the passing holiday travellers*, but he was soon *caught* and placed under arrest. (150 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

Thank you for your letter asking me to lend you some money to start a new business.

I'm very sorry that I can't help you at the moment. I not only have a great many expenses of my own, but I'm in debt myself. Why don't you ask our friend Jim Clark? I know Jim is keen to invest in business and might be able to lend you some money.

I wish you every success in your new business venture. (80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 a 9 c 10 a
11 d 12 b

Lesson 12 Life on a desert island

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Two men's boat damaged
2 Taking it to Miami
3 On the way—began to sink
4 Men loaded food, matches, beer—rubber dinghy
5 Rowed—few miles—Caribbean
6 Arrived—tiny coral island
7 Collected rainwater—rubber dinghy
8 Caught fish and lobster—spear gun
9 "Ate like kings"—five days
10 Rescued—passing tanker

Summary

As the two men's boat was damaged, they were taking it to Miami *when* on the way it began to sink. *After loading* a rubber dinghy with food, matches and beer, the two men rowed a few miles across the Caribbean *until* they arrived at a tiny coral island. *There* they collected rainwater in the dinghy *and* caught fish and lobster with a spear gun. For five days, they "ate like kings" *until* they were rescued by a passing tanker. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

picture(l. 1)	image
wretched(l. 6)	miserable
starve to death(l. 6)	die of hunger
opportunity(l. 8)	chance

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

repaired(l. 10) fixed, mended
loaded(l. 11) filled, stacked
dinghy(l. 11) small boat

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Shipwrecked

The ship went down and everyone was drowned. I was the only one who managed to jump into the sea. I clung to a plank in the water for several hours till I was washed up on a desert island.

I slept on the beach for a very long time—I can't remember how long. When I woke up, I was hungry and thirsty, so I decided to explore the island. It was uninhabited, but I found plenty of fruit which had fallen from the trees. I lived on coconuts and pineapples and there was plenty of fresh spring water. I tried to hunt wild animals with my bare hands(small pigs and other creatures), but I failed to catch anything. So I spent my days swimming in the warm clear water and lying in the sun.

One afternoon while I was lying on the beach as usual, I saw a boat on the horizon. I signalled with my white shirt and shouted as loudly as I could. Fortunately, someone on the boat saw me and I was rescued. Of course, I was pleased to get back to civilization, but I was very sorry to leave this island paradise. (200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (Purpose and Conclusion only)

We have a wonderful view from our hotel window. Just below us is a beach which stretches for a couple of miles and beyond it clear blue water. We can be sure of brilliant sunshine every day. We look forward to spending our holiday swimming, eating and sleeping!

We all keep thinking of you and wish you were with us. (60 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 c 9 b 10 d 11 d 12 a

Lesson 13 "It's only me"

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Mrs. Richards—dressed as ghost
2 Going to dining room—knock on the door
3 Thought it was—baker
4 Hid in storeroom under the stairs
5 Heard footsteps in hall
6 Man from Electricity Board—opened storeroom door
7 Said—"It's only me"
8 He got a bad fright
9 She walked towards him
10 Fled
11 Slammed front door

Summary

Mrs. Richards had dressed up as a ghost *and* was just going into the dining room *when* there was a knock on the door. *Thinking* it was the baker, she hid in the storeroom under the stairs. She heard footsteps in the hall *and then* the man from the Electricity Board opened the storeroom door. *Though* she said "It's only me", he got a bad fright. *When* she walked towards him, he fled, *slamming* the front door behind him. (79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

intended(l. 4) planned
impatient(l. 6) eager
try it on(l. 6) put it on to see what it was like
whether(l. 8) if
failed to(l. 10) didn't(do something you were normally expected to do)
fled(l. 16) ran away
slamming(l. 16) banging

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Mrs. Richards immediately went upstairs and *took off her costume*. She felt sorry for the poor man from *the Electricity Board*, but at the same time she was *rather amused*. Suddenly, there was a knock at the front door and Mrs. Richards *opened it at once*. The electricity man had returned, accompanied *by a policeman*, so she *invited both in*. The man told Mrs. Richards that *he had tried to read her metre* and that *there was a ghost in the storeroom*. Though Mrs. Richards explained that *she had dressed up as a ghost*, he refused to believe her. She told him to open the storeroom door, but he *was too frightened*, so she *opened it herself*. While the electricity man and the policeman *were looking for the ghost in the storeroom*, Mrs. Richards fetched *her costume*. She showed it *to both men* and *only then did they believe her*.

(150 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

You can't imagine what happened to me the other day when I was checking the electricity metres in Ormond Road!

I went to check the metre of one of our customers and got a terrible shock. I'm convinced the house is haunted because a ghost lives in the storeroom. As soon as it saw me, it came towards me and I fled!

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

This is really a true story and I'll tell you all about it when we meet. (78 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 b 7 b 8 c 9 a 10 d 11 a 12 b

Lesson 14 A noble gangster

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Sir John Hawkwood—settled near Florence—600 years ago
2 Hired soldiers to princes—city-states—in times of war
3 Threaten to destroy a city-state—times of peace
4 Protection money paid
5 Italians regarded him—sort of hero
6 Eighty—when died
7 Florentines—state funeral
8 Had picture painted
9 Dedicated—memory

Summary

After Sir John Hawkwood settled near Florence six hundred years ago, he hired soldiers to the princes of city-states in times of war. In times of peace he threatened to destroy a city-state *unless* protection money was paid. In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero. Sir John was eighty when he died *and* the Florentines *not only* gave him a state funeral *but* had a picture painted of him, *dedicated* to his memory. (79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

sums(l. 2)	amounts
promptly(l. 3)	immediately, without delay
obtaining(l. 5)	getting, acquiring
remarkable(l. 7)	notable, amazing
settled(l. 9)	went to live
hire(l. 11)	make them available in return for money, rent
demanded(l. 12)	asked for

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Hawkwood defeated

News that Hawkwood and his men were approaching caused panic among villagers who prepared to defend their farms. Hawkwood had a bad reputation among farmers because they knew he would not hesitate to kill them and to burn their farms.

The farmers fought very hard, even though they were poorly armed. With their sticks and spades, they were no match for Hawkwood's well-armed soldiers who had horses, swords and bows and arrows. During the battle, a great many farmers were killed. After Hawkwood destroyed their farms, he sent a message to the prince of the city-state demanding a large amount of protection money. He said that if this money was paid, he would go away and cause no more trouble. However, if it wasn't paid, he would invade the city. To Hawkwood's amazement, this demand was refused, so he and his men invaded the city. As a result, many buildings were destroyed and thousands of people were killed, including quite a few of Hawkwood's soldiers.

The city people fought very hard until Hawkwood and his men were finally driven off. Because the city people defended themselves so well, Hawkwood never attacked them again. He and the prince even became friends. (200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I am writing to you about the talk I agreed to give at the local library in two weeks' time.

I regret I have to cancel this talk. I apologize for the inconvenience, but I am being sent abroad by my firm and will be away for three weeks. I'll be back on June 24th. I will be happy to give my talk on a later occasion.

I look forward to hearing from you and to arranging a new date. (80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 c 9 b 10 d 11 d 12 c

Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 George—going—sweet shop
2 Lost fifty pence—drain
3 Took off his jacket
4 Arm through drain cover
5 Failed to find fifty pence
6 Could not get his arm out
7 Crowd of people gathered round him
8 Lady—rubbed arm—soap and butter
9 Failed to free George
10 Firemen—freed George—special type of grease
11 Owner of sweet shop—presented him—large box of chocolates

Summary

George was going to the sweet shop *when* he lost fifty pence down a drain. *After* removing his jacket, he put his arm through the drain cover. He couldn't find his money *and* couldn't get his arm out. A crowd of people gathered round him *and* a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter. She failed to free him, but two

www.TopSage.com

firemen succeeded with a special type of grease. The sweet shop owner presented George with a large box of chocolates. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

appreciate(l. 1)	are pleased with
gifts(l. 1)	presents
extra income(l. 3)	additional money
rattle(l. 5)	make a noise
price(l. 7)	sum, amount
gathered(l. 13)	collected
was firmly stuck(l. 14)	could not be moved

Key to Composition

A possible answer

I was walking along the street when I *saw a crowd ahead of me*. I could hear people shouting and *making a noise*. On arriving at the scene, I *saw a small boy on the pavement with his arm in a drain cover*. A lady carrying a large bar of soap and a saucepan of water *knelt down beside the boy*. She aksed the boy if *he was in pain and he said he wasn't*. Then she rubbed his arm with butter, but *he couldn't get it free*. Meanwhile, someone had telephoned *the fire brigade*. The boy had begun to cry, but when *he saw the firemen, he cherred up*. At first, the firemen decided to *cut through the drain cover*, but they changed their minds and *rubbed the boy's arm with a special type of grease*. The boy was soon free and though his arm hurt, he *was smiling*. (150 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I know you're going to be eight years old in ten days' time!

I'm not quite sure any more what boys of your age like these days. I'd like to get you something you really like. For example, perhaps you'd like a computer game, or a model car, or a pair of rollerblades, or something else. Let me know what you like best and I'll post it to you so it arrives on your birthday.

Write to me soon. (79 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 d 7 a 8 c 9 a 10 c 11 b 12 b

Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Mary told Dimitri—came home—lamb stolen
2 Dimtri learned, neighbour Aleko—a new lamb
3 Dimitri—to Aleko's house
4 Accused Aleko—stealing lamb
5 Aleko showed Dimitri new lamb
6 Black
7 Dimitri—apologized
8 Stayed in Aleko's house—rain
9 Surprise—went outside—lamb almost white
10 Lamb—dyed black

Summary

When Dimitri came home, Mary told him that her white lamb had been stolen. *On* learning that his neighbour, Aleko, had acquired a lamb, Dimitri went to Aleko's house *and* accused him of stealing it. *When* Aleko showed his lamb, Dimitri saw it was black, *so* he apologized. *After* staying in Aleko's house for a while because it had begun to rain, Dimitri got a surprise outside *when* he found the lamb was almost white. It had been dyed black! (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

tiny(l. 1)	very small
fetch(l. 4)	get
missing(l. 5)	gone
acquired(l. 10)	got, obtained
denied(l. 11)	said it wasn't true
apologized(l. 13)	said he was sorry
dyed(l. 16)	coloured

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Not so black

Dimitri was surprised to find that the lamb had turned white. He took a close look at it and recognized it as his own.

This discovery immediately led to an angry scene between Dimitri and Aleko. Dimitri repeated his accusation that Aleko had stolen the lamb, but Aleko still denied any theft. During the violent argument, Dimitri said the rain had proved that the lamb had been dyed black and he recognized it immediately as the one he had given to his wife. When Aleko finally admitted he had stolen the lamb, Dimitri called the police. Aleko was arrested and Dimitri took his lamb home.

The story caused a lot of excitement in the village. The villagers didn't often have the opportunity to talk about such an important event and they were greatly amused by what had happened. Some thought Aleko had been very clever. Others thought he had been extremely stupid. Others said God had sent the rain to punish Aleko for his crime and to prove he was a thief. They discussed the event at great length for a long time, as there wasn't much else to talk about in a village where nothing much ever happened. (199 *words*)

大家网 TopSage.com
www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*two introductions*)

1 A *prize you have won*: You know I entered a competition some time ago and I'm sure you will be really pleased to share my good news. (22 *words*)

2 *An examination you have passed*: Yesterday the postman delivered a large brown envelope containing my exam results and I was very nervous when I opened it. The agony is over! (25 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 d 5 d 6 c 7 d 8 b 9 a 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Verrazano Bridge—Brooklyn—Staten Island
2 4,260 feet span
3 Two great towers
4 Support four huge cables
5 Built on platforms—steel and concrete
6 Over 100 feet under the sea
7 Nearly 700 feet above surface
8 Bridge—suspended from—four cables
9 Each cable—26,108 lengths of wire
10 Very strong
11 Simple and elegant

Summary

The Verrazano Bridge, *which* joins Brooklyn to Staten Island, has a span of 4,260 feet. *Its* two great towers support four huge cables. The towers are built on platforms made of steel and concrete, *extending* over 100 feet under the sea *and rising* nearly 700 feet above the surface of the water. The bridge is suspended from four huge cables, *each of which* contains 26,108 lengths of wire. It is *not only* very strong, *but* simple and elegant *as well*. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

agreeable situation(l. 3)	nice location
in the midst(ll. 3-4)	in the middle of, between which
considered(l. 5)	thought
remain immortal(l. 6)	never die
span(l. 9)	extent, arch
taken into account(l. 9)	taken into consideration, considered
support(l. 10)	hold

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The bridge I know best is called the *Sydney Harbour Bridge*. It *joins either side of Sydney Harbour*. From far away it looks *like a great arch*, but when you get near, *you can see a great deck under the arch*. It is made of *steel* and supported by *two towers*. If you stand on the bridge early in the morning, you can see *the Parramatta River to the west and the open sea to the east*. At this time everything is quiet. During the day, however, *the harbour becomes busy with small boats and large ships moving in all directions*. I enjoy standing on the bridge at night when *you see the magnificent Opera House looking like a great sailing ship*. In the darkness you can see the *city lights*. In the stillness *the traffic and the movement of the sea* are the only sounds that can be heard. (150 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

Here are a few directions ahead of your visit next week.

To be here for lunch, take the 12.15 train from the main station and get off at West Hill. From there you can get a 27 bus just outside the station and get off at Park Avenue. When you come out of the station, take the first road on your left. My house is number 36 which is clearly marked.

I look forward to seeing you next week.

(79 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 d 9 a 10 c 11 c 12 d

Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Writer entered art gallery—saw notice
2 Forbade—people touch exhibits—dangerous
3 Exhibition—consisted—moving sculpture
4 Writer saw—long thin wires—metal spheres against wall
5 Spheres attracted—repelled each other
6 Tall structures—centre of hall—contained coloured lights
7 On and off
8 Sparks emitted—black boxes
9 Red lamps—on and off

Summary

On entering the art gallery, the writer saw a notice *which* forbade people to touch the exhibits *because* they were dangerous. The exhibition consisted of pieces of moving sculpture. Against a wall, the writer saw long thin wires attached to metal spheres *which* attracted and repelled each other. In the centre of the hall were tall structures *containing* coloured lights *which* went on and

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

off. Sparks were emitted from small black boxes *and* red lamps flashed on and off. (79 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

on display(l. 4)	exhibited, on view
oddly(l. 10)	peculiarly, strangely
suspended(l. 11)	hung
response(l. 11)	answer
familiar(l. 11)	well-known
attached(l. 12)	connected
flickered continuously(l. 15)	shone unsteadily all the time

Key to Composition

A possible answer

An interesting exhibition

Recently I went to the Royal Academy in London to see the summer exhibition. The work of many artists was on display and the exhibition aroused a lot of public interest. Crowds of people filled the galleries.

The pictures were, with a few exceptions, mainly by relatively unknown artists. Many of them were traditional pictures of landscapes and portraits. I particularly liked a picture of an old farmhouse by a stream with a few sheep in a field. The strangest picture I saw was an untitled abstract painting by a well-known modern artist. It consisted of swirls of different colours which had been rubbed into the canvas with the artist's fingers. The picture looked a mess, but was also very effective, attracting a lot of comment.

I couldn't help overhearing what people said, things like "I could paint a picture like that with my eyes shut" or "Look how perfect the sunset is in that painting. I'd love to own a picture like that", and so on. There is no doubt it was an excellent exhibition because there were so many different styles on display. There was something to suit everyone, but only if you could afford the high prices! (200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (purpose of letter only)

Thank you so much for your kind invitation to the exhibition, "Ancient Xi'an and the Terracotta Army", now on at the British Museum in London. I'd love to join you and look forward to seeing you again. I'm particularly interested in this exhibition because it has been so well received and I've heard so much about it. It's a unique opportunity to see it. I'll meet you at the entrance to the exhibition at 2.15 on Thursday, 24th. (78 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a　2 c　3 d　4 c　5 c　6 b　7 a　8 d　9 d　10 a
11 b　12 c

Lesson 19　A very dear cat

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Mrs. Ramsay—anonymous letter—three days after cat's disappearance
2 Demanded £1,000—return of cat
3 Never see cat again—if—went to the police
4 Money—cardboard box
5 Leave—outside door
6 Drew—£1,000 from bank
7 Acted on kidnapper's instructions
8 Money disappeared following morning
9 Rastus returned—7 that evening

Summary

Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter three days after her cat's disappearance. The writer of the letter demanded £1,000 for the return of the cat, *and* warned she would never see him again if she went to the police. She had to put the money in a cardboard box *and* leave it outside her door. *After* drawing £1,000 from her bank, she acted on the kidnapper's instructions. The money disappeared the following morning, *and* Rastus returned at seven o'clock that evening. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

rarely (l. 1)	seldom
considerable (l. 2)	a great deal of
wealthy (l. 3)	rich
worried (l. 7)	concerned
stated (l. 9)	said
changed her mind (l. 13)	altered her opinion
word (l. 15)	promise

Key to Composition

A possible answer

In a bar one night, Mr. X was talking to a workman who told him that *he often worked in Mrs. Ramsay's flat*. The workman added that Mrs. Ramsay *was wealthy and she lived alone with her cat*. Every day, Mr. X stood outside *Mrs. Ramsay's block of flats*. As the cat *took a short walk every evening*, *he saw* that it had regular habits. He found out as much as he could about Mrs. Ramsay and learnt that *she loved this cat very much*. One evening, as the cat was leaving the block of flats, *he kidnapped it*. He took the cat to a *secret address*. During the next three days, he walked past Mrs. Ramsay's flat on several occasions and noticed that *no other cat ever appeared*. Now he was sure *he had the right cat*, *so* he wrote *a letter* in which he *stated his demands*. (150 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I haven't been in touch since I left school.

After passing my exams, I did a two-year course in business studies. At the end of it, I applied for a job with a local building firm and got a job immediately. I like it very much because I work in an office, but get out and about a lot as well. I hope to be promoted soon.

Thank you for all your help and advice while I was at school. (80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 a 7 b 8 d 9 d 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 20 Pioneer pilots

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Bleriot and Latham arrived Calais—July 21st, 1909
2 Looked as if—race
3 Take place—July 25th
4 Latham—not take part—failed to get up early enough
5 Bleriot—short test flight first
6 Thirty-seven minutes—across Channel
7 Policeman greeted him—arrived Dover
8 Latham—half a mile—Dover—following week
9 Landed on sea—second time—engine failed

Summary

Bleriot and Latham arrived in Calais on July 21st, 1909. *Though* it looked as if there would be a race on July 25th, Latham didn't take part, *because* he didn't get up early enough. *After* making a short test flight, Bleriot crossed the Channel in thirty-seven minutes. A policeman greeted him *when* he arrived in Dover. Latham got within half a mile of Dover the following week, *having* to land on the sea a second time because his engine failed. (80 *words*)

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

forced to land(l. 6)	obliged to come down
picked up (l. 7)	rescued
completed(l. 9)	finished, undertaken
covered(l. 10)	completed, flown
test(l. 13)	trial
set off(l. 13)	started out, began his journey
failed(l. 15)	didn't work, stopped

Key to Composition

A possible answer

My flight across the Channel

It was early morning. I looked around, but there was no sign of Latham, so I decided to go on a test flight first. At 4.15, I took off and flew over Calais for fifteen minutes. When I landed there was still no sign of Latham.

At 4.45 I took off again. This time I was determined to fly across the Channel. When I looked down there was no sign of the ship below, which was supposed to be following me. I suddenly felt alone and was worried whether I was flying in the right direction. All I could see was sea and sky. I could feel the high winds against the plane and the engine got very hot. Fortunately, it began to rain and the rain cooled my engine. Suddenly, I could see land ahead. Dover!

I flew over Dover, looking for somewhere to land. I saw a field below and brought the plane down. I was still sitting in the cockpit, hardly able to believe the flight was so successful—just thirty-seven minutes to cross from Calais—when a British policeman arrived. He smiled broadly at me and said, "Good morning!" I smiled back and said, "Bonjour!" (200 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I just thought I'd tell you about my first flight!

At this moment, we are flying at 30,000 feet and at five hundred miles an hour. Below I can see a few clouds and miles of countryside. I couldn't imagine it would be so beautiful! I was nervous when the plane took off, but I'm all right now. We'll be arriving at our destination in three hours and forty minutes.

I'll tell you all about the flight when I see you. (80 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 d 8 a 9 c 10 d 11 a 12 d

Lesson 21 Daniel Mendoza

Key to Comprehension

1 Boxers were known as "prizefighters" two hundred years ago because they fought for prize money.
2 Boxing was very crude in those days because they fought with bare fists, there were no rules, and a boxer could be seriously injured or even killed during a match.
3 Mendoza's chief contribution to boxing was to change crude prizefighting into a sport.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

bare(l. 2)	without gloves
injured(l. 5)	hurt(physically)
drew up (l. 8)	prepared and wrote
crude(l. 9)	basic, rough, not very skilful
popularity(ll. 9-10)	enjoyed tremendous was extremely popular
adored(l. 10)	loved and respected

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

alike(1. 10)	(rich) and/as well as (poor), both (rich and poor) in the same way

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Two men quarrelled—settle argument by fight
2 Fight at Stilton—an hour—Humphries won
3 They met again—Mendoza lost again
4 3rd match in 1790—finally beat Humphries—Champion of England
5 Founded successful boxing Academy—earned a lot of money
6 So extravagant—always in debt
7 Finally sent to prison—died in poverty in 1836

Summary

When the two men quarrelled, they settled the argument by a fight. This took place at Stilton. It lasted an hour and Humphries won. When they met again, Mendoza lost again, but in their third match in 1790, Mendoza finally beat Humphries to become Champion of England. He founded a successful boxing Academy and earned a lot of money, but was so extravagant he was always in debt. He was finally sent to prison and died in poverty in 1836. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The first fight

The first fight between Humphries and his pupil Mendoza, after a quarrel, was held at Stilton and attracted a lot of attention. At the time, Richard Humphries was the most eminent boxer in England and had many supporters. But the young Mendoza had his supporters, too.

The atmosphere before the fight was electric. Half of the people there made bets on Humphries, the other half bet on Mendoza. When the two fighters entered the ring, there was a lot of shouting and cheering.

The referee called both fighters to the middle of the ring, spoke to them and the fight started. At first, both men were very wary. After all, this was a fight between teacher and pupil, so they knew very well what the other could do—and they were fighting with bare fists. Each of the boxers fought well for most of the match, but in the end Humphries was too strong and too experienced for the young Mendoza. He knocked him down once: Mendoza got up. He knocked him down again, and although Mendoza tried to get up, he just couldn't. The referee counted ten and that was the end of the match.

When Mendoza got up, he was very angry, but eventually congratulated Humphries. However, his defeat made him determined to go on and fight his teacher again so that he could finally become champion. (229 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

address: ________,
________,
________,
________.

date:

beginning of letter (Dear...,)

Introduction
Purpose
Conclusion

ending(Yours...,)
signature

postscript(PS...)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 c 4 a 5 a 6b 7 b 8 b 9 c 10 a
11 a 12 d

Lesson 22 By heart

Key to Comprehension

1 Actors in successful plays are unfortunate in many ways because they have to go on repeating the same lines night after night, year after year (*or* for years on end.)
2 The aristocrat was given a letter to read in the last act of the play.
3 The gaoler decided to play a joke on the aristocrat because he wanted to find out if the actor had learned the contents of the letter by heart after so many performances.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

run (1. 1)	are performed regularly
on end (1. 1)	without a break, continuously
are required (1. 2)	are expected, have to
repeating (1. 3)	saying again
falter (1. 4)	make a mistake, say in a weak manner, stumble
role (1. 7)	part, character
hand (1. 8)	give

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com 大家网

in full (l. 9) completely

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Aristocrat sitting alone—cell-gaoler appeared
2 Entered cell—handed letter to aristocrat—blank sheet
3 Aristocract looked—squinted—said: "Light dim—Read letter"
4 Handed paper—gaoler—"Light indeed dim—get glasses"
5 Left stage—returned—glasses—real letter—read to prisoner

Summary

The aristocrat was sitting in his cell when the gaoler entered and handed him the letter—a blank sheet of paper. The aristocrat looked at it, squinted and said: "The light is dim. Read me the letter." He handed the letter back to the gaoler, who said: "The light is indeed dim. I'll get my glasses." He left the stage and returned with a pair of glasses and the real letter, which he read to the prisoner. (79*words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Six short weeks

A couple of years ago, a new play called *The World Tomorrow* was going to be shown in our local theatre. There was a great deal of advertising for it and there was considerable public interest, mainly, I think, because the cast contained a number of famous actors and actresses.

Most actors and actresses are usually nervous on the first night of any play, and no one really knows what can go wrong or how the audience will react. In the case of *The World Tomorrow*, no one forgot their lines, but the play was not well received. It was a comedy, so it was supposed to be funny, but nobody laughed—not in the right places anyway—and people even walked out before the end. The cast suspected that they would get bad reviews the following day, and they did. One review described it as "the saddest comedy I've ever seen"; another thought it was "the most professionally acted disaster we have ever seen on our local stage".

In spite of the reviews, however, the play still ran for six weeks. The last performance, on the last Saturday evening, attracted a small audience, and the actors struggled through to the end. At the end of six terrible weeks, however, there was one final moment of relief. When the last line was spoken: "Our six short weeks have hastened to their end," the audience saw the funny side of it and laughed. Even the actors and actresses laughed. (248 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

Possible answers

Sentences to begin a letter

1 Thank you very much for your last letter.
2 It has been a long time since I heard from you.
3 I'm sorry it has taken me so long to answer your last letter.
4 It was good to hear from you after such a long time.
5 I'm writing today because I've got some great news.

Sentences to end a letter

1 Please remember me to your family.
2 I look forward to hearing from you soon.
3 Please give my best regards to your sister.
4 You must let me know how you get on in your exams.
5 Let me know if you need any more information.

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 c 8 a 9 d 10 d 11 b 12 c

Lesson 23 One man's meat is another man's poison

Key to Comprehension

1 Octopus is considered a great delicacy in the Mediterranean.
2 We stick to certain foods all our lives because we have been brought up to eat just those things.
3 The writer's friend found it difficult to obtain snails because he has no garden of his own.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

illogical (l. 1)	unreasonable
instance (l. 3)	example
repulsive (l. 4)	disgusting
stick (l. 7)	stay (with), remain (with)
various (l. 10)	different
associate (l. 11)	connect
appealed to (l. 13)	attracted

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Collected several dozen—paper bag—took to Robert
2 He—delighted—equally pleased
3 Bag in hall—living room—talked couple of hours
4 Forgot snails—Robert invited me to dinner
5 Followed Robert—hall—snails everywhere
6 Escaped—paper bag—crawling all over

Summary

The writer collected several dozen snails, put them in a paper bag and took them to Robert who was delighted to see him, and pleased with the snails. The writer left the bag in the hall and he and Robert went into the living room and talked for a couple of hours. He had forgotten the snails until Robert invited him to

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

dinner, and he followed Robert into the hall to find snails everywhere. They had escaped from the bag.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Snails, snails, snails!

The snails had escaped from the paper bag and they were everywhere—on the walls, on the ceiling, on the carpet, and even on the large hall mirror. When we began to look carefully, we found that they were even in coat pockets in the clothes hanging on the clothes hooks in the hall. It was disgusting! Snails move slowly, but it's amazing how far they can travel in a couple of hours!

It took Robert and me ages to collect them. He fetched a pair of steps for me and ladders for himself, and we collected them in two buckets. There were snail marks everywhere, too, and it took hours to clear up the mess—remember, there were several dozen of them. Snails may not be fast, but we had been talking for a couple of hours, and they can travel. Even now I am sure we didn't find them all; some are still crawling round Robert's house.

The ones that we did not find were lucky! Robert was amused, but I wasn't. He decided to cook the snails and invited me to stay. I said before that I didn't fancy the idea, so I left him to his meal for one. I just couldn't look at the snails and have never been able to face them since then. (220 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

It was really nice to see you last week after such a long time. I was so pleased that you are well and that you have a good job now.

I'm hoping that we can get together again soon, so how would you like to come and spend a weekend with me and my family here in the country sometime in the next month or two? You've never been to our house before, but I'm sure you would enjoy it.

Please let me know what you think.

I look forward to hearing from you. (94 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 d 4 a 5 b 6 7 a 8 c 9 d 10 d
11 b 12 b

Lesson 24 A skeleton in the cupboard

Key to Comprehension

1 "A skeleton in the cupboard" is an expression that means "a terrible secret which someone has probably hidden for years".

2 The dear old lady who had always been so kind to everybody had actually poisoned five husbands in her youth!

3 He is a writer of detective stories.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

seemingly(l. 1)	apparently
concealed(l. 2)	hidden
vivid saying(l. 3)	a memorable expression
reputation(l. 6)	a good name
ruined(l. 6)	destroyed
fiction(l. 10)	invented stories
to varying degrees(l. 10)	sometimes more, sometimes less

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Started to unpack—shirts and underclothes in drawers—decided to hang suit—cupboard

2 Opened cupboard—stood petrified

3 Skeleton—dangling in front of him—swaying—leap out

4 Dropped suit—dashed downstairs—tell George

5 George unsympathetic: "Sebastian—remember—I was medical student"

Summary

The writer started to unpack and put his shirts and underclothes into drawers and then decided to hang a suit in the cupboard. He opened the cupboard and stood petrified: there, dangling in front of him, was a skeleton. It was swaying and ready to leap out at him. He dropped his suit and dashed downstairs to tell George. George was unsympathetic and told the writer it was Sebastian, a skeleton he had when he was a medical student. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

A weekend with Sebastian

Now that George had explained about the skeleton, I felt better, but I still didn't want to sleep in the room with a skeleton hanging in the cupboard. I asked George to remove him, but he refused. "There's nowhere else to put him," said George, "so he'll have to stay."

I couldn't disagree of course, but the moment I lay down to sleep, I knew it was going to be an uncomfortable night. In the end, I decided that I would take Sebastian somewhere for the night and bring him back up to my room early in the morning. So I took him out of cupboard and walked around the house with him trying to find somewhere to put him.

George's maid was just going to bed as I walked along

www.TopSage.com

the landing. She saw Sebastian apparently walking around, screamed and fainted. She had obviously woken Carlton who appeared from his bedroom and, when the girl had regained consciousness, explained everything to her. He accused me of being stupid and sent me and Sebastian back to "our" room where I hung him up in the cupboard again.

Imagine my surprise when I picked up one of Carlton's detective stories two years later. There I was, with Sebastian the skeleton, as the main characters in one of his stories for the whole world to read. Still, he didn't use my real name, so I should be glad of that!

(240 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I haven't written to you for some time, but felt that I should before contacting you by telephone or coming to the surgery.

I have not been feeling at all well lately. I have been feeling tired all the time and have started to go to bed early most nights to get more sleep. Even then, after a good night's sleep, I still feel as if I could sleep longer. I've taken vitamin tablets and things, but they haven't done any good, so I'd like to make an appointment to see you as soon as possible.

(97 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 d 6 b 7 c 8 b 9 d 10 a 11 d 12 a

Lesson 25 The *Cutty Sark*

Key to Comprehension

1 The *Cutty Sark* can be seen now on dry land at Greenwich, England.

2 Ships like the *Cutty Sark* used to carry tea from China and wool from Australia.

3 The race between the *Cutty Sark* and the *Thermopylae* lasted four months.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

reminder (l. 4)	something that makes you remember
match (l. 7)	be equal to
era (l. 10)	an age or period
struck (l. 13)	hit
steer (l. 14)	guide, make (her) go in a particular direction
temporary (l. 14)	provisional, lasting for a short time
on board (l. 15)	on the ship

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 *Thermopylae* reached Java first—*Cutty Sark* took lead on Indian Ocean

2 August—*CS* struck by heavy storm—rudder torn away

3 Temporary rudder made—fitted with difficulty—*CS* lost lead

4 Crossed Equator—called at port—new rudder fitted—*T* 500 miles ahead

5 Even with new rudder—arrived England—week after *T*

Summary

The *Thermopylae* reached Java first, but the *Cutty Sark* took the lead on the Indian Ocean. When the *Cutty Sark* was struck by a storm, her rudder was torn away. A temporary rudder was made and fitted, but the ship lost the lead. After crossing the Equator, they called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted. Even with a new rudder, the *Cutty Sark* arrived in England a week after the *Thermopylae*, which was 500 miles ahead.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Ships of the past

Men have always wanted to cross water. Thousands of years ago, men made simple dug-out canoes so that they could cross rivers or go out into lakes to fish. At first, then, man's earliest boats were small and simple and were powered and steered by paddles or oars.

When men wanted to travel greater distances, across very large lakes or small seas, for example, boats needed to be larger. We have all seen pictures of ancient ships with rows of oars at each side and slaves to row them. In fact these galleys were just a larger version of the single-man rowing boat, still made of wood and very much the same design as very early boats.

Early ships might have been primitive, they might have been made of wood and might have been powered through the water with oars, but they managed to cross oceans. The Viking ships that invaded Britain hundreds of years ago also reached North America. Later sailing ships, like those that Columbus sailed in, the galleons that formed the Spanish Armada or those that Nelson sailed in, were an advance.

But perhaps the greatest development in the history of ships was when steam engines replaced sails. For centuries, ships had depended on the wind to sail across the seas and oceans. At last, with an engine to drive a propeller, seamen did not have to rely totally on the weather. From then on, ships like the "Great Eastern" could be larger, safer and more manoeuvrable in the water.

(254 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

Since we set sail from Southampton a week ago, the voyage has been awful. We have seen no sunshine, it has been raining all the time and the winds have been blowing hard. I have been seasick since we left.

This is only a small ship and there are only about fifty other passengers. Three or four have visited me and introduced themselves. They are all sympathetic because they have all been on lots of cruises before.

Tomorrow I want to go up on deck. We are calling into our first port, and I can't wait to get onto dry land again! (103 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 c 5 b 6 d 7 a 8 d 9 b 10 a 11 a 12 c

Lesson 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin

Key to Comprehension

1 We are no longer free to choose the things we want because we are influenced by advertising.

2 Advertisers have made a close study of human weaknesses in order to classify them and persuade us to buy different things.

3 Advertisers can capture the attention of millions of people through radio and television.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

no longer (1. 2)	not any more, not now
in their efforts to	in their attempts to influence
persuade us (1. 4)	us to do something
classified (1. 6)	put into categories
free (1. 9)	without any cost or payment
enable (1. 10)	make it possible for
capture (1. 11)	attract and hold

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Company—customers bake biscuits—send them to factory—offered $10 a pound for biggest biscuit

2 Tremendous response—e. g. one biscuit in wheelbarrow—500 pounds

3 Another filled boot of car—another 713 pounds

4 But lorry brought one—2, 400 pounds—baked by college student

5 Crane—biscuit from lorry

6 Manufacturers paid student $24,000

Summary

A biscuit company asked its customers to bake biscuits and send them to the factory. As a prize, they offered $10 a pound for the biggest biscuit they received. The response was tremendous, with one biscuit weighing 500 pounds and another weighing 713 pounds. They thought that was the winner until a lorry delivered one which weighed 2,400 pounds baked by a college student. A crane lifted it from the lorry and the manufacturers paid the student $24,000.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The last question

The other evening I listened to a quiz show on the radio which was organised by a firm of soap manufacturers. A member of the audience was invited to answer ten questions to win money. He could take a money prize after each correct answer or go on to a more difficult question. Each new question was worth twice the last question.

The man was very nervous in front of the audience, but he got the first question right. Then he slowly answered all the questions correctly—spelling questions, history questions, general knowledge, mathematics,... The audience was getting very excited as the question master got to question number 9.

"And your ninth question," he said, "is worth £1,024. Here it is. Which nineteenth-century sailing ship won a race from Shanghai to England?"

"It was the *Thermopylae*" the man said confidently. "She beat the *Cutty Sark*."

"Correct," said the questionmaster, and the audience went mad. The question master had to ask them to be quiet.

"And here is your tenth and last question," the host said, "which is worth £2, 048 exactly. "Advertisement"; how do you spell it?"

The man paused and then said: "I think this is a trick question. I *can* spell 'advertisement', but I can also spell 'it'. The answer is 'I-T'."

"You're absolutely right," the host said, "and you have won £2,048! Congratulations!" (239 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

How are you? I hope you are keeping well. I know I haven't written recently but I have some good news. I have managed to find a job near you and want to move to your neighbourhood.

Naturally I need to find somewhere to live. As you live in the area, would you mind helping me to find some accommodation? I'm looking for a flat or even a small house to rent for at least six months.

I look forward to hearing from you as soon as you can find something for me. (92 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 d 9 c 10 d
11 b 12 a

Lesson 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy

Key to Comprehension

1 In terms of money, it is easier to estimate the value of material goods.

2 Beggars arouse the pity of passers-by by almost selling themselves as human beings.

3 Tramps differ from beggars because they do not beg, they have nothing to sell and expect nothing from other people.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

value (1.4)	worth
estimate (1.5)	assess
perform (1.6)	do
possess (1.7)	have, own
grudge (1.8)	be unwilling(to...)
precisely (1.8)	exactly
skills (1.9)	abilities

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Real tramps—not beggars—sell nothing—require nothing
2 They seek independence—not sacrifice human dignity
3 Tramps choose their way of life—aware of consequences
4 May not know—next meal—but not worries others have
5 Can travel easily—few possessions
6 Sleep in the open—close to nature

Summary

Unlike beggars, real tramps have nothing to sell and require nothing from others. Although they seek independence, they will not sacrifice their human dignity. They choose their own way of life and are aware of the consequences. They may not know where the next meal is coming from, but they do not have the worries that others have. They can travel easily because they have few possessions and when they sleep in the open, they are close to nature. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Tramps are parasites

The majority of adults in society contribute to society by working. They work, earn money and pay taxes for the things we all need—hospitals, schools, public transport, the fire brigade, law and order and so on. We don't expect children or very old people to work and pay taxes. But everyone else should. So why should people like tramps and beggars be different?

Tramps say all they want is their freedom. Well, they may be free, but their freedom is paid for by everyone else in society. There are many unemployed people who simply cannot get a job—but they would work if they could. And many beggars are people who have turned to begging because they cannot find a job. Tramps are not like them. Tramps lead a very selfish way of life and it is a way of life that shows an unwillingness to assume responsibility for others. The rest of us have a home, children, work, and so on. But not tramps!

Tramps are lazy parasites on society, and if we all had their mentality, society would not exist, for them or anyone else.

Although we might in some ways be envious of tramps, and although we might envy their freedom, how many of us could be as selfish as them? How many of us could say "I'm going to live exactly as I want, and damn the rest of society!"? I couldn't. (236 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I know I wrote to you only a few weeks ago, but I'm writing this time to ask if you can help me. Do you think I can get a job in the UK for a few months? I don't mind doing almost anything—as long as it's not too hard. I could work in a hotel or a restaurant, for example, but I couldn't work on a building site!

I need money to help to pay for a holiday that I am planning to take next year in Australia. But a visit to the UK would also help me improve my English. (103 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 b 7 d 8 c 9 c 10 a
11 b 12 c

Lesson 28 Five pounds too dear

Key to Comprehension

1 As the great liner was entering the harbour, small boats sped towards it and men climbed on board.

2 The writer was impressed by the size of the diamonds because some were as big as marbles.

3 To prove that his diamonds were real, the diamond seller held one against a shop window and made a deep impression in the glass.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

loaded with wares (1.1)	piled high with goods
liner (1.1)	passenger ship
rugs (1.4)	mats, small carpets
bargaining (1.6)	arguing about the price (of goods)
went to great lengths (1.11)	did everything he could
impression (1.12)	mark, scratch
to get rid of him (1.13)	to make him go away

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Next man—expensive watches and pens—looked at one—looked genuine
2 Worth £50—could have it for £30—writer offered £5
3 Eventually—writer walking away—man agreed—took £5
4 Writer pleased—till back on board
5 Pen impossible to fill—has never written

Summary

The next man who approached him was selling watches and pens, and when the writer looked at one, it looked genuine. The man said it was worth £50 but the writer could have it for £30. The writer offered him £5 and waited. Eventually, as the writer was walking away, the man agreed and took £5. The writer was very pleased—until he was back on board. The pen was impossible to fill. It has never written a word since. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The bargain

The writer had only just got rid of a man who was trying to sell a diamond ring when another man approached him with some expensive pens and watches. When he held them up for the writer to look at, the writer showed quite a lot of interest.

"Can I see one of the pens?" the writer asked the man. They all looked genuine. The man handed the writer one and said: "It's a beautiful pen, sir. It's worth £50, but you can have it for £30."

When the writer offered him just £5, there was an argument about the price, but eventually the man said: "You can have it for £10, sir. That's the least I can take."

As the writer walked away shrugging his shoulders, the man followed him. "I can't really do it, sir—I'm almost giving it away," he said, "but you can have it for £5."

The writer was obviously very pleased. He gave the man £5, took the pen, and the man disappeared quickly into the crowd. The writer was extremely pleased: he had bought a very expensive pen for just £5. What a bargain! Later, back on board ship, the writer discovered why the man had been in such a hurry to get away: you couldn't fill the pen with ink and it just didn't work! It wasn't such a "bargain" after all! (235 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I am writing to you because I have heard that you want to sell your CD player.

Most of my friends have one, so I have wanted to buy one for some time. I've looked at new ones, but I can't afford one, and my parents won't lend me the money, so I would like to buy yours.

Perhaps you can tell me something about it. Can you tell me how old your machine is, what condition it is in and how much you are asking for it. Have you also got any CDs that you'd like to sell with it? (101 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 b 4 d 5 c 6 a 7 d 8 c 9 c 10 b 11 b 12 a

Lesson 29 Funny or not?

Key to Comprehension

1 A Frenchman might find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke because humour is mysteriously bound up with national characteristics.
2 People all over the world find Charlie Chaplin's early films amusing because certain funny situations have a universal appeal.
3 "Sick humour" originated in the United States.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

brought up (l. 2)	raised, educated
mysteriously bound up with (ll. 2-3)	strangely connected to
make (l. 5)	force
universal appeal (l. 8)	international attraction
stems (l. 10)	comes
come into fashion (l. 10)	become popular
distasteful (l. 11)	unpleasant, tasteless

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Man broke right leg—before Christmas—taken to hospital
2 When—go home? —didn't want—spend Christmas there
3 Christmas Day—still right leg in plaster—day in hospital
4 Next day—good chance of leaving hospital—New Year
5 New Year's Eve—party—drank too much
6 End of party—slipped on piece of ice—broke left leg

Summary

A man broke his right leg just before Christmas and was taken to hospital. He wanted to know when he could go home. On Christmas Day he was still in hospital with his leg in plaster, but there was a good chance of leaving hospital for the New Year. In fact, he was out in time to go to a New Year's Eve party where he drank too much, slipped on a piece of ice and broke his left leg. (80 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The gasman

An aunt of mine lives in a small village in the country and tells this story of what happened to her once. In order to understand the story, you should know a little about life in an English village. For example, people often enjoy afternoon tea together, they still leave doors unlocked, and certain tradesmen are used to delivering goods and, with permission, leaving them inside the owner's house.

One day my aunt had invited some friends round for afternoon tea. She had put some cakes in the oven to bake, and had gone upstairs to do some cleaning. When she finished, she decided to have a bath before her friends arrived. She was just about to get into the bath when she suddenly remembered the cakes. She wrapped a bath towel round her, went down to the kitchen and took the cakes out of the oven. Just then, there was a knock on the back door. She was sure it was the baker, who would open the door, come in and leave the bread on the kitchen table.

She panicked, dashed into the cupboard under the stairs and closed the door. Then, horrified, she heard footsteps coming to the cupboard. The door opened and there stood the gasman who had come to read the meter—which was in the cupboard. My aunt blushed and said, "I'm very sorry. I was expecting the baker." "Oh," the gasman said. "Sorry, madam." He closed the door gently and left. (250 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I'm writing to see if you can help me. I've looked everywhere here at home, but can't find my overcoat anywhere. I have an idea. I left it at your house when I came to see you about a fortnight ago.

It's quite a new coat, it's dark blue with a black collar, and there may be a pair of my gloves in one of the pockets.

Could you look for it and let me know if I left it there? If so, I will come and collect it as soon as I can. (94 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 a 6a 7 b 8 c 9 d 10 d 11 c 12 b

Lesson 30 The death of a ghost

Key to Comprehension

1 Farmhands frequently gave up their jobs at Endley Farm because they used to wake up and find that work had been done overnight.

2 The ghost of Endley was Eric Cox, the elder brother of Joe and Bob, who had lived on the farm as a recluse since the war.

3 Everybody was surprised to learn that Eric Cox had just died because they thought he had been killed in action in the war.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

was willing(1. 3)	wanted, was prepared
labourers(1. 4)	workers
claimed(1. 7)	said that, maintained that
an accepted fact(1. 8)	a general, undisputed truth
conscientious(1. 9)	extremely careful
astonished(1. 11)	surprised
revealed(1. 13)	made known, told

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Joined army—Second World War—hated army life—deserted

2 Returned to farm—father hid him—end of war—remained in hiding after war

3 Father told everyone—killed in action

4 Joe and Bob—kept secret—Eric—lived as recluse

5 Sleep during day—work at night—"ghost of Endley"

Summary

Eric joined the army during the Second World War, but hated army life, so he deserted. He returned to the farm where his father hid him until the end of the war, and he remained in hiding after the war. His father told everyone that he had been killed in action. Joe and Bob kept the secret, so Eric lived as a recluse. He slept during the day and worked at night, so he became the "ghost of Endley". (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The ghost of Endley

When I came in to work one morning I noticed that work had been done overnight—some hay had been cut and the cowsheds and other buildings had been cleaned, so I decided to stay up all the next night to try to solve the mystery. (I didn't tell Joe and Bob, of course.) I hid in the barn and waited.

Obviously I fell asleep because I suddenly woke up to find that it was dark. I went straight to the cowshed and found that it had already been cleaned. Then I went out to the fields where I could just see a figure working; I couldn't see whether it was a man, or a woman, or perhaps a ghost. I was scared, so I rushed back to the farmhouse and woke up the others. We all went out to the fields to see who it was, but when we got there, there was no one there.

When I was in the fields before, I didn't know

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

what or who the figure was. But now I was sure it was a ghost so I immediately decided not to work at Endley Farm any longer and handed in my resignation. When I told my story to the villagers, many of them still didn't believe me, even though they knew that something strange had been going on at Endley Farm for years.

(230 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I have already written several letters to you in the past few weeks, but I have heard nothing from you. Do I have your correct present address?

Just a few pieces of news about me and the family. I am just about to take my final exams and then I hope to leave school and go to college or university. My brother has a new job and my sister is getting married next year.

I would love to hear from you again. Please write as soon as you can and let me know all the latest news about you and your family. (102 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 d 4 b 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 a 9 c 10 b
11 d 12 a

Lesson 31 A lovable eccentric

Key to Comprehension

1 Eccentrics add colour to the dull routine of everyday life because they disregard social conventions without realising that they are doing anything special.
2 Richard Colson was one of the most notable figures of our town because he was a true eccentric, even though he was a wealthy businessman.
3 When he held an exhibition of modern painting, Colson set out to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

deliberately(l. 1)	on purpose, intentionally
disregard(l. 2)	ignore
conventions(l. 2)	habits, rules
conscious(l. 3)	aware
notable figures(l. 7)	famous people
shrewd (l. 7)	clever
elaborate(l. 22)	detailed, carefully planned

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Caught in heavy shower—walked into expensive shop
2 £300 watch for wife—bedraggled—assistant refused
3 Left shop—returned—heavy cloth bag—dumped on counter
4 Asked for manager—given watch—gave bag—£300 in pennies
5 Assistant had to count

Summary

Dickie had been caught in a heavy shower when he walked into an expensive shop. He wanted a £300 watch for his wife, but he was so bedraggled the assistant refused to serve him. He left the shop and returned with a heavy cloth bag which he dumped on the counter. Dickie asked for the manager. When he was given the watch, he gave the assistant the bag which contained £300 in pennies, which the assistant had to count. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

A true eccentric

Mr. Chew is a man who has lived in our small town for years. He is a large man (some would say "fat"). He has a round face, a big black moustache and a bald head. He always wears the same clothes—black trousers, a white shirt and a red waistcoat, and is always polite to everyone he meets.

He owns an antiques shop near the river, and he lives "over the shop". No one knows where he gets his things, but there are always lots of different interesting antiques in the shop window every week.

Mr. Chew is interested in politics, too. Every week he puts up strange notices in his shop window to passers-by. Usually the notices are trying to make people save a local building or stop a plan to build a road through the town. Every time there is a national election, he automatically stands for parliament and gives speeches almost every day in the town park saying what he would do if he were Prime Minister. (He usually says he would make sure that antiques dealers did not have to pay Income Tax and that no cars should be allowed into our little town at all.) Every year he gets a few votes, but not enough to worry the serious candidates.

For most people Mr. Chew is a harmless eccentric, and everyone likes talking to him. After all, he is someone who adds colour to the dull routine of their daily lives. (248 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I was extremely sorry to hear that John had passed away. Unfortunately, I did not even know that he had been seriously ill. Otherwise I would have written to him.

As you know, John and I were at university together and used to write to each other as often as we could. We also used to meet at least once a year with others for an anniversary dinner. We shall miss him.

If there is any way I can help, please do not

www.TopSage.com

hesitate to ask me. You know that you can always phone me or write me a note. (100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 d 4 b 5 b 6 a 7 a 8 a 9 d 10 d 11 c 12 d

Lesson 32 A lost ship

Key to Comprehension

1 The captain of the *Elkor* knew that another attempt would be made later to find the sunken ship because it had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion.

2 The crew thought that they had found the wreck they were looking for.

3 Alan Fielding was a seaman on board the *Karen*.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

instructing(l. 4)	ordering, telling
give up the search(l. 4)	stop looking
precious(l. 6)	valuable
tremendous(l. 9)	a lot of, a great deal of
were at first under the impression(l. 10)	thought at first
wrong(l. 11)	mistaken

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 First chest—personal belongings of Alan Fielding

2 Nothing of commercial value—lots of items of interest

3 Heavy gun—proved—ship was cruiser

4 Another chest—ship's officer—unfinished letter, March 14th, 1943—learnt ship's name *Karen*

5 Most valuable find—ship's log book

6 *Karen*—sail in convoy to Russia—torpedoed—enemy submarine

Summary

The chest containing the personal belongings of Alan Fielding told them a lot, and there were other items of interest. A heavy gun proved the ship was a cruiser. Another chest belonging to a ship's officer contained an unfinished letter dated March 14th, 1943, from which they learnt the ship's name. The most valuable find was the ship's log book, which told them the *Karen* had been sailing in convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The last day

The journey has gone well so far. We are now on the way to Russia and hope that we shall arrive with no more problems. But we are watching the sea and sky. The convoy successfully fought off an air attack early this morning. No ships were lost and we managed to shoot down three enemy aircraft before they broke off the attack.

At 10 a. m. this morning we were attacked by a U-boat. This was the first time we had been attacked and for most men on board this was the first time they had been in action at sea. We were fortunate, but the ship ahead of us, the *Dauntless*, was torpedoed and sunk. After the ship sank, there were hundreds of men in the sea. We picked up as many survivors as we could in the *Karen*. In fact in the end we picked up 720 men, which meant that 50 men lost their lives in the attack on the *Dauntless*.

The *Karen* was packed with men, many crowded on the open decks, when we turned and attacked the U-boat. Depth charges were dropped and the U-boat was put out of action.

It is now 3. 15 p. m. , the light is already beginning to fade and storm clouds are gathering. We are about to be attacked by a second U-boat, this time from the north. The captain has just announced-- (239 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

March 14th, 1943

Dear Uncle Charles,

I am writing to you from the first ship that I am serving on as an officer. The ship is a cruiser and her name is the *Karen*.

We are sailing in convoy to Russia with ten other ships. We have already been at sea for three days and should reach Russia by the end of the week. The voyage has been good so far, but there is always a danger that we shall be torpedoed by an enemy submarine. We all pray that this will not happen and that we shall reach our destination safely. [The letter stopped here.]

(99 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d 7 c 8 c 9 d 10 b 11 c 12 a

Lesson 33 A day to remember

Key to Comprehension

1 A simple telephone call can mark the beginning of an unforeseen series of accidents.

2 They are not welcome because everything has gone wrong—even the meal has been burnt.

3 Two cars collided and the two drivers began to argue.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

happens (l. 3)	occurs
precisely (l. 4)	exactly

www.TopSage.com

preparing (l. 6)	getting... ready, cooking
catastrophes (l. 8)	disasters, accidents
smashing (l. 9)	breaking
in the process (l. 9)	at the same time
reduce you to tears (l. 10)	make you cry

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Driver behind—braked
2 Wife—thrown forward—large cake—windscreen—landed on road
3 Lorry—pulled up
4 Loaded—empty beer bottles—slid off—onto road
5 Traffic piled up—police—an hour—traffic on move
6 Lorry driver—swept up glass—2 stray dogs—remains of cake

Summary

When the driver behind braked, his wife was thrown forward and the large cake on her lap flew through the windscreen and landed on the road. A lorry had to pull up suddenly and hundreds of empty beer bottles slid off onto the road. The traffic piled up so that it took the police an hour to get it on the move again. The lorry driver swept up the glass and two stray dogs ate the remains of the cake.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Mistaken identity

We have all experienced days when everything seems to go wrong. Things certainly went wrong for Ray, a friend of mine, one day last month. It all started, as these things do, with a simple case of "mistaken identity". Ray had been shopping and was loaded with parcels when he got back to the multi-storey car park to look for his car. He knew he was on the correct level, but he couldn't see his car anywhere.

Then, suddenly, while he was looking, he saw one exactly like it. It was a red Nissan. It was exactly the same as his own car, and naturally he mistook it for his own. Still holding the parcels, he felt in his jacket pockets and found his key. He tried to open the driver's door, but the key just wouldn't turn. He couldn't understand it. In the end, he forced the lock—and naturally broke the key.

At that point he dropped the parcels as well. This infuriated him. The only way he could get into his car was to break a window, so he deliberately smashed the window of the car. As he was putting his hand in, the owner came back and saw him. The owner rushed towards Ray, held him against the car, and called a policeman on his mobile phone.

When Ray was arrested, he tried to explain, but the police did not believe him—until they found Ray's car on a level below!

(246 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

Thank you very much for your letter of 23rd July offering to buy my Toyota Corolla for £2,500.

As I said in my advertisement, the car is in very good condition and has a low mileage for its age, so I wanted to sell it for £2,750 or nearest offer. I am therefore writing to accept your offer officially and to make arrangements for the sale.

If you can come to my house next Saturday morning with the money, I shall have the car and documents ready. Please telephone me to discuss any further details.

I look forward to hearing from you. (104 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 a 7 a 8 c 9 c 10 b
11 a 12 d

Lesson 34 A happy discovery

Key to Comprehension

1 A truly dedicated bargain hunter hopes one day to find a real rarity.
2 A truly dedicated bargain hunter must have patience and the ability to recognize the worth of something, and hope to find something special one day.
3 Frank paid a mere £50 for his masterpiece.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

rare objects (l. 2)	very unusual things
displayed (l. 3)	shown, put on show
piles (l. 7)	stacks, (untidy) collections
assorted junk (l. 7)	mixed rubbish of all kinds
truly (l. 8)	really, seriously
bent on (l. 10)	determined to
amply (l. 11)	sufficiently, well

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Frank visited antique shop—about to leave—saw large packing case
2 Asked dealer to open it—contents disappointing
3 Lifted some crockery—noticed miniature painting at bottom
4 Decided to buy it—dealer told him—£50
5 Frank excited—real discovery
6 Tiny painting—unknown masterpiece—hundreds of thousands of pounds

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Summary

While visiting an antique shop one Saturday, Frank was about to leave when he saw a large packing case. He asked the dealer to open it but the contents were disappointing until he lifted some crockery and noticed a miniature painting at the bottom. He had already decided to buy it when the dealer told him it was £50. Frank was excited because this was a real discovery. The painting was an unknown masterpiece worth hundreds of thousands of pounds. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

An antique shop

"The Antique Shop" has been in the little street near the church for years. As you look at it from across the road, it draws you towards it. It has one large window display designed to attract all sorts of customers. There is expensive glass, porcelain and jewellery to attract people with a lot of money; there is second-hand furniture, modern silver and other things (hardly antique!) to attract those with not so much.

When you enter the shop, a little bell rings and the owner, a little grey-haired old lady called Mrs. Century, comes out from a room at the back and greets you like a lost relative! She greets everyone the same and always with a smile.

The shop sells all kinds of antiques. There are shelves full of old books along the back of the shop. There are two large tables in the middle of the shop covered with pieces of glass and porcelain. Then, around the walls on the floor are large pots, brass statues and things. There are lots of painting on the walls, too. At the weekend, the shop usually has five or six customers in it at one time. You might find a professional antique collector, a holiday couple and a young mother (with child in pram) looking for a cheap antique for her husband's birthday.

We all like looking for unusual things and hope to find a bargain one day. You might find one in Mrs. Century's "Antique Shop". (249 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

Later this year I am going to spend a month in North Africa with some friends. Since I know it will be hot, and since I know you went to Egypt two years ago, I am writing to ask your advice about what we should take.

I realize that it will be very hot, but I don't know what we should wear. Should we wear shorts, sandals and short-sleeved shirts? Or should we perhaps wear lightweight jeans, long-sleeved shirts and perhaps walking boots for visiting famous sights?

There are some girls in the group. Can you give me some advice for them, too? (105 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 c 7 a 8 d 9 c 10 b
11 a 12 c

Lesson 35 Justice was done

Key to Comprehension

1 The word *justice* is usually associated with courts of law.
2 They can never be sure that they will find it because it is part of the complex machinery of the law.
3 Justice seems to act like a living force when a reward or punishment is meted out quite independent of any human interference.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

seek (l. 4)	look for
arduous (l. 4)	hard, difficult
eminent (l. 6)	famous and admired
instances (l. 7)	cases, examples
ceases (l. 7)	stops
independent of (l. 8)	not connected with
of its own accord (l. 10)	independently, without being asked or told

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Girl heard muffled cry—behind wall
2 Heard cry again—told manager—rang fire brigade
3 Fire fighters—found right chimney—tapping walls—listening
4 Chipped through thick wall—found man
5 Narrow—man couldn't move—fire fighters freed him—cut hole in wall

Summary

A girl in the jewellery store heard muffled cries coming from behind a wall. When she heard the cry again, she went and told the manager who rang the fire brigade. When they arrived, the fire fighters found the right chimney by tapping the walls and listening. They chipped through a thick wall and found the man who could not move because the chimney was so narrow. They finally freed him by cutting a large hole in the wall. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

A burglary that went wrong

There is a large jewellery store in the town that I have often wanted to rob. A few weeks ago I started

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

planning the theft and kept a close watch on the shop. I noticed when people went in and out, when they started and finished work, and so on. And I noticed the chimneys, too.

One night I climbed onto the roof of the store and looked for a way in. One of the chimneys seemed wide enough for me to get in, so I started climbing down. Very soon, however, I got stuck and had to climb out again. I didn't give up. I looked around, found another chimney that looked quite wide at the top and climbed down that one. Again I got stuck.

This time, however, I was *really* stuck. I could climb neither up nor down. At first I struggled to try to free myself, but I couldn't get out. Then I started to get scared and started sweating. I tried to calm myself by quietly counting and thinking of pleasant things. But nothing worked and finally I started shouting for help. Nothing happened, everything was dark and silent, and I got more and more frightened.

I think I went to sleep because I suddenly realized that light was shining down the chimney. I shouted and shouted. Eventually I heard tapping and was finally freed by fire fighters who had smashed a hole in the chimney. (240 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

The last time we met was about a month ago and I remember we parted in anger: well, at least I did. You will remember that we had an argument and I came home saying that I would never speak to you again.

Naturally since then I have had time to think about the situation and I am writing now to apologize for acting the way I did and for saying the things that I said.

Perhaps we could meet again very soon. Please write and let me know what you think. (92 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 d 5 c 6 d 7 c 8 c 9 a 10 d 11 b 12 d

Lesson 36 A chance in a million

Key to Comprehension

1 Many nineteenth-century novels ended with a series of wildly improbable coincidences.

2 Mrs. Bussman thought that the man resembled her husband.

3 Mrs. Bussman sent a boy to ask the workman if his name was Hans Bussman, and it was.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

credulous (l. 1)	willing to believe without proof
a conclusion (l. 2)	an ending
improbable (l. 4)	not likely to happen, unlikely
presumed (l. 6)	believed to be, assumed to be
plotting (l. 7)	secretly planning
totally (l. 8)	completely
bring about (l. 9)	cause to happen

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Wounded towards end of war—hospital—separated from unit

2 Hospital bombed—back to West Germany on foot

3 Unit lost—all records destroyed

4 Returned to family home—house bombed—no information about family

5 Assumed all killed—settled in village 50 miles away

6 Lived there—then met Franz and wife

Summary

Hans had been wounded towards the end of the war, taken to hospital and separated from his unit. When the hospital had been bombed, he had returned to West Germany on foot. Meantime, his unit had been lost and all records of him destroyed. He returned to the family home to find the house bombed. Assuming all his family were dead, he settled in a village 50 miles away where he had lived until he met Franz and his wife. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

The past

When the war finished, Franz Bussman did everything he could to get information about his brother Hans. With no information, he reluctantly assumed his brother was dead, and gave up the search.

With no family, and having been unable to find his brother, Franze found it difficult to settle down. Over the years he moved from place to place and from job to job, never staying very long in one place.

When he met Anna (now Mrs. Bussman), he was working as a waiter in a hotel. He and Anna got married and Franz settled down at last. He moved from the dining room into the kitchen of the hotel and became a cook. But this did not last very long. He was talking to a friend one day, a taxi driver, who suggested that they should go into partnership. So they did, and Franz became a taxi driver. He and the friend drove taxis themselves, but they also soon owned four more taxis and employed four drivers.

He visited his home town once to visit his old house, but it was a sad visit. There was a large modern block of flats where his family house used to be. And

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

although he spoke to some of the apartment owners, no one remembered him or his family. Now that he has finally found his brother Hans, he and Anna are planning to invite Hans to come and live near them and work as a taxi driver in the company. (250 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

For the past few days I have been ill and, on the advice of my doctor, have had to spend some time in bed. I am therefore writing to inform you that I shall unfortunately be absent from work for the next few days. Naturally I hope to return to work as soon as possible.

In the meantime, however, there is one thing that should be attended to in my absence. Before I fell ill, I was in the process of checking the proofs of the new brochure and would be grateful if someone could complete the job.

I look forward to seeing you in a few days' time.

(109 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 a 7 b 8 b 9 a 10 c 11 a 12 d

Lesson 37 The Westhaven Express

Key to Comprehension

1 We have developed an unshakable faith in railway timetables because they have always been punctual.

2 The journey from the writer's village to Westhaven by express train was supposed to take an hour and seventeen minutes.

3 The writer explained the fact that many local people boarded the train at the same time as he did because they also wanted to use the same excellent service.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

punctual (1. 1)	on time
unshakable faith (1. 2)	a firm belief or trust
delayed (1. 3)	made late
cancelled (1. 4)	called off
temporarily dislocate (1. 5)	disrupt for a short time
consulting (1. 9)	reading, looking at (for information)
a mere (1. 10)	only, just

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Boarded train—many local people got on—not surprised

2 Not surprised, either—train stopped—Widley

3 Train dawdled—began to wonder—train just chugging along

4 Finally, 2 hours later—Westhaven—spoke to station master

5 Denied existence of express—argued

6 Footnote: "This service—suspended"

Summary

When many local people boarded the train with the writer, he was not surprised. Nor was he surprised when the train stopped at Widley. But when it stopped at each station, he began to wonder why it was going so slowly. Finally, when the train reached Westhaven, the writer spoke to the station master who denied the existence of an express. They argued and the writer was shown this timetable footnote, which said: "This service has been suspended." (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

A disastrous train journey

When I finally boarded the train, I was looking forward to a pleasant journey to the village of Slowleigh where my friends live. I sat in my seat, got out a book and was already reading when the train started.

According to the timetable, the train was due to arrive in Slowleigh at 4. 30. I had been so interested in my book that I had a shock when I looked at my watch. It was almost 4. 30. I closed my book and waited for the train to slow down. It didn't. In fact, the train was going very fast—and that was Slowleigh, wasn't it?! The train went straight on. I asked the other passengers why the train hadn't stopped and they told me it was the express to the city. I didn't believe it.

Then the ticket collector came along. He looked at my ticket and I tried to explain, but in the end I had to pay the full fare to the city.

By the time we arrived in the city it was six o'clock. The journey had lasted two hours and I was miles away from my original destination. I rang my friends and said I would get a fast train back. Then I checked the timetable: there *was* no fast train back to Slowleigh, only a slow one, at 7 o'clock. By the time I finally reached Slowleigh Station, it was nine o'clock at night. My pleasant little train journey had taken 4. 5 hours!

(250 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I have just heard that Joanna has given birth to a baby girl. Congratulations to you both! You must both be very proud parents and I bet she looks like Joanna! You've heard all the old jokes, so I won't repeat them—except to say that I know you will have some sleepless nights from now on!

I hope that Joanna and your new daughter are both well. You must let me know what she weighs and who

www.TopSage.com

she really looks like. I hope to be able to visit you all very soon. Let me know when I shall be welcome.

All my love (104 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 d 8 c 9 d 10 d 11 b 12 a

Lesson 38 The first calendar

Key to Comprehension

1 Future historians will not have to rely on the written word when they come to record the history of our times because there is a mass of information on film, video, CD and CD-ROM that they will be able to refer to.

2 Historians who write about the distant past have a difficult task because they have to deduce what they can from a few clues.

3 It was believed that calendars were first used with the advent of agriculture.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

record (l. 2)	write down
select (l. 3)	choose
great mass of evidence (l. 3)	large number of facts
accumulates (l. 4)	collects, builds up
solely (l. 4)	only
bewildering (l. 6)	confusing
insignificant (l. 9)	unimportant

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Long puzzled by prehistoric markings—walls, bones, tusks
2 People—made markings—nomads—last Ice Age
3 Finally historians—read difficult code
4 Passage of days—phases of moon—primitive calendar
5 Connection between pictures of hunting scenes—markings

Summary

Historians have long been puzzled by prehistoric markings on walls, bones and tusks. The people who made the markings were nomads during the last Ice Age. Finally historians have managed to read this difficult code and realized that they depict the passing of the days and phases of the moon. They are in fact a primitive calendar. There is a connection between the pictures of hunting scenes and the markings with them.

(71 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Studying the past

Future historians will have plenty of sources from which to learn about twentieth-century man. Not only will they have the written word, they will also have films, videos, audio cassettes, CDs and CD-ROMs. In fact, they will have so much source material that they will hardly know where to start!

If they study all the material available, they will be able to build up a complete social and political history of our time. They will know exactly how we dressed, what we ate in every different country and they will know exactly what our homes were like. They will know what our towns and cities were like and what forms of entertainment we enjoyed. In fact, they will not only *learn* about our forms of entertainment, they will be able to enjoy a lot of them, too—our music, plays, musical shows, video games, our art, our literature,... And they will be able to read and see the news day by day as it happened.

They will learn in detail the way we fought our wars—the way we used jet fighters, helicopters, ships and tanks. They will be able to learn every detail of great moments in history, and everything about leading figures of the time as well as the lives of ordinary men and women.

In future, the study of history will provide interest and excitement for a lot of people, the past will be brought to life and history will no longer be boring.

(249 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

We have been writing to each other now for about five years and, although we have exchanged lots of photos of each other and our families, we have never met face to face.

At last there is a chance for us to meet. I will be visiting Canada with my parents next year and naturally I want to come and see you. I just can't wait to meet for the first time.

We are planning to fly to Canada early in April, but can you please let me know if there is any time when you and your parents will be away? (102 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 d 5 c 6 b 7 c 8 b 9 a 10 a 11 c 12 a

Lesson 39 Nothing to worry about

Key to Comprehension

1 The passengers tried to get Bruce to drive back to the village they had come from because the rough road across the plain had become so bad.

2 Bruce wasn't at all perturbed by the bad state of the road because he had no sense of danger at all.

3 The passengers kept looking back to see if they were leaving a trail of petrol or oil.

www.TopSage.com

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

boulders (1.3)	large stones or rocks
perturbed (1.4)	worried
underestimated (1.6)	guessed that difficulties were not as bad as they really were
bumped (1.9)	moved along in an uneven way
swerved (1.9)	moved quickly in one direction, then in another
hammered (1.10)	hit repeatedly
ominously (1.10)	as if giving a warning that something unpleasant is going to happen

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Boulders disappeared—stretch of plain—clumps of bushes
2 Ahead—huge fissure—Bruce stopped
3 We examined it—50 yards long, 2 feet wide, 4 feet deep
4 Bruce raced along—then back on plain
5 Village now 15 miles away
6 Next obstacle—shallow pool—Bruce charged in—came to halt in middle—run out of oil

Summary

When the boulders disappeared, there was a wide plain covered with clumps of bushes. Ahead was a huge fissure and Bruce stopped. We examined it and found it was fifty yards long, two feet wide and four feet deep. Without thinking, Bruce raced the car along it and then we were back on the plain. The village was 15 miles away and the next obstacle was a very wide shallow pool. Bruce charged in and stopped in the middle.

(79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Bruce remained unperturbed

It was typical of Bruce to announce "cheerfully" that there was no oil in the engine! For the rest of us, it was a disaster. We all got out and began shouting at him and then at each other. What could we do? We were standing in the middle of a very large pool up to our ankles in water with a car that was useless.

We tried to push it, but of course it was absolutely impossible. All we managed to do was to push it deeper into the soft mud. In the end we all walked to next village where we tried to get a taxi so that we could take some oil (and petrol) back to the car.

We couldn't find one driver who would take us over the rough road. Fortunately there was a small garage and we paid a large sum of money to the garage owner to rent a jeep. With a can of oil and an extra can of petrol we all climbed in and set off.

When we eventually got back to the pool, we attached a rope from the jeep to the car and pulled the car out of the water. We were not surprised to find that the engine was badly damaged, and would not even start with the oil we had brought back. Disaster again, but Bruce was undismayed!

(230 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I am having a great holiday here in T... Pat and I have done all the typical tourist things and have seen most of the sights.

However, I'm afraid we are both running out of money—and we both have to pay our hotel bill at the end of the week. Pat has managed to get some more through his bank, but I would be very grateful if you could send me another $250 through the Landmark Bank.

(78 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 a 4 d 5 a 6 d 7 b 8 c 9 a 10 c 11 b 12 c

Lesson 40 Who's who

Key to Comprehension

1 Students specialize in hoaxes.
2 The student told the police that two students dressed up as workmen were digging up the road outside the university.
3 The student told the workmen that another student was dressed up as a policeman and was going round playing silly jokes on people—so ignore him.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

a particular type (11.2-3)	a special kind
put out (1.4)	extinguish
deception (1.4)	trick, something that deceives someone
victims (1.6)	people that suffer from other people's actions
hung up (1.9)	put the phone down
silly (1.11)	stupid, childish
grateful (1.12)	thankful

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Policeman arrived—asked workmen—go away—threatened force
2 Policeman telephoned help—four policemen arrived
3 Workmen refused to stop—policemen threatened—take pneumatic drill

www.TopSage.com

4 Workman lost temper—threatened call police; silly—already under arrest
5 Workman asked—make telephone call—permission granted—policeman accompanied him—pay phone
6 Workman actually rang police—all realized—victims of hoax

Summary

When a policeman arrived, he asked the workmen to go away. Later four more policemen arrived. The workmen still refused to stop and the police threatened to confiscate their pneumatic drill. One workman then threatened to call the police, which was silly because they were already under arrest. When another workman asked to make a telephone call, a policeman accompanied him to a phone. The workman actually rang the police and they realized they had been victims of a hoax. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Arrest the police!

The policeman who accompanied the workman to the pay phone still did not realize that they had been the victims of a practical joke. When he and the worker returned to the scene of the hoax right outside the university gates, the other workman was still quarrelling with the police and resisting arrest.

Following the worker's call to the police station, it was not long before more police arrived on the scene—and it is at this point that the story becomes very complicated! The workmen told the police who had just arrived that the first lot of policemen were actually students *dressed up as policemen*. The second lot of police therefore threatened to arrest the first lot of police, but before they did so, they asked for their identity cards. The first lot ignored this request and said that they really were policemen, but that the *workmen* were students. The workers had to prove their identity, too, they said.

None of them had to prove their identity by showing identity cards, because at this point two or three of the policemen started laughing, and then the workmen started laughing, and in the end they were all laughing. They finally realized that they had all been victims of a hoax—and not one of them could remember what the student had looked like. "After all," said one workman, "they all look the same to me." (237 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

Thank you very much for your last letter. It was really good to hear from you again and to read about the long trip you intend to make and your offer to take me with you.

Yes, I would love to come. You are going to visit a part of the country that I have never been to, so naturally I'd like to come along. And I shall of course share the expenses—petrol, food and accommodation, and any other expenses. However, you didn't say how much you think the trip will cost, so perhaps you could let me know. (100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 c 4 d 5 a 6 d 7 c 8 c 9 b 10 a 11 d 12 a

Lesson 41 Illusions of pastoral peace

Key to Comprehension

1 One of the author's city friends lived in the country for six months.
2 The author finds fault with his friend's description of the country because it is only part (or only one side) of the picture.
3 He considers them unfortunate because they tolerate a four-hour journey every day for the dubious pleasure of living in the country.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

extol the virtues (l. 6)	praise the good things
illusion(l. 7)	false idea
superior to(l. 8)	much better than
maintains(l. 9)	says, argues
glinting(l. 10)	shining in small flashes
tolerate(l. 14)	bear, stand, put up with
beyond me(l. 15)	beyond my understanding

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Never travel miles—see friends—live nearby
2 Never worry—last train home after theatre
3 Exhibitions, films, plays—short bus ride
4 Shopping—pleasure—variety—never need to make do—second best
5 Moments of beauty, too—warm glow of ads—wet nights
6 Peace at weekends

Summary

You never have to travel miles to see friends because they live nearby. Nor do you have to worry about catching the last train home after the theatre. The latest exhibitions, films and plays are all a bus ride away. Shopping is a pleasure, too. There is so much variety that you never have to make do with second best. The city can be beautiful and peaceful, too—beautiful with the glow of neon advertisements, and peaceful at weekends. (79 *words*)

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

Key to Composition

Special Note: From this point in the course, while the Students' Book suggests a choice of two compositions, only one is chosen as a model.

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: Give me the country!

Introduction: Never understood city-lovers—city a place to visit, to go shopping, to see special exhibitions, etc.—not live in

Development: Advantages—living in country—quiet—more healthy—less traffic—fresh air—fresh food from farms or village shops—people polite and friendly...

Disadvantages—living in city—noisy—dirty—stressful—people always in rush—rude, unfriendly

Conclusion: Always a mystery why some country people say—like to live in city

Composition

I have never understood city-lovers. For me a city is a place to visit for a few hours, to go shopping, to see special exhibitions, shows, plays and films. But it's not a place to live in, even though thousands do. Usually they are tied to the city by their jobs or perhaps even by family.

There are so many advantages to living in the country. It is quiet and more healthy. There is far less traffic on the roads and the air is so much fresher. Instead of buying everything in packets from a supermarket, in the country we can always buy fresh food from farms or village shops every day—milk, fruit, fresh eggs, vegetables and meat. And we don't have to look at "Use by..." labels to see when we must use something by: we know that everything is fresh. And the people in the country are always so polite and friendly too—as long as you obey the unwritten rules of the countryside, that is.

On the other hand, there are so many disadvantages to living in a town or city. The first thing most country people notice is the noise and dirt. It must be the traffic, but many country people find it difficult to breathe in the city. And it is stressful, too: people always seem to be in a rush, and they are so often rude and unfriendly.

There are so many advantages to living in the country that it is a mystery to me why some country people say they would like to live in the city. In fact, I just cannot understand how anyone can even consider living in the city. (282 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I was very pleased to hear that you are coming to the city for a few days next month. I think it's good for you to see occasionally what life has to offer! And there is so much you will be able to do!

Of course I can put you up. You know you don't really need to ask. As long as I am going to be here (and I will be during the time you want to visit), you can always use my guestroom. Let me have your exact dates and I will make sure the guestroom is ready.

(100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 b 8 b 9 a 10 b 11 b 12 a

Lesson 42 Modern cavemen

Key to Comprehension

1 The exploration of a deep cave requires careful planning because pot-holers do not know exactly what difficulties they will meet.

2 The Gouffre Berger has been formed by an underground stream which has tunnelled a course through a flaw in the rocks.

3 The entrance to the Gouffre Berger might never have been discovered because it is so small and it was spotted by the distinguished French pot-holer Berger.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

relatively (l. 2)	comparatively, quite
desire for solitude (l. 2)	wish to be alone
lures (l. 3)	attracts, tempts
arouse (l. 6)	wake up, excite
precise (l. 9)	exact, detailed
confront (l. 11)	be faced with and have to deal with
is barely noticeable (l. 15)	can hardly be seen

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Entered narrow gap on plateau—climbed down—reached narrow corridor

2 Edged way along—came to waterfall—dropped to underground lake

3 Plunged into lake—special rubber suits—let current take them to other side

4 Squeezed through cleft in rocks—enormous cavern—size of concert hall—saw great stalagmites and stalactites

5 All they could hear—water dripping from high dome

Summary

On entering a narrow gap on the plateau, they climbed down and reached a narrow corridor. They edged their way along and came to a waterfall which

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

dropped to an underground lake. They plunged into the lake in special rubber suits and let the current take them to the other side. On squeezing through a cleft in the rocks, they discovered an enormous cavern where they saw massive stalagmites and stalactites. All they could hear was water dripping from above. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition(a)

Title: Caught in a cave

Introduction: Went out for day on beach—walked round headland—found deserted beach—marvellous day swimming, sunbathing, reading—late afternoon began to pack up

Development: Took time—began to walk to headland—suddenly realized—tide coming in fast—walked faster—tide reached headland rocks

Saw cave in cliff—hoped to climb—went in—couldn't see way out—started back—tide coming in cave—found a "chimney"—climbed up—managed to reach the top of cliff

Conclusion: Never so frightened in life—never do it again

Composition

One day last summer Rob, a friend of mine, decided to go out for a day on his own. He took a day off work and went to the beach. He walked round the headland a mile from the town and found a deserted beach. He couldn't believe it: there was no one else there. He spent a marvellous relaxing day there swimming, sunbathing and reading, and for the whole day he was the only one on the beach. Then, late in the afternoon, he decided to pack up and go home.

He took his time drying himself, changing and packing his things into the shoulder bag he had brought with him, and then began to walk towards the headland. As he was walking along the beach, he suddenly realized that the tide was coming in: it was coming in very fast, and he began to get a little worried. He walked faster, but soon the tide had reached the headland and there was no way that he could walk around.

He looked round and saw a cave in the cliff. As he hoped to climb up inside it, he went in. Unfortunately, he just couldn't see a way out, so he started back. It was too late: the tide was coming in the cave and as he looked down from the point he had reached, the sea was already covering the floor of the cave and beginning to rise up the chimney in the cave. He turned round and started climbing again—and eventually found a smaller chimney that he managed to climb up to reach the top of the cliff.

He had never been so frightened in his life. He promised himself that he would never do it again.

(292 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I am writing to say how sorry I am that I didn't invite you to my party last Saturday night. It wasn't until the middle of the evening that I realized you weren't there, and by then it was too late to do anything. You may not believe this, but your name was the first on my list of guests for the party when I prepared it on my computer. I can only assume that when my sister printed it off and sent the invitations, she didn't notice your name was missing. (92 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 b 7 d 8 b 9 c 10 a
11 d 12 b

Lesson 43 Fully insured

Key to Comprehension

1 When an insurance company takes a big risk, the policy holder has to pay a bigger premium.
2 The local authorities had bought such a large pie dish so that an enormous pie could be baked for an annual fair.
3 It capsized because too many young people danced on it.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

a standard practice(l. 2)	a normal, regular act or course of action
in the event of(l. 5)	if there is
premium(l. 6)	the amount of money you pay for an insurance policy
salvaging(l. 8)	saving (a sunken ship) from the bottom of the sea
annual(l. 11)	yearly, once a year
launched(l. 13)	put into the water
capsized(l. 15)	turned over

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Divers found it—difficult to haul out of water
2 Sides smooth—impossible to attach ropes/chains
3 Eventually—chains to one end—pulled to canal bank on winch
4 Overbalanced—slid back
5 Now fixed clamps to both sides of dish—lifted vertically
6 With winch—hauled dish above surface—finally on to dry land

www.TopSage.com

Summary

The divers found the dish, but it was difficult to haul out of the water. The sides were so smooth it was almost impossible to attach chains to it. Eventually chains were attached and they pulled the dish to the canal bank on a winch. Unfortunately it overbalanced and slid back. They then fixed clamps to both sides and fastened chains to lift it vertically. With a winch they hauled the dish above the surface and on to dry land.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: The sinking pie dish

Introduction: Dish—anchored to side of canal after launch—eighteen feet long, six feet wide—sides about three feet high

Development: Number of teenagers—canal path—dish looked fascinating—great for party—climbed into dish—first thing—slipping and sliding everywhere—all fell down in the bottom of the dish

Dancing to large portable radio—dish began to move—down one side—then down one end—teenagers moved to other end—started dipping—all slid into a pile—rim of dish reached level of water—water started to come in—teenagers couldn't climb back up to other end—water started pouring in

Capsized—sank in seven feet of water—all teenagers safe

Conclusion: Teenagers—not much damage, but—not held party on dish—wouldn't have sunk—insurance company wouldn't have had to pay to salvage it

Composition

It was the biggest pie dish in the world and, floating on the canal, looked very inviting. It had been anchored to the side of the canal after it had been launched and was as big as many of the boats on the canal. It was about eighteen feet long and about six feet wide, and the sides were about three feet high.

When a number of teenage girls and boys came along the canal path early in the evening, they thought the dish looked fascinating. There were about ten of them and they all jumped or climbed into the dish one by one. The first thing that happened was that they started slipping and sliding everywhere and all fell down in the bottom of the dish because it was so smooth. They all laughed a lot.

Then one of them turned on the large portable radio that he had brought with him and some of them started dancing. (At least there was no one near the canal to complain about the noise.) Suddenly the dish began to move in the water. It went down one side, and then down one end, and the teenagers moved to the other end. Then it started dipping that end and they all slid into a pile. At that point the rim of the dish reached the level of the water. Once that happened, the teenagers couldn't climb back up to the other end, and the water started pouring in. It capsized in minutes and sank in seven feet of water. Fortunately they all managed to swim to the bank and were safe.

The teenagers may not have done much damage, but if they hadn't held their party on the dish, it wouldn't have sunk and the insurance company wouldn't have had to pay to salvage it from the canal. (306 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

I have just learned from an article in last week's local paper that you and Jane were involved in a car accident. I was really very sorry to read the news. If I had known earlier (from your family or from a friend), I would have contacted you both earlier. However, the main thing is that you are both OK.

When you and Jane have recovered completely from the experience, I would like you to come over and see me for an evening.

Please accept my very best wishes. (89 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 b 6 a 7 d 8 c 9 c 10 a
11 d 12 b

Lesson 44 Speed and comfort

Key to Comprehension

1 It is difficult to read on a train because the monotonous rhythm of the wheels often sends you to sleep.
2 What makes long car journeys unpleasant is the fact that you can't read and most of the journey is spent on roads with no service stations and too much traffic.
3 The two disadvantages of travelling by seas are: a) there's nothing worse if you suffer from seasickness, and b) most sea journeys take a long time.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

cramped and stuffy (l. 4)	very crowded and with warm stale air (from body heat)

www.TopSage.com

monotonous (l. 6)	regular, tiring and with an uninteresting lack of variety
lulls(l. 7)	makes... sleep
in snatches (l. 7)	from time to time
destination (l. 9)	the place you are travelling to
stretch your legs (l. 13)	get some exercise
sacrifice (l. 16)	give up or lose

Key to Summary writing

Point

1 Nothing—match planes—speed and comfort
2 Plane—destination—rapidly
3 Travel in comfort—watch film—sip champagne
4 Breathtaking view of world—appreciate shape of landscape
5 Sight of cloud plains
6 Smooth journey—easy to read or sleep—arrive fresh—uncrumpled

Summary

Nothing matches a plane for speed and comfort. An aeroplane reaches its destination rapidly. You travel in complete comfort, often watching a film or sipping champagne. You have a breathtaking view of the world and you can really appreciate the landscape. When you are above the clouds, the sight of cloud plains is extraordinary. The journey is so smooth that it is easy to read or sleep, and you always arrive fresh and uncrumpled at the end of the flight. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition(b)

Title: The disadvantages of travelling by air

Introduction: All forms of travel—advantages and disavantages—flying has many advantages (e. g. speed)—but many disadvantages

Development: Booking—different airlines, different prices—then the *real* time—e. g. for a 2-hour flight—time to get to airport, checking in, etc. —at other end, customs, passport control, waiting for luggage, etc.

On flight itself—squashed in—sitting next to strangers—airline food—two small toilets for hundreds of people—noise of engines and air-conditioning system.

For some people—constant sense of danger—will we arrive safely? —will any of the engines fail?...

Conclusion: So many disadvantages—rather by road or sea—but millions will go on flying

Composition

All forms of travel have advantages and disadvantages. Flying has many advantages that regular international travellers will tell you about, but it has many disadvantages.

When you travel by train, you turn up at the railway station, buy a ticket to your destination, go onto the platform and get on the train when it arrives. With travelling by air, booking itself is a major problem. Immediately you are faced with choices because different airlines offer the same flights for different prices. Personally I never know which to choose.

And then there's the *real* time. When they tell you that it is a two-hour flight, add at least *five* hours to that. Remember first of all that you have to get to the airport (by car, bus, coach or train). Then you have to check in—usually at least an hour before take-off—go through customs and passport control, and then wait in the departure lounge (bored out of your mind!) until your flight is called. Boarding takes at least half an hour, and then you sit in the aircraft waiting to take off. At the other end, after your flight, again you are subjected to customs and passport control before waiting for your luggage before you catch your transport from the airport to your real destination.

On the flight itself you are squashed in, you often sit next to strangers who might have strange or bad habits, such as an irritating cough. They always give you a meal, but airline food often tastes like plastic and there is rarely any choice. There are just two small toilets for hundreds of people and there is the constant drone of engines and the hum of the air-conditioning system.

For some travellers, too, there is a constant sense of danger: Will we arrive safely? Will any of the engines fail? What if there's a mad hijacker on board?...

Flying has many disadvantages but millions will still go on flying. (329 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

Enclosed is a ticket for a performance of Shakespeare's *Hamlet* at the Centre Theatre next Saturday evening. It's a present from me and, no, I haven't gone mad! Three months ago I saw an advertisement for this particular performance and immediately booked a ticket for it. Now, I suddenly find that I must go home to see my family, so I will not be able to attend the performance.

As I know you enjoy going to the theatre so much,

www.TopSage.com

and I know you are studying *Hamlet* for an English exam, I thought you would be able to use it. —Enjoy the performance. (103 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 c 3 c 4 d 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 d 9 b 10 a 11 c 12 b

Lesson 45 The power of the press

Key to Comprehension

1 Newspapermen can cause untold suffering to ordinary people by publishing details about their private lives.

2 The event that made the family in South Dakota famous was the birth of quintuplets.

3 The day after the birth of the five children sixty reporters and photographers arrived in the town by plane.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

restrict(l. 1)	keep within limits, control
equally(l. 5)	in the same way, just as much
contention(l. 6)	assertion, argument
untold(l. 7)	indescribable
acquired(l. 10)	got, gained
perpetual struggle(l. 12)	continual fight
in obscurity(l. 15)	in a state of not being famous or well known

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Immediately—plane arrived—reporters and photographers
2 Rise to fame—swift—TV and papers—everyone in country
3 Newspapers and mags—huge sums for exclusive rights
4 Gifts from baby products manufacturers
5 Old farmhouse replaced by expensive new home
6 Lawyers employed—act as spokesmen
7 Parents paid price for fame—never possible—lead normal lives

Summary

Immediately the news got out, a plane arrived with reporters and photographers. The family's rise to fame was swift and soon the media had told the whole country. Newspapers and magazines offered huge sums of money for exclusive rights to the story, while gifts poured in from baby products manufacturers. The family's old farmhouse was replaced by a new home, while lawyers were employed as spokesmen. The parents paid the price for fame: they would never again lead normal lives. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: From football pools to fame

Introduction: "Rags to riches"—not quite right for John—but not far wrong

Development: His life ordinary—lacked excitement—25—no sport—no girlfriend—didn't drive—bicycle instead—led ordinary life—but happy

Friend suggested he do the football pools—way of winning a lot of money—if predictions correspond to real football scores—win lots of money—he won a million—bought a new car, big house—met a girl—married her—started arguing—got a divorce—now alone again—a sad millionaire

Conclusion: Lesson of story: never listen to friend's advice—now sad millionaire—but gives lots to charity

Composition

There is a well-known expression in English to describe rising from poverty to a state of being very rich or wealthy: it's called going "from rags to riches". It doesn't usually mean that a person has been living in rags and then becomes extremely rich. The expression is not quite right to describe what happened to John, but not far wrong.

John's life had been very ordinary and certainly lacked excitement. He was 25 years old, but he didn't take part in any sport, he didn't have a girlfriend and he didn't drive a car. Instead he went everywhere on his bicycle. In fact he led a pretty boring life, but he was happy.

Then one day a friend suggested he do the football pools. (In England this is a way of winning a lot of money. If your predictions correspond to real football scores, you can win lots of money.) John did the football pools and won a million pounds. He went mad with the money. He bought a new car and a big house. And then he met a girl and married her. It was all too quick. Very soon they started arguing and soon they got a divorce. Now John is alone again, and living in his big house as a sad millionaire.

The lesson of the story is this: never listen to the advice of a friend. If John had never done the football pools, he would never have become a sad millionaire. On the other hand, he is now able to give a lot of money to charity—to help people less fortunate than himself. (271 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer

Dear Sir,

I write with reference to the article which you published in your paper two days ago about the Swifts

www.TopSage.com

and their four new children.

It may be a little unusual for a woman to give birth to quads (or quadruplets, to give them their proper name), but surely the event did not deserve a full page with photos! A short paragraph would have been enough; we did not need to know the ages of the parents, the father's job, and so on.

Surely there is a lot more important news from around the world to fill the pages of your newspaper.

Yours faithfully, (105 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 b 8 a 9 d 10 c 11 c 12 a

Lesson 46 Do it yourself

Key to Comprehension

1 We do not rely on specialized labour so much nowadays because a lot of us do jobs ourselves.

2 Shops encourage people to do things for themselves by running special advisory services for novices and offering bits and pieces that you can assemble at home.

3 Some women tend to believe that their husbands are resourceful and that they can fix anything.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

increasingly(l. 2)	more and more
plead ignorance(l. 3)	say that you don't know anything about
gaily embark on the task(l. 5)	happily start the job
installing(l. 7)	putting in
novices(l. 9)	beginners
repeatedly(l. 17)	often, time after time

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Looked at machine—reckoned—only minor adjustment needed

2 Not so simple—mower refused to work—dismantled it

3 Traced cause of trouble—broken link in drive chain

4 Bought new chain—reassembled mower—still didn't work

5 Not surprised—bits left—didn't fit anywhere—gave up

Summary

The author looked at his machine and reckoned that only a minor adjustment was needed. After adjusting a few things, the mower still refused to work, so he dismantled it and traced the cause of the trouble: there was a broken link in the drive chain. After buying a new chain and reassembling the mower, it still did not work. However, he was not really surprised because there were bits left that did not fit anywhere—so he gave up. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: The dripping tap

Introduction: Dripping tap—didn't want to call in a plumber—charge a lot of money—so did it myself—surely a fairly easy job—what can go wrong?

Development: First thing—turn off water at mains—couldn't find it—finally found it under the kitchen sink—never noticed it before—turned it off

Turned on kitchen tap—stopped running—unscrewed tap—took off old washer—new washer wouldn't go on—cut it a little—went on, no problem—put everything back together—turned on mains—pleased—five minutes later, tap started dripping worse than ever

Conclusion: Never again—will always call in professional

Composition

Friends have often told me that one of the simplest plumbing jobs in a house is changing the washer on a dripping tap. We had a dripping tap in the kitchen. It had been dripping for weeks. I didn't want to call in a plumber because they charge a lot of money, so I decided to do it myself. Surely it's a fairly easy job, I thought. What can go wrong?

I really did not think that it would be difficult. I knew that the first thing I had to do was to turn off the water at the mains. Unfortunately, I couldn't find where to turn off the water. Was it under the sink in our kitchen? Or was it outside somewhere? Eventually I found it under the kitchen sink on a pipe coming up from the ground that I had never noticed before.

When I had turned off the mains tap, I turned on the kitchen tap until it stopped running. So far, so good! Then I gaily embarked on the task of unscrewing the tap and taking off the old washer. When I tried to put the new washer on, however, I realized that I had a problem. Whatever I did, it just wouldn't go on. So I cut it a little and it went on with no problem. Then I put everything back together and turned on the mains. I was *so* pleased with myself—until, five minutes later, the tap started dripping worse than ever.

As a result of the experience, I have made a decision. I will never attempt to change a washer again, and I will call in a professional for any plumbing, building or electrical job that ever needs doing in the house. (291 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

A possible answer (body of letter only)

When we last met two years ago, I told you about the trouble I was having at work and you gave me some very valuable advice. I was worried about promotion, and you told me to work hard and be patient.

I am writing now to thank you and to say that you were absolutely right. In fact, I really can't thank you enough. I have worked hard over the past two years, and I have waited. And now I have just heard that I am going to be promoted next month.

I am going to be head of my section in the department. (104 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 d 4 c 5 d 6 a 7 b 8 c 9 b 10 a 11 c 12 b

Lesson 47 Too high a price?

Key to Comprehension

1 The amount of rubbish that we produce across the world threatens to become a mountain under which we will all sink.

2 They use pesticides and fertilizers.

3 If you became a vegetarian, you would still consume pesticides in salads and vegetables.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

dump (l. 3)	throw away
sheer volume(l. 5)	simply the amount
rubbish (l. 5)	things/material that are/is thrown away
leads to (l. 8)	results in
dairy(l. 11)	milk
abandon(l. 11)	give up
organically-grown(l. 12)	grown in a natural way, without the help of chemicals

Key to Summary writing

Points

1Noise invades daily lives

2 Recent survey—worst—dogs barking at night

3 Also lawn mowers—late-night parties—noisy neighbours—vehicles—planes and helicopters—large radios

4 Mobile phones—public places

5 Survey—"old-fashioned" source of noise—snoring—men worst offenders—only small % women snore—they suffer

Summary

Noise constantly invades our daily lives. According to a recent survey, the worst noise is dogs barking at night, although the noise of lawn mowers, late-night parties, noisy neighbours, vehicles, planes and helicopters and large radios all adds. While the use of mobile phones in public places, it seems, is annoying, the survey revealed that one "old-fashioned" source of noise is snoring, with men the worst offenders: only a small percentage of women snore, but they suffer most. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: "You are what you eat"

Introduction: Meaning of expression—applies to some—not to others

Development: Plenty of fruit and vegetables—lean meat—keep healthy...
Fatty foods and "junk foods" (beefburgers, etc.,)...
Problem—physical health not simply result of diet—also metabolism, exercise and way of life/lifestyle—sit at desk all day—watch TV—can't expect to be healthy

Conclusion: I eat well and sensibly—take exercise—still 150 pounds—too much for my age and height

Composition

It has often been said that "you are what you eat." But what does that mean? It certainly does not mean that if you eat enough carrots, you will begin to look like one! It means that you will be healthy if you eat healthy food, and your health will not be so good if you eat "junk food". And obviously it applies to some people, but not to others. A friend of mine is mainly a vegetarian, she eats mostly fruit and vegetables, with some fish, and she is extremely healthy. She even has a meal occasionally with fried eggs, fried bacon and chips, but it doesn't seem to do her any harm. Basically she eats a diet which is 90% healthy. So, I suppose, she is what she eats.

There is a problem, however, and it is this. Your physical health is not simply the result of what you eat and drink; it is also partly a result of your own metabolism, the amount of exercise you take and the general way you live (your lifestyle, if you like). If you eat healthy food, but sit at a desk all day and then sit all evening watching television, then of course you can't expect to be really healthy.

I eat well, I think. I eat fresh meat, fruit and vegetables when I can. I do not eat much fatty food, I do not eat much prepared food (frozen meals) and very rarely have a fried meal. I take regular exercise, particularly walking and cycling, and I don't drink much alcohol. But I still weigh 150 pounds, which is too much for my age and height. (276 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

A possible answer (body of letter only)

You have often said that you would like to visit the UK. Well, here's your chance!

I have just seen an announcement in the university office asking for names of students from other countries that we students could recommend for a free month's holiday course here in Edinburgh during the next summer holidays. Basically, it will be a free English language course with free accommodation. You would have to pay for your own air fare here and back. Naturally, I would make sure that I would be here in Edinburgh during your time here.

Let me know what you think. (100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 a 9 c 10 c 11 a 12 b

Lesson 48 The silent village

Key to Comprehension

1 Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable because the villagers, far from being friendly and hospitable, can be quite hostile to strangers.

2 They decided to spend their last day exploring the countryside because the little town they were staying in was invaded by several bus loads of tourists.

3 They asked a boatman to row (or ferry) them across.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

inaccessible (l. 2)	difficult or impossible to reach
hospitable (l. 3)	welcoming, friendly
hostile (l. 5)	aggressive, unfriendly
vicinity(l. 8)	neighbourhood, surrounding area
end abruptly(l. 13)	suddenly come to an end
traced(l. 13)	found... by following a path
eventually(l. 17)	finally

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Village—one street—looked forbidding
2 Seemed deserted—goat—sat down—picnic lunch
3 Suddenly surrounded by children in rags—silent—motionless
4 Walked down street—followed by children—village came alive—faces in windows—men and women in doorways
5 Clearly unwelcome
6 Hurried back to stream—and boatman

Summary

The village contained one street and looked forbidding. Apart from a goat, it seemed deserted, so they sat down and had a picnic. Looking up, they suddenly found themselves surrounded by children in rags. The children were silent and motionless. As they walked down the street followed by the children, the village came alive, with faces in windows and people watching them silently from doorways. The visitors were clearly unwelcome. They hurried back down to the stream and the boatman.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (b)

Title: An unexpected swim

Introduction: Reached the stream—no one there—no boat, no boatman

Development: At first surprised—mistaken the place? walked along bank—definitely not there
Tried to attract attention of anyone on other side—stranded
Sat down on bank of stream—discussed problem—wife suggested something—take off shirts, tie personal belongings in them—swim to other side
Walked back to hotel

Conclusion: Most surprising thing—walked into hotel still wet—no one said word

Composition

When we reached the stream where we had stepped out of the ferry and where the boatman said he would wait, there was no one. There was no boat and no boatman.

At first we were surprised and thought that we had perhaps mistaken the place where he said he would wait. We walked along the bank of the stream for a few hundred yards in one direction, and then in the other. He was definitely not there. I was worried that the villagers would be coming down the mountain after us, but we couldn't see anybody, and the only noise was the noise of the running stream. We called across the stream to attract the attention of anyone on the other side, but nothing happened. It seemed that we were stranded.

We sat down on the bank of the stream and just looked at each other.

"Come on," I said. "We've been in worse situations than this. What about that time we got lost in the forest in Germany, and the time the car broke down in Australia?"

"You're right," she said, cheering up. "There is something we can do."

And, since I certainly couldn't think of anything better, we did just what she suggested. We both took off our shirts, tied our personal belongings in them (purse, money, passport, keys and so on), tied the shirts round our waists, and waded into the water until

www.TopSage.com

we had to swim. And we swam to the other side, where we squeezed out our shirts and put them on again wet. Then we walked back to our small hotel in the town.

Perhaps the most surprising thing was that when we walked into the hotel still wet from our swim across the stream, no one said a word! (301 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

I am writing to congratulate you on the occasion of your eighty-fifth birthday. I have been trying to imagine all the things that have happened during your life and all the questions I could ask you. You must remember the Second World War (1939 — 1945). What do you remember about it? And what about the Coronation of Elizabeth Ⅱ, and Kennedy's assassination, and the Gulf War, and the death of Princess Diana, and lots of other events like that? You must tell me all about them sometime.

Once again, many congratulations on your 85th birthday! (96 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 d 5 a 6 a 7 c 8 d 9 b 10 c 11 b 12 a

Lesson 49 The ideal servant

Key to Comprehension

1 Aunt Harriet liked most to talk about domestic servants.

2 She continued to live in The Gables after her husband's death because she was sentimentally attached to the house.

3 She always referred to them as "the shifting population" because they came and went with great frequency.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

air her views (l. 2)	express her opinions
favourite (l. 2)	most loved
persisted in (l. 7)	continued to
immaculate (l. 9)	spotlessly clean
invisible (l. 11)	can't be seen
enlightened (l. 14)	wise, free from accepted ideas
domestic staff (l. 15)	servants in the home (cleaners, cook, butler, etc.)

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 On return with guests—told Bessie—prepare dinner

2 Meal below standard—Bessie couldn't walk steadily—bumped into furniture—mumbled at guests

3 Brought in pudding—tripped—pudding crashed on dining table

4 Guests amused—Harriet horrified

5 Realized—Bessie drunk—dismissed her immediately

Summary

On her return with a party of guests, Aunt Harriet asked Bessie to prepare dinner. Not only was the meal below standard, Bessie could not walk steadily, and she bumped into furniture and mumbled at the guests. When she brought in the pudding, she tripped and the pudding crashed onto the dining table. While the guests were very amused, Aunt Harriet was horrified. She realized Bessie was drunk and dismissed her immediately. (72 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (*b*)

Title: It is a good thing domestic servants have become a great rarity.

Introduction: Domestic servants still exist—work for film stars, pop stars, other famous people—but very few—great age of servants is past

Development: Reasons why small number of domestic servants: small number of big houses needing domestic servants—many country houses in Britain—bought by National Trust—many helpers voluntary

Houses owned privately—now run much more efficiently—open gates to general public

Such large houses—some domestic staff—but employ other people

Conclusion: Personally pleased—no more/very few domestic servants

Most work for someone else—but "servant" idea connected with past centuries

Composition

Domestic servants still exist, but nowadays, instead of working for rich old ladies, they only work for members of the royal family, aristocrats, film stars, pop stars, successful businessmen and other rich and famous people, and there are really very few of them. The great age of domestic servants is past.

There are many reasons why there is such a small number of domestic servants now. The first thing, of course, is that there are very few families that own big houses that need domestic servants. Many of the large country houses in Britain that need servants have been bought by an organisation called the National Trust and many of the people who help to run these properties are voluntary. They are certainly not "servants" and they believe that they are helping to preserve the heritage of

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Great Britain.

The houses that *are* still owned privately are now run much more efficiently than they used to be, and very few entertain guests as they used to do. Instead, they open their gates to the general public, and so they need the same staff that major entertainments need. True, such large houses have some domestic staff, but they employ many other people who would not like to think of themselves as "domestic servants"—waiters and waitresses in their cafés, cleaners, car park attendants, ticket collectors, guides, office staff, and so on.

I am personally pleased that there are so few people in domestic service now. Most of us work for someone else, it's true, but the whole idea of being a "servant", a "domestic servant", is an idea connected more with past centuries than the twentieth or twenty-first centuries. (279 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

Thank you very much for your cheque which I received at the end of last week for my 21st birthday. It was extremely kind of you and is far more than I deserve.

Naturally you would like to know what I intend to do with the money. For some time now I have wanted to buy a computer, so I am going to buy one that takes floppy disks and CDs, and one that has games and that I can use to send e-mail messages.

Once again, many many thanks for the money.

(94 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 d 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 c 8 a 9 c 10 b
11 a 12 c

Lesson 50 New Year resolutions

Key to Comprehension

1 It has taught us that certain things are beyond attainment.
2 It is a basic mistake to announce our resolutions because we look even more foolish when we fall back into our old ways.
3 He didn't carry out his resolutions on New Year's Day because he went to an all-night party on New Year's Eve.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

mentally(l. 1)	in our minds/heads
formidable(l. 2)	challenging, frightening
recur year in year out(l. 3)	happen every year/ year after year
beyond attainment(l. 8)	cannot be achieved
inveterate(l. 8)	firmly established in a bad habit
frustration(l. 9)	feeling of annoyance and dissatisfaction
carrying out(l. 14)	doing

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Exercised early morning—two days—before anyone found him out
2 Sat at breakfast—condition betrayed him
3 Enthusiasm waned
4 Jan. 10th—back to normal—decided to keep mind fresh for reading
5 Sat in room few evenings reading
6 One evening—went down and sat in front of TV—then dozed off
7 Now bought book to help resolution to read

Summary

The writer exercised early in the morning for two days before anyone found out. When he sat at breakfast the second day, his condition betrayed him. His enthusiasm waned so that by January 10th, things were back to normal. However, he decided to keep his mind fresh for reading. He read on his own until one evening he went down and sat in front of the television, but he dozed off. He has now bought a book on speed reading!

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: Broken resolutions

Introduction: New Year resolutions—made to be broken? —some people serious—most know they won't succeed—so ridiculous resolutions

Development: Last time made list of resolutions—five years ago—always do college work on time—keep room tidy—have nothing to do with girls in nearby college—write home once a week—wash clothes regularly—have haircut once a month—Impossible! —girlfriend helped—eventually gave up in despair

Conclusion: Don't make New Year resolutions any more—little point—why break habits—years to establish

Composition

Are New Year resolutions made to be broken? I think so. Some people are serious about them of course, but most know that they won't succeed in keeping them. That's probably why they make resolutions such

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

as "I must be polite to Aunt Harriet" when they only see Aunt Harriet twice a year! —or "I must cut down on my smoking" when they only ever have a cigarette after a family lunch on Sundays! Such resolutions, then, are not only ridiculous, but hardly resolutions at all!

The last time I ever made a list of resolutions was five years ago. I remember now that I resolved always to do my college work on time, to keep my room tidy, to have nothing to do with the girls in the nearby girls' college, to write home at least once a week, to wash my dirty clothes regularly and to have a haircut once a month. What was I thinking of?! For most college students such resolutions would be impossible—and of course they were for me!

I kept three of the resolutions for a week, and a girlfriend from the nearby girls' college helped me to keep two more (the ones about keeping my room tidy and washing my dirty clothes regularly!) for another week. After that, I gave up in despair. Instead, I resolved just to try to be just a little bit more tidy and a little more thoughtful, generally.

I don't bother to make New Year resolutions any more since I have proved to myself and others that I can't keep them. There seems to be little point in breaking habits which have taken years to establish.

(279 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

It is about a month since I last wrote to you. At that time I was studying in a language school. However, since then I have left the school and managed to find a job.

Before I left home, I know that I promised I would write to you once a week—and I had every intention of doing it. I'm sorry I haven't written as often as I promised, but I do not always have very much news. I'll write and tell you all about the job next time.

I really will try to write more often in future.

(100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 d 5 b 6 c 7 b 8 a 9 c 10 c 11 b 12 b

Lesson 51 Predicting the future

Key to Comprehension

1 PCs have taken over many of the functions that mainframe computers used to perform.

2 The first home computer was called the Altair and it was produced in 1975.

3 The first PC needed an operating system called DOS to make it run.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

predicting(l. 1)	saying what will happen
imagined(l. 2)	seen in the mind
whole(l. 7)	complete
functions(l. 9)	jobs, tasks
primitive (l. 10)	very simple, undeveloped
humble (l. 14)	small, low
in common use(l. 15)	used by almost everybody, employed generally

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Bagrit predicted—computers small enough—hold in hand

2 Provide information—traffic jams—suggest alternative routes

3 Used in hospitals—help doctors diagnose illnesses

4 Relieve office workers/accountants—dull repetitive work

5 Failed to predict Internet—as communication—as source of information

6 As predicted—computers smaller, more powerful, cheaper

Summary

According to Bagrit, computers would be small enough to hold in the hand, and they would be able to provide information about traffic jams and suggest alternative routes. They would be used to help doctors diagnose illnesses, and in business would relieve office workers of dull, repetitive work. However, he failed to predict the use of the Internet as a vehicle of communication or a source of information. But as predicted, computers have become smaller, more powerful and cheaper. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: Computers in 20 years' time

Introduction: Predicting what computers will be like—guessing game

Development: Development so fast—computers already smaller, more powerful, cheaper than ever—in 20 years, what? Let's speculate.

1 Everyday shopping by computer—virtual-reality shopping

2 Education—computer-notebooks

3 Travel—computer-driven aircraft, cars, lorries, etc.

4 Medicine and health—brain surgery—computer-operated limbs

Conclusion: Who knows? —wait and see

www.TopSage.com

Composition

Predicting what computers will be like in 20 years' time or what they will be able to do is a guessing game. If Leon Bagrit could not predict everything, what chance have I got? However, because prediction is just a calculated guess, I will try!

The development of the computer since the 1960s has been very fast. From large mainframe computers which filled whole rooms to small lap-top computers which you can carry in a shoulder bag or large handbag, it has taken only forty years. Computers are already smaller, more powerful and cheaper than they have ever been. So what might happen in the next twenty years? Let's speculate.

In twenty years' time it's possible that many people will be doing their everyday shopping by computer. The "virtual-reality" shop will be available through your TV set: You will be able to "walk through" your supermarket on screen, click or tick what you want, and then order it—and it will be delivered. In education, most students could be using computer-notebooks which make notes for them as they listen to a lecture or watch a demonstration experiment. In the world of travel, aircraft already have computer systems that will control auto-pilot. In twenty years' time, computers could actually pilot aircraft—with no need for a real, live human pilot at all.

Computers already help doctors diagnose disease and other health problems, and help in the control of body systems during operations. What else might they do in the future? They might actually control certain kinds of surgery (brain surgery, for example) where the human hand cannot always keep still enough, and power computer-operated limbs.

So there are some ideas. But who knows what might really happen? No one. No one can see into the future. We shall just have to wait and see.

(307 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

As you are coming in tomorrow after I have left, I thought I should write you a few notes.

You already have a set of keys, but I have also left a set of keys with our neighbours opposite, John and Jane Smith. If you need anything, please ask them.

You won't have to bother about the post because I have asked the Post Office to keep all our mail till we come back. Everything else is as I told you, but please remember to leave the answerphone on when you go out and write a list of messages for me.

Enjoy yourself, but please look after the house.

(108 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 d 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 a 8 a 9 a 10 b
11 a 12 a

Lesson 52 Mud is mud

Key to Comprehension

1 The curiously-shaped bottle that Harry keeps in his study contains perfumed mud.

2 He often visited cosmetic shops to play jokes on them.

3 When he was told that one of his imaginary products was out of stock, he would promise to call again.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

delicate(l. 3)	pleasant and not strong
observant(l. 3)	quick to notice things
came into the possession(l. 9)	became the owner of
stuff (l. 9)	material, matter, substance
insoluble(l. 14)	that will not dissolve (in water)
to keep a straight face (l. 17)	not to laugh, to stop oneself from laughing
is quite beyond me (ll. 17-18)	I do not understand it

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Asked for perfumed mud—had already asked for "Myrolite"—assistant had already promised to order some

2 Assistant's eyes lit up—fetched several bottles—put on counter

3 Harry picked up smallest bottle—asked price

4 Learned—£20—left—bottle under arm

5 Curious bottle—first and last purchase of rare cosmetics

Summary

The assistant promised to order the "Myrolite" Harry had already asked for, so he then said he wanted perfumed mud. This time her eyes lit up and she immediately fetched several bottles which she put on the counter. Harry picked up the smallest bottle, and when he learned the price (£20), he paid and left with the bottle under his arm. This curious bottle, now in his study, was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.

(77 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: A day's shopping

Introduction: Looking forward to day out—wanted to get new clothes—last Friday

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

Development: Got up usual time—caught bus to centre of town—a list of purchases—something to wear to friend's wedding—pair of shoes to go with new clothes—within an hour had most important things on list
Then most difficult part of day—"Birthday present for Pat"—a book
Spent 2 hours in one large book shop—failed—bought three for self!

Conclusion: How I felt when I got home

Composition

For me, a day's shopping is the best way I think of to pass a day away from college or work. I have been looking forward to a day out shopping for weeks because I have wanted to get some new clothes for ages, so last Friday I took a day off.

I got up at the usual time (as if I were going to work or college) because for me shopping is as serious as work. Before I left the house I made sure I put on a good pair of walking shoes and then caught the bus into the centre of the town.

Some people visit all the shops in the hope that they will find what they want at the prices they want to pay. Not me: I'm one of those shoppers who has a list of purchases—and with a fairly good idea of how much I want to pay.

The first thing I wanted was something to wear to a friend's wedding next month—and I didn't want to pay very much. I found just what I wanted in the second shop I visited. And in the second shoe shop I visited, I found a pair of shoes that would go with the new clothes *and* which I could wear to work afterwards. Within an hour I had bought the most important things on my shopping list. I was *so* pleased!

But then came the most difficult part of the day. The third thing on my shopping list was "Birthday present for Pat". I like to give her a present but it is always so difficult. This year, I decided, I would buy her a book. Do you know how long I spent in one large book shop? Two hours! And even then I didn't get her a book—although I bought three for myself!

By the time I got home, it was six o'clock. I was absolutely exhausted, but pleased that I had managed to buy two things on my list. (337 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

Did you hear reports of the thunderstorm in our area a week ago? We were caught in the middle of it.

We were woken in the middle of the night by thunder and lightning. We went downstairs where my mother made coffee and tea. Then the wind started howling and it started to pour with rain. When we looked out of the windows, we could hardly see any of the neighbouring houses, and water was flooding down the road. Suddenly there was a crash on our roof.

We didn't realize how bad the damage was until the following morning when we found that the chimney had fallen through the roof. (110 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 c 6 d 7 b 8 a 9 c 10 d
11 a 12 d

Lesson 53 In the public interest

Key to Comprehension

1 Sweden introduced the institution of Ombudsman to investigate private grievances against the State.
2 An Ombudsman is chosen by a parliamentary committee which represents all political parties.
3 The public can find out about the Ombudsman's work through his correspondence which is open to public inspection.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

evolved an excellent system(Ⅱ. 2-3)	developed a very good method
safeguard(l. 9)	protect
grievances(l. 11)	complaints
investigates(l. 12)	looks into, tries to find the reasons for
correspondence(l. 16)	the letters to and from the Ombudsman
altered(l. 18)	changed in a small way

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Ombudsman received complaint from foreigner—wrote to Chief of Police—wanted record of case
2 No official record—Chief denied accusation
3 Action impossible—then similar complaint—sent lawyer to investigate
4 Lawyer ascertained truth of accusations
5 Policeman severely reprimanded—warned—any further complaints—prosecution

Summary

On receiving a complaint from a foreigner about police ill-treatment, the Ombudsman wrote to the Chief of Police asking for a record of the case. As there was no official record and the Chief denied the accusation, no action was possible. But when there was another similar complaint, the Ombudsman sent a lawyer to investigate. He ascertained the truth of the accusations, the policeman was severely reprimanded and warned that if there were further complaints

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

he would be prosecuted. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (*b*)

Title: The work of a policeman

Introduction: In Britain—people—different attitudes to police—generally appreciate them (not criminals!)
What do police *do*?

Development: Number of jobs in one:
Traffic; keeping the peace; solving crime; helping to keep order in emergencies—air crashes, fires, road accidents, etc.

Conclusion: Police do excellent job—don't envy them

Composition

In Britain, people have different attitudes to the police. Most people generally appreciate them and the job they do—although there are certain people (including criminals, of course) who do not believe that the police should have the power that they do.

What does a policeman actually do? It is not an easy job to describe. After all, a policeman has a number of jobs in one. A policeman often has to control traffic, either on foot in the centre of a town, or in a police car on the roads. Indeed, in Britain, he might be in the Traffic Police and spend all, or a lot of, his time driving up and down main roads and motorways. A traffic policeman has to help keep the traffic moving, stop speeding motorists and help when there is an accident.

A policeman has to help keep the peace, too. If there is a fight or some other disturbance, we expect the police to come and assess the situation and restore order. And they often have to deal with situations at great risk to themselves and their own safety.

We expect the police to solve crimes, of course, so an ordinary policeman, even if he is not a detective, will often have to help look for and arrest criminals.

And who do we call when there is an emergency—an air crash, a fire, a road accident, or a burglary? We call the police. So a policeman has to be prepared to face any unpleasant emergency that may happen in the modern world.

The police do an absolutely necessary job, they do it extremely well and I support them, but I do not envy policemen. I do not think that I could ever do the job of a policeman. (296 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to you to complain about the standard of postal services in our district.

We used to receive post regularly at special times of the day and post used to be collected regularly from post boxes at the same times every day. In the past few months, however, the service has deteriorated. We no longer receive post regularly and it would seem that post is collected from post boxes at any time of day.

My neighbours and I would like you to investigate this situation.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully, (100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 d 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 a 9 c 10 a 11 b 12 b

Lesson 54 Instinct or cleverness?

Key to Comprehension

1 Most people are afraid of insects and think of them as creatures that do more harm than good.

2 We try to exterminate them because they contaminate our food, they carry disease, they eat our crops, they sting or bite without provocation and they invade our living space twenty-four hours a day.

3 We enjoy the fact that they are "strangely fascinating" and when we find that they lead horrible lives.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

contaminate (l. 3)	make...impure or dirty
devour(l. 4)	eat, consume(completely)
provocation(l. 4)	being made angry or bad-tempered
dispelling(l. 8)	getting rid of
industrious (l. 8)	hard-working
revulsion(l. 9)	disgust
pouncing(l. 15)	jumping

Key to Summary writing

Point

1 Saw thousands of ants crawling up tree

2 Noticed leaves withering—clusters of aphids under leaves

3 Visited by ants

4 Bound base of tree with sticky tape—stopped ants temporarily

5 Next morning—ants solved problem—house wall onto leaves

Summary

The writer saw thousands of ants crawling up his peach tree. Then he noticed the leaves of the tree were withering and found there were aphids under the leaves. They were being visited by the ants. In an effort to stop them, he bound the base of the tree with sticky tape and of course they couldn't cross it. By the next

www.TopSage.com

morning, however, they had solved the problem: they were climbing onto the leaves from the house wall.

(79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (b)

Title: Our efforts to control pests

Introduction: What are "pests"? —see dictionary definition—always been difficult to control or exterminate them

Development: Insects: ants, wasps, locusts, (plague), beetles that damage woodwork... damage property, devour our crops, ...—other pests—mice, rats—eat food—spread disease—efforts to control pests—insecticides and pesticides—poison—traps

For farmers, even certain birds are pests—gulls, pigeons, etc. —follow at sowing time and eat seeds—scarecrows to frighten birds

Conclusion: Tried almost everything—some pests held in check—other still a major problem (e. g. locusts)

Composition

According to my dictionary, "pests" are "small animals or insects that harm or destroy food supplies". But for me, they are more than that: they are insects and small animals that spread disease and damage property, too. Whatever they do and however you define them, pests have been a major problem to man throughout history. Man has tried to control or exterminate these creatures, but never with very much success.

In some ways, insects are the worst pests. Ants, locusts and beetles damage property, woodwork, crops and harvest, and in this century we have sprayed crops with insecticides and pesticides to protect them from insects. The problem now is that there are some insects that have become immune to pesticides. Rats and mice eat our food supplies too and spread disease, and people have tried to kill or catch them with poison or traps. But again, they are still with us. We haven't managed to exterminate them.

Let's not forget, however, that for farmers, certain birds are "pests" too. In Britain, seagulls, pigeons and other birds often fly down in their hundreds (or even thousands) to pick up seeds when farmers are planting crops. Years ago, farmers used to stand scarecrows in the fields to frighten away birds, but I'm not sure how effective they were.

We have tried different things, then, to control pests, and we have managed to hold some pests in check. However, some are a big problem, both in the major industrial nations and in the Third World. While locusts are a terrible problem in countries like Sudan and Ethiopia, rats are still a problem in most large cities in the world. We might control pests to a certain extent, but we shall never get rid of them.

(292 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (body of letter only)

It seems ages since we went on holiday together, so I thought I would write and ask how you are.

I am keeping well and working hard at college. I came back from our holiday really refreshed and ready for this term. And we really had a good time, didn't we? I particularly remember the day you brought your camera and took lots of amusing photos. Have you had them developed yet? If so, I'd love to see them.

Write and let me know what you are doing now. Did you start that new job?

I look forward to seeing the photos.

All best wishes, (105 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 d 9 b 10 b 11 b 12 c

Lesson 55 From the earth: Greetings

Key to Comprehension

1 It is a major achievement to be able to find new planets in space because they are (relatively speaking) very small and do not emit light.

2 Not all planets can support life because conditions have to be just right: the size and brightness of its star (or "sun") have to be just right, too.

3 One of the greatest astronomical projects of the twenty-first century will be the development of a telescope capable of detecting the presence of life on distant planets.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

detect (l. 1)	discover, find
in relative terms(l. 3)	relatively (speaking), in relation to other things
emit(l. 4)	send out
ideal conditions(l. 8)	an environment which is perfect (for the development of life)
capable of (l. 12)	able to
alternatively(l. 12)	on the other hand
presence(l. 15)	existence

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Impossible—find life on other planets—earth-based telescopes

2 Heat of own planet—dust particles in solar system

3 Need to be as far away as Jupiter

4 Even then—how to blot out light of planet's star/sun

5 Most likely life forms—plants and bacteria—not little green men

6 Even discovery of lowly life forms—change of view of ourselves

Summary

Finding life on other planets with earth-based telescopes is impossible because of the heat of our planet and the dust particles throughout the solar system. A telescope would need to be as far away as Jupiter. Even then, the problem will be how to blot out the light from a planet's sun to study it. The most likely forms of life will be plants and bacteria. Even the discovery of lowly life forms would change our view of ourselves. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (*a*)

Title: Extraterrestrials

Introduction: Remember "ET"? Ideas about extraterrestrials

Development: But creatures with incredible intelligence and no form? How deal with them? Not benevolent? Stories of extraterrestrials/aliens landing—have scientists studied them? Extraterrestrials helping scientists? Stories just rumours?

Conclusion: Extraterrestrials out there in space? Perhaps one day we'll know; change our view of everything

Composition

Do you remember ET in the film *ET, the Extraterrestrial*? If you do, you will know that the common picture of extraterrestrials is that they will look rather strange—for instance, they might have big eyes and funny feet and be a strange colour—but they will still somehow look like living creatures from earth. At the same time, of course, we believe that they will probably have incredible powers—like ET's power to heal injuries and to come alive again. Many science-fiction stories and films have shown aliens or extraterrestrials like this. They may somehow look like strange earth creatures, therefore, but they are benevolent.

But what if extraterrestrials—beings from other planets—are creatures with incredible intelligence and with no form, that is, with no body form like earthly creatures? They might be almost "living thoughts". How would we greet them? How would we deal with them? And what if they are not benevolent? In other words, what if they really want to take over the earth?

There are stories that extraterrestrials or aliens have already crashed on earth in spacecraft (flying saucers) and that scientists have studied them. There are even more fantastic stories that scientists are already learning from extraterrestrials new knowledge which will help us build incredible spacecraft to fly to other planets and beyond. Stories like that must surely be just rumours.

Perhaps one day we will know if there really are extraterrestrials out there in space, and if there are, we will know what they look like and what they think of us. Will they really be little green men? Or will they be giants? Or perhaps they will be so small that we can hardly see them? Will they be friendly? Or will they want to take over the earth? Who knows? One thing is certain. If we were ever to discover that there are extraterrestrials out there, the discovery would completely change our view of the universe and ourselves. (329 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer (*body of letter only*)

Many thanks for the enclosed travel guide which you lent me a month ago and which I am returning as promised.

As we are thinking of going to Greece for a holiday, the book was extremely useful. We were able to read about mainland Greece as well as all the different islands, and we think that we know where we would like to go. We will probably fly to Athens for two or three days and then go to Cephalonia, one of the islands off the west coast.

When we have made all the arrangements, we might like to borrow the book again.

Write soon. (105 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 a 8 c 9 a 10 c
11 b 12 a

Lesson 56 Our neighbour, the river

Key to Comprehension

1 The family were so dependent on the river because without it they could not make a living.

2 They held festivities by the river to celebrate river birthdays and to welcome the different seasons—spring, midsummer, autumn harvest and winter.

3 The position of their farm was fortunate because only their lower fields were affected by flooding

Key to Vocabulary

www.TopSage.com

大家网 TopSage.com

A possible answer

instinctively (l. 5)	without having to be told
overtake(l. 6)	happen (to us) suddenly
predecessor(l. 9)	previous owner
hard by(l. 10)	close to, very near to
in a heat wave(l. 10)	in a period of unusually hot weather
a rare occurrence(l. 14)	a very unusual event
goes to extremes(l. 15)	gets extremely hot or extremely cold
favourably(l. 16)	pleasantly, well

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 One bad winter—river rose—our cattle OK—worried about new neighbours
2 Floods put telephone out—couldn't contact them
3 Watched their land from attic window—first sign—dead sheep—then swimming horse
4 Raft (like Noah's ark)—family, hens, dog, cat, bird
5 Obviously unduly frightened by rising flood
6 Men waded out—pulled raft and contents to bank

Summary

One winter, the river rose alarmingly, and we were worried about our new neighbours. The floods had put the telephone out of order, so we couldn't contact them. We were watching their land when we saw the first sign of trouble, a dead sheep, and then a swimming horse. Then a raft came down, complete with the family and animals. They had clearly been frightened by the rising flood. Our men waded out and pulled the raft to the bank. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (b)

Title: A dark and gloomy street

Introduction: Dark and gloomy street—on way home from party—short cut

Development: Someone standing at far end, under lamplight—wasn't frightened—felt person did not mean to harm me—not sure what to do—decided to walk on towards the light
The "guide" started walking ahead of me—dressed in long gown—dim glow—felt safe and followed—part of town, I realized, that I had been warned about—but nothing happened to me—and near bright lights—"guide" just disappeared

Conclusion: A young person killed that night—was the guide my guardian angel?

Composition

It was a dark and gloomy street. I was on my way home from a friend's party and had decided to take a short cut. I had just turned the corner from the main street and had started walking towards the light at the end of the short street.

Suddenly, almost by magic, I thought, there was someone standing at the far end, under the lamplight. Most people would have been frightened, perhaps terrified. I wasn't at all frightened. Perhaps I should have been. There was someone there. I felt somehow that the person—and I couldn't see whether it was a man or a woman—did not mean to harm me. Although I wasn't frightened, I still wasn't sure what to do. Should I walk on towards the end of the street and towards the light and towards the person? Or should I go back the way I had come? I decided to walk on towards the light.

The "guide", as I called the person later, stood and seemed to wait until I was halfway down the street, and then started walking ahead of me. Even now I couldn't describe him or her: he or she seemed to be dressed in a long gown, but there was a dim glow all around him/her. Certainly I felt safe and followed the person down several streets that I did not know. It was a part of town, I realized, that I had been warned about—but nothing happened to me—and as soon as we were near the bright lights of the main road, my "guide" just disappeared.

The following day I heard that a young person had been killed walking home alone not very far from where I was that night. I don't care what other people think. I am sure that the "guide" was my guardian angel and that he or she looked after me. (317 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

Special Note: From this point, while the Students' Book suggests a choice of two Letters, only one is chosen as a model.

A possible answer for letter(b) (body of letter only)

Some time ago you told me that you enjoyed going to the theatre. I have just been given two free tickets for a performance of Shakespeare's *Hamlet* and wonder if you would like to go with me.

The performance is on Saturday, 15th July at the "New World Theatre" and starts at 7.30. We could go from my flat or meet at the theatre.

Please let me know as soon as you can if you would like to come. If you can't, then I know one or two other people who would like the ticket. (96 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 c 9 a 10 d

www.TopSage.com

大家网

11 c 12 a

Lesson 57 Back in the old country

Key to Comprehension

1 The author's father emigrated because he never recovered from the shock of the death of his wife.

2 The author came back to the land of his birth to visit his mother's grave.

3 The author thought that he would not need a map for the last part of his journey because his father had described it in great detail over and over again.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

objective(1. 2)	destination
seemed alien(1. 2)	looked strange
lacked for nothing(1. 9)	had everything I needed
embedded(1. 11)	fixed firmly and deeply
mortally(1. 12)	fatally, leading to death
comprehensive(1. 14)	complete, including a lot of different ones
positive(1. 17)	absolutely sure
familiar territory(Ⅱ. 17-18)	well-known land

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Should be looking at village—only lake

2 Wrong turning? —back to town—retraced route—finished up same spot

3 Lake not marked

4 Man on horseback appeared—asked way to old village

5 No village—pointed to lake—submerged with whole valley—man-made reservoir

Summary

In the place of the village there was only a lake. Had he taken the wrong turning? He went back to town and retraced his route, only to finish up at the same spot. The lake was not marked. When a man on horse back appeared, the author asked the way to the old village. The horseman told him there was no village and pointed to the lake; it had been submerged with the whole valley under a man-made reservoir. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (*a*)

Title: My ideal house

Introduction: The house I would like to own—home town—magnificent mansion

Development: Once visited it—owner held exhibition of sculptures and paintings in house—visitors had chance to see house
Large heavy green front door—large entrance hall—marble floor—large open staircase to first floor—large dining room and large sitting room—both look out onto front lawn—peacocks—oak trees
Back of house—kitchen, a laundry room, games room—upstairs 6 bedrooms, 4 bathrooms House—full of antique furniture—rooms decorated classical style

Conclusion: May sound like a dream—will be reality

Composition

There is a house in another part of my home town that I would love to own. It is called the "White House", like the President's house in Washington! I think you could easily describe it as a "mansion" and it is magnificent. I have no idea how much it is worth, but that doesn't worry me. I admire the house and have always admired it.

I do not have to imagine what the house is like inside because I have, strange as it may seem, actually been inside. About three years ago the owner held an exhibition of sculptures and paintings in the house. The exhibits were distributed throughtout the house so that all the visitors had a chance to see the house.

When you go in through the large heavy green front door, you find yourself in a large entrance hall with a shining black and white marble floor, rooms leading off from it in all directions, and a large open staircase leading up to the first floor. There is a large dining room on the right and a large sitting room on the left. Both rooms have big windows that look out onto the front lawn. There are always peacocks on the front lawn, and there are two large oak trees where you can sit in the shade on hot summer days.

At the back of the house is a large kitchen, a laundry and work room and a games room. Upstairs there are six bedrooms and four bathrooms. I *think* there are four bathrooms, but I can't quite remember.

The house is full of beautiful antique furniture and all the rooms are decorated in a classical style—lots of light blue and light green paint with white doors, and quite a lot of gold decoration.

The whole thing may sound like a dream, but one day it will be reality. One day I will own my ideal house. (332 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer for letter(*b*)

Flat 605 6/F,
35 Dadong Street,
Guangzhou, Guangdong 510065
P. R. C.
10th September, 20—

www.TopSage.com

Dear Charlie,

Thank you very much for your present which arrived just before my birthday. It was very kind of you. Now that I have my own copy of the "Thesaurus", I will naturally be able to make a lot of use of it. And I think that some of my friends will want to use it too!

My family and I are well and looking forward to a short holiday next month. It will be the first holiday that we have had for two years.

Please remember me to your parents and sisters.

All best wishes.

Write soon. (99 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 d 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b 7 c 8 d 9 a 10 c 11 c 12 b

Lesson 58 A spot of bother

Key to Comprehension

1 The old lady was surprised to find her front door open because she knew that she had locked the front door properly herself.

2 She realized that burglars had entered the flat because all the room doors were open and everything was in a mess.

3 She went down to the basement to fetch the porter.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

reprimand(l. 6)	scold
piece of negligence(l. 7)	act of carelessness, not taking enough care
regular practice(l. 10)	usual habit, usual routine
as clear as daylight(l. 11)	obvious
prudent(l. 13)	wise, sensible
her composure regained(l. 15)	after she had become calm again
intruders(l. 16)	burglars, people who break in
lurking(l. 16)	waiting quietly, secretly and unseen

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Went through ransacked flat—didn't touch anything

2 Police inspector looked for fingerprints—constable checked front door locks

3 No fingerprints—inspector found bundle jewellery—not burglars' first job

4 Inspector asked old lady—check what missing—advised—not stay in flat

5 Rang daughter to ask for help

Summary

The old lady and the porter went through the flat, careful not to touch anything. Later, a police inspector looked for fingerprints while a constable checked the front door locks. There were no fingerprints, but the inspector found a bundle of jewellery suggesting this was not the burglars' first job that day. The inspector asked the lady to check what was missing and advised her not to stay in the flat. Eventually she rang her daughter to ask for help. (80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (b)

Title: My first visit to the UK

Introduction: Nothing like first visit abroad—what to expect? —new language, new culture—everything new and strange

Development: 3 years ago—UK—arrival at airport—experiences

Landed at Heathrow—met by rep of A1 English Language School—taken to accommodation—small English family—at first everything strange—after 3-4 days began to enjoy stay

So many things to learn in England—example—asking way to "Albert Hall"= "the Albert Hall"

Conclusion: Foreign travel—impossible to overestimate value—also helps understand foreign visitors to our country

Composition

There is nothing like your first visit to a foreign country. Whatever you may have heard, or whatever you have read or seen, you still don't really know what to expect. You will hear and read a new language, you will be surrounded by a completely different culture, and everything will seem new and strange.

My first visit abroad was three years ago when I went to the UK. I had booked to attend a short English language course in London with a friend of mine. After a very long flight, we landed at Heathrow Airport and were met by a representative of the A1 English Language School. She welcomed us and took us to our accommodation. We were staying with a small English family. At first everything was so strange—the food, the furniture in their home and the way they live, everything! But after three or four days we both began to enjoy our stay, and of course we made lots of friends at the school, which was only half a mile away.

There are so many things to learn when you are in England. For example, one day my friend and I were

www.TopSage.com

sightseeing in London and stopped to ask an Englishman the way.

"Excuse me," I said. "Where is Albert Hall?" I thought my English was just right.

"Oh," he said, "you mean the Albert Hall!"

"Yes," I said, "where is the Albert Hall?"

He then explained how to get to the Albert Hall, but I didn't realize the word "the" was so important in English!

It is impossible to overestimate what you get from foreign travel. Going to the UK made me realize how small the world is, it made me see how important travel is, and it helped me to understand what foreign visitors feel like when they visit China for the first time.

(317 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer for letter(a)

I know that we had arranged to spend a day in town next Tuesday. I thought that I had better write and tell you that I shall unfortunately not be able to see you.

The reason is that I have been ill for the past two weeks with some kind of infection. It's a little like flu, but seems to be worse.

Can I suggest instead that you come and visit me one day? Almost any day will suit me, but it might be best if you ring first. (89 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 c 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 a 6 a 7 c 8 a 9 b 10 b 11 d 12 d

Lesson 59 Collecting

Key to Comprehension

1 Some people tend to hoard things which they never use because they never move house, and therefore leave things in drawers and cupboards believing they might need them one day.

2 Old people keep possessions which they no longer need because they lack physical and mental energy and for sentimental reasons.

3 It was not very sensible for the author's friend to collect sketches of model clothes because she would obviously never be able to buy any of them.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

amass(1. 1)	collect in large amounts, accumulate
being aware(1. 1)	realizing, knowing
move house(1. 4)	take your family and belongings from one house to a different one
attics(1. 6)	rooms in the roof of a house
gradually acquire(1. 10)	slowly(or over a period) get or gain
thrifty(1. 12)	very careful with money
in every direction(1. 17)	all over the place

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Relaxation—looking at treasures—a joy

2 Collection at home—no need to go out

3 Always something to do—right place for latest addition—verifying facts in reference books

4 Educational—meet people—circle of friends grows

5 Hobby leads to travel, national and international

6 May become authority—give talks

Summary

Collecting provides hours of relaxation for looking at your treasures is a joy. If you have a collection at home, why go out? There is always something to do, from finding the right place for the latest addition to verifying facts in reference books. Collecting is educational, too, and through meeting people, increases your circle of friends. The hobby can lead to travel, national and international. You may become an authority on the subject and be asked to give talks.

(80 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (b)

Title: The knock on the window

Introduction: There was a knock on the window—hardly noticeable—branch on oak tree?

Development: House stands on own—countryside—lonely—few neighbours—don't see each other

Heard blowing of wind—noise of traffic from main road

Conclusion: Looked out—no one there—came back in—knock on window—louder—heart pounding—little girl from down the lane

Composition

There was a knock on the window. At first it was hardly noticeable, almost as if a branch on the large oak tree outside had brushed against the window. It was repeated, and then there was silence.

I got up and looked out of the window. I couldn't see anybody and my dog hadn't started barking. It was mid-afternoon, about three o'clock and I had been listening to the radio and reading a book. The house stands on its own, down the end of a long lane in the middle of the countryside, so it is very lonely. I have

www.TopSage.com

TopSage.com

few neighbours, but the neighbours I have are very good, even though we don't see each other very often.

I had got so nervous recently that I had to summon up enough courage to unlock the front door and go outside. There was no one there. True, there was a light breeze and the wind was shaking the branches of the oak tree, but the only other sound was the noise of the traffic on the main road a mile away. For one moment I thought I saw someone hiding behind the fence, but nothing moved, so I thought I must be wrong.

I came back in and settled down by the fire with my book. Then there was a knock on the window, this time louder. It was a real knock with a human hand, no doubt about it—well, certainly not the branch of a tree—and my heart started pounding. I looked up and there, outside the window, was the little girl from down the lane. Her mother had sent her down to see if I was all right, and she had decided to play a trick on me!

(292 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer for letter (a)

I was very pleased to hear you are coming to see me after all this time.

However, as you have never been here before, I thought I'd better give you some directions. You will be coming out to Hightown on the underground. As you come out of the station, turn left and walk along the High Street for 200 metres. Turn left into Green Street, then our road is the first on the right. Our apartment block is on the left.

I'm enclosing a rough map, so I'm sure you'll find the apartment with no problems.

All best wishes, (100 *words*)

Key to Multiple choice questions

1 a 2 d 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 d 7 d 8 b 9 b 10 a 11 d 12 b

Lesson 60 Too early and too late

Key to Comprehension

1 The dangers of leaving the bare minimum of time for appointments are unforeseen accidents such as punctures, traffic diversions, fog and so on.

2 The author's family used to ask some guests to come half an hour later than others invited for the same day so that they would arrive on time (and not half an hour early!)

3 According to the author, it is better to wait on the platform before the train arrives than to be forced to wait after it has gone because you will avoid being frustrated.

Key to Vocabulary

A possible answer

a state of chaos (l. 3)	a condition of complete disorder and confusion
sparsely-populated (l. 3)	with not many people living there
disregard (l. 4)	ignore
reproached (l. 8)	criticized, scolded
setting out (l. 10)	leaving the house
diversions (l. 10)	moving to a different route (due to an accident, for example)
industrious (l. 11)	busy, productive, hard-working
destination (l. 33)	the place she wanted to go to

Key to Summary writing

Points

1 Girl entered station early

2 He said—2 hours too soon—showed porter details of journey

3 Porter agreed—but mail train, not for passengers

4 Girl demanded—see timetable—station master came—pointed out train stopped for mail

5 Train came in—girl still not allowed to get on

Summary

The girl entered the railway station twenty minutes early, but the porter said she was *two hours* too soon. When she showed him the details of the journey, he agreed it was correct, but said it was mail train, not a passenger train. When she demanded to see a timetable, the station master came and pointed out that the train only stopped for mail. The train came in but the girl was still not allowed to get on. (79 *words*)

Key to Composition

A possible answer

Plan and ideas for composition (a)

Title: A piece of paper

Introduction: Piece of paper—blowing in wind—not large—drop into water? —looked very light—tissue / toilet paper?

Development: Finished sandwiches—set off back to office—not looking forward to afternoon
Piece of paper flew up again—noticed writing on it—flew away—dropped down—wind took it again
Ran after it once more—landed in front of me

Conclusion: Lottery ticket—took it home—won £50!

Composition

A piece of paper was blowing in the wind. When I

www.TopSage.com

大家网
TopSage.com

saw it. I was sitting in the park eating my sandwiches. It was floating across the surface of the park lake, not large, about half the size of a postcard, and I wondered when it would drop into the water. But it didn't. As it got near to the surface, it rose again and the wind took it over the bank towards some trees. Even then I thought that it looked very light—perhaps tissue paper or toilet paper, maybe—because it almost fluttered, like a butterfly. But then again, perhaps it wasn't. Perhaps it was just ordinary paper that had got a bit wet.

I finished my sandwiches, threw my waste paper into the bin nearby and set off back towards the trees and my office. I was not looking forward to the afternoon. As I walked round the edge of the lake, the piece of paper flew up again in front of me. It began to annoy me, and intrigue me—because when it flew up, I noticed that it was pink with some writing on it. It flew away and I chased it. It dropped down and I had nearly reached it when the wind took it again. I ran after it once more and it landed again some metres in front of me.

I finally caught up with it and put my foot on it to stop it flying away again. This time I held it firmly with my foot until I could lean down and pick it up. I looked at it and realized what it was: a lottery ticket—a little wet, and one corner was torn, but it was a lottery ticket. I could see that the date on it was about six weeks before. It was probably worth nothing, but I decided to take it home and dry it.

It *was* worth something! When I checked the numbers with the winning numbers six weeks before, I had four the same. The "piece of paper" was worth £50! (334 *words*)

Key to Letter writing

A possible answer for letter (a) (body of letter only)

I am writing to inform you that I shall unfortunately have to be absent from school from Monday, 13th to Thursday, 16th July.

The reason is that an uncle of mine has just died and we have to attend his funeral. As he lived a long way away, my family is travelling there on Monday in order to attend the funeral on Tuesday. My parents then have to attend to certain matters before we travel back on Wednesday.

I sincerely hope that, in view of the situation, you will grant me leave of absence for these four days.

(97 *words*)

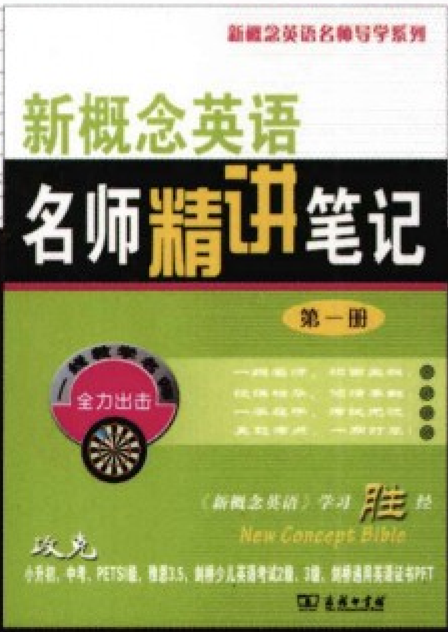
Key to Multiple choice questions

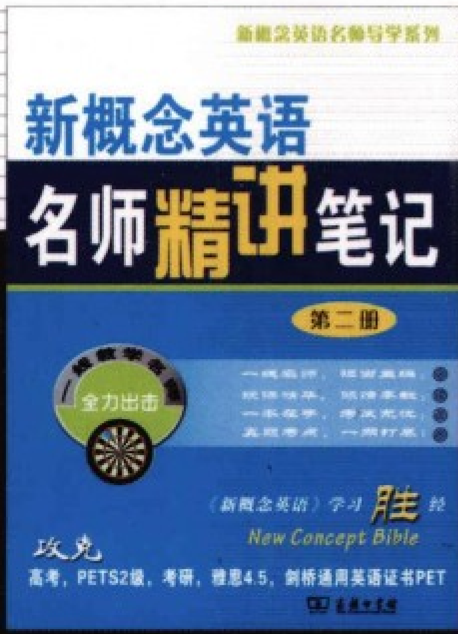
1 b 2 b 3 d 4 b 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 c 9 c 10 b 11 a 12 c

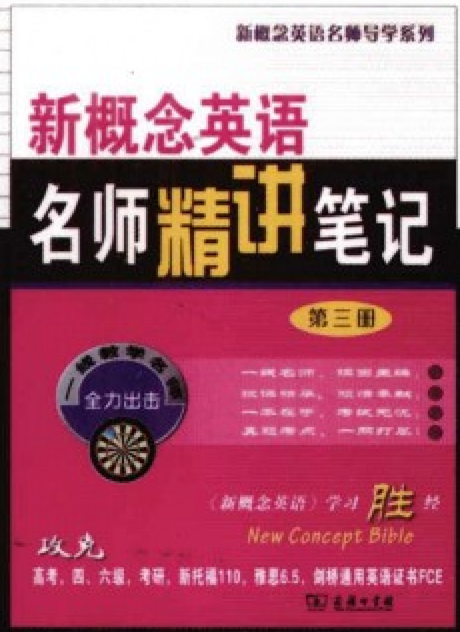
检

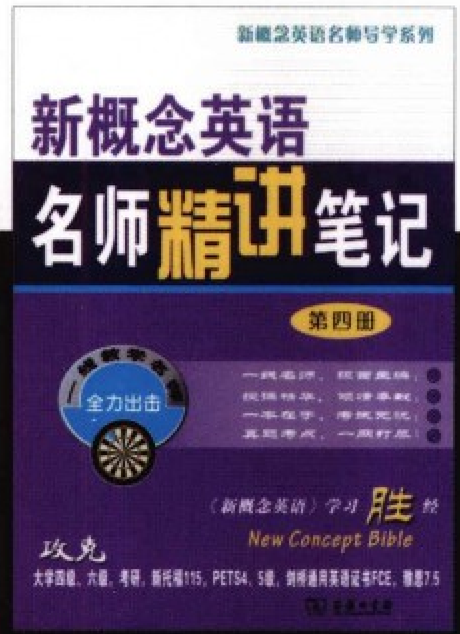
www.TopSage.com

全力出击









本书读者对象：

- ★已经学完《新概念英语》第二册或任何一本中级以下水平综合英语教材的学习者；
- ★准备参加高考或者大学四、六级考试的学生；
- ★准备各种社会公共英语考试，如PETS三、四级、雅思考试的考生；
- ★已经具备了一定英语基础的高中生或大学一、二年级学生；
- ★不满足于只是应付水平考试，想全面提高自己英语水平的学习者。

更多学习资料请登录WWW.KAOTIANXIA.COM

http://www.cp.com.cn
ISBN 978-7-100-07007-2
定价：29.80元